

A N  
I M P R O V E D   S Y S T E M  
O F  
B O T A N I C   M E D I C I N E,  
F O U N D E D   U P O N  
C O R R E C T   P H Y S I O L O G I C A L   P R I N C I P L E S ;  
C O M P R I S I N G   A   C O M P L E T E   T R E A T I S E   O N   T H E  
P R A C T I C E   O F   M E D I C I N E,  
W I T H   A   C O P I O U S  
M A T E R I A   M E D I C A .  
I L L U S T R A T E D   W I T H   N U M E R O U S   E N G R A V I N G S .

---

BY HORTON HOWARD.

---

C O M P L E T E   I N   O N E   V O L U M E .

---

28229  
C I N C I N N A T I :  
P U B L I S H E D   B Y   J .   K O S T .  
1852.

Amber

QV

H549i

1852

Part 71. 9-5

Entered according to Act of Congress in the year 1852, by

J. KOST,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Ohio.

STEREOTYPED BY J. A. JAMES & CO.,  
Cincinnati.



## OF DISEASES, SYMPTOMS, AND METHOD OF CURE.

---

THE reader will have perceived that in the first volume we devoted ourselves exclusively to an illustration of the grand fundamental principles of the new Physiological System of medical practice, together with a consideration of the true nature of disease, and correct method of cure. We are very sensible, however, that much more might have been written upon most subjects therein embraced; but knowing that brevity would be most agreeable to readers in general, we have preferred seizing upon a few of the most important facts, instead of entering into minute detail. We trust, therefore, that the reader will readily comprehend the important principles that we have endeavored to lay down, upon which the healing art is based, and on which medicines must act in the restoration of health.

In treating of Disease, we shall also endeavor to be concise but comprehensive; and confine ourselves generally to those complaints which are most common or peculiar. The reader, if he has perused the first volume, has no doubt perceived that we disregard all the various and contradictory systems of nosology which have been offered to the world, and which we confidently assert have had no better effect than to amuse the speculative mind, without in any degree improving the healing art. We believe with Dr. RUSH, that disease is a *unit*; or, in other words, that all diseases arise from a general proximate cause, and, hence, may be cured, if curable, by a general remedy or remedies. We do not mean, however, that one single herb or root, will cure all complaints. Disease is caused, as in the first volume has been abundantly shown, by a diminution of the living power of the system; the consequence of which is, a failure of strength, loss of tone of the organs, and foulness of the stomach and intestines. The indications of cure are, therefore, to restore the strength and tone of the organs, and cleanse the stomach by emetics, and the bowels by injections; to which we have also added the sparing use of cathartics or

purges. Now each of these indications may be answered by a great variety of articles, adapted to these different purposes. And hence, as disease is produced by a general cause, it may, in all its varieties, be removed by a general remedy or remedies.

And these general remedies are so systematically and harmoniously adapted to each other, and to the human body; and their principles and modes of administration so simplified, that any family possessing an ordinary share of common sense, may become their own physician in almost all cases of disease. We very well know that this doctrine is contrary to the common ideas of people in general, and of the medical Faculty in particular; but it has been verified, especially of late years, on a very extensive scale, and also has the countenance of some of the best men who have ever adorned the science of medicine. JOHN HOWARD, the celebrated English philanthropist, said that "every man must be his own physician; he must prescribe for, and practice on himself." And Dr. RUSH, whose benevolence was of the same enlightened and liberal cast with JOHN HOWARD's, recommends the general diffusion of medical knowledge, by an academical education: for the essential principles of medicine, says he, are very few, and plain. All the morbid effects, continues he, of heat and cold, of eating and drinking, and the exercises of the body and mind, may be taught with as much ease as the multiplication table.

These are the sentiments of men eminent for their philanthropy and scientific attainments; and the extraordinary success attending the botanical practice, in the hands of families, abundantly confirms their correctness. We boldly challenge the world for any instances of success, in the old schools of medicine, equal to that which has attended the Botanical practice in the hands of the people themselves. And to this end are we laboring to take the practice of medicine out of the hands of the physicians, and place it where it ought to be; in short, to produce a new and correct order of things, as Dr. RUSH also says, when the knowledge and use of medicine, by the people, "shall be considered amongst the most essential articles and rights of man."

We boldly and fearlessly proclaim, that families ought to be instructed in the knowledge of the means of curing their own maladies as well as preparing their own food. "Let us strip our profession," says Dr. RUSH, "of every thing that looks like mystery and imposition, and clothe the medical knowledge in a dress so simple and intelligible, that it may become a part of academical education in all our seminaries of learning. Truth is simple upon all subjects; and upon those essential to the general happiness of mankind, it is obvious to the meanest

capacities. There is no man so simple, that cannot be taught to cultivate grain; and there is no woman who cannot be taught to make it into bread. And shall the means of preserving our health, by the cultivation and preparation of proper aliment, be so intelligible, and yet, the means of restoring it, when lost, so abstruse, that we must take years of study, to discover and apply them? To suppose this, is to call in question the goodness of Deity, and to believe that he acts without system and unity in his works." "In thus recommending," continues Dr. Rush, "the general diffusion of medical knowledge, by an academical education, let it not be supposed that I wish to see the exercise of medicine abolished as a regular profession. Surgical operations, and diseases which rarely occur, may require professional aid; but the knowledge necessary for those purposes, is soon acquired; and two or three persons, separated from other pursuits, would be sufficient to meet the demands of a city containing forty thousand people."

But how have these benevolent views of the venerable RUSH been received or complied with? They have been met by prejudices the most inveterate, and opposition the most untiring. Instead of clothing medical science with simplicity, and making it a part of all education, the most unwearied exertions have been made to shade it with impenetrable mystery; to bury it in a mass of technical lumber, and pompous, unmeaning phraseology, unintelligible to persons of common leisure or learning. How great soever may be the fame which Dr. RUSH has so justly acquired by his scientific attainments; however revered may be his other writings; and how much deference soever may have been paid to his sentiments upon other subjects, but very little heed has been given to those benevolent designs which are disclosed in the foregoing quotations. Instead of enlightening the public mind, by a general medical education, the Faculty have been strengthening all those prejudices which the mysteries of their art had very naturally as well as intentionally produced.

These prejudices and mysteries, are the engines by which the people have been made to forge their own chains, and by which they are bound to the car of medical despotism and scientific tyranny. Our grand object in the present work is to furnish the means by which those chains may be broken, and mankind set free from this oppressive bondage. It was in these United States, that the spirit of independence, driven from the Old World, first enkindled the flame of civil liberty, and revived the principles of self-government: And it is here, too, that the desire to throw off the yoke of scientific medical oppression, which so long has rested with resistless weight upon our necks, has first become manifest; and here also have

the means been furnished by a benign Providence to do this work effectually ; the knowledge whereof we are hereby endeavoring to communicate to the world. We entreat you, then, as you value the inestimable blessing of health for yourselves or your families ; or as you value your independence of medical nabobs,\* to lay aside your prejudices and examine this interesting subject for yourselves. Honor your own judgments, and do justice to posterity, by preventing the oppressive prejudices of the present age, from descending with accumulated power to those who may be destined to succeed you on the stage of life.

Our remedies are all simple, as nature herself is simple ; they are moreover innocent, as all medicines, as well as food, ought to be ; harmless towards nature, but powerful in opposing disease ; restoring health by changing a diseased action to a healthy one, instead of preying, as the mineral and all other poisons do, upon the vital power, and thus contaminating the fluids and destroying the tone of the organs, which is the natural and unvarying effect of disease. Then why continue the use of these poisonous drugs, when others, both innocent and efficacious, are offered to your acceptance ? Why neglect the means which a bounteous Providence has provided to relieve our maladies, and which he has scattered with profusion in every land ? Why, we will once more ask, continue in the use of those inhospitable medicines which have so often given melancholy proofs of their destructive character, by scattering disease, dismay, and death, amongst the most enlightened portions of the human race ? when, at the same time, there grow, not only “upon some Alpine height, or along the margin of some mighty stream,” but indiscriminately over mountain, hill, and dale, the choicest remedies for all the maladies of man.

We can assure the reader that these sentiments are not the ebullitions of enphrenzied enthusiasm or bigoted zeal to support the doctrines of a new sect ; they are the sober conclusions of deliberate investigation, and the result of experimental facts. We cheerfully and confidently submit them to the world, to be tested by the scrutiny of the learned, or the experience of the multitude, and decided at the unerring tribunal of public opinion. And in thus submitting this work to the public, we take this occasion to express our firm convictions that scarcely any family will be subject to any hazard in using any of the articles commonly recommended ; they are all harmless ; nothing poisonous or destructive to life ; and, there-

---

\* The reader should bear in mind that such remarks as these are not intended for the whole body of physicians ; but for that portion only to which they may be justly applicable.



ore, the main object is to give the medicine in some way or other, if not exactly as hereinafter directed, nothing need be apprehended, but be sure and give it in some form; remembering that the lobelia cleanses the stomach, relieves spasms, difficulty of breathing, and, above all, gives an impulse which nothing else will, to the living power, in all cases of suspended animation, or prostration of the vital power from any cause whatever. On the other hand, remember that capsicum possesses the quality of permanently keeping up and strengthening the vital power, and should, therefore, be almost always used in every disease. The astringent and bitter tonics, are to be used to restore the tone of the organs, which is always more or less impaired by disease—the astringents are to be more especially used in bowel complaints, such as looseness, dysentery, &c., and the bitters to restore the appetite. Both astringents and bitters, may be used indiscriminately, and should almost always be combined with the capsicum to strengthen the living power.

For a description of a course of medicine, so often mentioned, under the head of TREATMENT, the reader is referred to the INDEX. It should always be resorted to in violent attacks, and in cases which do not readily yield to other means.

---

### ABSCCESS, BOILS, &c.

THE term, abscess, is applied to those cavities in which collections of pus or matter are formed, in any part of the system, such as boils, and all other swellings, which are preceded by inflammation.

Inflammations which terminate in abscess, usually come on with itching, dryness, redness, and increased heat of the part, which symptoms are succeeded by a small tumor or swelling, through which shooting and throbbing pains are commonly felt. If the inflammation runs high, and is of considerable extent, feverish symptoms come on; the pulse becomes full, hard, and quick; the skin dry and hot, with increased thirst.

Inflammations of this kind may terminate in different ways, either by *resolution*, *suppuration*, *adhesion*, or *gangrene*.

By resolution, is understood the natural and gradual cessation of the inflammatory symptoms, and the part becoming sound again.

Suppuration implies the formation of pus or matter in the inflamed part, and forming a cavity, which is properly termed an abscess.

By adhesion is understood a growing together of inflamed parts; which is said often to take place in twenty-four or thirty hours.

Gangrene is the incipient or first stage of mortification.

The symptoms which indicate the formation of pus are, an abatement of the feverish symptoms; a diminution of the acute pain, which is succeeded by a heavy, cold, and dull uneasiness in the part affected; softness and whiteness of the most elevated part or point of the swelling, whilst the other parts appear more red. If the matter is near the surface, we may be still further assured of its formation and existence by applying a finger to each side of the head or most elevated part of the swelling, and by gently or quickly pressing down with one, a gush or movement of the fluid may be felt under the other finger. When this fluctuation can be felt, there need be no doubt that matter is formed, and we may proceed immediately to make an opening in the abscess with a lancet, or some sharp instrument, to evacuate its contents.

When the matter, however, is more deeply seated, the fluctuation cannot always be felt. But in most cases of this nature, the sudden subsidence or abatement of the inflammatory symptoms, the repeated chills, the sense of weight and coldness of the part, may be regarded as good evidence of the existence of matter and its ripeness for opening; and if the patient is afterwards attacked with emaciation, night sweats, and other hectic symptoms, we may regard them as certain signs of a hidden collection of matter.

The symptoms which denote the termination of inflammation in gangrene are, a sudden diminution of the pain and fever, the part becoming livid or green, the cuticle or scarf skin being detached from the true skin, under which is effused a turbid or dirty water; the tension, swelling, and hardness subside, and, at the same time, a *crepitus*, or crackling noise, is heard on pressing upon the part, which is owing to a generation of air in the cellular membrane which is interposed between the skin and flesh. In this stage of the disease it is termed gangrene; but as the death of the part progresses, it becomes black and fibrous or thready and destitute of natural heat, sensation, and motion, and it is then termed a *sphacelus* or mortification.

**TREATMENT.**—If the inflammation proceed from any foreign or extraneous matter lodged in the flesh, such as a thorn, or splinter of wood, or any other substance, it ought immediately to be removed; and if necessary to its removal, the wound should be laid open with a knife or lancet so that the foreign body may readily be got at and removed, when it must be treated the same as other cases of inflammation.

In the first stages of inflammation arising from any other cause than injuries, such as boils, or other inflamed swellings, it will be proper to attempt the cure by producing a resolution of the tumor or swelling. To do this, it may be proper to ap-

ply cold water, which will have a powerful tendency to remove the inflammation; or we may bathe the part with a strong wash of pepper and vinegar, or with bathing drops. The application of the leaves of the common garden cabbage, or of skunk cabbage, to the part, will have a tendency to produce a moisture of the skin, arrest the inflammation, and dissolve the tumor. Cold slippery elm poultices kept wet with cold water will also have a good effect in promoting the resolution of the swelling.

But the most powerful discutient remedy, and which is by far the most certain to disperse the tumor, and remove all other bad symptoms, is a full course of medicine. Resorting to this process as the circumstances of the case may require, will remove feverish symptoms which always attend large inflammations, and has a most powerful tendency to promote a healthy action in the diseased part, and produce a resolution of the tumor. The frequent application of the vapor bath, taking at the same time some of the diaphoretic powders or capsicum, and omitting an emetic, will be found highly serviceable in removing the inflammation and swelling which precede an abscess.

If, notwithstanding these means, the tumor should show a disposition to suppurate, poultices should be applied, and often wetted with cold water, which will allay the pain and inflammation. The poultice must be renewed as often as it inclines to become sour. The vapor bath alone, or a full course of medicine, may also, if necessary in extensive inflammations, be resorted to during the suppurative process, and will always be found very beneficial.

It should also be remembered that it will be proper, in any stage of the inflammation, if the general health be impaired, to use the bitters, diaphoretic powders, cayenne, or any other article which may seem proper; and something warming will be more especially necessary whilst applying the cold poultice and cold water.

When the suppuration is completed, or as commonly termed, is ripe, which is to be known by the appearances we have herein before noticed, the tumor should be opened with a lancet or other sharp instrument, and the matter pressed out; though it is thought best, by some, in very large abscesses, not to evacuate the whole of the matter at once, but by degrees. After the matter is discharged, if there be no pain nor inflammatory symptoms, the sore may be dressed with salve alone; but if symptoms of inflammation still continue, or should they at any time afterward arise, a poultice must be applied, and occasionally wetted with cold water as before directed.

Many cases of inflammation and abscess are continually occurring, such as ordinary boils, &c. which are too trifling to require much attention in any stage; but in more serious cases,



after the abscess is opened, the powers of the system should be supported, and its tone kept up by the use of the bitters, diaphoretic powders, capsicum, &c., which will also promote the formation of healthy matter; a circumstance essentially necessary to the rapid healing of the ulcer.

Good healthy pus is of the consistence and color of yellow cream; without smell or taste, and in general heavier than water, with which, at the common heat of the atmosphere, it will not unite, but at a higher temperature, readily combines with it. If the matter of the abscess is not evacuated it is absorbed and passes into the blood, and the cavity generally becomes filled up by an operation of the vessels, termed granulation, from the new parts appearing in the form of small red grains. The cavity also becomes filled in the same manner when the abscess is opened and the matter discharged in the usual way. When this process goes on favorably, the granulations are of a florid red color, and proceed in a regular manner until the abscess is completely filled up.

Sometimes the granulations are too exuberant, and form irregular shaped masses which project beyond the surface or lips of the sore, from which circumstance it is commonly called proud flesh, and when touched is easily excited to bleeding. We have, however, never met with proud flesh in an ulcer of any kind, treated agreeably to the foregoing directions; but should it occur, a strong decoction of the pond lily, with the addition of a little fine alum, may be applied as a wash; or burnt alum, finely pulverized, may be sprinkled on the part. The compound tincture of myrrh is highly recommended by some, to remove proud flesh.

When inflammation threatens to terminate in mortification, or if it has already taken place, the most active and efficient means should be adopted to check it immediately; for the treatment of which, see under the head of mortification.

---

### AGUE AND FEVER OR INTERMITTENT FEVER.

AGUE and Fever is a disease of very common occurrence in low marshy countries and situations, more especially in warm climates.

Systematic writers have adopted names for this complaint according to the season of the year at which it occurs. That which occurs in the spring, is termed vernal, and that in the fall, autumnal. Agues are also distinguished according to the periods between the fits. When they return within the space of twenty-four hours, they are called quotidians; when every other

day, they are called tertians; when every third day, they are termed quartans.

Agues are often obstinate to cure, especially in warm climates, where they frequently give rise to other chronic complaints, particularly dropsical swellings, and enlargements of the liver or spleen, termed ague cakes.

An intermittent fever may be produced by any circumstance which has a tendency to depress the living power; such as watery poor diet; great fatigue; long watching or doing without sleep; intemperance; grief; great anxiety; exposure to cold; lying in damp rooms or beds; wearing damp clothes; and breathing a vitiated or noxious atmosphere; which last is by far the most universal and common cause of this complaint.

Each paroxysm of an intermittent fever is divided into three different stages, which are called the cold, the hot, and the sweating stages or fits.

The cold stage commences with a feeling of languor; a sense of debility or weakness; an aversion to motion; frequent yawning and stretching, and an aversion to food. The face and extremities become pale; the features shrunk; the bulk of every external part is diminished, and the skin over the whole body appears constricted, as if cold had been applied to it. These symptoms continuing to increase, the patient becomes very cold and universal rigors or shivering comes on; the respiration or breathing is short, frequent and anxious; the urine is almost colorless; sensibility is greatly impaired; the pulse is small, frequent, and often irregular.

The continuance of this stage is extremely various, from a few minutes to several hours, when the second or hot stage comes on with a sense of heat over the whole body; redness of the face; dryness of the skin; increased thirst; pain in the head; throbbing in the temples; anxiety and restlessness; the respiration is now fuller and more free, but still frequent; the tongue is furred; and the pulse more regular, hard, and full; when, if the attack has been severe, delirium perhaps will come on.

After these symptoms have continued for some time, a moisture breaks out on the forehead and by degrees becomes a sweat, which finally extends over the whole surface of the body. As the sweating progresses, the heat abates, the thirst ceases, breathing becomes free and full, and most of the functions are restored to their ordinary state; the patient, however, is left in a weak and wearied condition. This constitutes the third stage, and completes the paroxysm of fever.

It may, however, be remembered, that many deviations from the ordinary course of intermittents often occur. The different stages bear very different proportions to each other in different

cases, both as to the time of their duration and severity. There is also a great diversity in intermittents with regard to the situation in which the patient is left, and in which he remains after the paroxysm or fit. In some cases the patient eats, drinks, sleeps, and feels well, between the fits; at other times, although there is a perfect remission of fever, he continues weak and feeble, without any appetite, and even a loathing of food, attended sometimes with a great prostration of the living power. The stools sometimes appear natural, sometimes loose or costive, and often, especially in hot weather, presenting a dark, or what is termed a bilious appearance. The tongue becomes furred of a white, yellow, brown, or black color, attended mostly by a bad taste in the mouth.

There are also many other symptoms, and modifications of symptoms, often present in intermittents, which give a peculiar character to the complaint, and some of them evincing that the disease is of a very malignant form. Some of these are long and violent fits or paroxysms, attended with much anxiety and delirium; and when to these are added, great prostration of strength, vertigo or dizziness, fœtid or strong scented stools, the presence of dysentery, or of cholera morbus, the case may be considered of the worst character. The reverse of these symptoms may, of course, be considered as evidence of a mild form of disease.

Different names have been applied to intermittent fevers, such as bilious fever, when there are symptoms of a redundancy of bile; lake fever; and in those cases where there is only a chill without any or but very little shivering, and the patient between the fits appears to suffer much decline of health, chill-fever or chill and fever has, in many parts of the country, become a very popular name. But if the paroxysm commences with a shivering or shaking, leaves the patient pretty clear of disease, with the appetite not much impaired, and the functions pretty natural, the name of ague is generally applied to the complaint.

**TREATMENT.**—If the complaint be of a mild form, and no other disease present, we may very safely commence the cure by giving a dose of the diaphoretic powders, three or four times a day, to promote the secretions and excretions, which will have a tendency to restore a healthy action to the different organs; also giving a dose of the stimulating or hot bitters three times a day previous to eating. At night a red hot brick or stone quenched in cold water, may be applied to the feet, wrapped first in a wet cloth and then in a dry one, giving at the same time, a dose of the lady's slipper with a fourth of a tea-spoonful of cayenne with it, to promote perspiration and strengthen the nervous system. If this treatment should not succeed after a

reasonable trial, a dose of the cathartic or of Bunnell's pills may be given to those who prefer them to an emetic; or the vapor bath may be resorted to, which, indeed, would be beneficial at the first.

After the operation of the pills, the same course may be pursued as first recommended, and continued until a cure is effected. Or should this course, or a repetition of the pills after a day or two, not afford relief, or should the symptoms become worse, no time should be lost in applying the vapor bath, administering an emetic, &c. according to the directions hereafter given. The ague pills may also be used, either after the purge or the course of medicine.

The butternut syrup, bitter root, or black root, may also be used to act upon the bowels, instead of the pills. But in all violent attacks, the vapor bath and emetic ought to be immediately resorted to, and thus cleanse and purify the whole system, and all the fluids, before the powers of life become much weakened or the tone of the organs impaired. This process ought to be repeated every day, every other day, or at longer intervals, according to the symptoms, until the complaint be removed. And as in many cases a recurrence of the paroxysms will take place, notwithstanding the best means have been used, it may be proper, a little previous to the time of the expected return of the fit, for the patient to sit before a warm fire, with a blanket around him, and drink freely of a strong decoction of the diaphoretic powders, or of a tea of bayberry or some other astringent article, made very hot with cayenne, to increase the living power, and promote perspiration. Or the patient may retire to bed and have a hot brick applied to the feet and side or back, and pursue the same course, in other respects, as if sitting by the fire.

It is customary with some to commence the operation of vapor bathing, and giving an emetic a short time preceding the expected return of a paroxysm of intermittent, which often answers the best purpose, by preventing every symptom of the fit. But it sometimes happens that notwithstanding all that can be done in this way, the paroxysm comes on, and then it becomes very fatiguing and unpleasant to the patient; yet the good effects of the operation are not thereby lost.

The process of vapor bathing may be often very profitably commenced when the hot stage is coming on, as perspiration is then much easier promoted than it is previous to or during the cold stage. But in all cases where the process of steaming or vapor bathing and giving an emetic, does not prevent the paroxysm, it is better to resort to it after the fit has gone entirely off, and so long previous to the commencement of the succeeding paroxysm that the patient will be entirely recovered from the fatigue necessarily attendant on the operation.



An emetic may often be advantageously administered without vapor bathing; but in all bad cases the whole process of steaming, vomiting, &c., is the grand dependence for effecting a cure. During the intervals between the steamings, the patient should take of the diaphoretic powders and bitters frequently during his waking hours; and if there be much pain in the head, with restlessness and anxiety, the head must be bathed in cold water or vinegar, and doses of the nerve powder occasionally administered as the circumstances of the patient may require. Drafts applied to the feet may also have a good effect to remove the pain in the head. These may be made by spreading the dregs of the tincture of myrrh on cloth, or by wilting cabbage or burdock leaves, and applying them to the feet. Endeavors ought also to be used by the application of hot bricks, and the administration of cayenne, to keep up a perspiration, which will have a tendency to allay the irritation and anxiety which often attend bad cases of intermittents. If an enlargement of the spleen or, as commonly styled, an ague cake occurs during an attack of this complaint, it will probably be cured by the same means employed to remove the fever. Should this, however, not be the case, the affected part may be freely rubbed with any kind of bathing drops and have a hot brick or stone applied near it when in bed, together with the continuance of the same general treatment recommended for the fever.

The inner bark of the white ash (*Fraxinus acuminata*) boiled in white wine, is highly recommended for ague cake in an old work entitled the "*Treasury of Easy Medicines*." It is quite probable, however, that a simple decoction of the bark in water would answer equally as well.

---

#### APOPLEXY.

APOPLEXY is characterised by a sudden diminution, or entire cessation of sense and voluntary motion, whilst the heart and lungs continue to perform their functions.

This complaint may be distinguished from palsy, by the difficult and loud breathing, profound sleep, and the entire suspension of voluntary motion; and when to these we add the absence of convulsions, it will be distinguished from epilepsy; and from intoxication, by the impossibility of arousing the patient by shouting or any other means, and in general by the breath not being tainted by the smell of spirits.

Apoplexy chiefly attacks individuals of advanced age; and it has been observed, that persons of a corpulent habit, and those having a short neck and large head, and who lead an inactive and sedentary life, or make use of full rich diet, are more liable to it than those of different habits.

This disease is generally supposed to arise from compression of the brain, caused by an effusion of either blood or serum ; which has given birth to the two distinctive names of serous and sanguineous apoplexy, each of which is preceded by a different set of symptoms.

Sanguineous apoplexy sometimes comes on with giddiness, dimness of sight, drowsiness, loss of memory, or faltering of the tongue ; but it more often happens that the person is taken and suddenly falls down ; the face becomes red and swelled ; the veins of the head appear full ; the eye-lids are half closed, and the eyes prominent and fixed ; the pulse generally full and strong ; and the breathing difficult and loud. Grinding of the teeth, and slight convulsive motions, have been observable in a few instances ; and if the fit continues for any considerable length of time, the pulse becomes weak, slow, and languid ; the breathing gradually grows shorter and shorter, and finally ceases in death.

In the serous apoplexy, the attack is usually more gradual : the face becomes pale and bloated, whilst the veins are depressed ; the pulse is small, weak, irregular, and intermittent ; breathing is impeded and loud ; and the extremities are cold. Occasionally these symptoms are preceded by giddiness, torpor, and impediment of speech, and failure of memory.

Cases of apoplexy occasionally occur, in which one side of the body is more affected than the other ; which are termed by medical writers, *hemiplegia*.

A patient laboring under an attack of apoplexy, sometimes lies motionless and senseless for several days, and then gradually but partially recovers. In these cases he generally suffers the loss, either partial or total, of the use of one side, as is the case in palsy ; and his mind usually sustains a shock from which it rarely recovers.

TREATMENT.—In tracing the annals of medicine, we find various and contradictory modes of treatment prescribed for this frequently fatal disease. Amongst the ancients, the use of warm cordials was in high reputation ; whilst physicians of the present day, disapprove of stimulating the system, and recommend bleeding. This practice, however, is to be regarded as of quite modern origin, as Dr. FOTHERGILL, and many others who were eminent in their profession, either disapprove of the practice altogether, or recommend it in very sparing terms. Emetics are generally disapproved of by practitioners of the present day, from fears of augmenting the quantity of blood in the vessels of the head, though some are found who prescribe them ; and, although writers generally regard them as dangerous, no instances have been recorded, that we have any knowledge of, in which they have proved injurious or fatal.

Whenever an individual is attacked with apoplexy, every thing should be removed from about the neck which may have any tendency to compress it and prevent a free return of blood from the head; and his body moreover should be placed in an erect posture with the feet hanging down. A laxative injection composed of the butternut syrup, castor oil, hogs' lard, or, in the absence of those articles, of warm water, with the fourth of a tea-spoonful of cayenne in them, should be administered as speedily as possible, and repeated at short intervals until the bowels are evacuated. Dr. BEACH very highly recommends immersing the feet and legs in warm lye water.

Whilst the foregoing operations are going forward, preparations should be making for steaming the patient, which ought to be attended to as soon as possible; and particular care must be taken to apply the steam or heat by some means to the feet and legs. If apoplexy is caused by an over determination of blood to the head, which seems to be the most common opinion, we know of no means by which it can be diverted therefrom so naturally, and with so much certainty, as by promoting a profuse perspiration, and particularly from the lower extremities.

In steaming, we may commence, if the patient is capable of swallowing, by giving a moderate dose of the diaphoretic powders, or of the cayenne; and then place him over the steam which should be moderate at first, and gradually increased as it can be borne, paying strict attention to every symptom of faintness, and often wetting the face and head with the coldest water that can be procured. If the patient be incapable of swallowing, a tea-spoonful of the anti-spasmodic tincture should be poured into the mouth.

After continuing the steam for ten, fifteen, or twenty, or even thirty minutes, if we have succeeded in restoring sense and motion, we may then give an emetic. When this is done operating, the patient should be again steamed, returned into bed, with hot bricks to keep up a perspiration, when a smart purge may be administered, which, with the bitters and diaphoretic powders continued for a few days, will probably effect a cure. But if it does not, the practitioner may pursue such a course, in accordance with the principles which we have laid down, as his best judgment may dictate; that is, the course of medicine must be repeated, and the bitters and diaphoretics continued.

---

#### ASTHMA.

ASTHMA is a spasmodic affection of the lungs, which generally comes on by paroxysms or fits, at night: though the patient



very frequently feels more or less of it through the day, with an increase of the symptoms at evening. It is attended with a frequent, difficult and short respiration, together with a peculiar wheezing, tightness across the breast, and a cough attended with such a peculiar crackling noise, (somewhat similar to the wheezing) that a person who has seen several patients with this complaint will readily recognize it.

When the disease is attended with an accumulation and discharge of humors from the lungs, it is called humid asthma: but when it is unattended by expectoration, it is known by the name of dry or spasmodic asthma.

An attack of asthma is preceded by low spirits, a sense of fullness about the stomach, with lassitude, drowsiness, and pain in the head. On the next evening the patient experiences a sense of tightness across the breast, and of straitness in the lungs, impeding respiration. The difficulty of breathing increases and is performed more slowly; the speech becomes difficult and uneasy; coughing succeeds, and the patient can no longer lie in bed, being, as it were, threatened with immediate suffocation.

Towards morning these symptoms suffer some abatement. The breathing becomes less laborious and more full, and speaking and coughing are performed with greater ease; and if an expectoration of mucus attends the cough, much relief is experienced and the patient falls asleep.

When he awakes he feels better, though not entirely relieved; but he cannot bear the least exertion without rendering all the symptoms worse. Nor can he lie in bed, but must either be bolstered up, or sit in a chair.

Towards evening the symptoms again grow worse, and continue to increase until they become as violent as on the preceding night.

After some nights passed in this way, the fits become more moderate, particularly when they are attended by a free expectoration of mucus from the lungs. At last the disease goes off and the patient is left in the enjoyment of his usual health.

Sometimes, however, the symptoms are all aggravated, and the fits continue to return for a much longer period, the patient not being able to lie in bed for weeks or months, and even years. At other times the symptoms are so mild as to subject the patient to but little inconvenience, and in children is usually called phthisic.

**TREATMENT.**—There are but two articles which, so far as our own experience goes, approach any where near to being specifics, or indeed that are very uniformly useful, in this complaint. These are the skunk cabbage and lobelia. The skunk cabbage, in doses of a half or whole tea-spoonful, repeated as occasion

may require, is very valuable in the asthma; and will often afford relief when other remedies appear to do little or no good. It acts both as an anti-spasmodic and expectorant, which gives it a double power over this complaint. The pulverized root or the fruit of skunk cabbage may be mixed in honey or molasses, or a syrup may be made of elecampane or any other articles useful to promote expectoration, and then the skunk cabbage added, as it ought to be taken in substance.

But the lobelia is the grand article to be relied upon for the alleviation or cure of this distressing malady. It may be given in half or whole tea-spoonful doses of the pulverized seeds, or leaves and pods, at bed time, or when the fits are coming on, and at any other time when the urgency of the symptoms appears to require it. A tincture of the lobelia given in half or whole tea-spoonful doses, is a more convenient as well as agreeable form of administering this remedy, and is, perhaps, equally efficacious. This preparation has cured many of the most inveterate cases of asthma.

Smoking the dried roots of the common henbane (*Datura Stramonium*) has been resorted to in many cases of asthma, with success. This remedy appears to act as an anti-spasmodic and expectorant. The smoke must be inhaled as much as possible into the lungs, where it usually occasions some degree of heat, followed by expectoration. It is said, however, that unpleasant consequences have followed its [improper] use, and it ought therefore to be used in moderation.

Burning in a close room, half a sheet of paper which has been saturated in a solution of salt-peter, and inhaling the smoke or fumes, is said to give perfect relief in this distressing malady.

Another remedy communicated from a respectable source, which proved successful in a case wherein even the lobelia failed, is the common mullein, (*verbascum thapsus*.) In this instance a strong tea was made of the bark of the root and sweetened to the consistence of syrup, of which four tea-spoonful were given a child as a dose, and frequently repeated, with complete success.

A course of medicine must also be resorted to if the other means recommended fail.

---

#### BITE OF MAD DOG.

THE bite of a mad dog produces a disease termed Hydrophobia, signifying a fear or dread of water, which is one of its most peculiar and characteristic symptoms.

Hydrophobia is a disease which it is believed arises spontaneously in dogs, cats, wolves, foxes, &c., but from what parti-

cular cause is unknown. When the complaint has once arisen, it is communicated, often to a great extent, from one animal to another, but spreads most rapidly amongst dogs, and is by them imparted to other animals.

This disease can only arise in the human species from contagion communicated by the bite of a mad animal; and it yet remains doubtful whether it can pass from one person to another; but prudence will certainly dictate that we should beware of exposing ourselves unnecessarily, as an experiment of MAGENDIE and BRESCHET, proved that dogs may take it by inoculation from the human subject.

It has been observed, that hydrophobia is quite uncommon in hot climates, being principally met with in those which are either temperate or cold.

When a dog becomes affected with madness or hydrophobia, he appears dull, seeks solitude, and endeavors to hide himself; seldom barking, but making a murmuring noise, and refusing food and drink. When strangers come in sight he will often fly at them; but he still knows and respects his master; his head and tail hang down, and he walks as if overpowered by sleep. A bite at this period, though dangerous, is not so apt to bring on the disease in the animal bitten, as it is at a later period of the complaint.

As the disease progresses, the dog begins to pant, and breathe quickly and heavily; his tongue hangs out, and his mouth is continually open, from which is discharged a large quantity of froth. Sometimes his movements are very slow, and at others he runs suddenly, but not always straight forward. At last he forgets his master; his eyes are dull, watery, and red; he becomes very thin or poor, and weak; he often falls down, and gets up, attempting to fly at other animals, especially dogs, and becomes quite furious. The most miserable, dejected, and gloomy looking animal which we have ever beheld was a dog under confinement in the last stages of this terrible and fatal malady.

All the foregoing symptoms at length become aggravated; the dog staggers about, for he can scarcely be said to walk, and at length the living power being exhausted, he dies, generally on the fourth or fifth day succeeding the attack or first symptoms of the disease.

The length of time which intervenes between the bite of a mad animal and the commencement of the hydrophobic symptoms is various; but in dogs it is generally from five to fifteen days; whilst in the human species it varies from one to six weeks, and even as many months. Instances are also recorded in which the patient was seized after the lapse of several years.

The symptoms of hydrophobia, in man, commence in general, with slight pains in the part which had been bitten, though it may be long after the wound was healed and apparently sound; sometimes an itching is felt, but commonly the pain appears like rheumatism. If the wound have been in any of the extremities, the limb sometimes becomes numb or stiff; the old sear or cicatrix looks either red or livid; often opening afresh, and oozing forth a little colored matter. Then come on wandering pains, with a melancholy from which scarcely any thing can rouse him; with uneasiness, heaviness, disturbed sleep, and frightful dreams, accompanied with great restlessness, sudden startings, spasms, sighing, anxiety, and love of solitude. These symptoms continuing to increase, pains shoot from the place where the wound was, up to the throat, about which, as well as the chest, a stiffness and painful constriction are felt; the breathing becomes difficult, with a sensation of choaking; and a horror and dread of water, and other liquids. Bright colors, a strong light, acute sounds, particularly the noise of water pouring from one vessel into another, and even a simple agitation of the air by a movement of the curtains, greatly disturb the patient, and often bring on a paroxysm of general convulsion, or otherwise greatly aggravate the painful symptoms. He is tormented with thirst, but dares not drink; the sight or even the idea of water often making him shudder. His eyes are haggard, glassy, fixed, and turgid with blood; his mouth is filled with a sticky saliva, in which lurks the hydrophobic poison, and he is constantly endeavoring to hawk it up, and spits it out in every direction; often desiring those around him to stand aside, as if conscious that he might injure them. If he attempt to drink, the moment the water or other fluid is brought in contact with his lips, he starts back with dread and horror, although he may be suffering at the same time with great thirst. The restlessness is extreme, and if the patient attempt to lie down and compose himself, he instantly starts up again, with wild unutterable anguish depicted in his countenance; and in some instances there is a great struggling, with raving, and furious madness; but the living power is soon exhausted, and death, as a welcome friend, comes to relieve the unfortunate sufferer.

**TREATMENT.**—When we take a survey of the empirical, the contradictory, the extravagant, and the pernicious means which have been used or recommended in the treatment of this terrible malady, we are forcibly driven to the reflection that the popular practice of medicine, as taught in the schools, was nothing more than a chaos of confusion—a tissue of error, and of dangerous unprofitable experiment; for of all the various and contradictory modes of treatment, recommended by different authors, whether of stimulating or depleting, of relaxing or exciting, of burning



or cutting, of warm bathing or cold bathing, nothing as yet is known to the *learned authors* of medicine, which can be relied upon as a certain cure. As Dr. GOOD observes, "our curative practice is still unfortunately all afloat, and we have neither helm to steer by, nor compass to direct our course. There is, indeed," continues he, "no disease for which so many remedies have been devised, and none in which the mortifying character of vanity of vanities has been so strikingly written upon all of them."

A new era has, however, taken place in the annals of medical science; the practice of medicine has become established upon new and correct principles; the means of cure have been investigated and improved; whilst at the same time, the powers of the physician to control disease have become augmented and multiplied. There is good reason to believe that the lobelia inflata will be found a certain remedy for this terrific disease, as the few trials which have been made with it, give strong proofs of its powers, and high promise of its future usefulness.

We are well aware that the medical Faculty scout at the idea of a cure for hydrophobia, as they also do at all other improvements of the healing art which do not originate with themselves. This is virtually denying that the people have any right to investigate this subject, or to administer or receive any thing as medicine but what they sanction, or what passes through their hands. But light and knowledge, with giant strides, are marching through the world, and if the physicians *will not* seize and appropriate to usefulness, the gifts of nature, the people will do it themselves. And it is high time the practice of medicine was taken out of the hands of the boasting, selfish, dominant professors of this most important art, and restored to those to whom it rightfully appertains, and who are principally to be benefited by it.

If the lobelia had so often been tested by fashionable physicians, in the cure of hydrophobia, as it has been by the people, its fame would have been spread from sea to sea, and its echoes would have penetrated the deepest recesses of every civilized land. But the origin of this remedy is too humble; its adoption would eclipse the already waning glory of scientific and professional fame. It must therefore be despised and rejected; yes, the most valuable gift of Nature's God is neglected, because the honor of a vaunting, vain-glorious profession may be tarnished by the acknowledgment of its virtues.

The first account which we ever had of the lobelia was, that it would cure the hydrophobia; and, although we were incredulous, we certainly should have been willing to give it a trial from a conviction that no hazard could arise by deviating from a

mode of treatment which had never proved successful. But there have been several cases of this complaint in different parts of the country, successfully treated with the lobelia, one of which will be found detailed in the appendix to this volume.

Immediately after receiving the bite of a dog supposed to be mad, the wound should be well washed with the strongest tincture of lobelia; and if the teeth of the dog have any of them penetrated deeply into the flesh, the tincture should be forcibly thrown in with a small syringe, in order that it may reach the bottom of the wound. This washing should be often repeated until the sore is healed. At the same time we would recommend the largest doses which the patient would bear without vomiting, of the same tincture, given three times a day, for several days; or, what should be preferred, a thorough course of medicine every other day, and the tincture to be taken on the days which intervene between the courses. It will be advisable to repeat the course of medicine three or four, and perhaps six or eight times, in this way, and the tincture should be continued for a few days longer. Bitters should also be taken several times a day, during the continuance of the tincture, and perhaps for a short time thereafter.

The scull-cap has also been highly recommended, both as a preventative and cure of the hydrophobia, though it has fallen of late years very much into disrepute. Whether its character has failed in consequence of the feebleness of its powers, or from prejudices unjustly raised against it, we cannot say. It would seem from the account which is given of it by *RAFINESQUE*, that it contains many powerful chymical principles, which evince active properties. We must confess, however, that we should by far, give a preference to the lobelia, because its sensible effects upon the body so much exceed those of the scull-cap; but we, at the same time, most cordially coincide in the sentiment of the author just quoted, that "we have so few presumed remedies for this dreadful disease, and it is so desirable to confirm the properties of those supposed available, that it is needful to encourage, rather than to discourage, every attempt to throw light on the subject."—[*Flora of the United States*, vol. II. page 85.]

But if, notwithstanding the treatment, symptoms of hydrophobia make their appearance, we must have recourse to large and repeated doses of the anti-spasmodic tincture, on which we should principally rely. The nervine tincture which we have recommended, must also be freely used in large doses, which, with the anti-spasmodic tincture, will be the principal dependence in relieving the spasms. Courses of medicine must also be frequently resorted to, in which a free use may be made of the pulverized seeds of lobelia to produce vomiting and profuse perspiration; or instead of

these, we may use the anti-spasmodic tincture to produce the same effects. This course must be rigorously persevered in, paying no other regard to the quantity of lobelia administered than to be sure to give enough to produce the desired effect. If enough is not administered to overcome the spasms, but little good will be done. And in order to do this more effectually, injections, with from two to four tea-spoonsful of the lobelia, or anti-spasmodic tincture, will be highly advantageous, and should be used the more freely, and be the oftener repeated, if the difficulty of swallowing should increase.

An infallible remedy is said to have been lately discovered in France, by Dr. Buisson, who himself was afflicted with this awful malady and went into a *vapor bath* heated to 126 degrees of Fahrenheit's thermometer, thinking it the easiest mode of suffocation. To his astonishment, however, the whole symptoms vanished at once, and he never after had the slightest recurrence of them. Dr. Buisson, in the communication of this case to the Academy of Sciences at Paris, says that by the same means he had cured upwards of eighty patients of hydrophobia, and intended to try it in cholera, plague, yellow fever and gout. The vapor bath ought to be used in conjunction with the lobelia.

Much light may also be had upon this subject by a perusal of the case detailed in the appendix, to which the reader is referred.

---

### BLEEDING FROM THE NOSE.

IN the nose there is a net work composed of blood-vessels expanded on the internal surface of the nostrils, and covered only with a thin tegument or skin; hence upon any determination of a greater quantity of blood than usual to the vessels of the head, those of the nose are more easily ruptured. And hence also, any kind of violence about the nose is apt to rupture these vessels and produce a discharge of blood from the nostrils. In general, the blood flows only from one nostril; but sometimes it is discharged from both.

Persons of a sanguine and plethoric habit, and not yet advanced to manhood, are most liable to hemorrhage from the nose; females being less subject to it than males.—Peculiar weakness of the vessels of the part, and the decline of life, may be regarded as predisposing causes. Great heat, violent exertion, external violence, particular postures of the body, and every thing that determines the blood to the head, may be considered as exciting causes of bleeding at the nose.

It comes on at times, without any previous warning; but at others, it is preceded by pain and heaviness in the head, dizzi-



ness, ringing in the ears, flushing of the face, heat and itching in the nostrils, a throbbing of the temporal arteries, and quickness of the pulse.

Bleeding at the nose, in general, may be considered as of little consequence, when occurring in young persons; but when it arises in those more advanced in life, flows profusely, and returns frequently, it indicates too great a fulness of the vessels of the head, and not unfrequently precedes palsy, apoplexy, &c., and is, therefore, in such cases, to be regarded as indicating dangerous consequences. And when it arises in the course of any putrid complaint, it is to be viewed as a fatal symptom.

Bleeding from the nose often proves salutary in some cases, such as dizziness, headache, &c.; and critical in others, such as phrensy, apoplexy, and inflammatory fever, when there is a determination of too great a quantity of blood to the head; and we ought, therefore, to consider at the time it happens, whether it is likely to prove injurious or beneficial. And if it appear likely to remove any unpleasant symptom, or relieve any complaint, it may be suffered to go on, so long as it does not appear to weaken the patient. Nor need it be suddenly checked, when it happens to persons in good health, especially if they are of a full plethoric habit. But when it arises in elderly persons, or returns too frequently, or continues till the patient becomes weak or faint, no time ought to be lost in attempting to put a stop to it.

**TREATMENT.**—A snuff made of the leaves of witch hazle, and inhaled into the nose, will, in most cases, stop the bleeding. Wetting the face, head, and temples, at the same time with cold water, will assist the effects of the hazle. A tea of the hazle with the addition of cayenne, will also be beneficial, taken internally; to which may likewise be added the common beth root, either in tea or substance, or it may be taken alone, in a larger quantity. Bathing, fomenting, or steaming the lower extremities, will, by facilitating the circulation through them, draw the blood from the head, and thereby have a tendency to promote the operation of other remedies.

The powder of charecoal, is highly recommended as a styptic, in hemorrhages from the nose. It may be used as snuff, or it may be applied by means of tents, first moistened with water, then rolled in this powder, and introduced into the nostril. Probably the witch hazle might be advantageously used in the same manner.

When there is reason to believe that the bleeding is caused by a determination of blood to the head, or by any peculiar weakness of the vessels of the nose, and the means already prescribed do not check the hemorrhage, the patient ought to be taken through a course of medicine.

After this process is completed, the extremities ought to be

kept warm, and the whole surface moist, until the danger of a recurrence of bleeding appears to be over; or if it does return, the same process may be repeated as often as necessary; using, during the intervals, any or all of the other means which have been recommended.

---

### BLEEDING FROM THE LUNGS.

THIS complaint is usually called spitting blood, and consists in a discharge of blood of a florid red color, and often frothy, from the mouth, brought up by more or less of coughing or hawking, and usually preceded by a saltish taste in the mouth, a sense of weight about the breast, difficult breathing, and a pain in some part of the breast.

This disease is readily to be distinguished from bleeding at the stomach, as in this last, the blood is vomited up, usually in considerable quantities, and is moreover of a darker color, and frequently mixed with other contents of the stomach; whilst blood proceeding from the lungs, is usually in small quantity, of a florid color, mixed with a little frothy mucus, and is brought up by coughing.

A spitting of blood may be caused by any violent exertion, as running, jumping, wrestling, singing, loud speaking, or blowing on wind instruments; and likewise by wounds, inflammation of the lungs, weakness of its vessels, hard coughing, &c.

Bleeding at the lungs is not, however, always to be regarded as a primary affection, but is often a symptom attendant upon some other complaint. In pleurisy, inflammation of the lungs, and many fevers, a slight spitting of blood may be regarded as the presage of a favorable termination.

This complaint is sometimes preceded by a sense of weight and oppression at the chest, a dry tickling cough, some slight difficulty of breathing, and a hard, jerking pulse. At other times it is ushered in with shiverings, coldness of the extremities, pains in the back and loins, flatulency, costiveness, and lassitude. The blood which is spit up is usually thin and florid; but sometimes it is thick and of a dark cast, owing to its having lain some time in the lungs before it was discharged.

Spitting blood is not to be considered as a dangerous complaint when there are no symptoms of consumption present; or where it leaves behind no cough, difficulty of breathing, or other troublesome affection of the lungs: nor is it dangerous in a strong healthy person of a sound constitution, unless the hemorrhage is very great: but when it attacks persons of a weak lax fiber, and delicate habit, it may be dangerous and difficult to cure.

TREATMENT.—The removal of this complaint is to be at-  
Vol. II.—C

tempted, if mild, by taking freely of the diaphoretic powders, and at the same time using other necessary means to promote perspiration. If there be any considerable cough, the expectorant powder may also be given to promote expectoration. A tea of the witch hazle, or beth root, may also be freely used, to each dose of which may be added from half to a whole tea-spoonful of capsicum, and repeated according to the urgency of the symptoms.

After persevering in this manner for a reasonable time, if the symptoms do not abate, a regular course of the vapor bath and the emetic ought to be resorted to, and repeated as the urgency of the case may require. After the course, the diaphoretic powders, hazle or beth root tea, and cayenne, to which may be added the bitter tonic, must be continued at longer or shorter intervals, according to the urgency of the symptoms, until the patient is out of danger.

---

#### BLEEDING FROM THE STOMACH.

This complaint is usually denominated vomiting of blood, and is commonly preceded by a sense of weight, pain, or anxiety, in the region of the stomach. The blood is usually discharged in considerable quantity, of a dark color, and often mixed with the other contents of the stomach. It will readily be distinguished from a spitting of blood, by attending to the description of that complaint.

This disease may be occasioned by any thing received into the stomach which stimulates it violently or wounds it; or it may proceed from blows, bruises, or any other cause capable of exciting inflammation in the stomach, or determining too great a flow of blood to it; it often arises spontaneously without any apparent cause, and sometimes occurs as a symptom of some other disease.

Towards the close of malignant scarlet, and putrid fevers, and other disorders of a malignant or putrid nature, where symptoms of putrescency prevail in a high degree, a hemorrhage from the stomach is very apt to occur.

Vomiting blood is seldom so profuse as to destroy the patient suddenly. The principal danger seems to arise, either from the great debility which repeated attacks of the complaint induce, or from the lodgment of blood in the intestines which, by becoming putrid, may occasion some other fatal complaint.

TREATMENT.—This disorder may, in general, be treated the same as bleeding from the lungs. Charcoal, in table-spoonful doses, repeated as circumstances seem to require, will

be found a useful auxiliary to the other means. It will operate as a styptic to check the bleeding, as a laxative to cleanse the intestines, and as an anti-septic to prevent the putridity of the blood in the bowels. A strong decoction of yellow dock root in sweet milk, taken in doses of a gill three times a day, and a pill of white pine turpentine once a day, is recommended, by Dr. J. WILLIAMS, as infallible in this complaint. Common salt, in small doses, will also very frequently check it.

Patients recovering from this disease, ought to use a nutritious diet of easy digestion, and abstain from all violent or long continued exertion, to prevent relapses, which are liable to occur.

---

### BLOODY URINE.

THIS disease is sometimes occasioned either by falls, blows, bruises, or some violent exertion, such as hard riding, and jumping; but it often takes place in consequence of a small stone being lodged either in the *ureter* or kidney, which, by its size, or irregularity, wounds the inner surface of the part it comes in contact with; in which last case, the blood discharged is most usually somewhat clotted, and deposits a sediment of a dark brown color, resembling coffee grounds.

A discharge of blood by urine, when proceeding from the kidney or ureter, is commonly attended with an acute pain and sense of weight in the back, and some difficulty in making water; the urine which comes away first being muddy and high colored, but towards the close of its flowing becoming transparent, and of a natural appearance. When the blood proceeds immediately from the bladder, it is usually accompanied with a sense of heat and pain in the lower part of the belly.

This complaint is distinguished from the high colored red urine attendant upon many diseases, by the deposit of clotted blood at the bottom of the vessel, and by its staining linen of a red color.

The voiding of bloody urine is always to be regarded as a dangerous malady, particularly when mixed with purulent matter. When it arises in the course of any malignant disease, it is regarded as indicating a highly putrid state of the blood, and is always succeeded by a fatal termination.

**TREATMENT.**—If the complaint has arisen as a consequence of some external injury, such as a fall or blow, a process of the vapor bath, and the emetic, ought immediately to be resorted to, which, if it do not stop it, should be followed by the use of the witch hazle, beth root, or other astringents, and the process again repeated as often as necessary until the cure is completed.



When, from the symptoms, there is reason to suspect that the complaint proceeds from a stone lodged in the kidney, ureter, or bladder, the patient ought to drink freely of some mucilaginous drink, such as thick barley water, a tea of marsh mallows, or elm bark, any or all of which may be sweetened with honey. Injections of the same may also be administered; and to allay irritation, the nervine powders, or ladies' slipper, ought to be freely used.

A decoction of peach leaves, drank so as not to produce much purging, is a very useful remedy in this complaint. In case the leaves cannot be procured, the bark may be used, and in one bad case in which we tried it, answered every purpose that the leaves could have done. The bark or leaves ought always to be resorted to in cases of this kind.

---

#### BRUISES.

UNDER this head we include all injuries from blows and falls which are of so serious a character as to require medical aid.

**TREATMENT.**—If the injury be not severe the part may be bathed with either salt and vinegar, tincture of myrrh, or bathing drops; or bruised tansy or wormwood, moistened with spirits or vinegar, may be applied to it, until relief is obtained.

But if the bruise be more severe, internal remedies must be resorted to, such as the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne pepper; and arrangements should be immediately made for applying the vapor bath, or perspiration may be promoted in any other manner. If there be much pain in the part, the application of cold water, either in a stream or by laying on wet cloths, should be resorted to.

Bleeding ought by no means to be attempted, as its tendency would be to reduce the vital power, and thereby increase the danger arising from extremely bad bruises. Promoting a profuse perspiration by the vapor bath, which may be kept up by the application of hot bricks or rocks, and occasional doses of cayenne, or the diaphoretic powders, is the only rational method of restoring the injured vessels of the bruised part to a healthy action, and preventing ulceration and mortification.

If the health of an individual meeting with an accident of this kind should be poor, an emetic and thorough course of medicine ought to be administered, especially if the bruise be a severe one.

---

#### BURNS AND SCALDS.

CASES of this kind are often occurring, particularly amongst children; and as they create excruciating pain, it is of the ut-

most importance to apply a remedy immediately. Happily, the best remedy, and the one that affords the most speedy and grateful relief, is commonly at hand or very readily obtained.

Plunging the injured part instantly into cold water, or, if this be inconvenient on account of the injury being on the head or body, applying a cloth wetted with cold water, will afford instantaneous relief; and if applied at the instant, will prevent blistering, which is often so considerable, as to cause a tedious ulcer.

During the application of the cold water, the patient ought to take occasionally a dose of cayenne or of the diaphoretic powder, to prevent the cold application from doing an injury. If one of the extremities be burnt or scalded, the part may be immersed in cold water, occasionally withdrawing it, and again returning it when it smart. But when it is inconvenient to immerse the part in water, a cloth folded several times, made wet with cold water, and applied to the part, will answer the purpose. As the cloth becomes warm and the injured part smart, cold water may be poured on it, or a fresh cloth applied, and continued until the smarting has ceased.

If this plan has not been adopted in season to prevent blistering and a sore or ulcer arises in consequence of it, the slippery elm poultice may be applied after the smarting has ceased, and continued until the inflammation is out, when it should be dressed with salve until well.

An ointment made by mixing one part spirits turpentine and two parts sweet oil is also an excellent application for burns or scalds, usually giving speedy relief. This ointment is likewise said to be useful applied to ulcers which succeed burns. Raw cotton has also been highly recommended for the same purpose; and likewise sprinkling the burnt surface with flour.

In very bad burns or scalds near the vital parts, as on the breast or stomach, the patient ought to be taken through a course of the vapor bath and emetic, after the smarting has been checked with the cold water, or by any other means, and in all respects, treated as in any other bad case of disease.

---

## CANCER.

A CANCER is an ulcer of the very worst kind, with an uneven surface, and ragged, painful edges generally spreading rapidly, discharging a thin acrimonious matter that exoriates the skin around the sore, and has a very fœtid smell.

A cancer is usually preceded by a hard, or what is technically termed a scirrus, swelling of the part, especially if it be seated in a gland, such as the female breast, the glands of the

arm pit, &c. And it is to the glands that cancers are mostly confined; though they are sometimes met with in the uterus, as likewise on the face, and other parts that are thinly covered with flesh, and which are at the same time a good deal exposed to external irritation, such as the lower lip, the angles of the eyes, the organs of vision, the middle cartilage of the nose, the tongue, and penis.

Cancer usually begins with a small swelling in the gland, or if it be seated in some other part, as the face, hand, &c., with a small swelling that sometimes resembles a wart or pimple, unaccompanied by pain or any discoloration of the part. It gradually increases in size and hardness, and, sooner or later, is attended with darting, twinging, or lancinating pains, as if pricked with a sharp instrument, and with swellings of the veins, and an uneasy painful sensation in the vicinity of the part. Sometimes it remains in this state for a length of time, even for years; but at other times it proceeds on to suppuration with great rapidity, and forms an ulcer. Its progress will, however, depend much on the state of the person's health, constitution, and other like causes.

During the stage of cancer of which we have just been speaking, the pains recur at very irregular intervals, sometimes longer, and sometimes shorter. This irregular recurrence of the pains which invariably attends a true cancerous affection, depends upon causes which, as yet, remain unknown. If the cancer be seated in the female breast, and the woman be of such an age that the menstrual flux has not ceased, she will commonly suffer a considerable increase of the painful symptoms at each return of this evacuation. The tumor will also during this period probably increase in size, in a ratio proportioned with the increased violence of the other symptoms.

As the disease advances, it is very common, when the breast is the seat of cancer, for one or more of the axillary\* glands on the same side of the body, to become enlarged.

When the disease approaches near the surface, the skin, which hitherto retained its natural appearance, begins to look puckered, or as if drawn together in folds. From this cause, if its seat be the female breast, the nipple will be sometimes so retracted or sunk, that its existence might be overlooked by a superficial observer.

When the disease advances further, the skin becomes inseparably united to the tumor, and in a little time longer, it assumes a slight degree of redness, with other symptoms of inflammation. After a while the whole surface of the diseased part puts on a purple shining appearance, and in this state continues with

---

\* From axilla, the arm pit.



but little change until ulceration is about taking place ; when all the symptoms become much worse, and induce a feverish action in the blood.

At length it breaks out into an ulcer, and the violent symptoms experience a temporary abatement from the discharge of a small quantity of thin corrosive matter. In a short time the ulcer penetrates deeply into the central part of the tumor, whilst the edges appear hard and elevated. The surrounding skin assumes a livid appearance, and from the surface of the sore there is now a considerable discharge of an irritating corrosive matter, which excoriates, or as it were, scalds the skin around the sore, and is, at the same time, of a peculiar and highly offensive smell. Matter of a true purulent, or healthy appearance, is scarcely ever discharged from a cancerous sore.

If the ulceration be extensive, it will be observed that while one part of the sore is undergoing the ordinary sloughing process, another will be found active in producing luxuriant granulations of a loose spongy nature. These different appearances or changes, sometimes alternate with each other, and in their further progress give rise to considerable hemorrhages from the erosion of the blood vessels.

At length, from the morbid derangement which is occasioned in the functions of the lungs, when the cancer is seated in the breast, there gradually comes on a difficulty of breathing, attended with a cough, and some degree of emaciation, which symptoms are usually followed, at no great distance, by a fatal termination.

Cancers in other parts of the body, usually appear first in the form of a small bluish colored pimple, attended by twinging pains, which is succeeded by a train of symptoms quite similar to those which have just been described as taking place in the female breast.

**TREATMENT.**—The moment any kind of tumor makes its appearance, with evident symptoms of cancer, no time should be lost in adopting the most efficient means of restoring a healthy tone to the system if the general health be impaired, and promoting the absorption of the tumor before it breaks forth into an ulcer.

To restore the general health, the common course of medicine ought to be resorted to, and repeated as circumstances require, using between the courses, a tea of pipsisway, wild lettuce, narrow dock root ; and probably the sassafras will be useful together with the bitter tonic and the diaphoretic powders. The cancer balsam, recommended by Dr. THOMSON, may also be applied externally over the tumor, and renewed as it becomes necessary. The juice of the root of the narrow leafed dock, dried in the sun to the consistency of wax, may also be spread on paper;

and applied to the part, and is said to have performed some remarkable cures.

But if, after doing all that has been recommended, the tumor breaks out into an ulcer, or if it be in this state when medical aid is first called, we must not abandon the patient as being in a situation of utter hopelessness. The course of medicine should be resorted to, together with the use of the bitter tonic, diaphoretic powders, dock root, pipsisway, &c., as being the best means of changing the cancerous habit or tendency of the fluids, and promoting a healthy vigorous action in all parts of the system.

Dr. THOMSON remarks, that in one case he applied a poultice of butternut shucks, to dissolve the cancerous tumor, and seemed likely to accomplish his object, when his hopes were blasted by the death of his patient in consequence of a fever.

If the ulcer be much inflamed, the common poultice may be applied, wetting it occasionally with cold water or a tea of some of the astringent articles. At each dressing, or renewal of the poultice, wash first with mild soap suds, and then with a tea of pipsisway, wild lettuce, dock root, or some of the astringent articles. When the inflammation has abated, apply the salve, or if the tumor be not dissolved, the cancer balsam will probably be better, which ought to be continued until the cancerous tumor is entirely gone.

An ointment or salve, made by boiling the common wood or sheep sorrel in hogs' lard, has been known to have a very decided influence on cancerous ulcers of the very worst kind. Or the juice dried in the sun, and applied, spread on a piece of bladder or paper, will be more powerful, and is highly recommended. The juice of the dock root, prepared in the same manner, has also been found beneficial, in numerous cases.

In case a cure of cancer is attempted before it has broken out into an ulcer, it is recommended by some to penetrate the skin to the hard diseased part, by the application of a caustic, made by boiling, for some time, the best wood ashes, or what has been more highly recommended, the ashes of black ash bark; then settle and pour off the clear lye, and boil it down to the consistence of thick tar; to this, it is recommended to add a little spirits in which camphor has been dissolved, or a little honey. This caustic is to be spread on a piece of cloth, of a size proportioned to that of, but less than the cancer, and applied to it. If it becomes too painful it may be taken off for a short time and again replaced; and if necessary the plaster may be renewed.

When a sufficient opening has thus been made, the wood-sorrel salve may be applied, and renewed night and morning until the cancerous tumor can be separated and removed from

the sound parts. The application of this salve or plaster causes the cancerous tumor to turn black, and in some instances produces severe pain. If it becomes too severe, the plaster may be left off at night and in place thereof apply the common healing salve or any other mild application. As a wash, to be used at all times, when the ulcer is dressed, equal parts of prickly ash bark or of zanthoxylon, bayberry, and golden seal, steeped strong, may be advantageously employed.

In a disease so obstinate and painful, and at the same time so difficult to cure as cancer, we feel ourselves justified in drawing upon every source which offers any thing likely to remove the complaint, or even only to mitigate its symptoms. With these views we make the following quotations from a late work, by ELISHA SMITH, "President of the New York Association of Botanic Physicians:"

"If the cancer has become open, and ulceration commenced, apply *cat-skins*, newly stripped off and warm; or the flesh of fresh killed chickens. These will extract the fever and acrimonious poison astonishingly, and become in the course of two or three hours, perfectly rotten and corrupted with it. They should then be changed for a fresh application. This method should be continued till the poison and life of the cancer, is extracted, when the whole substance of the tumor will become a dead mass, and may be taken out with ease, and without pain. If it is not convenient to obtain the skins or flesh to apply continually, they may be alternated with poultices of charcoal and yeast, which also extracts putridity. The flesh of any animal is good, but I consider cat-skins, or chickens, preferable.

"Angle-worms, or fish worms, as they are called, are not inferior to either of the above applications; they should be laid on alive, and remain till they become dead and putrid, when they should be changed. Snails, also, answer the same purpose. Many other animals, particularly frogs and toads, draw powerfully when placed on a cancer, and may be used when more convenient. These remedies may not appear very scientific, or fashionable, but in a disease as stubborn as this, we should not be delicate about the means, if we can only save life.

"Few things contribute more to the healing of foul sordid ulcers of any kind, than keeping them thoroughly clean. This ought never to be neglected. The best application for this purpose seems to be the carrot poultice. The root of the common carrot may be grated and moistened with as much water as will bring it to the consistence of a poultice. This must be applied to the sore, and renewed twice a day. It generally cleans the sore, eases the pain, and takes away the disagreeable smell, which are objects of no small importance in such a dreadful disorder. The charcoal and yeast poultice has the same effect. In

every species of open cancer, the air should be excluded as much as possible.

"No benefit can be expected from any medicine in this disease, unless it be persisted in for a long time. It is of too obstinate a nature to be soon removed, and a radical cure must be brought about by inducing an almost total change of habit, which must always be a work of time. From four months to a year, or even more may be requisite to perform a substantial cure; and the patient must make up his mind, as he values his life, to persevere steadily in a course of cleansing medicines till a cure is effected, let it take what time it will. Many discouraging symptoms and unpleasant sensations may arise in the progress of the cure, and they may even appear quite alarming at times, but they generally pass off in a little time, and should not be allowed to impair our confidence in a final cure.

"Among the medicines found useful in eradicating cancer, are: yellow dock root, in decoction, for a daily drink; and also applied externally as a poultice. Also poke or coke root, in decoction and poultice. A salve composed of the expressed juice of sorrel, poke leaves or berries, and yellow dock dried away in the sun, has been highly recommended."

Since the publication of the first and second editions of this work, a new article, discovered by Dr. REICHENBACK, of Germany, has been recommended for cancer. The name given to this medicine is *kreosot*, and is extracted from tar and smoke. It is also highly recommended for wounds and sores in general, and in surgical operations as a preventative of inflammation and the most powerful styptic known. Recently it has been said that soot from the chimney was equally valuable as the *kreosot*.

---

### CARBUNCLES.

DIFFERENT descriptions have been given of carbuncles, by writers; though all agree that they are a large, painful, burning tumor, much inclined to mortification, and difficult to cure. It most frequently happens, however, that they commence with the formation of a hard substance in some fleshy part, often in the back or thigh, with a violent throbbing pain and burning heat. They frequently occur with old persons, or follow putrid fevers; though they often appear without any previous disease.

A carbuncle frequently commences with a small pimple, similar in its appearance and progress to a common boil, rising a little above the skin, and commonly contains a bloody water. At first the tumor is of a red color, with a spongy appearance, and as it advances, it becomes black and even putrid.



**TREATMENT.**—It is recommended to puncture or open the tumor freely, and press out the contents, when the elm and ginger poultice should be applied, and renewed once in twelve or twenty-four hours. At each renewal of the poultice the ulcer must be washed with a tea of wild lettuce, zanthoxylon, or bayberry, and then with a tea of cayenne, or tincture of myrrh, or both conjoined. This last application is necessary to promote suppuration, that the head or core may be loosened and taken out.

Internally cayenne pepper, bitter tonic, diaphoretic powders and tincture of myrrh, may be freely taken four or five times a day or oftener as the symptoms may be, to guard against mortification. If mortification, however, should threaten or actually occur, a course of medicine must be immediately resorted to, and repeated as often as necessary until the bad symptoms abate; continuing also the other internal remedies. A poultice should likewise be made of sassafras bark or of smart weed bruised fine, boiled and thickened with corn meal, and applied to the part, or a yeast and charcoal poultice may be used instead of it, to prevent mortification. Fomentations of the smart weed bruised and boiled and applied hot, are also highly recommended to prevent mortification.

---

### CHICKEN POX.

THIS disease, like the measles, small pox, and some other eruptive diseases, depends upon what is termed a specific contagion, and affects the same person but once.

The eruption is sometimes preceded by chilliness, which is succeeded by flushings of the face, and heat, pains in the head and back, thirst, restlessness, and a quick pulse; whilst at other times no such symptoms are perceptible. About the second or third day the pustules or pimples, become filled with a watery fluid, which is never converted into yellow matter, as in the small pox; and about the fifth day, they usually dry away, and are formed into crusts or scabs.

**TREATMENT.**—It is not considered that any danger ever attends this complaint. But should the fever run high, the common means for promoting perspiration should be used, such as bathing or soaking the feet in warm water before a hot fire, and drinking some warm teas, or taking the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne.

If this does not remove the difficulty and render the patient more comfortable, a general course of medicine should be resorted to, and if necessary, repeated. The like treatment will also be proper for the swine pox, which is only a species of the chicken pox.

## CHOLERA MORBUS OR VOMITING AND PURGING.

FREQUENT and violent vomiting and purging of bilious matter, constitute cholera morbus.

In warm climates it occurs at all seasons, and is very frequent; but in cold climates, it prevails most frequently in autumn when there is excessive heat, or sudden transitions from heat to cold; and the violence of the disease has usually been observed to be greater in proportion to the intenseness of the heat.

Cholera morbus usually comes on with nausea, soreness, pain, distention, and wind, in the stomach, and acute griping pains in the bowels; which symptoms are soon succeeded by a severe and frequent vomiting and purging of bilious matter, attended by heat, thirst, hurried breathing, and a frequent but weak and fluttering pulse.

When the disease is not violent, these symptoms, after continuing for a while, gradually cease, leaving the patient in a debilitated and exhausted state: but when it proceeds with much violence, and there arises great depression of strength with cold clammy sweats, much anxiety, a hurried and short respiration, cramps in the legs, coldness of the extremities, and hiccups, with sinking and irregularity of the pulse, the disease will, in general, quickly terminate in death; an event that not unfrequently takes place within twenty-four hours from the commencement of the attack.

Cholera morbus may be distinguished from diarrhœa and dysentery, by the matter which is discharged being pure bile, unmixed with blood or mucus, and with but very little mixture of natural fœces. From other complaints of the bowels, it may, in general, be distinguished by the evacuations being both upward and downward at the same time.

TREATMENT.—Mild attacks of this disease may often be removed by a few doses of brandy, or of Dr. Thomson's No. 6, or the tincture of myrrh. As this complaint frequently arises from a sourness of the stomach, draughts of pearlash water, or of white lye, will commonly, if administered at the commencement of the disease, remove the difficulty. Alkaline draughts ought often to be given in all cases of this disease. Pulverized chalk, in table-spoonful doses, is said to be a certain remedy in cholera morbus.

The cholera syrup, in doses of a table-spoonful, every thirty minutes, may be regarded as an invaluable medicine in this disease.

The diaphoretic powders, ought also to be freely given, at the same time bathing the patient's feet in warm water, before the fire, if able to sit up for that purpose. Flannel cloths wrung out

of warm water, may be applied to the region of the stomach, and renewed as they become cool ; or the stomach may be bathed with tincture of cayenne or any other stimulating wash, or both may be done at discretion. Injections of a tea of some astringent article, with the addition of one or two teaspoons full of the tincture of myrrh, should often be administered ; or they may be made of slippery elm, and used alternately with the others. The nervine tincture should also be freely used, in one or two tea-spoonful doses.

But in more violent attacks, or where the means just recommended fail of producing the desired effect, a regular course of medicine ought immediately to be resorted to, as delays in this complaint are to be regarded as highly dangerous. After the evacuations are stopped or relieved, care must be taken that a relapse does not take place. The patient should take of the bitter tonic, diaphoretic powders, cayenne, or cholera syrup, several times a day, until he is out of danger.

Mint tea, or the anti-emetic compound, are also good auxiliaries to check the vomiting in this as well as all other complaints attended with vomiting. But in case the stomach is so extremely irritable that nothing can be retained long enough to produce any sensible effect upon it, an emetic should be administered by injection ; which may be done by putting from three to five teaspoons full of a strong tincture or tea of lobelia into a tea cup full of warm water, pennyroyal or bayberry tea, without any cayenne, and throwing it into the intestines with a syringe, which must be repeated at intervals of from ten to twenty minutes until the stomach is sensibly affected by it.

In the American practice we find the following very highly recommended :—Take of the best Turkey rhubarb, bruised or pulverized, half a dram, saëaratis or pearl-ash half a dram, peppermint plant half a dram ; grind all together in a mortar, and put the powder into a tea cup, with loaf sugar enough to sweeten ; then add half a pint of boiling water, and when cold, two table spoons full of brandy. Dose, two table spoons full every half hour, or as often as vomiting and purging takes place. The effects of this medicine, says Dr. BEACH, are truly surprising, it being seldom that a patient will vomit up more than one dose of it.

---

### COLIC.

COLIC is a painful distention of the whole of the lower region of the belly or abdomen, with a kind of twisting around the navel, often attended by vomiting, costiveness, and a spasmodic contraction of the muscles of the abdomen.

This complaint is produced by various causes, such as crude  
Vol. II.—D

or indigestible food, a redundancy of bile, costiveness, colds, worms, poisons, hysterics, &c. Colic has received different names according to attending circumstances, as flatulent or wind colic, bilious, hysteric, &c.

Colic may be distinguished from inflammation of the intestines by the spasmodic contraction of the muscles of the belly; by the trifling degree, or total absence of fever; and by the diminution or lessening of the pain by pressure upon the bowels.

In flatulent or wind colic, there is costiveness, attended with pain, soreness, and griping of the bowels, distention of the stomach, an inclination to vomit and belch wind, with coldness of the extremities.

In bilious colic there is loss of appetite, bitter taste in the mouth, with thirst and some fever; costiveness and vomiting of bilious matter, with an acute pain about the navel; and as the disease advances, the vomiting becomes more frequent, and the pain more lasting. The dry belly-ache seems to be only a slight modification of bilious colic, and is attended by very similar symptoms.

In the hysteric colic there is sickness of stomach accompanied with severe spasms, costiveness, and dejection of spirits.

When the pain attendant upon colic, remits or abates, or shifts its situation, not being obstinately confined to one place, and when the patient experiences considerable relief by a discharge of wind, or by a stool, we may expect a favorable termination: but the sudden cessation of pain, after the disease has been of some hours or days duration, with the continuance of obstinate costiveness, cold sweats, a weak tremulous pulse, frequent fainting, and hickups, denote a fatal termination.

**TREATMENT.**—Most cases of colic may commonly be removed by the essence of peppermint, anise, or any other aromatic or warming vegetable; by a hot sling, raw spirits; by the diaphoretic powders, ginger tea, capsicum, or by any of the astringent articles which may be found in our materia medica. Dogwood blossoms are likewise recommended by many, in this complaint. Injections may also be very advantageously added to the use of any of the above means; and in bad cases they are indispensably necessary. The application of a hot board, or of cloths wrung out of hot water, or friction and bathing the bowels with any hot stimulating wash, are also useful auxiliaries or assistants to the means recommended, and may be resorted to if necessary.

But if these means fail, or if the attack should be violent, the patient should be taken through the common course of medicine; which must be repeated, as the circumstances of the case appear to require. After, or between the courses, the patient should take the bitter tonic three or four times a day to strength-



en the tone of the intestines; and if the costiveness continues, the injections should be repeated at proper intervals, until the bowels become regular. The diaphoretic powders, or capsicum, should also be given, to promote perspiration and stimulate the bowels, which may likewise be bathed with tincture of myrrh or pepper and vinegar.

Care should be taken in all bad cases of colic, of whatever kind, to open the bowels by the frequent use of laxative injections, as directed for the treatment of costiveness. This is peculiarly necessary in bilious colic, and what is termed the dry belly-ache.

---

### CONSUMPTION.

**PULMONARY** consumption, as the disease under consideration is technically termed, is accompanied by general emaciation, pain in the side or chest, some difficulty of breathing, especially after walking or speaking, and a cough, which usually proves most troublesome during the latter part of the night or in the morning. In its advanced stages, an expectoration or spitting of purulent matter, with hectic fever and diarrhœa, ensue.

Consumption seldom occurs before mature age; and is oftener met with in the haunts of gaiety, fashion, and folly, than in those walks of life, where comfort is allowed to predominate over vanity and pride. Women are said to be more subject to it than men, as well from their going more thinly clad, as from the greater delicacy of their organization.

The circumstances which predispose to consumption are numerous; the following are the most common:—Particular formation of the body, indicated by prominent shoulders, long neck, and narrow chest; hereditary predisposition, derived from parents; certain diseases, such as inflammation of or bleeding from the lungs; scrofula, small pox and measles; particular employments, in which the individual is exposed to dust, as needle pointers, stone cutters, &c., or to the fumes of metals, as chimists, &c.; playing much on wind instruments; great evacuations from the body; continuing to suckle too long under a debilitated state; the use of mercury or arsenic as medicine; the application of cold to the body, either by changing the apparel from a thick to a thin dress, or by keeping on wet clothes, lying in damp beds, or in any way giving a considerable check to perspiration; and by tight lacing, or wearing corsets.

Consumption, we conceive to be, in its first stages, a local disease, confined to the lungs; but as it progresses, its effects become more general. It is simply an ulcer in the lungs, and may arise from two different conditions of these organs; either

inflammation, or what are termed tubercles, which are small tumors having the appearance of hardened glands, of different sizes, and often existing in clusters. Their firmness is usually in proportion to their size, internally of a white color, and in consistence approaching a cartilage. Consumptions arising from tubercles are more difficult of cure than those arising from ordinary inflammation of the lungs.

This disease when proceeding from the latter cause, commonly begins with a short, dry, hacking cough, though nothing is spit up for some time but a frothy mucus that seems to come from the fauces or back part of the mouth. The breathing is at the same time impeded, and upon the least exertion is much hurried. A sense of oppression at the chest comes on; and leanness or emaciation takes place, with languor and indolence, dejection of spirits, and loss of appetite.

This state is sometimes of short duration, but frequently it continues a considerable time; during which, however, the patient is more readily affected by slight colds; and finally, perhaps from a bad cold, the cough becomes more troublesome and severe, particularly by night. At length, along with the cough an expectoration or raising of matter from the lungs takes place, which is most free and copious during the latter part of the night and in the morning. By degrees the matter which is expectorated becomes more viscid or sticky and opaque, assuming a greenish color and purulent appearance, and is often streaked with blood.

The breathing at length appears more difficult, and the weakness and emaciation increase. The patient becomes sensible of a pain in some part of the chest or breast, which is more particularly distinguishable on coughing. The pulse is now full, hard, and frequent; the face flushes, particularly after eating; the palms of the hands and soles of the feet are affected with burning heat; the breathing is difficult and laborious; fever becomes obvious at evening, which by degrees assumes what is termed the hectic form.

At the commencement of the hectic symptoms the bowels are usually in a costive state; but as the disease advances, a diarrhœa or looseness comes on, and the fever is succeeded by profuse sweats.

There is almost from the first, a peculiar countenance, and hollow tone of voice; but at this stage of the complaint they are much increased, insomuch that an observing person who has seen several consumptive patients, would, from these symptoms alone, readily suspect the disease.

The patient now has the appearance of a walking skeleton, his flesh being so much wasted; his countenance is often ghastly; his cheek bones are prominent; his eyes look hollow and

languid; his hair sometimes falls off; his nails turn of a livid or blue color, and are incurvated; whilst his feet and ancles become swelled. To the end, the senses commonly remain perfect, and the mind is full of confidence and hope. It is indeed a happy circumstance for persons afflicted with consumption, that they are seldom apprehensive of any danger; and it is no uncommon thing to meet with patients in its most advanced stages, flattering themselves with the idea of a speedy recovery, and forming distant projects under that delusive hope.

The extremities now are cold; a clammy sweat breaks out on the body; the pulse becomes imperceptible; the tide of life ebbs apace, and death closes the scene!

Such is the but too common history of the means by which the last enemy of mortal man accomplishes his object. Consumption has always been a most fatal disease, and of late years has become a far more common one than it was at more remote periods. The cause of this fatal increase has given rise to various speculations both in Europe and America, some attributing it to one thing and some to another. But those who attribute it mainly to the pernicious fashions and customs of the day, in our opinion, are highest being correct. These may be summed up in a few words—thin dress, with almost naked bosom, so common with females; corsets with tight lacing; evening parties, and balls; late hours, and lying long in bed.

These pernicious, and manytimes destructively fatal customs, have too often been uselessly opposed and condemned, in the most eloquent strains of piety and reason, for us to think of staying their mighty and disastrous march, by the utterance of our warning voice.

“While the empire of fashion,” says Dr. GUNN, “bears so arbitrary a sway, and the followers of pleasure are bound by the fascination of example, and the contagious influence of that spirit which insinuates itself into the bosom of each and every one of its votaries, so long will the sage precepts of wisdom be unheeded, till the emaciated form, the glassy eye, the hectic blush, speak in language too strong for utterance,” that disease has sapped the foundation of life, “and the yawning grave stands ready to receive its devoted victim.”

**TREATMENT.**—A radical cure of consumption has so long been considered impossible, that we are fearful of hazarding the imputation of enthusiasts or of dealers in the marvelous, should we assert any thing to the contrary. But we are constrained to declare our belief, that many cases of this most fatal malady may be cured, in almost any stage but the last, by pursuing a judicious course with the use of proper means.

Many cases approaching a consumption may be removed by the use of the expectorant powders, with the bitter tonic or

diaphoretic powders, or both. The bitter tonic must be taken three or four times through the day, in tea-spoonful doses; and the expectorant and diaphoretic powders, in similar doses, at night. The tincture of lobelia, in nauseating (sickening) doses, commonly from half to a whole tea-spoonful is sufficient, or the root of the skunk cabbage in half to whole tea-spoonful doses, in some instances of affections of the lungs, appear to have a better effect than the expectorant powders; and cases which do not seem to be much benefited by one, may perhaps be by another, and, therefore, either may be used at discretion.

But the best way of attacking this formidable disease is with repeated courses of medicine. These should be administered, if an attempt at cure is made in the latter stages, every day, perhaps, for a while, or every other day, until the most urgent symptoms are subdued, when they may be longer neglected according to the circumstances of the case. But the strictest and most unremitting attention must be paid to relapses; and if they occur the patient should immediately submit to a full course of the medicine and steaming, as nothing else will effectually check his downward march to the grave.

The lungs are never completely at rest, but are always in use, day and night, asleep or awake; and are consequently exposed continually to the irritation of their own action and to the influence of the atmosphere, both of which circumstances are known to retard the cure of ulcers situated upon the external parts of the body; and we think it fair to infer that like causes will produce like effects in the lungs. In case of an ulcer upon the arm or leg, these organs can be kept in a state of rest, and poultices or salves may be applied, whereby the healing process will be vastly accelerated; but no such helping means can be applied to the lungs. Medicines can only affect them by restoring a general healthy action to the whole system.

Hence we might very naturally infer, what is an absolute fact, that consumption is a complaint more difficult to cure, as well as more liable to relapse, than almost any other. It therefore requires the strictest measures in its treatment, and the most guarded watchfulness against relapses.

The moment a relapse is discovered, a thorough process of the medicine should be gone into, however averse to it the patient may feel; as the neglect of it might be his destruction, whilst its prompt administration may be the means of prolonging life. And as this disease is more difficult of cure than most others, so relapses are attended with a corresponding danger; and even in curable cases the too long neglect of them will be productive of fatal consequences. No physician ought to attempt the cure of a consumptive case without being so situated as to be able to give his daily personal attention to it.



During the intervals between the courses of medicine, the patient should have frequent doses of such articles as the bitter tonic or the diaphoretic powders, and at night a dose of the expectorant powders, tincture of lobelia, or powder of skunk cabbage root. Or these medicines may be alternated with either the tonic cordial or expectorant syrup, sometimes using one and sometimes another. It will be a matter of the highest importance in this complaint, to keep the system regularly and constantly under the influence of some of the remedies which we have recommended; and to administer a course of medicine as often as may be necessary to keep the patient in a state of convalescence, that is, in a state of improving health.

Traveling in a mild and healthy climate will have a very salutary influence over consumptive patients; but they ought, by all means, to avoid any exposure to wet and cold, as well as the confined pestilential air of large towns or cities. Every situation and circumstance should be carefully avoided which has a tendency to obstruct the breathing, or to increase the circulation of the blood beyond a healthy standard. The confined air of a city has an oppressive influence upon the breathing of a person in good health; and any one accustomed to the country air, if he be not sensible, during his stay in town, of an oppression of the chest, will certainly find his breathing more easy on getting into the free air of the country: with the consumptive patient the effects of confined air are far more sensible and highly injurious.

Immoderate exercise, as it increases the breathing and circulation of the blood, ought by all means to be avoided, whilst gentle daily exercise either in a carriage or, particularly, on horseback, will prove highly beneficial. A voyage at sea has long been regarded as amongst the best means of curing a consumption, and by those whose circumstances will permit, may advantageously be undertaken. Another circumstance, essentially necessary to be attended to, is the wearing of such apparel as the inclemencies of the season may require. Flannel next the skin in winter ought never to be neglected; whilst the outer garments, both in winter and summer, should correspond with the temperature of the weather.

---

### CONVULSIONS OR FITS.

SYSTEMATIC writers treat of this complaint under the appellation of tetanus or cramp. It is a most terrible disease, whether we regard its painful effects upon the system, or the difficulty which has hitherto attended its cure.

Fits are often caused by exposure to cold, sleeping in the open air and on damp ground, by the presence of irritating sub-

stances in the stomach or intestines, such as worms ; or by some irritation of the nerves produced by local injuries, such as running nails into the feet, incisions or cuts with edge tools, and lacerated wounds.

Some persons appear to be naturally predisposed to fits, which occur on the application of causes which with persons who are not subject to this complaint do not produce them, such as hard labor, overstraining, &c.

With females who are subject to fits, they often occur about the periods of the monthly turns, more especially if they happen to take cold at this time.

Convulsions or fits, come on, in some instances, with great violence ; but it commonly happens that the symptoms manifest themselves more slowly, first by a slight stiffness about the shoulders or in the back part of the neck, which gradually increases until the patient cannot turn his head without turning his whole body.

An uneasy sensation is now sometimes felt at the root of the tongue, together with some difficulty of swallowing, and stiffness of the jaws. A pain is next felt in the stomach, darting at times towards the *ensiform* cartilage, (extremity of the breast bone,) and thence shooting to the back ; and all the previous symptoms are increased. The jaws perhaps now become set, and if the cramp extends no further, the complaint is termed lock-jaw.

The *pathognomonic* or characteristic symptom of common convulsion fits, is the spasm under the breast bone, which increases with great vehemence and rapidity. The muscles of the back part of the body contract, and forcibly draw the body backward. The jaws now are set or violently convulsed ; the tongue is also affected by spasm, and being convulsively darted out of the mouth, is often much injured by the teeth being suddenly and forcibly snapped together, which ought to be prevented by holding a spoon handle covered with rags, a piece of soft wood, or some other substance between the teeth.

The spasms are, however, not uniform in their severity ; but increase at intervals of different lengths from a few seconds to many minutes. But even in the intervals, the spasmodic action prevails so that it is often difficult for the limbs to be bent in any thing like an easy position. The breathing is quick and laborious ; the face sometimes pale, but oftener flushed ; the whole countenance evinces the most marked signs of deep distress ; swallowing is accompanied with great difficulty, or is totally interrupted ; the senses sometimes remain entire, but are often annihilated, whilst every organ of the system is literally on the rack, from the antagonizing action of the muscles. DESPORTES gives a case, says Dr. GOOD, in which both the thigh bones

were broken by the violent contraction of the flexor muscles during a momentary relaxation of the extensors.

The exertions are now so laborious that the patient sweats profusely; the pulse is small and irregular; the heart throbs so violently that its palpitations may be seen; the eyes are sometimes watery and languid, but more commonly rigid and immovable in their sockets; the countenance becomes hideously distorted and expresses great distress; the strength is exhausted; the pulse is very irregular; and one universal spasm at length puts a period to a most miserable state of existence. Sometimes the muscles of the fore part of the body are equally affected with those of the back, when the patient, instead of being drawn backward, is rigidly extended in a straight line, and rendered incapable of being bent in any direction. The arms, also, in this case become violently affected, and are rigidly extended, as well as the body.

There is one thing a little extraordinary in this complaint, which we have not found recorded by any author. It often happens that persons who are subject to fits, when they feel the premonitory symptoms of this complaint, also feel a disposition to retire to some sequestered spot where they may endure the agonies of this painful disease alone. Individuals who are subject to fits ought to be narrowly watched whenever any suspicion is entertained that they are threatened with an attack, as instances have often occurred of persons leaving the house and family, and suffering the horrors of this dreadful malady, without any person to render that care which they so much need.

**TREATMENT.**—Those who are liable to this complaint should be careful to avoid all the exciting causes which produce it; and as preventives, tonic remedies, such as the diaphoretic powders, or bitter tonic, to which the vapor and cold bath will be powerful auxiliaries, may be resorted to. When the patient feels symptoms of the fits coming on, he ought immediately to take a large spoonful of nervine tincture, the good effects of which may be increased by the addition of a fourth to a half, or even a whole tea-spoonful of capsicum, which should be repeated as the symptoms may require. But this ought to be administered at the onset of the first symptoms, and if it should not very soon afford relief, or if the symptoms increase, immediate recourse should be had to the anti-spasmodic tincture, in doses of from a tea to a table-spoonful, repeated as often as the circumstances of the case may require. Whilst this is doing, however, preparations should be making to take the patient through a course of medicine; not forgetting to administer injections, which are highly important in this disease.

Bathing the parts about the pit of the stomach with cayenne and vinegar or brandy, or the anti-spasmodic tincture, we think

might be productive of much benefit to a person in a fit; or even before convulsions occur, as a preventive.

We have the fullest confidence, however, in asserting our belief in the curative powers of the anti-spasmodic tincture, taken internally, in ordinary cases of fits; though it may sometimes fail. In such instances the only alternative is a course of medicine, which ought to be repeated as often as the case may require, until the general health is so far restored that the vital organs are capable of resisting the causes which produce the disease. Between the courses of medicine, the common means of keeping up a healthy action, and restoring tone to the system, should be used, such as the bitter tonic, diaphoretic powders, together with the nervine compound two or three times a day, in tea-spoonful doses, to strengthen the nervous system.

If the general health has become impaired from the recurrence of the fits, or from any other cause, every means should be used to improve the health, not only by the use of tonics, as just stated, but by general courses of medicine, repeated at proper intervals; and, in the mean time, if symptoms of convulsions occur, they should be treated as we have heretofore stated.

We have known one case of convulsion fits, of thirty years standing, cured by the use of those means which we have recommended; the patient not having had one attack since the first dose of medicine was administered at the commencement of the convulsive symptoms, in a threatened attack, which it effectually checked. The medicines administered in this instance were simply a dose of the diaphoretic powders, followed by the tincture of lobelia or its pulverized seed.

---

## CORNES.

THESE are hard, horny excrescences or tumors, growing about the joints of the toes, and sometimes, though seldom, on the sides of the feet. They are caused by pressure upon the affected part from small shoes; being exceedingly sore and painful as well as difficult to cure.

TREATMENT.—Dr. THOMSON recommends that the foot be bathed or soaked in warm water until the corn becomes soft, when it should be shaved down thin; though not, we will add, so as to produce pain or bleeding. Then take a narrow strip of bladder or suet skin, eight or ten inches long, rub it until soft; then plunge it into rattle snake's oil or nerve ointment, and wrap it around the toe that has the corn, on which it must be kept until the bladder is worn out. "If this does not cure, repeat the same until the corn is removed."

Instead of the rattle snake's oil or the nerve ointment, some



recommend opedeldoc, balsam of fir, or simply raw cotton. Others advise weak lye to immerse the feet in, previous to paring down the corns, "after which apply a plaster of the extract of Prince's pine, or fresh blood root pounded, or Seneca oil." But no application will be likely to avail much unless the shoes are roomy; by which precaution these painful companions might generally be avoided.

---

### COSTIVENESS.

COSTIVENESS of the bowels seldom occurs unconnected with some other disorder of the stomach or liver, or both. It is almost always attendant upon indigestion or dyspepsy, in which complaint, as in all others in which it is apt to occur, it is a troublesome symptom.

Sedentary persons are peculiarly liable to this complaint, especially those who are of what is termed a sanguineous and choleric temperament; and such as are subject to hypochondriac affections.

Costiveness is frequently occasioned by neglecting the usual time of going to stool, which has a tendency to check this salutary excretion. It may also be caused by habitual copious sweating; or by eating improper food; by the occasional or habitual taking of opium, and by the use of wine.

The common effects of costiveness are sickness of the stomach, want of appetite, flatulency or wind in the stomach and intestines, headache, some degree of fever, general dullness, and melancholy or dejection of spirits.

TREATMENT.—When constipation of the bowels depends upon some other disease, as dyspepsy, or an affection of the liver, attention must be paid to these complaints, whilst the costiveness should be attempted to be obviated by a diet of ripe fruits and vegetables, which have a tendency to loosen the bowels. The bitter tonic, with the addition of a portion of the bitter or the black root, should be taken three or four times in a day, or oftener, which will not only relax, but give tone to the intestines; and in all obstinate cases, injections of warm water with the addition of the fourth of a tea-spoonful of capsicum, or of some laxative preparation, should often be given.

Cases of extreme obstinacy of this complaint occasionally occur with persons otherwise in good health, but more often in bilious colic. In these cases injections strongly impregnated with the extract or syrup of butternut, should be frequently given; or a decoction of the bark or boughs of the butternut may be made by boiling either a short time in soft water, or any other, if soft cannot be readily procured. These should be

repeated perseveringly until relief is obtained. Some instances have occurred in which it was found necessary to remove the hardened feces by mechanical means, such as introducing the finger into the *rectum* or fundament, or using a surgical instrument termed a scoup; but no necessity for such an indelicate operation as this would, in our opinion, ever occur, if the use of injections were timely resorted to.

It is a very common custom with persons who are subject to costiveness, to resort to the use of purgative medicines; but this is a practice of most injurious tendency. The use of every purgative medicine, says Dr. THOMAS, creates a necessity for its repetition, and by its repetition the bowels lose their energy. Purgatives act by stimulating the intestines with greater force than their natural contents do, which lessens their excitability or capacity of being excited, and hence the necessity of following one purge by another, and another, &c. In short, the use of purgative medicines has a tendency in all cases to weaken the tone of the intestines, but more particularly so in cases of costiveness. The cause of this difficulty is a loss of tone; and the true indication of cure is the use of such articles as have a tendency to restore a healthy tone to the intestines. This indication can best be answered by the use of the bitter tonic, combined with a small portion of either the bitter or black root, which is at the same time mildly laxative and powerfully tonic.

Along with these means should also be used, and especially if the case be attended by sickness of the stomach, vomiting, or fever, the vapor bath, including the whole course of medicine; which should be repeated as often as the circumstances of the case may require. Bathing the bowels with pepper and vinegar, or with the bathing drops, will be found very serviceable; or a paper may be wetted in the tincture of myrrh, or in vinegar, and sprinkled with cayenne, and applied over the region of the bowels. Brisk frictions upon the abdomen are considered of great utility, and may be resorted to, in addition to the means above prescribed.

Common charcoal has also been highly recommended in constipation of the bowels. It may be taken in tea or table spoonful, or even larger doses, according to the exigencies of the case, mixed with molasses; repeating it as often as may appear necessary.

Persons who are habitually subject to this complaint, should, at regular hours every day, solicit an evacuation; and by all means attend, immediately, to every inclination of going to stool, whenever it may arise. The daily use of a quantity of bran, as will be found more particularly treated upon hereafter, will be highly serviceable, and likewise brown bread.

## CROUP.

CROUP is an inflammatory affection of the mucous membrane of the trachea or wind pipe, and in some instances extends to the lungs.

Children are peculiarly liable to this complaint, which is accompanied by a peculiar wheezing sonorous breathing, compared by some to the crowing of a cock, and a similar sound in coughing or speaking, with thirst, fever, and great difficulty of respiration.

The application of cold (catching cold) seems to be the general cause which produces this complaint, and therefore it occurs more frequently in the winter and spring, when the weather is cold and variable, than in the other seasons. It has been said to be most prevalent near the sea coast, where the air is loaded with moisture; but it is often met with in inland situations, particularly those which are low and marshy. It is more frequently to be found in cold than in warm climates.

A day or two previous to an attack of croup, the child appears drowsy, inactive, and fretful; the eyes are somewhat suffused and heavy, and there is a cough, that, from the first, has a peculiar shrill sound; which, in the course of a day or two, becomes more violent and troublesome as well as more shrill. Every fit of coughing agitates the patient very much, from the pain and difficulty attending it; the face is flushed and swelled; the eyes are protuberant, that is, stand out of the head; a general tremor takes place, and a convulsive endeavor to renew the breathing at the close of each fit of coughing.

As the disease advances, the difficulty of breathing increases, accompanied by a swelling and inflammation of the palate and adjacent parts, and the head is often thrown back in the agony of attempting to escape suffocation.

There is not only an unusual and peculiar sound produced by the cough, but breathing is performed with a hissing noise, as if the wind pipe were closed up by some light spongy substance through which the air was obliged to force its way. The cough is generally dry; but if any thing is spit up, it has either a purulent appearance, or seems to consist of films resembling portions of membrane. Sickness of the stomach and vomiting sometimes prevail. There is also much thirst and an uneasy sense of heat over the whole body, a continual inclination to change from place to place, with great restlessness and frequency of the pulse.

In a more advanced stage of the disease, breathing becomes more harsh and difficult, with some degree of spasmodic affection; the intervals between the inspirations become longer, and

finally death comes as a friend, to relieve the little sufferer from its agonizing torture.

The croup must be regarded as a dangerous complaint, and sometimes terminates its career in a few hours ; or, from being only a slight disease, its symptoms become suddenly and unexpectedly aggravated, and it very soon puts a period to existence. Parents should be extremely careful when their children have any of the common symptoms of croup, especially if they are subject to the complaint, not to leave them, particularly at night, without the attention of some person capable of extending the proper care to them, in case the symptoms should suddenly augment. Instances have occurred, in which children have been lost for the want of timely attention, in consequence of the absence of parents. Nor is there any cause to doubt that many cases of children being found dead in bed, have been caused by croup.

**TREATMENT.**—In bad cases, or violent attacks of croup, the child should have from half to a whole tea-spoonful of the tincture of lobelia given to it, and repeated at intervals until relief is obtained. A tea-spoonful of the diaphoretic powders should also be steeped in a tea cup two thirds full of boiling water, made very sweet ; of which a large spoonful, with the addition of some cream if the child be very young, should be also occasionally administered ; at the same time keeping it warm to promote perspiration. If the use of these means, together with injections, does not afford the desired relief, a course of medicine must be resorted to, which will rarely fail of removing the most urgent symptoms, and commonly effects a cure. But if this should not relieve the complaint, doses of the tincture, diaphoretic powders, &c., should be repeated until relief is obtained ; or, if necessary, another course of medicine may be resorted to, at the discretion of the parent or physician. The tincture of lobelia, however, will almost always relieve this distressing and often fatal complaint. In violent cases, enough must be given to produce vomiting. And, says Dr. THOMSON, "If the saturated spiritous tincture of lobelia does not readily produce copious vomiting, to throw off the tough viscid phlegm that occasions the troublesome and dangerous obstruction, immediate recourse should be had to the infusion of the emetic herb in warm water, or to the expressed juice of the green plant when it can be obtained."

Mild cases of croup may commonly be removed by the onion syrup ; or by butter, vinegar, and honey steeped together, and by many other articles which are good for coughs or colds. A tea of Seneca snake root is also highly recommended ; but, by some, it is considered as being poisonous, though others think it not ; it should, therefore, be used cautiously, if used at all.



The roots of the common mullen, (*Verbascum thapsus*) steeped in a strong tea, sweetened, and given in frequent doses, is said to be a good remedy in croup.

---

## DEAFNESS.

DEAFNESS is occasioned by any thing that proves injurious to the ear, as loud noises from the firing of cannon, violent colds particularly affecting the head, inflammation or ulceration of the membranes of the ear, hard wax, or other substance interrupting the sound; too great dryness or too much moisture in the ear; or by any circumstance which may weaken or injure the auditory nerve, by which we mean the nerve which communicates the impression of sound to the brain. In some instances it is caused by other diseases, such as fever, syphilis, &c., and in others it depends upon an original defect in the structure of the ear. In the last instance, the person is born deaf, and, of course, is likewise dumb.

It is often difficult to remove deafness, but more especially where it arises in consequence of wounds, ulcers, or inflammations of the tympanum or drum of the ear. Where it proceeds from a defect in the structure of the ear it admits of no cure.

When deafness is occasioned by hard wax sticking in the ear, a little thin oil may be dropped into it, evening and morning; or it may be syringed with mild soap suds, or warm milk and water, to which the application of the oil may also be added after each washing; keeping the ear stopped with cotton or wool. If these means do not remove the wax, a little of the tincture of myrrh, or the anti-spasmodic tincture may be dropped into the ear.

When deafness is caused by cold particularly affecting the head, the head should be carefully kept warm by night; the good effects of which will be increased by taking a dose of the diaphoretic powders, and sitting by the fire, previous to going to bed. Indeed, from whatever cause the deafness may originate, it will be proper to keep the head warm.

If deafness be owing to too much moisture in the ear, it should be syringed out with a decoction of some of the astringent articles, first used warm, to cleanse the ear, and then cold, to brace and strengthen its internal parts.

Should deafness, however, be caused by too great a dryness of the ear, by defective energy in the auditory nerve, by debility of the organs, or by a nervous affection, the application of equal parts of the tincture of myrrh and tincture of lobelia will be the main dependence. The administration of a few doses of the nervine tincture, might be useful; and if the complaint

resist those remedies the occasional application of a few drops of the antispasmodic tincture may perhaps be resorted to, with advantage. We have also known deafness to be much relieved by repeated courses of medicine, which had been prescribed for the cure of other complaints; and, therefore, a few courses might be tried, if nothing else appeared likely to succeed.

We will close our account of the treatment of deafness, by describing the method of using tobacco smoke, which, says Dr. THOMAS, has been employed in some cases of severe and long continued deafness, with great success and efficacy:

“The mode of using it is to fill the mouth with the smoke of the strongest tobacco, instantly closing the mouth and nose, and then for the person to make all possible effort, as if he meant to force the smoke through his nose, which must be prevented by holding the nostrils very tight: this forces the smoke through the *Eustachian* tube into the ear. These efforts are to be repeated until one or both ears give a seeming crack, immediately on which the hearing returns.”

This process is simple and cheap, and probably without hazard; and, therefore, may be tried by any one who chooses to do so.

---

## DIABETES.

THIS complaint is characterized by a free and often profuse discharge of urine, of a violet smell and sweet taste; with great thirst and general debility.

Diabetes may be occasioned by the use of strong diuretic medicines, intemperance in drinking, severe evacuations, immoderate use of acid drinks, excessive labor, or any circumstance which produces general debility. Hence, persons of shattered constitutions, and who are in the decline of life, are most subject to its attacks. It has, however, taken place, in many instances, without any apparent cause.

The common attendant symptoms of this disease are, weariness, sense of weakness, disinclination to motion or exertion, dryness and harshness of the skin, costiveness, great thirst, voracious or greedy appetite, with gradual emaciation of the whole body.

The immediate affection of the body which gives rise to diabetes, has long been a subject of controversy amongst medical men; but the conclusion which Dr. GOOD seems to arrive at, is, “that diabetes is a disease seated in the kidneys alone, and dependent upon a peculiar irritability or inflammation of these organs.”

An increased flow of the urine may, however, occur, without

those distinctive characteristics given in the first paragraph ; but as the treatment in either case is so very similar, we do not deem it necessary to make a separate subject of it.

TREATMENT.—We may attempt the cure of this inveterate complaint, by the use of the ladies' slipper, in doses of one tea-spoonful of the pulverized root three or four times a day ; or if the nervine tincture is preferred, this may be given in doses of two or three tea-spoons full, the same number of times. The diaphoretic powders must also be administered occasionally ; or a tea of the bayberry, or some other astringent article may be substituted. The bitter tonic should also be taken regularly three or four times a day ; and the whole surface of the body may be sponged or washed once a day, with a weak solution of pearlash in water, to moisten and relax the skin. The diet should consist of a large proportion of animal food, as this affords less sugar than vegetable aliment, and at the same time yields more nourishment to the feeble powers of the system. Though it is said, that an animal diet, in some instances, has aggravated the disease.

An acquaintance of ours, in whom we have the utmost confidence, informed us that he had often prescribed the *water-agrimony*, in diabetes ; and in every case it had effected a cure. Another recommends a strong tea of sumach leaves as an excellent remedy in this disease.

After pursuing the plan which we have recommended for a reasonable time, and the complaint does not appear to be subsiding according to our wishes, or if it be a bad case, or of long standing, we should take the patient through a course of medicine ; and repeat it at proper intervals until he be cured.

Between the courses, the same plan should be pursued as recommended in the first instance.

## DIARRHŒA OR LOOSENESS.

DIARRHŒA consists in frequent and copious discharges from the bowels, accompanied by griping, and sometimes by slight vomiting.

In this complaint there is evidently an increase of the peristaltic motion, which may be produced by a variety of causes, applied either to the body in general, or which may act solely upon the intestines.

Of those causes which act generally upon the body, we may notice catching cold, which gives a check to perspiration, and thus determines the flow of the fluids to the intestines, instead of permitting them to escape by the skin ; certain diseases, as teething, gout, rheumatism, fever, &c., as likewise passions of the mind.

Of those causes which act directly upon the intestines, may be enumerated; first, substances taken into the stomach, and acting upon the organ by over-charging it; or which from their nature, produce a morbid effect upon the stomach and intestines, such as vegetable substances which are apt to ferment and become sour, &c.; secondly, the animal fluids generated in the body, and poured into the intestines, as acrid bile, &c.

The stools in diarrhœa assume various appearances; and hence have originated many different names according to those appearances. Sometimes they are of the common color, but very loose and copious; sometimes they are of a bright yellow; sometimes white and frothy; sometimes they consist of mucus; sometimes they are quite fluid or watery; and at other times they consist of food and drink passed without being digested. We regard these different appearances of the stools, however, as matters of small consequence, as the plan of cure must be the same in all cases.

**TREATMENT.**—Common cases of diarrhœa may generally be removed by a few doses of the tincture of myrrh, diaphoretic powders, bitter tonic, bayberry, or any of the astringent articles mentioned in the materia medica, or the cholera syrup. The butternut syrup, black root, bitter root, rhubarb, or any other cathartic which we shall hereafter recommend, may be resorted to, if the other articles do not readily remove the complaint; or if none of them are likely to answer the purpose, a course of medicine must be resorted to, and repeated as occasion may require. Friction and bathing the bowels are also highly useful.

Between the courses, the bitter tonic and other means should be continued as the symptoms may demand.

---

## DISLOCATIONS AND BROKEN BONES.

TO RELAX THE MUSCLES, IN ORDER THAT THE BONES MAY BE READILY REDUCED OR PUT IN THEIR PROPER PLACE.

THE world, so far as we know, is indebted to Dr. THOMSON for the following method of relaxing the muscles, in cases of joints getting out of place, or of bones being broken. The mode which he recommends, possesses the double advantage of preventing, to a great extent, the excruciating pain which usually attends the reduction of fractures of the bones and dislocations of the joints, and of being simple and the means either always at hand or readily obtained.

He directs the patient to have a dose of cayenne pepper and the powder of lady's slipper root, to promote perspiration, prevent fainting, and quiet the nerves. Then having a kettle of hot



water, wet a large cloth in it and apply as hot as can be borne around, and for some distance both above and below, the injured part, if it be on one of the limbs. This being done, hold a vessel under, and pour water as hot as can be applied without pain, on the wet cloth, and so continue for fifteen or twenty minutes, when the cloth must be taken off, and the bone or bones placed in their proper position by some skilful person. If the case be a broken bone, it must be splintered; but if it is a joint out of place, nothing more will be necessary than to pour cold water on the part, which will contract the muscles, and keep the bone in its proper position.

In reducing either dislocated or fractured bones, to their proper place, much less skill is necessary than many suppose.

Any person of common sense knows how the bones ought to be when *not displaced*; and by exercising a little mechanical ingenuity, after the muscles are relaxed, he will be able to return them to their proper situation. It must also be carefully remembered not to extend the limb, as is the common practice, but bend or draw it towards the body. Any individual may satisfy himself of the relaxing effects of a bent position of the arm, by first extending one of his own, at full length, then grasp it with the other hand, when he will find the flesh tense and hard. Now if he will incline his arm towards his body he will find, on grasping it again, that the muscles, that is, the flesh, are relaxed and soft. This is, therefore, the proper position for the limbs in reducing either a dislocated or a broken bone, instead of being extended, as is commonly practiced by bone-setters.

---

## DROPSY.

**DROPSY** is an accumulation or retention of serous or watery fluid in some part of the body; to which different names are given by systematic writers, according to the part of the body in which the water is lodged.

When it is collected in what is called the cellular membrane, which is situated between the skin and flesh, it is termed *anasarca*, or dropsy of the cellular membrane. When the water is collected in the thorax or chest, it is called *hydrothorax*, or dropsy of the chest. When in the cavity of the abdomen, it is called *ascites*, or dropsy of the abdomen, &c.

Dropsy sometimes appears to arise from family predisposition; it is also caused by frequent salivation, or the occasional use of mercury; excessive or long continued evacuations; a free use of spirituous liquors; affections of the liver, spleen, pancreas, mesentery, &c.: it also often ensues as a consequence of other diseases, as jaundice, diarrhœa, dysentery, consump

tion, intermittent fevers, &c., or the sudden suppression of some accustomed evacuation, the striking in of eruptions of the skin, and by whatever has a tendency to weaken the powers of the system.

*Anasarca*, or dropsy of the cellular membrane, which is the most common form of the disease, shows itself first by a swelling of the feet and ankles, which is most visible at evening, and disappears during the night.

The tumefaction or swelling, is soft but inelastic ; hence, when it is pressed upon with the finger, the mark or pit that is made remains for some time in the skin which becomes paler where the end of the finger rested than any where else.

By degrees the swelling ascends upward, affecting the thighs, trunk of the body, and finally the face and head. The internal parts now, perhaps, become affected, and, from the effusion of water in the cellular tissue of the lungs, the breathing will be difficult, especially when lying down. The patient now also has a cough, accompanied with an expectoration of a watery fluid ; the urine is commonly in small quantity, high colored, and deposits a reddish sediment ; the bowels are generally costive, the perspiration obstructed, the countenance yellow, with much thirst. To these symptoms succeed torpor, heaviness, and a slow fever.

In some cases the water oozes through the pores of the skin ; whilst in others, it being too gross to pass through the cuticle or scarf-skin, it raises it in blisters. Such an accumulation sometimes takes place, that the skin of the legs, being incapable of bearing further distention, bursts asunder.

Any disease of the internal organs arising in the advanced stages of dropsy ; or great emaciation, St. Anthony's fire, much drowsiness, dark or purple spots or swellings, discharges of blood, hot fever, great thirst, and a quick small pulse, are to be regarded as very unfavorable symptoms.

This disease is always to be considered as of more easy cure, when it arises from weakness or debility, than when it is caused by obstructions of the liver or any other of the abdominal viscera ; as likewise when recent, than when of long standing.

The skin becoming moist, with diminished thirst, and increased flow of urine, may be regarded as favorable symptoms.— In some few cases, the disease goes off spontaneously, either by a vomiting, purging, profuse perspiration, or an unusual discharge of urine ; but this does not often occur.

*Ascites*, or dropsy of the belly, is attended by a tense swelling of the abdomen. The water, in this form of the disease, is usually collected within the *peritonæum* or internal lining membrane of the abdomen, and is consequently diffused amongst the intestines ; though sometimes it is found between the perito

næum and external parts or walls of the abdomen. The same causes, in general, which produce anasarca, may produce ascites.

Ascites is often preceded by loss of appetite, sluggishness, inactivity, dryness of the skin, oppression at the chest, cough, diminution of the natural discharges of urine, and costiveness of the bowels. Shortly after the appearance of these symptoms, a swelling is perceived in the lower part of the abdomen, which, as the disease advances, gradually extends itself, and keeps on increasing, until the whole belly or abdomen becomes uniformly swelled and tense.

This complaint may be distinguished from ordinary bloating or inflation of the bowels with wind, by the elasticity in the one case, and the fluctuation which attends the other. In general, the fluctuation of the water, in dropsy, may be felt by placing the left hand on one side of the abdomen, and then gently striking on the other with the right. In this experiment the water may be felt, by the left hand, to move or rush from one side of the belly to the other. In some cases this rushing or fluctuation will be obvious to the ear.

As the collection of water increases, the breathing becomes difficult, the countenance exhibits a pale or bloated appearance, an immoderate thirst arises, the skin is dry and parched, and the urine is scanty, thick, high-colored, and deposits a brick colored sediment. The pulse is variable, being sometimes considerably quickened, and at other times slower than natural.— Sometimes fever attends this complaint; but it is often absent.

This species of dropsy may always be regarded as of difficult cure. The urine having been originally but little diminished, or becoming more copious; the swelling of the belly subsiding, the skin becoming moist, the respiration more free, and the strength having been but little impaired, may be regarded as favorable circumstances: on the contrary, intense local pain, great emaciation, with fever, and the disorder having been induced by a diseased state of the liver, or other viscera of the abdomen, must be looked upon as unfavorable symptoms.

*Hydrothorax*, or dropsy of the chest, is distinguished by an oppression in breathing, particularly after any exertion or when lying down, difficulty of lying upon one side, sudden starting from sleep, with anxiety, palpitations of the heart, irregularity of the pulse, cough, occasional faintings, paleness, anasarca (dropsical) swellings of the legs, thirst and diminution of urine which is high colored, and on cooling deposits a pink or red sediment; but the most certain distinguishing symptom of hydrothorax is a sensation of water perceived by the patient, in the chest, on certain motions of the body, or as if the heart were moving in a fluid.

The accumulation of water in the chest may also be tested by striking with the hand upon the chest, when the patient is standing upon his feet, or by pressure upon the abdomen, either of which will increase for the moment the sense of suffocation or difficulty of breathing, as well as the other symptoms attending this commonly fatal disease.

The causes which immediately give rise to hydrothorax, are much the same with those which produce the other kinds of dropsy. In some cases it comes on without any other dropsical affection being present, but it is often an attendant of other complaints of this character. It is frequently a disease of old age, and, like other dropsies, it often succeeds debility, arising from any cause whatever. It is most common to males who have addicted themselves to free living, and especially to the use of intoxicating liquors. Those who have long suffered from gout or asthma, are peculiarly liable to hydrothorax.

This complaint frequently becomes considerably advanced before it is very perceptible; and its presence is not readily known, because the symptoms are generally obscure.

It often comes on with a sense of uneasiness at the lower end of the sternum, (breast bone,) and difficulty of breathing, which is much increased by any exertion or motion, and is always worse when the patient is in bed. Along with these symptoms there is a cough, at first dry, but which, after a time, is attended with an expectoration of thin mucus. There is also a paleness of the complexion, and a dropsical swelling of the feet and legs, together with thirst, and diminished flow of urine. Sometimes the face swells and pits under the finger, especially in the morning, with a sense of debility and loss of flesh. When such appearances as these are met with, we have just grounds to suspect that there is a collection of water in the chest. The symptoms which have been described, gradually increase, but their progress is slow, and a considerable time commonly elapses before the disorder is fully formed.

The difficulty of breathing at length becomes excessive.—The patient is unable to lie down for any considerable time, and the head and trunk of the body must be supported almost erect. The sleep is frequently interrupted on a sudden by alarming dreams, out of which the patient quickly starts up in bed, with a sense of suffocation. These paroxysms are attended by convulsive breathing resembling an attack of spasmodic asthma, with violent palpitations of the heart, which are frequently excited by the most trifling voluntary motion, or by a fit of coughing.

In this distressing situation the patient is under the necessity of having his body in an erect posture, with his mouth open, and he betrays the utmost anxiety for fresh air. The face and extremities become cold; the pulse is feeble and irregular; and



a pain, or numbness, frequently extends itself from the heart, towards one or both shoulders. Excepting a livid hue of the lips and cheeks, the countenance is pale and ghastly, and indicates a peculiar anxiety; whilst the upper part of the body is covered with a profuse clammy sweat. Drowsiness, or delirium, frequently attends the latter periods of hydrothorax; and occasionally a sensation of water flowing about can be distinctly perceived by the patient, on any sudden change in the position of the body.

The difficulty of breathing increases until the action of the lungs is at last entirely interrupted by the quantity of water in the chest, when death puts an end to the sufferings of the patient.

We have now given a general description of the most usual forms of dropsy, and we deem it proper further to add, that each may exist separately, or any two, or even all may be combined. Hydrothorax can rarely, if ever, be cured; ascites, or dropsy of the abdomen, can often be relieved, though it seldom admits of cure; whilst anasarca, or general dropsy, in its early stages may almost always be cured, if properly and perseveringly treated. But if all three of these forms of dropsy are combined, as is sometimes the case, the complaint is rendered desperate.

**TREATMENT.**—The object to be aimed at in the treatment of dropsy is to evacuate the water, and then to increase the vigor and tone of the system, so that its future accumulation may be prevented.

To answer the first intention, thorough courses of medicine should be administered, and in order to assist in carrying off the water, the application of the vapor bath, or steaming, must be long continued, and every means adopted which may have a tendency to promote a free and copious perspiration.

Dr. THOMSON, who has treated this complaint, with a success surpassing by far any former example, informs us that he sometimes took dropsical patients through three courses of his medicine in two days, and in ordinary cases, a course every day. We would recommend the same mode of treatment, or at least the daily use of the vapor bath, if not a full course of medicine. No other means equal to the vapor bath can be used to remove the water, and when to this is added the whole course of medicine, we have the double advantage, of discharging the water from the cellular tissues, and of increasing the vigor of the system.

In the intervals between the courses, the powers of the system must be sustained by the use of the bitter tonic, which may be taken three times a day, in tea-spoonful doses, and the diaphoretic powders twice a day, in similar portions.

Frequently bathing the abdomen with tincture of myrrh, bathing drops, tinctures of cayenne and lobelia, equal parts, or

almost any stimulating article, will have a very good effect, and ought always to be resorted to.

Cathartics have often been known to produce a good effect in dropsical cases, and may, therefore, be resorted to occasionally, if found beneficial; for this purpose, some of the purgative preparations, hereafter mentioned, may be used. But whether purges are resorted to or not, the utmost attention should be paid to keeping the bowels open by the daily use of injections, if necessary.

In order still more to facilitate the removal of the water, we may use such remedies as increase the discharge of urine. For this purpose, various articles have been employed. The clivers or clevers, in strong tea, is often used with advantage. A decoction of the inner or green bark of the common or white elder, infused in cider or white wine, is also recommended as a good diuretic. A few drops, or more, of the spirits of turpentine on sugar, has often been used with advantage to promote the discharge of urine. A number of diuretic articles will also be found in our *materia medica*, from which a choice can be made.

Our remarks thus far, upon the treatment of the complaint under consideration, apply to dropsies in general; and in anasarcaous dropsy, that is, dropsy of the cellular membrane, or general dropsy, the means which we have recommended will commonly effect a cure. In ascites, or dropsy of the belly, and in hydrothorax, the event will be far more doubtful.

Dropsy of the belly will often require the operation of tapping, and even then, the prospect of cure will be by no means certain. To perform this operation, an instrument termed a *trocar* is employed in a very simple manner. It is about three or four inches long; either flat or round. On one end is a handle, and the other is made very sharp. The part between the handle and edge, is covered by a silver tube which in size is just sufficient to admit the trocar into it.

To perform the operation of tapping, the patient may either sit in a chair, or lie on the edge of a bed, when "a long cloth or towel should be passed round the upper part of the abdomen, and be securely fixed behind, by an assistant; this presses the fluid downwards, and at the same time gives support to the diaphragm, (midriff,) preventing its sudden descent, which would otherwise be very apt to produce fainting. The operator seated in front on a low chair, takes the trocar, previously smeared with oil, in his right hand, and holding the handle firm in his palm, he places on the tube his fore finger, which not only prevents the trocar entering too far, but also serves as a guide to the instrument. The point of the trocar is then to be applied to the abdomen, about one inch and a half below the navel in the *linea alba*, and steadily pushed through the skin and muscles of the

abdomen, giving it a slight half kind of rotary motion, (turning first a little one way and then the other,) as it is pushed forward. Its entrance into the cavity of the abdomen is rendered evident by the cessation of resistance, which the operator will be sensible of immediately on the point of the instrument entering the abdomen, when he must desist from further pushing it forward.

"The operator then, with the thumb and fore finger of the left hand, gradually pushes forward the tube of the trocar, while with the same fingers of the right, he withdraws the trocar, leaving the tube for the water to flow through, which may be received in some proper vessel, which must be at hand to receive it. As the water continues to flow, the towel or cloth which is around the abdomen, must be drawn proportionably tighter. Should the tube become stopped by lymph or the caul, it must be removed by a blunt probe, which, for the want of a metallic one, may be made of a tough piece of hickory, made very smooth, and small enough to pass through the tube.

"The water being evacuated, the tube is to be taken between the thumb and fingers of the right hand, and slowly withdrawn, while with the fingers of the left, the edges of the wound are forced together. A pad of lint should be placed over the wound, and a broad bandage applied round the abdomen to give sufficient compression to the bowels, and which may also in some measure prevent a re-accumulation of the water."

The water being now evacuated, every effort should be made to increase and keep up the vital force of the system, and restore the tone of the organs. To prevent the re-accumulation of the water, diuretics will be very useful, and the vapor bath, or a full course of medicine, should be often resorted to and faithfully persevered in, until health is fully restored. The tone of the organs may be improved, as heretofore noticed, by the use of the bitter tonic and the diaphoretic powders; and to promote the flow of the urine, the bitter tonic may be taken in cider, if it can be procured, a dose of which may be put into such quantity of warm cider as the patient can drink at a time.

---

## DROWNING.

THE act of drowning illustrates the principle which we set forth in the first volume of this work, that life is a forced state. When a person is immersed in water, the breathing is entirely interrupted; hence the living stimulus derived from the air, is cut off, and life is very soon extinct. But the living machinery does not immediately become so much impaired, or, in other words, the organs do not so lose their tone but that on the application of suitable stimulants, the wheels of life may again be put in motion, and vitality restored.

In drowning, the person struggles violently, and attempts to inhale air, but soon forces the little which may remain in his lungs out, and bubbles rise to the surface of the water: the struggles then become more violent, the person rises to the top of the water, and inspiration is again attempted; he then sinks, and the air is expelled from the lungs. During these struggles a small quantity of water is swallowed; the pupils of the eyes become dilated; the eyes protrude and are glassy; the tongue and gums assume a leaden or livid color, and death follows generally in the space of from one to four minutes. Whilst these circumstances are taking place, the circulation of the blood becomes gradually more slow and feeble, and great anxiety is felt about the front of the breast; and after a short time convulsive spasms arise, the organs of respiration cease to act, and the person expires; soon after which the skin becomes purple, particularly about the face and neck.

It is supposed by most persons that in the act of drowning, the lungs become filled with water; but experience has shown that this is not the fact; the quantity being found, upon examination by dissection, to be very inconsiderable.

Dissections of drowned persons do not show that any of the organs essential to life are injured; but that the *right* cavity of the heart, together with the veins and arteries leading to and from that cavity, are filled with blood, whilst every other part of the blood-vessels is almost entirely empty.

Livid and dark brown spots on the face, with great rigidity and coldness of the body, a glassy appearance of the eyes, and flaccid state of the skin, are said to denote a perfect extinction of life; but the only certain sign is the actual commencement of putrefaction; and therefore, in all cases where this symptom is not present, and we are not acquainted with the length of time the body may have been under water, every exertion should be immediately made for restoring it to life; because, for aught we know, the machine may only be stopped, and nothing more may be necessary than to give it a new impulse, to enable it to renew its functions.

**TREATMENT.**—Immediately on taking the body of a drowned person out of the water, it should, in the most easy and speedy manner, be conveyed to the nearest convenient, or suitable house, stripped of the wet clothes, and wiped dry with warm linen or flannel, when it should be laid between blankets made warm before a fire, or with a warming pan. During this, if there be no fire in the room, one should be made sufficiently large to warm the apartment thoroughly, minding also to admit enough air to keep the atmosphere pure and fresh.

Care should be taken both in conveying the body to the house as well as afterwards, not to let the head hang either back or for-



ward, but to keep it in the most natural position; and so soon as possible, an injection must be administered, composed of warm water, or of pennyroyal, or any other warm tea, to either of which must be added the fourth of a tea-spoonful of capsicum, and the same quantity of the pulverized seeds or the tincture of lobelia, and a tea-spoonful of the tincture of myrrh. This must be kept in the rectum for some time, by the application, if necessary, of a cloth or by some other means. The injection should be repeated at such intervals as may be judged necessary by the physician or other skillful attendant.

Whilst some of the assistants are attending to what has just been advised, others should be preparing the necessary means of applying the steam bath as expeditiously as possible. To do this, place three or four chairs side by side, over which a thick blanket must be spread in such manner as to allow it to reach to the floor, at the front of the chairs, in each of which let a person be seated, and take the drowned person wrapped in a thin blanket on their knees. Another thick blanket is then to be spread over the body so as completely to cover it, and reach down to the floor; two small spiders, kettles, tin pans, or any other convenient vessels, containing a small stone previously made hot, and enough hot water to make a moderately warm steam, must be placed under the last named blanket which will confine the vapor to the body of the drowned person. And in order to facilitate its application to the whole surface of the body, the blankets should be held up by the assistants loosely from it.

It must be carefully borne in mind, not to increase the heat of the steam too suddenly, or the patient may by this means be lost, even after symptoms of life have made their appearance. The steam should at first be but moderately warm, and gradually and slowly increased as the signs of returning life successively make their appearance.

After the body has been placed over the steam, as just described, another dose, consisting of a half or whole tea-spoonful of the anti-spasmodic tincture should be administered, and repeated at the discretion of the physician, or other discreet attendant. Blowing into the lungs, and then pressing on the abdomen to force the air out again, so as to imitate, as near as possible, the natural breathing, is much recommended by most authors; but the practice of doing this with a bellows, is highly disapproved of by Dr. THOMSON, who has been very successful in resuscitating drowned persons. Bleeding, which has also been customary, should not be permitted; as likewise the old custom of rolling the patient upon a barrel, or upon the ground; of violently shaking, or carrying him on the shoulder of another person, with the head hanging down, because either has a powerful tendency to seriously injure the patient.

The signs of returning life are, according to Dr. THOMSON, a muscular motion about the eyes, and in the extremities; to which may be added, water and froth issuing from the mouth and nostrils; feeble, irregular, and convulsive efforts to breathe; and gasping. The pulse beats at intervals, and is small, quick, and weak; the face becomes less livid, and is sometimes distorted or violently convulsed; a rumbling is heard in the bowels; and by degrees the breathing becomes more free, and the pulse more regular. Vomiting will sometimes take place spontaneously, but oftener from the effects of the anti-spasmodic tincture, if that has been given; whilst sense and motion gradually return.

When the senses have become completely restored, and the person has obtained the control of his limbs, he should be put into bed and kept in a moist sweat for ten or fifteen hours, by giving the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne pepper and the application of hot stones or bricks, &c. But should he continue dejected, silent, and listless, he should be taken through a regular course of medicine, and, if necessary, repeated as circumstances may require.

---

#### DYSENTERY, OR BLOODY FLUX.

THIS complaint consists in frequent and painful discharges from the bowels, of mucus and bloody stools; though sometimes they are nearly natural in appearance; but in small, hard balls, which are termed by medical writers, scybala, attended by gripping pains, and commonly with fever.

Dysentery occurs chiefly in autumn, or the latter part of summer, though it is often met with at other seasons, and is frequently occasioned by cold and moisture quickly succeeding to intense heat or great drought, whereby a sudden check is given to perspiration, and a determination of the fluids is made to the intestines. It is also occasioned by the use of unwholesome and putrid food, and by noxious exhalations and vapors from marshes and stagnant waters. It is also alleged by many eminent writers, that the most prolific cause of dysentery is contagion; whilst many others equally eminent, disbelieve in the contagiousness of this complaint altogether. The probability is, that in some instances and under certain circumstances, it may be contagious; and one case, and only one, has fallen under our notice, which seemed to have been caused by contagion; but in general, we think, dysentery is not a contagious disease. The free use of fruits has been assigned, says Dr. THOMAS, as one cause productive of dysentery, but erroneously, for they have quite a contrary effect, and tend to preserve from it those who partake moderately of them.

Dysentery is much more prevalent in warm climates than in cold ones, and particularly during the rainy seasons. It may readily be distinguished from a diarrhea by the appearance of the stools, and by the peculiar painful griping, and *tenesmus*, attending dysentery.

This complaint is sometimes preceded by a loss of appetite, costiveness, sickness at the stomach, and slight vomiting, attended with chills which are succeeded by heat, and frequency of the pulse. Then come on griping pains, and an increased propensity to stool; though it sometimes happens that these symptoms appear first. And it may also happen in mild cases, that there will be no fever or other derangement of the system, than the affection of the intestines.

As the disease progresses, the stools become more frequent and less abundant, and in passing through the inflamed parts of the intestines, they cause severe pain, so that every evacuation is preceded by great distress.

The stools vary both in color and consistence, being sometimes composed of frothy mucus streaked with blood, and at other times, with an acrid or burning watery fluid, resembling the washings of meat. Sometimes a thick glassy mucus is voided, and at others pure blood; and occasionally lumps of coagulated mucus, resembling bits of cheese, are evacuated, and in some instances a quantity of purulent matter is passed.

So long as the stools exhibit those various appearances, and are voided frequently, it is seldom that any natural feces can be perceived amongst them; and when any thing of the kind does appear, they are in small hard balls, called *scybalæ*, which being passed, gives some temporary relief from the griping and *tenesmus*.

*Tenesmus* is an almost constant inclination to go to stool, without the ability of voiding any thing that affords much relief, and is a most troublesome and distressing symptom in dysentery.

When the symptoms which have been described, run high, and are attended by a hot fever, pain of the stomach and whole abdomen, great prostration of strength, strangury, hickup, or with a tendency to putrefaction and fetid and involuntary discharges by stool, the disease must be regarded as of a highly dangerous character, and may terminate fatally in a few days. But when the symptoms are more mild, the complaint is frequently protracted to a considerable length of time, producing great emaciation and debility.

If dysentery attacks persons laboring under scurvy, consumption, or whose constitutions have been much impaired by any disease whatever, it will be pretty sure to prove fatal. It also sometimes occurs with intermittent and remittent fevers, which also renders it much more dangerous and difficult of cure.

Severe griping pains, with great tenesmus, frequent inclination to go to stool and but little voided, the evacuations being very fœtid, great debility, violent fever, or cold clammy sweats, hickups, coldness of the extremities, livid or dark colored spots on the skin, and a weak, irregular pulse, may be regarded as very unfavorable if not fatal symptoms. Whereas the inclination to go to stool becoming less frequent, and the evacuations of a more natural consistence, with a diminution of the fever, griping and tenesmus, are favorable signs; but a relapse is very liable to occur from any exposure to cold, wet, or fatigue.

Disssections of those who have died of dysentery, show that the internal coat of the intestines, but more particularly the lower parts, termed the rectum and colon, are affected by inflammation, and its attendant consequences, such as ulceration, erosions, contractions, scirrosities, and gangrene. The *peritonæum*, and other internal parts of the abdomen, have also an inflammatory appearance.

TREATMENT.—Dysentery, in a great many instances, may be cured by the most simple treatment, and in a surprisingly short time, whilst in others it is one of the most difficult diseases to manage which humanity is afflicted with.

On the first attack of this complaint, a table-spoonful of the tincture of myrrh, with half the quantity of the bark of the root of the bayberry, should be taken, which, in many cases of slight attack, will effect a cure; or a large swallow of the tincture of myrrh alone, may have the same effect. But if one dose does not remove the complaint, it should be repeated at intervals of from thirty to sixty minutes, according to the symptoms; and if this course does not produce the desired effect in a short time, an injection must be administered. This may be composed of a tea of bayberry, beth root, hemlock, blackberry root, or any other astringent article, with the addition of a little cayenne, and two or three tea-spoons full of the tincture of myrrh, and repeated, together with the other articles directed to be taken into the stomach, at suitable intervals, until a cure is effected.

When this disease is attended with much tenesmus, weak alkaline injections made of white lye, or pearlash water, may be given in addition to the one just above described; and are said to allay this symptom like a charm. Mucilaginous and oily injections are also highly useful to shield the bowels from their acrimonious contents. For this purpose take a suitable quantity of slippery-elm mucilage or decoction, with a little sweet oil, castor oil, or butter and molasses; mix and administer warm as can be borne.

The diaphoretic powders, and the bitter tonic, or the tonic cordial, may also be advantageously employed, with the means just recommended, at the discretion of the practitioner.



But if this treatment should not afford the desired relief, a course of medicine ought to be resorted to; or if the attack be violent, or if dysentery prevail epidemically and is in general obstinate, in either case, the patient should be immediately taken through a thorough course of medicine, and repeated at discretion, until the urgent symptoms have subsided. Between the courses of medicine, the patient must have the bitter tonic, diaphoretic powders, and tonic cordial, alternately, or in any way which the judgment may dictate as best. A strong tea of bayberry, or in case there is much blood discharged, witch-hazle leaves or beth root may be substituted for the bayberry, or mixed with it, and administered in half tea cup full doses, and the same may be given by injection, at intervals, until the disease is removed. A tea of the dewberry root, is also highly serviceable in dysentery; and brandy and loaf sugar burnt together may likewise be used occasionally, either at the commencement or in after stages of the complaint.

The abdomen may be bathed with pepper and vinegar, or the tincture of myrrh, with the addition of a little cayenne, to make it more pungent, or with equal parts of the tincture of myrrh and lobelia; and it should be applied with much friction or rubbing with the hand. Fomenting the bowels with cloths wrung out of hot water, may also be resorted to, and will often afford relief from the pain which attends this distressing complaint.

Dr. JOHN THOMPSON, of Albany, recommends the following:—"Take one tea-spoonful of pulverized maple charcoal, mix it well with a table-spoonful of molasses, then add two table-spoonsful of fourth-proof West India rum, and half a glass (wine glass we suppose) of sweet oil; mix the composition well together, and for an adult let it all be taken at two doses. If it does not stop the complaint, (as it seldom fails), take a smart dose of castor oil, and after it has operated, repeat the above composition. This is decidedly the most effectual remedy that we have ever used in inveterate cases of dysentery, or any complaint of the bowels."

Purgative medicines may likewise be resorted to, and by some are thought highly advantageous. The butternut syrup, castor oil with the addition of half or a whole tea-spoonful of spirits of turpentine, or Bunnell's, or any other of the pills hereafter recommended, are thought to be the best articles for this purpose. But injections ought mostly to be relied upon, and should be frequently administered through the whole course of the disease.

In the American Practice, a work replete with much that is valuable, we find the following recommended as the first prescription in every stage of the disease; and we have no doubt of its utility:—"Take of best Turkey rhubarb root, bruised, sal-

eratus, peppermint plant, and cinnamon, pulverized, of each two scruples; mix and rub altogether in a mortar; then add half a pint of boiling water, and sufficient loaf sugar to sweeten, and when cool, two table-spoonful of best French brandy.

“Of this preparation, give a table-spoonful every hour until the passages are changed in their appearance and consistence.” “It should be repeated according to the urgency of the symptoms, duration of the disease, and other circumstances; but generally after it has once acted upon the bowels, a table-spoonful three times a day is sufficient.”

“This medicine in a short time entirely changes the complexion of the complaint. It relieves the spasms and tenesmus; corrects and lessens the fetid discharges; and, in short, brings about a healthy action throughout the whole extent of the intestines.”

We have also known some cases of dysentery cured by the use of ripe fruits, especially peaches, and perhaps they might be useful in all cases of this complaint.

To restore the strength, after the disease is overcome, we may use the tonic cordial, in doses of from one or two great spoonful to the fourth of a tea cup full, two or three times a day, and the bitter tonic, an equal number of times, in half tea-spoonful doses, which should be continued until the cure is completed.

---

### DYSPEPSY, OR INDIGESTION.

This complaint, it is said, chiefly arises in persons between thirty and forty years of age; and often continues for years, without any perceptible aggravation or remission of the symptoms.

Excessive grief and uneasiness of mind, intense study, profuse evacuations, indulgence in strong drink, excess in eating, and above all, the too common use of poisonous medicines, such as calomel, arsenic, opium, &c., which by destroying the tone of the stomach and intestines, weaken the digestive powers, are the common causes of dyspepsy.

A long and disagreeable train of symptoms attends this complaint, such as loss of appetite, sickness at the stomach, heartburn, flatulency, sour, fœtid, and otherwise disagreeable eructations or belchings, a sense of gnawing in the stomach when empty, with pains in it or the side; great costiveness, with chilliness or increased sensibility to the impressions of cold; paleness of countenance, languor, unwillingness to move, lowness of spirits, and disturbed sleep. To these may be added, intolerable feelings, especially in the morning; weak, faint, and trembling sensation in the stomach, sometimes extending to the

intestines; bad taste in the mouth, more especially in the morning, disagreeable breath, &c., &c.

Dyspepsy has become a much more common complaint of late than it was formerly; and almost every deviation from common health is now ascribed to indigestion, which has given rise to the appellation of "fashionable complaint," as a burlesque upon the common herd of dyspeptics.

Every thing taken into the stomach, of a poisonous nature, must unavoidably injure its tone, and thus weaken its power of digesting the food. Hence we find the history of the greater number of dyspeptic cases to be simply this: "so long ago, or such a time, I had the fever, and was salivated by mercury, and have not enjoyed any health since." And what a frightful picture of the disastrous and deadly effects of this one article might be presented to the world; and happy would it be for the human race if this had been the only article which the medical faculty have arrayed against the health and happiness of the family of man.

With regard to the *improvements in cookery*, we have elsewhere said, that they were like the pretended improvements in medicine—refinements in error. The thousands who have fallen victims to the modern system of cookery, the object of which is to whet the appetite by dainties, could they be told, would astonish the ignorant and confound the wise. The original purpose of cooking was to prepare food for its more easy mastication, and digestion; but this object has become perverted, and the design now is to prepare the food so as to make it most agreeable to the taste; in doing which it is often rendered far more indigestible and unwholesome; whilst at the same time, in consequence of its having been rendered more palatable, we are induced to eat too much. We thus have our stomachs filled not only with indigestible food, but likewise overloaded; and even if it had not been rendered indigestible in the process of cooking, the overloading of the stomach overstrains the digestive powers, and lays the foundation for that dismal train of symptoms which are attendant upon the dyspepsy.

The daily filling of the stomach even with wholesome food, in greater quantity than the digestive powers can dispose of, or than the body requires, may be compared to the overburthening of any kind of machinery; it must the sooner wear out and become incapable of performing its office. And every kind of machinery, it is at once evident, can have the capacity of performing only a certain amount of labor or business; just so with the digestive organs; and all that is demanded of them beyond this, is impairing their capacity of performing their natural healthy functions, and brings on the train of symptoms which always attend the complaint under consideration.

Good wholesome food, taken in moderate but sufficient quantity, and proportioned to the employment or other circumstances of the individual, is most conducive to health; and all persons should beware of eating so much at any time as to produce any unnatural fullness, or any other unpleasant sensation about the stomach. As a general rule, all persons should stop eating before the appetite is completely satisfied; and they should moreover eat slow, and chew their food well before swallowing it.

**TREATMENT.**—One of the first things to be attended to in the cure of dyspepsy is to regulate the bowels, which are almost always in an obstinately costive state. The best means of keeping them loose, is the eating of a handful or more of clean wheat bran, once, twice or three times each day, or so much as will keep the stomach and bowels clean and in good order. This is the most simple, safe, and efficacious method of cleansing the stomach, and removing the costiveness attending indigestion, of which we have any knowledge. One cause of this complaint is the eating of superfine flour, which approaches so near to the nature of starch, as to be partly indigestible. This clammy viscous food, as well as sweet-meats and other such pernicious articles, causes a redundancy of acidity, and a cold viscid phlegm in the stomach, and clogs the intestines by its tenacity; hence the mixture of a sufficient portion of bran, is found by experience, if persevered in, to neutralize and absorb and carry off those acid and viscous substances, and by its roughness, scours and cleanses the stomach and bowels, and by mixing with the other articles of food, prevents the tenacity or stickiness which constipates the bowels and destroys their healthy action.

Many persons who know no better, are in the habit of taking physic to obviate costiveness; but this is a bad practice, as the intestines becoming habituated to the stimulation of the physic, thereby lose their tone and the difficulty is rendered worse. Bran, on the other hand, acts in harmony with the laws of nature, as food does, and removes costiveness; without producing any injurious effects whatever upon the intestines.

Our own experience since the year 1816, has confirmed all that we have said respecting the virtues of bran, and it could be attested perhaps by hundreds of others, who have since, from our recommendation, adopted its use. In the early part of life, the publisher of this work, was afflicted for eight years with a grievous chronic dysentery or bloody flux, which he finally cured by the constant use of cayenne pepper and sweet potatoes. But the debility which this long and wasting complaint induced, particularly the loss of tone which the intestines sustained, eventually produced an obstinate state of costiveness which has followed him to the present time. After trying every thing which his own mind could suggest, or the ingenuity of the Faculty



devise, and after he had despaired of ever enjoying health, and even considered himself at the brink of the grave, the idea of using bran first occurred to him, and he immediately commenced the experiment; and to his inexpressible satisfaction, found it to answer his fullest expectations. From that to the present time, he has been in almost the daily use of bran, and finds it the only thing that regulates his bowels in harmony with the laws of life.

Bran may be taken in the hand, and from the hand into the mouth, taking a few swallows of water, to wash it down; or it may be stirred into a bowl of coffee or tea, and eaten with a spoon, as may best suit the patient. The most proper time to take it, is in the morning before eating, or at breakfast; and the quantity necessary to loosen the bowels must be ascertained by experience; but from one to three handfuls, taken once or twice a day, according to the obstinacy of the case, will probably be found sufficient. In conjunction with the bran to regulate the bowels, the daily use of common salt, in tea-spoonful doses dissolved in a half tumbler of cold water, taken in the morning, fasting, has been highly recommended, and is no doubt worthy of a trial.

Another remedy which has also been advantageously used in costive habits, is parched corn, which should be pounded fine in a mortar, and eaten with milk, or in any other way which may suit better. Using the *brown bread*, instead of that made of superfine flour, is also one of the best means of loosening the bowels. This bread is made in the same manner as other, only the flour is ground coarsely and not bolted.

Whilst pursuing the course just recommended to remove the costiveness which almost always attends indigestion, the patient should also take of the bitter tonic, or other bitters, to which ought also to be added a quantity of the black root or bitter root, proportioned to the degree of costiveness. Injections should likewise be used, together with such means as are advised under the head of costiveness.

As the functions of the liver are always morbidly affected in this complaint, either the cathartic or BUNNELL'S pills may be occasionally administered, which will have a very beneficial influence on the liver, exciting it to a healthy action and thus be a means of obviating the costiveness of the bowels. These pills may be taken at bed time once or twice a week.

To correct the acidity of the stomach usually attendant upon indigestion small potions of white lye or super carbonate of soda, salætaris, or pearlash, dissolved in water may be occasionally taken.

If after continuing the use of the means which we have recommended for a reasonable length of time, the complaint

does not yield, the patient should be taken through a course of medicine, which must be repeated as the circumstances of the case may demand. Two or three times a week, will commonly be often enough; minding between the courses, to pursue the means recommended for removing the costiveness, and regularly taking the laxative bitter tonic or the wine bitters three or four times a day until the costiveness ceases, and the food is well digested.

---

### EAR-ACHE, OR INFLAMMATION OF THE EAR.

EAR-ACHE, in some instances, is attended by an excessive throbbing pain in the ear, though rarely any fever. The pain, however, is sometimes very mild, attended with but little inconvenience, and goes off without the aid of medicine.

But in the more violent forms of inflammation of the ear, attended with excruciating throbbing pains, disposition to sleep, delirium, and sometimes convulsions, the most active measures should be adopted, or suppuration will undoubtedly take place, and perhaps the hearing be destroyed. Ear-ache is caused by the same circumstances, in general, which produce other inflammations, and particularly by partial exposures to cold.

TREATMENT.—If the case be mild, nothing more perhaps may be necessary than filling the ear with cotton or wool wetted with the tincture of myrrh; or a little of the tincture may be dropped into the ear. An ointment made by slicing up onions, and frying them in lard, and then strained, is an excellent remedy in all cases of ear-ache. A little of it must be dropped into the ear, and the ear filled with cotton or wool. On going to bed, a hot stone wrapped in a cloth, should be placed near the ear; and the head covered so as to steam the ear and side of the head; or the head and whole body may be steamed with water and hot stones, in the usual way.

If the pain, however, continues, a few drops of the anti-spasmodic tincture must be occasionally dropped into the ear, minding to keep the hot stone to the side of the head, for the purpose of warming and softening the affected part. But if all this does not afford the desired relief, and the pain continues severe, with other bad symptoms, we must administer a course of medicine, and repeat it if necessary; and if suppuration is likely to take place, it should be promoted by the application of poultices.

It sometimes happens that insects find their way into the interior of the ear; in such cases they may be destroyed by pouring into that organ a little tincture of myrrh, or spirits of camphor, or any other kind of spirits or harmless fluid; and afterwards syringing the ear with warm water to remove them from it.

FAINTING, OR SYNCOPE.

FAINTING consists in a decreased action and sometimes total cessation of the pulse and breathing. It is often preceded by anxiety about the breast, a sense of fulness ascending from the stomach towards the head, vertigo or confusion of ideas, dimness of sight, and coldness of the extremities. Sometimes, however, it comes on without any premonition, and occasionally without any apparent cause. The attacks are frequently either attended with, or end in, vomiting, and sometimes in epileptic or other convulsions.

Fainting is caused by sudden and violent emotions of the mind, such as joy, grief, or fear; and by pungent, disagreeable odors; derangements of the stomach and intestines; debility from disease or from loss of blood, either spontaneous or artificial, or by drawing off the water in dropsy. Another fruitful cause of fainting is the tight lacing, and wearing of tight corsets, so common with females in the fashionable walks of life.

TREATMENT.—During a paroxysm of fainting, everything tight about the waist must be loosed, and the face or bosom, or both, may be sprinkled with cold water, which in many instances will be sufficient to rouse the patient and restore the lost action of the heart and lungs. Stimulating the nostrils with hartshorn or volatile salts, will also be very proper and useful. This may be done by holding an open bottle of either of those articles near the nose, or by rubbing some about the nose or upper lip. Camphor may also be used if neither of those articles be at hand.

But if these means fail, we must have recourse to stimulants, such as essences of peppermint, cinnamon, or winter-green; or a dose of cayenne or of the anti-spasmodic tincture, may be given, and repeated as the circumstances of the case may require. Stimulating injections will also be highly serviceable in cases of long continued faintings, and may be safely resorted to on all occasions of this kind.

If the complaint appears to be connected with or caused by a disordered state of the stomach, an emetic should be given, and, if necessary, repeated between the fainting fits, where they recur periodically or frequently; and also using proper means for restoring the energy and tone of the system, such as cayenne, the bitter tonic, diaphoretic powders, &c.

It should, however, be remembered that in cases of fainting from either the intentional or accidental loss of blood, little more need be done than to lay the patient down on his back or side, sprinkling the face or breast with cold water, and applying stimulating substances to the nose. To restore the lost energy of the system which the loss of blood always occasions, stimu-

lants and tonics, as above recommended, with a rich nourishing diet, must be resorted to, and continued a suitable length of time. We scarcely need add, that every cause known to excite fainting, should be avoided.

---

#### FALLING OF THE FUNDAMENT.

THIS complaint is most commonly met with amongst children of a weak habit, or who have been much afflicted with frequent and severe purgings. It is also sometimes met with in grown persons, who have a peculiar weakness of the part.

Prolapsus of the fundament may be a troublesome though not a dangerous disease.

TREATMENT.—In all cases of a falling of the fundament, whether of young or old, the part of the gut which is protruded, should be washed with a strong tea of witch hazle leaves, pond-lily, or some other astringent article; and injections of the same may also be administered, when the protruded part must be gently forced back with the finger, which may be smeared with oil to prevent any irritation.

It will also be advisable to make use of bitter and astringent tonics, in the stomach, and astringents by injection, until the complaint is removed.

The cold bath will also be highly serviceable in this complaint. It can be applied either to the whole body, or cold water may be poured upon or near to the part affected, or both may be resorted to at discretion.

---

#### FALLING SICKNESS OR EPILEPSY.

In epilepsy there is a sudden deprivation of sense, accompanied with convulsive motions of the whole body.

This disease attacks by fits, which after a time go off, leaving the patient most commonly in his usual state; though sometimes a degree of stupor and weakness remain after the fits, especially if they are of frequent occurrence. It is oftener met with amongst children than grown persons, and boys are said to be more subject to its attacks than girls.

Fits of epilepsy return periodically, and the paroxysms occur more frequently in the night than the day; by which it would appear that this complaint was in some measure influenced by that state of the body peculiar to sleep. It is also sometimes said to be counterfeited in order to extort charity, or excite compassion.

Epilepsy is distinguished, by systematic writers, into sympathetic and idiopathic; being considered as sympathetic, when



produced by some other disease, such as acidities in the stomach, worms, teething, &c. and as idiopathic when it is a primary disease, being neither dependent upon nor proceeding from any other complaint.

The causes which give rise to the falling-sickness are blows, wounds, fractures, and other injuries done to the head by external violence, together with lodgments of water in the brain, tumors, concretions, &c. Violent affections of the nervous system, sudden frights, fits of passion, great emotions of the mind, acute pains, worms, the irritation of teething, poisons, &c. are causes which likewise produce epilepsy.

An attack of epileptic fits is sometimes preceded by a heavy pain in the head, dimness of sight, noise in the ears, palpitations of the heart, wind in the stomach and intestines, with weariness, and some degree of stupor; at other times there is a sense of something like a cold vapor or aura arising up to the head; but it more commonly happens that the patient falls down suddenly without much if any previous notice; the eyes are distorted, or turned so that only the whites of them can be seen; the fingers are closely clenched, and the trunk of the body, particularly on one side, is much agitated; the patient foams at the mouth, and thrusts out his tongue, which often suffers great injury from the muscles of the lower jaw being affected; he loses all sense of feeling, and not unfrequently voids both urine and fæces involuntarily.

The spasms after a while abate, and the patient gradually recovers, but feels languid and exhausted, and retains not the smallest recollection of what passed during the fit.

When the disease arises from a hereditary disposition, as it sometimes does, or if it comes on after the person has arrived at mature age, or if the fits recur frequently, and are of long duration, it will probably be difficult to effect a cure. But when it attacks at an early age, and is occasioned by worms, or an accidental cause, it may in general be removed without much difficulty. It has in some instances been entirely carried off by the occurrence of fever, or a cutaneous eruption. It has also been known to terminate in apoplexy, and in some instances to produce a loss of the mental powers, and end in idiotism.

**TREATMENT.**—When epilepsy is caused by worms, teething, or injuries of the head, &c., these difficulties should be removed by pursuing a proper course of treatment, at the same time making a free use of umbil or the nervine tincture, to give tone to the nervous system. And where the general health is otherwise impaired, proper measures must be taken to restore it; to do which the common course of medicine, with the bitter tonic, &c., must be resorted to, and persevered in till the general health is restored.

In all cases where the patient is sensible of the approach of the fits, he should take freely of the nervine tincture, or a dose of the anti-spasmodic tincture, which will have a tendency to prevent a recurrence of the fits, and thus break the chain of morbid association.

During the fit, injections should be given of catnip tea, or any of the astringent articles recommended in the materia medica, to which should be added a tea-spoonful of the anti-spasmodic tincture, or instead of this, cayenne and the pulverized seeds of lobelia, in proper quantity. From half to a whole tea-spoonful of the anti-spasmodic tincture should also be occasionally given by the mouth, all of which will have a tendency to shorten the fit, and break the habit to which the system has become subject.

In cases where the time of the return of the fits is known to a degree of certainty, the taking of the patient through a course of medicine at that time will tend to prevent the return of the fit, and thus destroy the connection of the disease.

We are well aware that cases of epilepsy which occur after mature age, are very difficult of cure, but they are, nevertheless, not all of the same hopeless character; we may, therefore, in most instances, attempt the cure, on the principles laid down; varying the mode of treatment at discretion, to suit any peculiarity which may attend each or any particular case.

---

### FELONS.

FELONS are suppurative swellings which appear about the joints of the fingers, and give an idea to the unhappy sufferer of the most exquisite pain and torture to which the human frame is liable.

This most distressing malady is supposed usually to proceed from a bruise which by some means or other injures the *periosteum* or membrane which surrounds the bones, producing inflammation and suppuration. The excruciating pain which always attends a felon, arises in consequence of the matter being deeply seated in the flesh which cannot give way to make room for it as it forms, as is the case when suppurative swellings arise on or near to the surface.

TREATMENT.—A variety of means have been proposed for alleviating or curing this intolerable disease. Some have practiced holding the affected finger in boiling tallow or boiling lye, until the pain has subsided. This, although it may seem like a painful operation, is said by those who have tried it, not to be so.

Another remedy is to take several pieces of woollen cloth and cut a round hole in each piece the size of the painful part,

which are then placed over the felon and the felon itself covered with tar. Two irons having been previously made red hot, one of them is to be held as near the felon as can well be borne, and when this becomes too cool it must be returned into the fire, and the other employed in its stead, and so continuing to apply the irons alternately until the pain and throbbing cease; renewing the tar as it dries away. The woollen cloths are for the purpose of preventing the hot irons from burning the sound parts, as it is necessary to hold them very close in order to have the full benefit of the operation.

When the pain and throbbing have ceased, the cloths and tar are to be removed, and the felon covered with a plaster made in the following manner:—

Take castile or good shaving-soap, shave it down very fine, and mix with it a little new milk, to the consistence of a plaster or salve; spread it on a cloth, apply it to the part, and renew it as it becomes dry. The whole of this process is to be gone through with whether the felon has been opened or not, and will, as our informant assures us, effect a cure.

Another remedy with which we have been acquainted from early years, and have repeatedly proved its efficacy, is as follows:—

Take salt, common soft soap, and sage, green or dry, bruised or pulverized, equal quantities of each, well mixed together into a poultice, and applied to the part, which must be moistened or renewed as often as it becomes dry, and continue until relief is obtained.

From the depth at which the matter is seated in case of felons, it is all important to give it vent as soon as possible; and whenever this is done, immediate relief is experienced. The common method is to lay it open with a lancet or knife; but this is highly disapproved of by some, and *caustics* recommended instead of the knife. But on the whole, we think that Dr. THOMSON's method is probably as good, if not better, than any other, for this purpose. In pursuing the plan which he recommends, we avoid all hazard of hemorrhage, and moreover make a much smaller sore than is usually produced by the knife. His method is as follows:—

Take a piece of spunk, (punk,) about the size of half a pea, and burn it on the most painful part, which process may be repeated if it be thought that the flesh is not deadened down to the matter. A needle is then to be plunged deeply into the skin and immediately out again, in the part which has been burned, by which means the skin and flesh will be very much elevated, when, with a sharp knife, the part that is raised by the needle must be cut out. In performing this, care must be taken to cut out as small a piece of skin as convenient, and at the same time

cut as deeply into the flesh as possible, in order to let out the matter. If the cutting, however, does not reach the matter, it ought to be still further opened with a lancet as we conceive, although Dr. THOMSON has given no instructions further than to cut out the piece as aforesaid; but he takes the precaution to say that it should be sufficiently deep to answer the purpose. After this is done, apply the poultice or salve, whichever seems most proper; but if there be much pain still remaining, after the operation, a poultice will be preferable, and ought to be often wetted with cold water. We may also observe, that a botanic physician who had often performed the operation, informed us that he usually applied, immediately after the burning, a cloth which he kept wet for some time with cold water, before cutting out the flesh.

To those who have never experienced the torturing effects of a felon, nor been accustomed to witness their painful progress, the idea of *burning* and *cutting* will perhaps appear horrible; but persons who have been afflicted in this way, are aware that almost any thing promising relief can be cheerfully submitted to; and moreover the pain caused by the burning is said by those who have tried it, to be, comparatively speaking, but trifling.

Another method of treating felons, recommended by good authority, is to bathe the part affected in lye water; then take the yolk of an egg, six drops spirits of turpentine, a few beet leaves cut fine, a small quantity of hard soap, one tea-spoonful of burnt salt, one of corn meal, and one of snuff; mix these articles well together and apply to the part. This is said to be an unfailing remedy.

When nothing else assuages the pain, the hand may be steamed over a decoction of herbs, such as horehound, tansey, wormwood, or catnip, and hops, either altogether or the hops with one or more of the other articles. A handful of each may be steeped strong and the hand held over it shielded from the air with a blanket, and a lively steam kept up by means of red hot stones or bricks until the pain ceases, and repeated whenever the pain returns. Dr. BEACH recommends the addition of a small quantity of soft soap to the decoction.

The means resorted to by Dr. BEACH for opening a felon also deserves notice. After poulticing until there appears a white spot indicative of a ripeness for puncturing, he recommends a large needle the point of which to be applied to the white spot, and then by giving it a rotary or drill-like motion force it, with but little pain, through the flesh to the matter. In this way of opening, however, the hole is so small that it may be necessary occasionally to reopen in the same manner with either a needle or probe.



## FRESH WOUNDS.

By these we mean wounds made with sharp instruments, as edge-tools of every description. Many of these, however, are too trifling to need any kind of treatment only the most simple binding up with a cloth or bandage. But should the wound be large or much blood be discharged, it ought to have the blood washed away with cold water, then place the edges of the wounded flesh as near together as possible, carefully bind it up, and occasionally wet it with either the compound or simple tincture of myrrh, and with cold water. This course if properly pursued, will prevent inflammation, and induce the wound in a short time to heal. Very large wounds ought to have their edges confined together by a few stitches taken with a needle and thread, or by the application of the adhesive plaster, as directed under that head.

If a small artery should be wounded, in which case the blood will not flow in a continued stream but by spurts, and if it is on the limbs, the wounded part should be kept elevated above the heart or head, washed with cold water, tightly bound up, and continued in that position, often wetting it with the coldest water, until the bleeding is completely stopped. When larger arteries are wounded so as suddenly to endanger the life of the patient, an experienced surgeon ought immediately to be sent for, and in the mean time the flow of blood must be stopped by pressure with the finger or some solid substance on the bleeding vessel. The application of the spider's web, it is said, scarcely ever fails to stop the flow of blood, and should therefore always be resorted to where bleeding is profuse; or either of the styptics, mentioned under the proper head in this work, may be applied.

Wounds are to be treated, after the first dressing, in every respect the same as simple ulcers. If they do not become inflamed, all the application that is necessary will be the healing salve; and if inflammation takes place, treat them with poultices and cold water.

---

GIDDINESS OR VERTIGO.

GIDDINESS is a swimming of the head, in which everything appears to the patient to go round, and he staggers and is in danger of falling down.

Vertigo proceeds from different causes, such as an over determination of blood to the head, foul stomach, dyspepsy, hypochondriasis, and hysterics.

Little or no danger attends this complaint, unless it proceed from an over-fullness of blood in the vessels of the brain in

which case, if it be not timely relieved, it may terminate in apoplexy or palsy.

Where giddiness arises in consequence of some other disease, it will disappear on the removal of the other difficulties; but in all cases where it proceeds from an over determination to the head, means should be used to divert the blood to the other parts of the system, whereby the head will be relieved.

**TREATMENT.**—In order to restore an equable action to the blood, the patient should have repeated doses of the cayenne or diaphoretic powders, and be steamed, or have red hot stones cooled so as not to burn the bed, and then wrapped in a wet cloth and applied to the feet and legs. And if he is steamed he ought to have a hot stone placed at his feet in bed, to keep up a perspiration; as by this means the vessels of the body and extremities become relaxed, and allow the blood to pass more freely through them. A potion of some mild physic might also assist in diverting the blood from the head.

Should the means, however, which have been recommended fail of the desired effect, an emetic and regular course of medicine must be resorted to, and especially if there be sickness at the stomach. After the course of medicine, the bitter tonic, diaphoretic powders, or capsicum, should be continued, and if any symptoms of giddiness remain, the patient must continue in bed with the application of hot stones as before directed. The use of stimulating injections will also be highly proper in any stage of this complaint.

---

### GOUT.

The gout is a very painful disease, the most distinguishable symptoms of which, are severe pains at some joint, particularly the great toe, and also of the hands, which return by paroxysms, most commonly in the spring or beginning of winter.

Gout is divided by systematic writers, into the regular, the atonic, the misplaced, and the retrocedent.

The regular gout chiefly affects the feet and legs; the atonic, the stomach; the misplaced, is attended by inflammations of some internal parts; and the retrocedent, is a translation of the gouty humor or inflammation, from the joints to the internal parts of the system.

The only disease for which the regular gout can be mistaken, is the rheumatism; and cases may occur in which there may be some difficulty in distinguishing between them; but the most certain way of discriminating the two complaints is to give due consideration to the habits of life of the patient, the symptoms which have preceded the attack, the parts affected, and the symptoms which take place during the paroxysm.

In the gout, the pains generally attack the small joints, and are less liable to shift than in rheumatism; but when they do, they commonly fix upon the same joints of the other limb, or on some internal part; the part affected, is also more red and swelled than it is in rheumatism, and the dyspeptic symptoms, which rarely precede rheumatism, are present in a considerable degree for some days preceding an attack of gout.

Rheumatism and gout are, however, sometimes combined; in which cases a distinction is neither necessary nor possible.

The gout chiefly attacks men, and particularly those who indulge in high living and lead a sedentary life; and also those who are engaged in literary pursuits; and such as keep late hours, or are in the decline of life; though it is sometimes met with in females of a full and robust habit of body. Men who are employed in constant bodily labor, or who live coarsely, and drink but little wine or other fermented liquors, are seldom afflicted with the gout. Attacks of this complaint rarely occur before the age of thirty-five or forty.

The immediate exciting causes of a fit of the gout, are intemperance in eating or drinking, late hours, intense application to study, long want of rest, grief or anxiety of mind, great sensuality, long continued fatigue, exposure to cold, wet feet, a sudden change from a full to a spare diet, excessive evacuations, &c., &c.

The most common causes which predispose to the gout, are a full diet of animal or other rich food, with a free use of spirituous and fermented liquors, particularly of wines abounding with tartar, together with indolence and inactivity, which are principally to be met with amongst the rich; and hence their susceptibility to this disease; whilst the poor, who are obliged to labor and live sparingly, are scarcely ever afflicted with this painful malady.

A paroxysm of regular gout sometimes comes on suddenly, without any warning; whilst at other times it is preceded by an unusual coldness of the feet and legs, and they become numb and the perspiration in them is suppressed; and sometimes a sense of pricking all over the feet and legs takes place; and with these symptoms the appetite is diminished, the stomach is troubled with wind, and dyspeptic symptoms occur; a feeling of torpor and languor over the whole body; great lassitude and fatigue are experienced after the least exercise, the bowels are costive, and the urine pale.

Some sensible affection of the stomach occurs in almost all cases of gout, previous to the accession of the paroxysm.

A fit of the gout usually comes on in the night; the patient generally going to bed without suspecting an attack so soon; but after a few hours is awakened by a severe pain, most com-

monly in the first joint of the great toe; though sometimes it attacks other parts of the foot, the heel, or the calf of the leg, or perhaps the whole foot. The pain resembles that of a dislocated or disjointed bone, and is attended with the sensation as if cold water was poured upon the affected part; and the pain becoming more violent, is succeeded by rigors or chills, and other feverish symptoms, together with a severe throbbing inflammation of the painful part. Sometimes both feet become swelled and inflamed so that neither of them can be put to the floor; nor can the patient endure the least motion without suffering excruciating pain.

Towards morning, however, he falls asleep, and a gentle moisture breaks out, and terminates the paroxysm, a number of which constitute what is termed a fit of the gout. The duration of the fit will be longer or shorter, according to the predisposition of the body to the disease, the season of the year, and the age and strength of the patient.

When a paroxysm of the gout takes place, although there is an alleviation of the pain in the morning, still the patient is not entirely relieved from it; and for several evenings in succession, he has a return of both the pain and fever, which continue with more or less violence until morning. The paroxysms, however, usually become more mild each succeeding evening, till the disease at length goes entirely off, either by perspiration, urine, or some other evacuation; the parts affected also become itchy, the cuticle falls off in scales, with some degree of lameness remaining. At first an attack of gout occurs, perhaps, only once in two or three years; it then probably comes on every year, and at length becomes more frequent and severe, and is of longer duration at each succeeding fit. In the progress of the disease, various parts of the body are affected, and the complaint removes from one joint, or limb, to another; and after frequent attacks, the joints lose their strength and flexibility, and become stiff and immoveable. Concretions or lumps, of a chalky appearance, are likewise formed upon the outside of the joints; and affections of the kidneys arise from a deposite of the same kind of matter in them, which, although fluid at the first, becomes gradually dry and firm.

This effusion occurs, not only during fits of the gout, but likewise in the intervals, and as the extremities, particularly the hands and feet, are the principal seats of the gout, it is there that the greatest accumulations of the chalky matter take place. This matter is never enclosed in a cyst or little bag, like pus in an abscess, but is usually deposited in the cellular membrane, the *bursa mucosa*, or in the cavities of the joints.

It sometimes happens, that although a gouty diathesis or disposition prevails in the system, yet from some cause or other,



no inflammatory affection of the joints takes place ; in which case, the stomach becomes the principal seat of the malady, and the patient is troubled with flatulency, indigestion, violent pain, loss of appetite, eructations or belchings, nausea, vomiting, and a peculiar sense of coldness in the region of the stomach ; which affections are often accompanied with dejection of spirits, and other hypochondriacal symptoms. In some instances, the head is affected with pains and giddiness, and occasionally with a tendency to apoplexy ; and in other cases the heart or lungs suffer, which gives rise to palpitations, faintings, cramps, and asthma. This is what is called the *atonic* gout.

It likewise happens sometimes, that after the inflammation has occupied a joint, instead of continuing, the usual time, and then going off gradually, it ceases suddenly, and is translated to some internal part. The name of *retrocedent* gout is applied to cases of this kind.

In the *misplaced* gout, instead of the inflammatory affection being seated upon the joints, it is fixed upon some internal part, and is attended by the same symptoms which occur in other inflammations of the same organs. Cases of this kind are rare.

In fits of the *regular* gout, there is seldom any immediate danger ; it is only when the disease appears in its irregular form that danger arises, and in which the stomach, heart, lungs, or head are affected. In some cases, however, the whole system becomes weak and languid, dyspepsy and syncope ensue, and the disease terminates in palsy, asthma, or dropsy, which is most commonly in the form of hydrothorax or dropsy of the chest.

In the irregular forms of the gout, much more danger is to be apprehended, and particularly in the retrocedent form of the disease, in which there is violent pain, sickness, vomiting, &c. in which cases patients have been known to die in a few minutes after the attack.

The gout appears to be much under the influence of fear, as individuals suffering with it, and unable to walk, have, in consequence of their houses taking fire, or from some other alarming cause, been immediately relieved and enabled to walk. We recollect of reading, some years ago, an amusing anecdote of a gentleman being cured by fright, which we will relate from memory. He was lying on his bed in an upper room, suffering the most exquisite agony, and expressing his wishes that the devil would come and fly off with his legs. Just at this moment a chimney sweeper who had been sent by his master, unknown to the gentleman to sweep his chimneys, was endeavoring to improve himself in his art, descended, by mistake, into the gentleman's room. He instantly discovered his error, and by way of apology for his intrusion, made a bow, adding, "your servant sir—my master will be here presently," and im-

mediately vanished up the chimney. This unexpected visit from a lad, black and grim with soot, connected with the wishes which he almost at the same moment had expressed, created in his imagination the idea that his wishes were about being fulfilled; and probably fearing that his body might go along with his legs, he instantly bounded from his bed, and retreated to the lower part of the house to seek the aid of his family, perfectly cured of the gout.

**TREATMENT.**—Although much might probably be done, especially in old or debilitated constitutions, to prevent a return of the gout, by using mild means, yet during the continuance of the fit it is by no means likely that any thing but the free use of the vapor bath with the whole course of medicine, would do much towards checking the disease.

When the complaint goes off naturally, it is commonly by perspiration, and hence we have, from nature, an unerring indication that the vapor bath is one, at least, of the surest and best means of cutting short the fits of this most painful malady. The affected part should also be bathed with the compound tincture of myrrh, made more stimulating by the addition of a quantity of capsicum, or with the bathing drops, or a wash of pepper and vinegar. This should be applied so as to produce a warm or burning sensation on the skin, or it will avail little or nothing in affording relief. If these washes, however, fail of producing this effect, place a few pods of the common red pepper in warm water until perfectly softened, then open and apply them with the inside of the pod to the part affected, which will rarely fail of creating a powerful sensation.

A free use should also be made internally of the cayenne, both during the course of medicine as well as afterwards.—The bitter tonic must likewise be freely used, and the course of medicine repeated as often as necessary until a cure is effected.

If the attack be mild, however, we may attempt to give relief by the application of hot stones or bricks to the affected part, and by giving repeated doses of the cayenne; at the same time bathing the part as just directed. After persevering in this manner for a reasonable time, if relief be not obtained, a full and thorough course of medicine must be resorted to.

The application of cold water has been highly extolled in gout. The water may either be poured on the affected limb, or the limb may be immersed in the water. General bathing of the whole body has also been advantageously practiced by some.—If the foot or hand become much swelled, a poultice made by simmering bran in vinegar, may be usefully applied.

As a preventive, the diaphoretic powders, bitter tonic, or capsicum may be used at discretion, and persisted in until the symptoms are removed. To relieve the acidity of the stomach which

so uniformly precedes an attack of the gout, pearlsh water or white lye, should be frequently used, and the employment of the bitter tonic at the same time will strengthen the stomach and check the production of the acid. Should these means not remove the gouty symptoms, a regular course of the medicine must be resorted to as the only probable chance of preventing a recurrence of the complaint.

In addition to what has just been recommended, the wrapping of the part affected, as well as the whole body, in flannel, will be found a good preventive of the gout. The causes which produce it, such as indolence and the use of wine or other fermented liquors, should be avoided; and temperance and active exercise rigorously enforced. By strictly observing these rules, most persons might undoubtedly avoid the necessity of suffering from this painful malady.

## GRAVEL AND STONE.

By gravel we understand the formation in, and passage from, the kidneys, of small sandlike concretions or stones; but if they are formed of so large a size that they cannot pass the *ureters* nor *urethra*, the complaint is then called the stone. It is a singular fact, however, that the discharges of small gravel rarely terminate in stone. Many have had them during a long life, without experiencing any other inconvenience than the pain attending their passage along the urinary canals; whilst the stone is a disease chiefly occurring between infancy and the age of fifteen. Women are less liable to these complaints than men; and the children of the poor, more so than those of the rich.

The gravel and stone being so nearly allied, and the treatment being the same in both cases, we shall include both diseases under one common head.

The cause which produces the formation of gravel and stone, or calculi as they are termed, is still imperfectly known, though commonly attributed to an acid principle in the urine, termed the uric acid, which seems confirmed by the benefit derived in cases of this kind from a course of alkaline medicines.

Those who are in the decline of life and who have been engaged in sedentary employments, or who are much afflicted with the gout, are most liable to the gravel. Persons who reside in cold climates are also much more liable to this complaint than those who live in warm ones.

A fit of the gravel is attended with a fixed pain in the loins or small of the back, sometimes shooting down to the thighs; numbness of the thigh or leg on the side affected, retraction of the testicle, nausea and vomiting, with sometimes a slight suppression

of urine. As the gravel removes from the kidneys down through the ureter, it sometimes produces such acute pain as to occasion faintings and convulsive fits.

When a stone forms in the bladder, too large to pass, there arises a frequent disposition to make water, which flows in small quantity, often drop by drop, attended towards the end, and afterwards, by excessive pain. The patient cannot bear any kind of rough motion; nor can he make use of severe exercise without enduring great torture; and perhaps bringing on either a bloody discharge of urine, or a temporary suppression of it.—With these symptoms he has a pain in the neck of the bladder, tenesmus, frequent nausea, and sometimes a numbness of one or both thighs, and retraction of the testicles.

**TREATMENT.**—Various remedies have been recommended for this painful malady, and many cases have been reported verbally, of the stone being dissolved by them; but there are no well attested cases of this kind, that we know of, on record. Writers, therefore, prescribe no other means of performing a cure of the stone than by *lithotomy*; an operation always attended with much danger, especially when the patient is advanced in years, the disease complicated with other affections of the parts, and the general health much impaired. Under such circumstances it should never be attempted.

The gravel and stone, in one sense, form an exception to the general rule, that disease may be removed by one general remedy. Although they may be produced by the same causes, in common, that bring on other complaints, which, as we have heretofore shown, is a failure of the living power, yet, when a stone is once formed in the bladder, we do not expect that the common stimulants and tonics, which act upon the *living* machine, will dissolve it.

We do not, however, deny, that the same remedy which dissolves the stone, may also act otherwise beneficially upon the system; but it does not necessarily follow, that because a remedy acts in a healthful manner upon the living fiber, it will also dissolve or act beneficially upon a dead substance. But nevertheless, our confidence in the goodness of Deity is such, that we believe a remedy has been provided to dissolve the stone, as well as to cure all other complaints; and under this impression, we will throw before the reader the most important means which have been recommended to cure both stone and gravel. We may also further remark, that we have selected such as will be likely to do no harm, and, therefore, any or all of them may be tried, if necessary, in any or all cases of this nature; and eventually, perhaps, something may be found that can be relied upon in most gravelly complaints.

Previously, however, to noticing those remedies which are



supposed to act specifically upon the parts immediately affected, we will observe that the gravelly diathesis or disposition, may be, in common, effectually checked by the use of such means as have a tendency to strengthen the powers of the system, and restore a healthy action to the organs, and particularly to correct the formation of, or to neutralize when formed, the uric acid which is supposed to be principally concerned in the composition of those gravelly or stony substances in the kidneys or bladder. Alkaline preparations, such as pearl-ash, soda, or even wood ashes, will neutralize the acid; and the common course of medicine, with the use of the capsicum, bitter tonic, &c., will correct the secretion, and thus prevent its formation.

As a solvent of the stone, the juice or decoction of garden radishes has been known to perform wonders; in some cases after an entire stoppage of urine had existed for many days, and in one case, after the patient had been given over to die and taken leave of his friends. The virtues of the radish, it is said, were discovered by accidentally allowing a cut root of this article to lay during the night in contact with a stone which had been taken from the bladder of a person who had died from this complaint, and in the morning the stone was partly dissolved. This led to the trial of the juice or tea of the radish in cases of gravel; and in many instances which have been reported to us, its use was attended with complete success. We think, therefore, that this remedy merits a trial.

The injecting into the bladder, of substances which will dissolve the stone, has been recommended by FOURCROY, and perhaps the employment of the radish juice, in this way, might be useful. The method recommended for this operation, is for the patient first to discharge his urine; wash out the bladder by injecting warm water into it, and then discharging it; when the radish juice or tea, about blood warm, should be injected, and retained for half an hour or longer. Weak alkaline preparations have also been recommended and used by way of injection into the bladder. These preparations should be so weak as to be held in the mouth or swallowed without inconvenience; and if the stone contains uric acid, it will be readily dissolved if the injections are persisted in at proper intervals. The injections should be thrown in very moderately.

A tea made of Indian corn, has also been recommended for the gravel; but with regard to this remedy, we are like Naaman, the Syrian, when directed to wash in Jordan to be cured of his leprosy, we think it too simple; yet, like his servant, we would recommend a trial.

The man root, (*Convolvulus panduratus*), either in tea or tincture, is recommended as a valuable remedy for gravel.—It should be taken in moderate doses, several times a day.

Another remedy, obtained from IRA FINCH, Esq., whose authority we consider as highly respectable, is as follows: Take of the fibrous roots of the Queen-of-the-meadow, as much as will lay on the palm of the hand, and pour a quart of boiling water on it, which is to be drank freely and frequently. Then take the same quantity of the fibrous parts of pool-root, and a piece of the root of masterwort as large as the finger and about two inches long, sliced up, and put all into a quart bottle which must be filled with equal parts of whiskey and water. As soon as the liquor has imbibed the virtues of the roots, the patient must take a wine glass full of it three times a day before eating. If, however, it produces a burning sensation in the stomach, which it sometimes does if much weakened by disease, less of it must be taken, and the dose gradually increased as the stomach will bear it. This course must be pursued until a cure is effected, which, if the case be a mild one, will require but a few days; the stone, as it dissolves, will be discharged with the urine, like sand.

The following mode of treating the gravel, is from Dr. J. D. CORNELL, a respectable practitioner, now residing in Lexington, Kentucky:

He directs a tea of the Queen-of-the-meadow to be used, as above stated, which is to be continued until the urinary discharges appear like chalk. At the same time that the patient is pursuing this course, injections into the bladder should be made of the following preparation: Take equal parts of red raspberry leaves and the inner bark of slippery elm, and steep a strong tea of it; to a tea cup full of which, add two tea-spoonsful of the tincture of myrrh. In using these injections, we would recommend the same course to be pursued as heretofore noticed.

The patient should also drink frequently through the day of a decoction of poplar and hemlock bark.

We have also been very obligingly favored with the communication of a highly recommended remedy for the gravel and stone, by Dr. HORATIO R. KEYES, the most material part of which was obtained from the Indians, in Tennessee, which is as follows: Take a handful of the roots of the common blackberry brier, and a small quantity of the virgin\* snake root, more commonly called colic root, and steep them into a strong tea. Whilst this is preparing let the patient take a small dose of cayenne pepper, or diaphoretic powders; and as soon as the decoction of the blackberry roots is sufficiently steeped, half a tea cup full of this must be taken, and in fifteen minutes after half a tea-spoonful of the powder of stone-break, more usually called pleurisy root, in a tea cup full of boiling water sweetened.

---

\* In the first edition, this was printed by mistake, *Virginia* snake root

The same medicines must be repeated in the same manner every hour and a half until relief is obtained, which will usually be within twenty-four hours; during the whole of which time the patient is to be kept in a moist sweat. After administering the fourth course as stated, give a dose of castor oil.

When the stone is dissolved, the patient will experience a cessation of pain, after which he must drink plentifully for a few days of a tea of the garden parsley roots to carry off the sediment from the bladder.

In violent paroxysms of pain so often occurring in gravelly complaints, fomentations made by applying to the painful part, flannel cloths wrung out of hot water in which hops have been steeped, will be found useful; or the vapor bath may be resorted to. Injections should also be administered, at the same time using freely of the nerve powder or its tincture. But if, notwithstanding the use of these means, the pain increases, or does not abate, threatening inflammation, a full course of medicine must be resorted to, which will remove the inflammation and tension of the parts. The patient should also drink freely of a tea made of two parts of poplar bark and one of slippery elm, to strengthen and soothe the affected organs.

Persons afflicted with gravel, should avoid the use of fermented liquors, such as cider, beer, and especially wines abounding with tartar, and all sour substances; and at the same time giving a preference to soft rather than hard water, for ordinary drink.

It is a matter of common observation, that acids, as well as such drinks as are inclined to turn acid or sour in the stomach, aggravate gravelly complaints, whilst alkaline substances relieve them.

The reader is also referred to the *materia medica*, article "*Onosmodium hispidum*," first introduced into the 3rd edition.

## HEADACHE.

THIS complaint is caused by foulness of the stomach, costiveness, the want of free circulation through the head, long exposure to the rays of the sun, want of proper rest, or lying too long in bed, sourness of the stomach, intense application to study, and by too great a determination of blood to the head. It is often an attendant symptom of other diseases, such as fevers, hypochondriasis, hysterics, &c.

Headache in some instances is general over the whole head; at other times it is confined to some particular part; and cases occasionally occur, in which the pain is confined to so small a space that it may be covered with the end of the finger. Affections of this kind are denominated, in the jaw-wrenching language of medical science, *clavis hystericus*.

When the headache is symptomatic of some other disease, it will be pretty sure to go off with the complaint which gave rise to it, as in case of fever; but when it comes on suddenly, is acute, and attended with noise in the ears, giddiness, and loss of speech, it denotes an attack of palsy, or apoplexy. When it takes place in persons who are subject to hypochondriacal or hysterical affections, is very acute, and attended with much throbbing of the temporal arteries, it is apt to terminate in madness. If a headache arises in consequence of some obstinate nervous affection, the patient will be liable to frequent returns of it, and it will be more difficult to cure than most other cases.

**TREATMENT.**—In many cases the most simple means will afford relief. A little bayberry or bitter root snuff; or taking a dose of the bayberry, diaphoretic powders, bitter tonic, or cayenne, will, in a great many instances, remove the complaint.

If it arise from a sour stomach, pearlash water or white lye will give relief; and if from a foul stomach, an emetic should be administered. When costiveness appears to be the cause of it, the laxative bitter tonic, aided by injections, or a cathartic, should be used; and if an over determination of blood to the head causes the headache, a general course of medicine ought to be administered.

Cases of what are termed sick headache, may be relieved and generally cured by taking an emetic, with cayenne and nerve powder, whenever the disease returns; and ought to be followed, for a few days at least, with the use of the bitter tonic, at the same time paying strict attention to the state of the bowels, endeavoring to keep them regular by the use of the laxative bitter tonic, injections, bran, parched corn, or any other simple means. By pursuing this course at each attack of sick headache, many inveterate cases have been entirely cured.

---

### HEARTBURN.

This complaint most commonly arises in consequence of dyspepsy, though it often times occurs with individuals who are otherwise enjoying good health.

Heartburn in its worst form, is a very unpleasant complaint; and cases have even been reported in which it produced death. Its long continuance, when of a very severe form, will induce emaciation and weakness.

The cause of this complaint is evidently either a debility or inactivity of the stomach, or a vitiated secretion of the juices or fluids which are concerned in the digestive process. Hence eating any thing hard to digest or that is inclined to ferment, will usually produce the heartburn in those liable to it.



**TREATMENT.**—To obtain a temporary relief, recourse must be had to alkaline preparations, which will neutralize the acid, and thus correct the acidity for the present. But if we wish to eradicate the complaint, suitable measures must at the same time be taken to give energy and tone to the stomach, and produce a healthy secretion of the gastric juices.

In ordinary cases, the bitter tonic, taken three or four times a day, will be sufficient, in addition to some of the alkaline preparations, to restore the tone and activity of the stomach, and healthiness to the juices. But if the case be a bad one, or if it prove obstinate of cure, a full course of the medicine should be resorted to, and repeated if necessary, until the difficulty is removed. The alkalies and bitter tonic must be continued after the course of medicine, until the symptoms of heartburn are entirely relieved. Bathing the region of the stomach with the tincture of myrrh, bathing drops, or other stimulating wash, will also be serviceable.

Persons who are subject to the heartburn should also be careful about their diet; rejecting such articles as they find are apt to become sour in the stomach. Animal food and shell fish, when they can be procured, not being liable to ferment, ought to form a large proportion of the food of individuals who are afflicted with this troublesome complaint; whilst vegetables, as much as consistent, should be avoided.

Experiment has also proved the fact, that the saliva swallowed along with our food, greatly prevents its fermentation; wherefore persons liable to the heartburn should be very careful in well chewing their food before swallowing it.

---

## HICKUP.

**THIS** is a spasmodic affection of the stomach and diaphragm, arising from some peculiar irritation; and is most common to youth and old age. It is also met with in hysterical women, and at the close of acute diseases or after mortification, in which latter cases it may always be regarded as the forerunner of death.

**TREATMENT.**—The common hiccup of youth or of old persons, may generally be removed by drinking a few small swallows of cold water in quick succession, or by exciting some degree of fear or surprise. A tea-spoonful of sharp vinegar is likewise a pretty sure remedy; or a little essence of peppermint added to the vinegar will increase its medicinal powers.

If the complaint prove obstinate, however, or severe, give a few doses of the nerve powder, or the nervine tincture; or in case these means do not afford relief, administer an emetic or a full course of medicine. A strengthening plaster might also be useful,

applied to the pit of the stomach, or instead of this, the part may be bathed with tincture of myrrh, bathing drops, or pepper sauce.

---

### HYDROCELE.

THIS complaint is confined to the testicles of males, and consists in a collection of water within the scrotum. It is rarely unconnected with some other complaint, though it sometimes exists in persons who are otherwise in good health.

In hydrocele, the scrotum becomes enlarged, sometime to a very inconvenient size ; has an equal appearance, is soft, with a doughy kind of feel, retains the impressions of the fingers the same as other dropsical swellings. The countenance yellow ; the appetite fails ; the urine is deficient in quantity ; the legs swell ; the bowels are hard, and the patient has mucous stools.

TREATMENT.—If there appears to be a general debility of the system, or even only a slight derangement of the living functions, a course of medicine ought to be resorted to, and repeated as often as the symptoms of the case seem to demand it. Bathing the affected part with either the tincture of lobelia or of myrrh, will be beneficial, and should be daily attended to. At night on going to bed, a hot brick or rock wrapped in a wet cloth, should be placed near the part affected to promote the absorption of the water.

If notwithstanding this treatment, the water should not be carried off, a very slight puncture or opening must be made with the point of a lancet, sufficient, however, to drain off the water. When this is accomplished, the puncture should be covered with lint, which must be confined with a bandage around the part. Should the puncture, however, become inflamed, an elm and ginger poultice must be applied, and managed in every respect the same as any other ulcer.

After the operation of tapping and drawing off the water from the scrotum, the patient ought to be carried through a course of medicine, and if necessary repeated, which will have a powerful tendency to preclude the reaccumulation of the water and prevent inflammation and mortification of the puncture, which sometimes take place. Diuretics may likewise be useful, for which see under the proper head ; and if the scrotum should continue to fill with water, the tapping may be repeated, pursuing the medical treatment as herein laid down, until a cure is effected.

---

### IMMODERATE SWEATING.

IMMODERATE SWEATING is commonly an attendant upon some other complaint, though it is sometimes an original disease. **A**

is always the effect of weakness, accompanied by an unusual determination to the surface of the body.

The effect of profuse perspiration, when it prevails as a disease, is to increase the debility by which it is caused. It is most commonly met with in the last stages of consumption, and during the sweating stages of intermittent fevers, when much weakness and debility of the cutaneous vessels prevail; and especially during sleep.

**TREATMENT.**—The use of bitter and astringent tonics, will be highly useful in cases of debilitating sweats, but the remedy most to be relied upon in such cases is cold bathing. The patient should take a dose of cayenne, or hot bitters, when he must be stripped, and have a quart or two of cold water poured on his shoulders, so that it will run down over the whole surface of the body, and then be wiped dry, and go to bed. Showering in this way may be done before the patient goes to sleep, or after he awakes, or both, as may seem most prudent. In the colliquative sweats which attend the last stage of consumption, no method of cure can be relied upon.

---

### INFLAMMATION OF THE BLADDER.

**TENSION** or hardness, and great pain in the region of the bladder, a frequent desire to make water, with difficulty in voiding it, and sometimes a total suppression, together with tenesmus and fever, and a hard pulse, are the distinguishing symptoms of this complaint. There is frequently sickness at the stomach and vomiting, and in some cases delirium.

Inflammation of the bladder is rarely a primary disease; arising most commonly in consequence of inflammation of the adjacent parts, or from stone in the bladder. It may also sometimes be occasioned by a great distention of the bladder, in consequence of a suppression of urine from any cause whatever.

**TREATMENT.**—In the treatment of this complaint, care should be taken to keep the bowels loose, and to prevent any accumulation of the feces in the rectum. For this object, laxative injections should be freely used, and if necessary, some laxative medicine taken into the stomach. To answer either of these purposes, castor oil, slippery elm, or the butternut syrup, may be employed.

The slippery elm taken into the stomach, will also have an effect to shield and soothe the inflamed part; and thus have a tendency to allay the irritation attendant upon this complaint.—Frequent doses of the cayenne and nerve powder, should also be taken, and a hot stone placed near the part affected.

Bathing the region of the bladder with the tincture of myrrh,

or any other stimulating wash, will also have a good effect.—Fomentation with cloths wrung out of a hot decoction of hops, may also be very serviceable in allaying the intense pain.

But if these means do not afford relief, or if the attack be very violent, a course of medicine should be resorted to immediately, and repeated as the circumstances of the case may require, as being the most certain means of speedily arresting the inflammation. The plan above recommended, should also be pursued between the courses of medicine, with the addition of the bitter tonic, or a tea of poplar bark and sumach leaves.

---

#### INFLAMMATION OF THE BRAIN, OR PHRENSY.

PHRENSY, properly speaking, is either an inflammation of the brain, or of any of the membranes which surround it within the *cranium*.

The characteristics of this complaint are, high fever, severe pain in the head, redness of the face and eyes, intolerance of light and sound, watchfulness, and violent delirium.

This disease, like many others, is sometimes a primary affection, but oftener symptomatic of some other complaint; being primary or idiopathic, when it exists independent of any other disorder; and symptomatic, when it arises in consequence of some other disease, as fevers, &c.

Violent fits of passion, intense study, excessive venery, external violence, such as blows on the head, concussions, fractures of the skull, an immoderate use of strong drink, long continued exposure to the rays of the sun, &c., &c., are the most common causes which give rise to idiopathic inflammation of the brain.

Primary phrensy is usually preceded by long continued and almost constant wakefulness or watching, or if the patient inclines a little to sleep, he has frightful dreams; acute pains at first in the neck and back part of the head, which afterwards extend to the whole head; deep breathing comes on, with inability to recollect circumstances which have lately happened, suppression of urine, and an irregular pulse.

As the disease advances, the eyes sparkle, and are violently agitated, attended by a ferocity of countenance, with universal restlessness, deafness, great confusion of ideas, violent ravings, intolerance of light, visible pulsation in the arteries of the neck and temples, with the most furious delirium. The tongue is dry, rough, and of a yellow or black color; the face is of a deep red, and the pulse is small, quick, and hard.

When inflammation of the brain arises in consequence of some other disease, such as acute fever, or some inflammatory affection, it is usually accompanied with inability to sleep, con-



stant watching, delirium, picking at the bed clothes, redness and fierceness of the eyes, wild look, and deep breathing.

This complaint is distinguished from madness, by the quickness of the pulse, the attendant fever, and pain in the head; and from that kind of delirium which occurs in low fevers unaccompanied with inflammation, by the appearance of the countenance and eyes; for in the true phrensy the face is red, the features are rather enlarged than shrunk, and the eyes stand out of the head and sparkle; whereas in the delirium of low fevers, the face is pale, the features shrunk, and the eyes are pearly.

Phrensy, whether primary or symptomatic, is always to be regarded as a dangerous and alarming complaint; frequently proving fatal between the third and seventh day; or if long protracted often terminates in madness and great prostration of strength, or in stupor and insensibility.

Grinding of the teeth, white or ash-colored stools, suppression of urine, startings of the limbs or twitchings, convulsions, cold sweats, fluttering pulse, and coma or sleepiness, denote a fatal termination.

But, on the contrary, if there comes on a copious hemorrhage or bleeding from the nose, mouth, lungs, or urinary passages; if the delirium is relieved by sleep, and the patient remembers his dreams; and if the perspiration becomes free and general; with the deafness diminished or removed; the pulse less frequent, but fuller and soft, and the feverish symptoms more mild, then there are hopes of a recovery.

**TREATMENT.**—Whenever an attack of phrensy is perceived, no time should be lost in adopting the most energetic measures to allay the inflammation. In the first place, three or four cathartic pills should be administered, to operate as a purge; and if the bowels are costive, stimulating injections should be used to forward the operation.

Whilst we are waiting for the pills to produce the desired effect, the patient should have repeated doses of the cayenne, which will not only have a tendency to promote the operation of the pills, but will also assist in keeping up the strength of the patient, and in promoting perspiration.

Milk porridge, broth, or soup, should also be given to the patient whilst under the influence of the physic to prevent the debility which attends the active operation of cathartics; and if the pain in the head be very violent, cold water, or snow or ice and water, may be applied to it by means of wet cloths, and repeated as often as they become warm.

Immediately after the operation of the pills, if the symptoms be not very much abated, the patient should be taken through a full course of medicine, which must be repeated at suitable intervals until he is out of danger. Between the courses, he

should have frequent doses of cayenne, whilst every other means of promoting perspiration should be carefully attended to; and also frequently administering injections, or if the bowels do not continue quite loose, another dose of the pills should be given after two or three days. The head should also be kept cool with water or vinegar, and raised as high as the patient can comfortably permit. The feet should also be occasionally bathed in warm water, to which has been added a little pearl-ash or white lye; and have either hot bricks or drafts, of the leaves of common cabbage, skunk cabbage, or horse radish, wilted by the fire, applied to them.

During the whole course of the disease, the patient must be kept as quiet as possible, having the light excluded from him; with nourishing food and cold drink, which, if he prefer it, may be acidulated with vinegar.

---

#### INFLAMMATION OF THE EYES.

SORENESS of the eyes may arise in consequence of some other disease, or it may be occasioned by other circumstances.

The most common causes of sore eyes are external injuries, such as blows, bruises, or other wounds on or about the eye; extraneous or foreign bodies getting under the eye-lids; some of the eye-lashes growing too near the inner edges of the lids, or the ends turning inward and irritating the eye; exposure to cold or to cold dry winds; acrid fumes, such as the smoke of coal, wood, or turf; exposure of the eyes to a strong light; intemperance in drinking; reading or performing any kind of work requiring close attention of the eyes by candle light; and it is supposed sometimes to arise from an acrimony in the blood. It is also thought occasionally to take place from contagion; and often prevails as an epidemic, in which case it must proceed from a vitiated state of the atmosphere.

Inflammation of the eyes often comes on with a sensation as if sand had by some means got into the eye, which is especially the case at evening. In some instances this complaint proceeds no further but gradually goes off. But at other times it is followed by, or accompanied with, heat, redness, and pricking, with darting pains. Sometimes they continue in this situation through the whole course of the disease; whilst in other cases, the eye-lids swell, the vessels of the eye become full and enlarged; great pain is excited in moving the ball of the eye; the patient cannot bear the light, and water issues from the eye of so acrid a nature that it seems like scalding the skin wherever it touches; and in the highest stages of inflammation, the whole eye seems as if filled with hot water.

In extreme cases of inflamed eyes, if the inflammation can-

not be speedily checked, suppuration will ensue which has sometimes ended in the complete destruction of the eye-ball, and loss of sight.

**TREATMENT.**—As many cases of sore eyes no doubt occur from the circumstance of *wild hairs* growing in the eye without the fact being suspected, it would be well in all cases which do not occur epidemically, and especially when but one eye is affected, to inspect the eye critically before applying any kind of medicine; as we have found in many instances, after the patient had been tortured with washes and eye-waters to no purpose, that the whole difficulty was caused by very fine hair or hairs growing in such a way as to come in contact with the eye-ball. These wild hairs, as they are termed, are often so extremely fine and delicate as to be imperceptible to the best eye only when placed in a certain position to the light: therefore, if they are not readily discovered, the inflamed eye should be placed in different positions, and thus the hairs may ultimately be perceived. A little practice will be very beneficial in enabling a person to discover them with facility. These hairs are to be removed by plucking them out with small forceps or tweezers, when the soreness of the eye will soon cease.

A vast many external remedies have been recommended and used for inflamed eyes, sometimes one and sometimes another appearing to afford relief; whilst at other times nothing has seemed of any avail.

Washing the eyes with salt and water, or with sweet milk and water, will often reduce the inflammation and remove the pain; and in those cases where there is a sensation of sand in the eye, with little or no inflammation, the application at evening, of a little soft tallow from the candle will give ease.

A very good eye-water may be made by steeping the leaves which remain on the beech tree during the winter, and applying it cold, by means of a rag, to the eye; or the pith of sassafras may be steeped in cold water, and applied in the same way.

We have also heard a wash for the eye highly spoken of, prepared nearly as follows: Take of the limbs and twigs of sassafras, and steep a strong decoction, which must be strained and a portion of mare's milk added to it.

Dr. S. THOMSON directs an eye-water to be made in the following manner: Take white pond-lily, marsh-rosemary, witch-hazle, and red raspberry leaves, make a strong tea of all or either of these articles, and add one third the quantity of No. 6, and a small portion of cayenne pepper. A little of this is to be introduced into the eyes several times a day; and every morning wash the eyes by holding the face in clear water, and open and shut them until well washed. Instead of the No. 6, the tincture of myrrh may be used.

Dr. W. H. ANDERSON, of Warren county, Ohio, makes a very valuable eye-water by mixing at discretion the tincture of lobelia, water, and golden seal roots, finely pulverized, which in a day or two, may be carefully poured off, and kept in vials for use. A little of this may be dropped into the eye, or it may be introduced into it any other way, several times a day.

Some remarkable cures have been performed, by washing the eyes in water in which potatoes have been boiled.

A decoction of the golden seal alone, is highly extolled as an eye-water by many.

Poultices made of slippery elm, or of lynn or basswood bark, mixed with cold water, applied to the eyes, and renewed as often as they become warm, have often proved highly beneficial. Before they are laid on the eyes, a thin cloth should be spread over them, to prevent the poultice from coming in immediate contact with them.

Other highly valuable preparations for the eyes, may be found under the head "*eye-waters*," in this volume.

But if these external applications fail of the desired effect, we can recommend nothing better than Dr. ABERNETHY's rule, which he laid down for all diseases, viz: "take care of the stomach." The common course of medicine, in bad cases, which do not yield to other means, such as mild cathartics, with the astringent and bitter tonics, must be resorted to, minding also to continue the external applications to the eye until the inflammation and soreness are gone.

In some instances, the eyes, although the soreness is entirely removed, remain weak and diseased for some time. In these cases, the eye-water should be made more stimulating with the addition of cayenne or brandy.

---

#### INFLAMMATION OF THE INTESTINES.

THE characteristics of this complaint are, sharp pains in the bowels, spreading round the navel, nausea, vomiting, obstinate costiveness and fever; and it is principally to be distinguished from colic by the quickness, hardness, and smallness of the pulse, and by the pain being increased by pressure on the abdomen, whilst in colic this will afford relief.

The causes of this complaint are, principally, acrid or irritating substances in the intestines, such as hardened fæces, or acrid bile, &c. &c.; but more frequently the application of cold to the feet, or the abdomen itself. This disease is more apt to occur with old than young persons, and is very liable to a relapse. It also frequently proceeds with great irregularity; the patient being at times comparatively easy, and then again in much distress.



Inflammation of the bowels comes on with an acute pain, extending in general over the whole abdomen, but more especially around the navel; the pain being greatly aggravated on pressure. These symptoms are attended by belchings, sickness at the stomach, a vomiting of bilious matter, obstinate costiveness, thirst, heat, great anxiety, and a quick, hard and small pulse.

As the disease progresses, the pain increases, the bowels become affected with spasms, the whole region of the abdomen is highly painful to the touch, and appears as if drawn together in knots; the most obstinate costiveness prevails, and the urine is voided with great difficulty and pain.

This complaint is to be regarded as one of much danger, and may either go off by resolution, or the inflammation may progress, and finally terminate in ulceration, scirrhus, or mortification. Death may also take place during the inflammatory stage; and mortification sometimes occurs within a few hours from the commencement of the disease. This is known to have commenced, by a sudden remission of the pain, sinking and irregularity of the pulse, shrinking of the features, cold sweats, fainting, suppression of urine, hickup, and distention of the belly, which gives a sound on being struck with the finger.

If the pain abates gradually, if the costiveness gives way and the stools appear natural, if a universal perspiration takes place, and the pulse becomes firm and equal, or if a copious discharge of loaded urine, with the same kind of pulse, comes on, a resolution and favorable issue may be anticipated.

Its termination in ulceration, which is uncommon, can only be known by an abatement of the feverish symptoms, attended by occasional pains and rigors, and a discharge of pus with the stools.

**TREATMENT.**—We may commence the cure of inflammation of the intestines with the free use of injections, and bathing the whole abdomen and even body with the anti-emetic drops, and cloths may be wet in the same and laid on the bowels. This last will not only materially assist in reducing the inflammation, but will also help to loosen the bowels, and promote the operation of other medicines.

After the administration of a few injections, some of which should be composed of slippery elm bark steeped in catnip tea, no time should be lost in taking the patient through a thorough course of medicine; and whilst under the operation of the emetic, care must be taken to keep a hot stone or brick near the bowels. If the course of medicine do not remove the pain, frequent doses of the diaphoretic powders and cayenne, as well as injections, must be administered, and all other suitable means adopted to keep up a lively perspiration. Bathing the bowels should also be repeated, as often as is necessary, to keep the excitement on

the skin, to which may be added fomentations with hot cloths, bitter herbs, or hops.

Purgative medicines are highly improper in inflammation of the intestines, and should never be administered.

The course of medicine must, if necessary, be repeated at discretion, according to the violence of the symptoms; and the strength and appetite restored, by the use of the bitter tonic.

As this complaint is exceedingly liable to a relapse from the slightest causes, the greatest care and circumspection should be observed after the disease is removed. Improper food and exposure to cold must be carefully avoided, and if costiveness occur, it ought to be immediately removed by injections.

---

#### INFLAMMATION OF THE KIDNEYS.

THIS complaint is considered of two kinds, which are no way different only in the causes which produce them, and in the seats of the inflammation. One kind is occasioned by the gravel or stone, and is seated in the internal parts; the other is produced by the common causes of inflammation, and is seated principally in the membrane of the external part of the kidney; which last is the disease we intend to treat of here; the other having been sufficiently noticed under the head of gravel.

Inflammation of the kidneys may be distinguished from colic, by the pain being seated far back, and by the urine being of a deep red color, voided frequently, and in small quantity at a time; and it may be known from rheumatism, by the pain not being much increased by motion.

From the inflammation attending the gravel or stone, this complaint may be known by the fever which attends it from the first, and by the absence of some of the symptoms attending the gravel, such as numbness of the thigh, retraction of the testicle, &c.

The causes which give rise to inflammation of the kidneys are, external bruises, strains of the back, acrid substances conveyed to the kidneys in the blood, violent and severe exercise, either in riding or walking, exposure to cold, &c., &c. There seems in some an evident predisposition to this complaint, particularly in persons of gouty habits.

Inflammation of the kidney is attended with a sharp pain on the affected side, extending downward along the course of the ureter, and there is a frequent desire to pass the urine, with much difficulty in voiding it; the bowels are costive, the skin is dry and hot, the patient feels great uneasiness when he attempts to walk or sit upright, he lies with most ease on the affected side, and is often afflicted with nausea and vomiting, costiveness, and colic pains.

When this complaint continues beyond the seventh or eighth day and the patient feels an obtuse pain in the affected part, has frequent returns of chilliness and shiverings, then there is reason to apprehend that matter is forming in the kidney, and that suppuration will ensue.

Remission of the pain, fever, and tension, followed by a copious discharge of high colored mucous urine, universal sweating, or a flow of blood from the *hemorrhoidal* veins, are favorable symptoms.

The terminations of this complaint are similar to those of other inflammations, either by resolution, suppuration, scirrhus, or mortification, though the latter is rare. In some cases of dissection after death, it has been found that abscesses had been formed by which nearly the whole substance of the kidney was destroyed; and a few instances have occurred in which the kidney was scirrhus and prodigiously enlarged; whilst others have been met with in which it was nearly wasted away.

**TREATMENT.**—This disease must be treated by bathing with some stimulating wash, by injections, and by courses of medicine, similar to what was directed for inflammation of the intestines. In addition to this, a moderately strong decoction of the peach tree leaves or bark, may be taken in the quantity of a pint or so, in a day, as directed in the treatment of bloody urine.

## INFLAMMATION OF THE LIVER.

THIS disease is generally considered as of two kinds; the acute and chronic; the acute exhibiting the ordinary symptoms of inflammation; whilst in the chronic they are often scarcely perceptible. Dr. CLUTTERBUCK, however, discards the idea of such a distinction, and considers them "only different degrees of the same affection."

Besides the causes producing other inflammations, such as the application of cold, external injuries, &c., this complaint may be produced by passions of the mind, by violent exercise in which the liver may receive heavy concussions or jars, by intense summer heats, by long continued intermittent and remittent fevers, and by solid concretions, termed gall-stones, in the substance of the liver. But it is more frequently produced, of late years, by that scourge of civilized man, the use of mercury!

In hot climates the liver is more often the seat of inflammation than any other part of the system; and hence its common prevalence in the East and West Indies.

In severe cases of liver complaint, or in that kind termed acute, there is a pain sometimes in the left side, but more commonly in the right, which is increased on pressing upon it with

the fingers. There is also a pain in the top of the right shoulder, and sometimes in the clavicle or collar bone; and with these symptoms there is a cough, oppressive breathing, and difficulty of lying, excepting on the side affected. Nausea and vomiting of bilious matter often attend, and in one case we saw, in the latter stage, the matter thrown up, as well as what passed downward, resembled coffee grounds; the bowels are generally costive, though sometimes relaxed; the stools are clay-colored; the urine of a saffron color, and small in quantity; the appetite is lost, and there is great thirst, with a strong, hard, and frequent pulse, hot skin, and the tongue is covered with a white or yellowish fur. When the disease has continued for several days, the skin and eyes become tinged of a deep or dark yellow, which is particularly the case when the disease is caused by gall-stones in the liver.

The symptoms which we have just been describing, are such as attend the worst forms of liver complaint; and should we attempt to give a description of the "different degrees" of this disease, we must trace it through an almost imperceptible gradation, from the most violent affections of fever and pain, down to cases in which the diseased action is scarcely, if at all, perceptible even to the patient himself.

In ordinary cases, however, of liver complaint, there may be a slight pain in the side or shoulder, with a sense of debility and great aversion to motion, though at times the patient will feel more active and energetic. He will also often be oppressed with dull, heavy, gloomy sensations, which are generally worse in the morning, at which time there will frequently be a faint, morbid, and weak feeling in the stomach, sometimes extending below it into the intestines. There is also, at times, an unpleasant sensation produced by breathing, which is worse or better, in correspondence with the morbid feelings of the stomach. Along with these symptoms there is a most disagreeable taste, and collection of sticky, nauseous matter, in the mouth, during sleep, with a very bad breath.

The appetite is commonly impaired, though sometimes it is morbidly increased; the stools are clay-colored, the bowels costive; a weakness and trembling is often induced by slight exertion, and a general agitation of the nervous system ensues.

Inflammation of the liver may readily be distinguished from that of the lungs, by the pain in the shoulder, by the yellowness of the skin, by the less difficulty of breathing, and by the cough being in general accompanied with an expectoration of matter.

This disease, like most other inflammations, may end in resolution, suppuration, mortification, or scirrus, in which latter case, the liver becomes swelled and hard. A termination in mortification is, however, a rare occurrence. When it runs into



suppuration, the matter may be discharged externally through the side, in consequence of the liver adhering to it; or it may pass off by the biliary ducts, into the intestines, or it may be discharged into the thorax or abdomen, in which case it will soon prove fatal. It, however, very rarely ends in suppuration in cold climates. Persons addicted to the use of ardent spirits are most liable to scirrosities of the liver.

**TREATMENT.**—Liver complaints are often obstinate to cure, and sometimes, indeed, are quite beyond the reach of medicine. The chronic form, especially, is frequently so insidious in its attacks, that it is very often suffered to go on for years before any serious attempts are made to check its progress; when it is, in many instances, too late to do any thing more than palliate the symptoms, and make the patient a little more comfortable.

In cases of inflammation of the liver, the cure may be commenced by giving three or four cathartic pills, which should be followed by occasional doses of cayenne; and if there be severe pain in the side, it should be bathed with the bathing drops, or some stimulating wash, and have a hot brick or stone applied to it. During the operation of the pills, the strength of the patient should be supported by milk porridge, broth or gruel; and after it is over, the bitter tonic, with additional doses of capsicum, ought to be freely used. If the complaint be of the acute kind, and the severe pain of the side be not abated after the pills have ceased to operate, no time should be lost in administering a thorough course of medicine, which must be repeated, at discretion, until the violence of the disease has subsided. The pills may also be repeated, if necessary, every two or three days, until the disease is removed.

If the complaint be of the chronic kind, the principal dependence to effect a cure, should be placed in the cathartic pills, given two or three times a week, with the laxative bitter tonic several times a day, to keep the bowels loose and strengthen the digestive powers. A strengthening plaster applied to the region of the liver, will also be found beneficial. We ought, however, to administer a course of medicine after the operation of the first dose of pills, and repeat it once or twice a week afterwards. To strengthen the nervous system, the nervine powder or its tincture should be taken in such quantity, and at such times, as the circumstances of the case may require.

---

### INFLAMMATION OF THE LUNGS.

This complaint is characterized by a dull pain in some part of the chest, difficulty of breathing, cough, frequent and commonly full, hard pulse, white tongue, high colored urine, &c

Inflammation of the lungs is mostly caused by exposure to cold: though it is occasionally produced by violent exertions in singing, or by playing on wind instruments. It also appears as a symptomatic affection in some diseases, such as measles, catarrh, &c. Persons who have had one attack of inflammation of the lungs, are found to be predisposed to returns of it.

It comes on with an obtuse or dull pain some where in the chest, or side, great difficulty in breathing, especially if the patient attempt to lie on the affected side, hard cough, dry skin, heat, anxiety, flushing of the face, and thirst. The pain in the chest is very much increased by coughing, or by drawing a deep full breath. The pulse, at first, is most commonly full, strong, hard and frequent; but in the latter stages, it usually becomes weak, soft, and often irregular. At the commencement, the cough is frequently dry; but in some cases it is moist even from the beginning. The matter spit up is various both in color and consistence, being often streaked with blood; at which, however, no alarm need be taken.

If relief be not seasonably afforded, and the inflammation proceed with such violence as to threaten suffocation, the vessels of the neck become turgid and swelled; the face turns purple, an effusion of blood into the cellular substance of the lungs takes place, so as to impede the circulation through them, and death soon closes the scene.

Suppuration sometimes occurs, and may happen once in a while during the first week of the disease, but more usually in the second, which is to be known by an abatement of the pain and sense of fullness in the part, slight shiverings, the patient is able to lie with greater ease on the affected side, the feverish symptoms abate, and the breathing is less painful, but more oppressed.

When the collection of matter comes to maturity, it sometimes bursts into the air vessels or cells, and causes immediate suffocation; whilst at other times it will be spit up. The spitting often continues long, and the patient appears as in a consumption. Sometimes the matter bursts into the thorax, in which case there is a possibility of recovery.

The complaint is, in some instances, carried off by a great flow of urine, which deposits a copious sediment, or by a diarrhœa, by sweats, by bleeding from the nose, or by a free expectoration of matter from the lungs, without which last, inflammations of the lungs very rarely terminate.

A high degree of fever, attended with delirium, much difficulty of breathing, acute pain, dry cough, or if there be an expectoration of a very dark color, or a sudden cessation of the pain, or of the expectoration, followed by a change of countenance, or a

lividness of the lips, and sinking or irregularity of the pulse these denote great danger.

But on the contrary, an abatement of the fever, and of the pain and difficulty of breathing, taking place on the coming on of a free expectoration, or at the accession of any other critical evacuation, such as a copious discharge of urine, diarrhœa, or bleeding at the nose, we then may calculate on a favorable termination.

**TREATMENT.**—As this disease runs its course, and proves fatal, sometimes in a very few days, the most energetic measures should be taken at the very outset; as by doing this, much pain and hazard, and even life itself, may often be saved. A most thorough course of medicine should be immediately resorted to, and repeated daily until the violent symptoms are abated, and the patient out of danger. A strong tea of the butterfly or pleurisy root, taken freely, will be found to relieve the difficulty of breathing and promote expectoration, as well as to reduce the inflammation. After the course of medicine, if the bowels are in a morbid condition, a dose of some cathartic medicine should be taken, for which purpose castor oil, black root, or butternut syrup will answer a good purpose; always remembering, not only in this, but in all other complaints, to make injections answer to keep the bowels regular if possible. Bathing the region of the pain with equal parts tincture of lobelia and myrrh, or any stimulating wash, will be found very serviceable.

When the difficulty of breathing is great, frequent doses, consisting of from half to a whole tea-spoonful of the tincture of lobelia, must be administered; and if this does not afford considerable relief, the same quantity of the antispasmodic tincture must be used instead of the lobelia tincture. These directions should by no means be disregarded, as the safety of the patient, in the most violent cases, will very much depend upon it. The vapor of vinegar and water inhaled into the lungs, as hot as can be borne, will also be found an excellent method of obtaining relief from the pain and difficulty of breathing. It will likewise have a tendency to promote either the resolution or suppuration of the inflammation. This process may be often repeated, with the happiest effects. For the method of its application, see treatment of inflammatory sore throat. Slippery elm tea or other mucilaginous drinks should likewise be freely used.

In bad cases, much care must also be taken to keep up a perspiration, by the free use of cayenne, and the application of hot rocks, as a great deal will depend, in the worst forms of the complaint, on attention to this circumstance. After the disease is removed, the strength and appetite must be restored by the use of the bitter tonic.

## INFLAMMATORY FEVER.

THIS fever is characterized by much increased heat, frequent, strong, and hard pulse; the urine is red; with but little or no affection of the brain at the commencement; although in the advanced stages, the mind may be much impaired.

An inflammatory fever is considered by the generality of medical men, as a state of the system directly the reverse of that of typhus; as in fevers of the typhus, or typhoid type, instead of the pulse being full, strong, and hard, it is small and weak, with symptoms of great debility. But, in reality, the state of the system in both cases is the same, varying only in the degree of its strength or weakness, or in the force of the living power. This variation is produced by the exciting causes of the disease and the state or condition of the system when those causes are applied to it.

For instance, if a person in the vigor of life, and in sound health, is exposed to cold which produces fever, it will almost assuredly be of an inflammatory character. On the other hand, if a person of weak lax fibers, or one who leads a sedentary and inactive life, which always impairs bodily vigor, becomes exposed to the causes that produce typhus fever, (contagion and the depressing passions) the fever will certainly be of the typhoid type or kind. These examples, we think, are sufficient to illustrate our ideas.

An inflammatory fever comes on with a sense of lassitude and inactivity, or weariness, succeeded by giddiness, rigors, and pains over the whole body, particularly in the head and back. These symptoms are shortly followed by redness of the face, throbbing of the temples, great restlessness, intense heat, thirst, oppression of breathing, and sickness at the stomach. The skin is dry and parched; the eyes appear inflamed, and are incapable of bearing the light; the tongue is of a scarlet color at the sides, and furred with white through the middle; the urine is red and in small quantity; the bowels are costive; and there is a quickness, with a fullness and hardness of the pulse, which is not much affected by pressure upon the artery. If the feverish symptoms run high, and the disease be not removed at an early period, stupor and delirium come on at a more advanced stage; the imagination becomes much disturbed and hurried, with violent raving.

The disease, if left to itself, goes through its course in about fourteen days, and terminates either by a moist sweat, diarrhœa, bleeding from the nose, or the deposit of a copious sediment in the urine; preceded usually by some variation in the state of the pulse.

If the fever runs high or continues many days with a very



quick pulse, flushed turgid face, red eyes, intolerance of light, with giddiness, or early stupor and delirium, the event may be doubtful; and if, besides these, there is a picking at the bed clothes, startings of the limbs, involuntary discharges by stool and urine, with hickups, the disease will then certainly terminate in death.

But, on the contrary, if the feverish symptoms abate, and all the others become more moderate, and a moist sweat breaks out, the urine deposits a brick-like sediment, and the pulse becomes more soft, or a bleeding takes place from the nose, or a diarrhœa comes on, we may then expect a recovery to follow.

**TREATMENT.**—In a violent attack of this complaint no time should be lost in administering a course of medicine, which should be repeated every day until the urgent symptoms are removed. The forehead and temples may be wetted occasionally with cold water, or with vinegar and water, if there be much pain; and injections should be freely used.

If the bowels are much out of order, a cathartic may be administered after the first course of medicine, and afterwards repeated if necessary.

In milder cases, the fever may often be reduced by bathing the whole surface of the body with a weak alkaline wash, which softens and relaxes the skin and promotes perspiration. This process may also be advantageously resorted to in worse cases, and may supersede the vapor bath, or it may be employed immediately preceding that operation, by which sweating will be the more readily induced. The alkaline wash always has a tendency to reduce the heat of fever, and is very grateful to the patient.

During the recovery, the bitter tonic ought to be used to promote the appetite and strengthen the digestive powers; and if costiveness arise, injections or some mild physic must be administered. Strict attention must also be paid to diet; scrupulously avoiding to over-load the stomach, and shun all other causes likely to produce a relapse.

---

### INFLAMMATORY SORE THROAT.

SLIGHT cases of this complaint are commonly termed sore throat; but if it proceed further, and threaten to suppurate, it is usually called quincy or quinzy.

Inflammatory sore throat or quinzy, may be readily distinguished from the malignant sore throat, by the greater strength of the pulse, and difficulty of swallowing, and by the absence of ulcers in the throat, as well as by there being no eruption of the skin.

The causes which usually give rise to this complaint are, exposure to cold, either from sudden changes of weather or from being placed in a current of air, wearing damp clothes, sitting in wet rooms, getting the feet wet, or by coming suddenly out of a hot room into the open and cool air. It may also be occasioned by violent exertions of the voice, blowing on wind instruments, &c. &c.

It principally attacks youth, or those of a full habit, being chiefly confined to cold climates, and occurs usually in the spring or fall.

In some persons there seems to be a peculiar tendency to this disease, as from almost any exposure to the exciting causes, it is readily induced.

An inflammatory sore throat manifests itself by a difficulty of swallowing and breathing, attended by soreness, redness, and swelling in one or both *tonsils*, dryness of the throat, foulness of the tongue, pains in the part affected, hoarseness of the voice, and some degree of fever.

As the disease advances, the difficulty of swallowing and breathing becomes greater, the speech is indistinct, the dryness of the throat and the thirst increase, the tongue swells, and is incrustated with a dark fur, and the pulse is full, hard, and frequent.

When the symptoms run high, the whole face partakes of it, the eyes are inflamed; the cheeks are florid and swelled; breathing is performed with difficulty, and the patient is obliged to be supported in nearly an erect posture to prevent suffocation. Deafness, delirium, and coma, sometimes occur.

If the inflammation and swelling proceed to such a height as to stop the breathing, the face will become livid, the pulse sinks, and the disease is quickly ended by death.

The chief danger arising from this complaint is, the inflammation attacking both tonsils at once, and causing so much swelling as to prevent a sufficient quantity of nourishment being taken; or by wholly impeding respiration or breathing; which last, however, seldom happens. Its most usual termination is in resolution, more rarely in suppuration, and scarcely ever in mortification.

Slight fever, swallowing not much impeded, the inflammation being of a deep red color, moist sweat, and a copious *ptyalism* or spitting, or moderate diarrhoea, may be regarded as denoting a termination of the complaint in resolution.

But if suppuration is likely to ensue, the parts affected become more pale and less painful, a sense of pulsation is felt in them, and there are slight rigors or chills. The suppuration sometimes takes place at the lower part of the tonsils, and then the matter is discharged into the œsophagus or gullet, and passes into the stomach, which is only known to have happened by

the immediate relief which the patient experiences. At other times the suppuration takes place at the upper or front part of the tonsils, and the matter is discharged by the mouth, being of a clotted appearance, often mixed with blood, of a nauseating bitter taste, and fœtid smell.

The relief which is often obtained by the discharge of matter is very remarkable from its suddenness; for the patient, who a few moments before was not able to swallow the smallest quantity of any thing, and moreover breathed with the greatest difficulty, now feels perfectly easy, and is able to eat and drink freely.

Sometimes, however, the disease does not terminate by a proper suppuration, but by several small abscesses, which produce trifling superficial ulcers, of a white or gray color; whereas, those in the putrid or malignant sore throat, are of a dark brown, or black color.

If mortification is about to take place, the parts affected lose their red shining color, and from being tense and tumid, they become flaccid or soft and loose, and their color changes to livid or brown; the pulse, from being strong, becomes small, weak, and irregular; the face assumes a cadaverous or deathly appearance; cold, clammy sweats break out; the extremities are cold; coma and debility ensue; and death closes the scene! Terminations of this kind are, however, very rare.

**TREATMENT.**—In mild cases of sore throat, a strong tea of the witch-hazle leaves, and golden seal, with the fourth of a teaspoonful of cayenne in each dose, occasionally repeated, will generally remove it. In worse cases the throat should be gargled with the same article; at the same time keeping the neck warm by the application of a flannel cloth, or woolen cravat.—The front part of the neck, or throat, may also be bathed with pepper and vinegar, or the bathing drops; and the patient should inhale the vapor of vinegar and water, which may be applied by an inhaler, or by putting the vinegar and water hot into a coffee pot, and then dropping a small red hot stone into it, closing the lid, and holding the spout near the face of the patient, who should inhale the steam as hot as he can bear it. This process ought to be often performed, particularly where there is much pain and difficulty of breathing.

The placing of a small quantity of cayenne pepper, in powder, on the back part of the tongue, as near as may be to the part affected, the patient endeavoring so to breathe as not to take any of the pepper into his lungs, has produced the most decided and happy effects. The operation should be repeated at suitable intervals, until the inflammation is removed.

But if the use of these means does not afford timely relief, or if the attack be sudden and violent, then in addition to these, a

course of medicine should be resorted to, and repeated as often, and at such intervals, as the exigencies of the case may appear to require.

In addition to what has been recommended, a poultice of slippery elm and cracker, made very stimulating by the plentiful addition of ginger and cayenne, and applied to the throat, will always be found very serviceable; and in extreme cases, a gargle of the tincture of lobelia, with capsicum, has been used. And if swallowing be so interrupted that sufficient nourishment cannot be taken, the patient must be supported by injections of rich broths, soups, or porridge.

---

### INFLUENZA OR CATARRH.

THIS disease consists in an increased discharge of mucus from the nose, throat, and wind-pipe, accompanied by a slight degree of fever.

It attacks persons of all ages and constitutions, but more particularly the young, and such as have had former affections of the lungs; and it may take place at any season of the year when there are sudden changes of the weather, but it is most common in spring and fall. It often prevails epidemically, and to this form it is, that medical writers apply the term influenza; whilst cases that occur incidentally, are called catarrh or cold. When it prevails epidemically, it undoubtedly depends upon the state of the atmosphere; though in some cases it has been attributed to contagion.

In general it comes on with a dull pain or sense of weight in the forehead, sometimes preceded by a slight chill, a redness of the eyes, and a fullness and heat in the nostrils, which is soon followed by a discharge of thin acrid fluid from the nose, together with a soreness in the wind-pipe, hoarseness, frequent sneezing, dry cough, loss of appetite, and general lassitude; towards evening the pulse becomes considerably quickened, and a slight fever arises.

In the progress of the disorder the cough is attended by an expectoration of mucus, which at first is thin, white, and thrown off with some difficulty; but becoming gradually thicker and of a yellow color, it is at length brought up with more ease and less coughing.

Influenza is seldom attended with fatal consequences, excepting with very young children, persons who are old and feeble, or those who are of a consumptive habit; but usually terminates in a few days, if not too much neglected, either by an increased expectoration, or a spontaneous sweat. It, however, in some instances lays the foundation for pulmonary consump-



tion, or produces a tendency to asthma, or dropsy of the chest. Occasionally it becomes habitual, and is accompanied with difficulty of breathing, especially in winter.

The description which we have given, only applies to the worst forms of this disease, from which it may be traced, by imperceptible gradations, down to cases which do not interfere with a person's ordinary business.

**TREATMENT.**—In ordinary cases of catarrh or common cold, little more, in general, need be done than to avoid exposure, and even this precaution is neglected in thousands of instances with impunity: but if the health be sensibly affected, warm stimulating drinks ought to be taken, such as catnip, mint, or pennyroyal tea, or the diaphoretic powders or cayenne pepper. In addition to this, the feet and legs may be bathed in water as hot as can be borne, and as that in which the feet are immersed becomes cool more hot water must be added to keep up the temperature. The bathing ought to be done before a warm fire, and continued until the patient is in a free perspiration, when one foot must be taken from the water, wiped dry, rubbed all over with tincture of myrrh or other stimulating drops, and when these are dried in apply to the foot and leg a little cream or oil. The other foot and leg must then be served in the same way. This method of treating common colds was derived from Dr. JOHN THOMSON, and, though simple, may be regarded as valuable. He says that in cases where he had reason to believe that six courses of medicine would be necessary to cure a disease, the foregoing process had enabled him to effect it with two. Its benefits, indeed, are not confined to colds and catarrhs, but extend to almost all other complaints.

Should the foregoing means fail, recourse must then be had to the vapor bath, an emetic, or a full course of medicine, as the case may appear to require. If there be a troublesome cough, any of the expectorants may be employed, together with stimulants and tonics as in other cases of disease.

---

## INSANITY OR MADNESS.

VARIOUS names have been given to this disease, such as derangement, mania, craziness, &c. It consists in a derangement of the mental operations of the brain, generally unaccompanied with fever.

Insanity has given rise to a great many ingenious speculations, and fine-spun theories, respecting its true definition, pathology, &c.; but as these cannot, consistently with our plan, be introduced here, we must refer those of our readers who wish to obtain a knowledge of them, to such works as have either

professedly, or incidentally, given the subject a more extensive investigation.

Writers generally divide insanity into two species, the melancholic and furious; which are again subdivided, by Dr. Goon, into several varieties. But of these divisions we think it unnecessary to take much notice.

Madness is occasioned, in general, by affections of the mind, such as anxiety, grief, disappointed love, jealousy, sudden frights, violent fits of anger, prosperity humbled by misfortunes, religious terror or enthusiasm, and by abstruse study; or it may be produced by any thing which affects the mind so forcibly as to take the attention from all other affairs.

In some cases, insanity proceeds from an hereditary predisposition or constitutional bias; and of all the maladies, says Dr. THOMAS, to which the human frame is liable, and which can be entailed upon posterity, mental derangement is surely the most deplorable. It is an indisputable fact, continues he, that the offspring of insane persons are more liable to be affected with insanity, than those whose parents have enjoyed sound minds; which shows that a predisposition or constitutional bias to the disease may be entailed by either parent.

The great variety of symptoms which not only attend the onset of craziness, but also occur in every stage of it, would render any description of the disease imperfect. The dissimilarity of causes which have produced it, the different propensities and habits of life of different individuals, create, of course, a great diversity of symptoms in different patients; all of which are continually modified by the circumstances which immediately surround them, or which incidentally take their attention.

The most distinguishable symptoms which attend the melancholic madness are, sadness, dejection of spirits, love of solitude, or a disposition not to move, or if the patient walks he appears to be in a great hurry, exhibiting singular gestures, with unwillingness to talk, or if he does, his remarks are often very incoherent.

In furious madness, the complaint often commences with severe pains in the head, redness of the face, noise in the ears, wildness of the countenance, rolling and glistening of the eyes, grinding of the teeth, loud shouting or roaring, violent exertions of strength, absurd, incoherent, or obscene discourse, unaccountable malice towards certain persons, particularly the nearest relatives and friends, a dislike to such places and scenes as formerly afforded particular delight; and withal, sensation is so much impaired, that the unhappy patient will often bear to a most astonishing extent, the effects of cold, hunger, and want of sleep.

The common form of insanity is that which is termed inter-

mittent, in which there are paroxysms divided by intervals of quietness, or rationality ; and it is said that patients who are in a furious state, recover in a much larger proportion than those who are melancholic. Under every form of the complaint, the hope of a recovery is usually proportionate to the length of time which has elapsed since the commencement of the disease. Advanced age always lessens the chances of cure ; whilst youth increases them.

It has been observed, that females are more liable to insanity than males.

**TREATMENT.**—This disease requires both a mental and corporeal treatment ; in the former of which, a great deal of skill, judgment, and acquaintance with human nature, are requisite to apply it to the best advantage.

It should always be a primary object to gain the confidence of the patient, and secure his respect and obedience, which can only be done by a mild evenness of temper, and an agreeable dignity of manners. When the confidence of the poor maniac is once obtained, a great deal will have been accomplished, and the administration of suitable remedies, in future, rendered far less difficult.

If the disease has been occasioned by troubles or misfortunes of any kind, endeavors should be used to excite a different train of thought, in order that the patient may forget the cause of his wo.

Such kinds of exercise as the individual is most fond of, should be indulged ; and even hard labor has been found highly useful in removing insanity. In selecting the proper kinds of employment, strict regard should be paid to those which are least likely to produce allusions to the cause of the disease, such as are most agreeable to the patient, and which require the greatest bodily action with the least fatigue.

But in violent cases of madness, the patient should be confined alone, in a dark and quiet room, so that his mind may have the better chance of being composed, and thus become the more readily disposed to sleep. If he appears inclined to commit violence, he ought to be confined in such a way as to prevent any hazard from that source, but in such a manner as is least liable to prove a cause of uneasiness or of injury to himself. Where malevolence appears to be a prominent feature, and the person is very furious, close confinement, in the manner just detailed, is doubly necessary and should be carefully and seasonably attended to. Great care, however, ought to be taken not to confine insane persons unnecessarily, as such restraint will inevitably tend to create an irritation of mind which will protract the complaint, and render it more difficult of cure.

In prescribing medicine for lunatics or crazy persons, the

strongest tincture, or tea, of the nervine powder, has been found of great service; and in one case which has been reported to us, that and the diaphoretic powders and bitter tonic, effected a cure. This remedy gives tone to the nervous system in a more powerful manner than any other article with which we are acquainted; and as those medicines which act upon the nerves most probably do it through the brain, the nervine powder seems eminently calculated to restore the healthy functions of this organ.

We would also recommend the anti-spasmodic tincture, especially in the furious fits, which it possibly might put a speedy end to. Thorough courses of medicine should also be resorted to, and repeated at discretion, which we think would afford the best chance of correcting the morbid affection of the brain. The courses of medicine ought to be followed by the bitter tonic; and if costiveness prevail, by injections.

It has, however, been found, that removing a lunatic patient to an asylum or hospital, affords the best chance of cure; as by this means he is separated from the objects with which he is familiar, and which often call up ideas associated with the cause of his derangement; and on this account, a change of situation, and removal from his friends, will be the more advisable; for it is a fact well known to those who superintend insane persons, that patients are rarely recovered at home. It not unfrequently happens that maniacs, who have been brought from their families, and who were said to have been in a violent and ferocious state at home, become suddenly calm and tractable when placed in a lunatic asylum. And, on the other hand, it is also a fact, that there are many patients whose disorder speedily recurs after having been suffered to return to their families, although they have for a length of time conducted themselves, under confinement, in a very orderly manner.

---

#### INTOXICATION.

WE deem it unnecessary to give any description of the symptoms of intoxication, as all persons, in civilized communities at least, are sufficiently acquainted with them.

Intoxication may generally be distinguished from apoplexy, by the smell of spirits, regard also being had to the circumstances attending the case as well as to the character of the individual.

**TREATMENT.**—A person apparently dead or near dying from intoxication, ought to have his clothes, particularly his neck-cloth, loosened, and if cold, should be placed in a warm though not confined situation, and have stimulating injections administered as soon as possible. These may be composed of warm



water, tea, or milk, with the addition of half a tea-spoonful of, cayenne, and the same quantity of lobelia, seeds, leaves and pods, or their tincture; or for the want of cayenne, take black pepper or ginger in larger quantity; or if no medicines are at hand, warm water may be used alone. These must be repeated until relief is obtained; and if vomiting is not produced by the injections, pour a table-spoonful of the anti-spasmodic tincture down the throat, which will scarcely fail to cause a free evacuation of the contents of the stomach. If it should fail, however, it must be repeated until it does operate, as much may depend upon cleansing the stomach of whatever may yet remain in it.

Affusions of cold water applied to the body, and particularly to the head, have been found very beneficial in many cases.

It is also stated in the Domestic Encyclopedia, that the internal administration of the urine of a healthy person, will quickly remove the intoxicating effects of the liquor.

The application of bottles or jugs, filled with hot water, or of hot bricks, to the feet and legs will likewise be useful, or if the means are at hand, the vapor bath may be more advantageously employed.

---

### ITCH.

THE itch is a disease of the skin, and scarcely ever affects the constitution or general health, even in its worst forms.

It is most usually caused by infection, communicated by immediate contact with a person affected, or by wearing the same clothes, or by lying in the same bed, that such person has worn, or laid in.

The itch first shows itself in the form of small pimples or watery pustules, about the fingers, wrists, arms, legs, and waist, in succession. They gradually assume a yellow appearance, and are attended with an intolerable itching, especially when the patient sits by the fire, or is warm in bed. Driven by the excessive itching, the individual scratches the pustules, by which they are broken, and the matter adhering to the ends of the fingers, is applied to other parts, whereby the disease is communicated to almost any part of the body. It is, however, not dangerous nor difficult of cure, unless too long neglected or improperly treated.

**TREATMENT.**—Various remedies have been employed for curing this filthy disease, some of which, however, such as mercurial ointments, we can, by no means, recommend; but on the contrary, regard them as dangerous applications.

The juice, decoction, or ointment of the root of the narrow dock, we believe is a certain remedy for the itch, if persevered in. We are also informed, by good authority, that the leaves

are equally as good as the roots, and may be used by bruising and then rubbing them upon the affected parts. The broad leaved dock, it is likewise said, proves equally efficacious with the narrow kind.

The juice of the dock may be obtained by bruising and then pressing the roots, or roots and tops; the decoction, by steeping; the ointment, by boiling the roots, or roots and leaves, and straining the decoction, when a little cream, butter, or lard, must be added and simmered until the water is all evaporated. Either of these preparations may be applied to the parts affected once or twice a day; and the decoction taken internally at the same time.

An itch ointment is also made in the Southern States by melting *sweet gum* with sweet oil or lard, and is said to be very useful.

If itch has been neglected until the general health is affected, in addition to the external applications which we have recommended, a few portions of physic may be taken, at intervals of two or three days; or the patient should have a course or two of medicine, and be treated in other respects as for ordinary cases of fever.

#### JAUNDICE.

THIS disease is characterized by a yellowness of the skin, first discoverable in the eyes, a bitter taste in the mouth, sometimes a sense of pain in the right side, clay-colored stools, and the urine obscurely red, tinging things dipped into it of a yellowish hue.

It takes place usually in consequence of an obstruction in the gall ducts, which occasions the bile to pass again into the blood. In some cases it is supposed to be owing to a redundant secretion of bile.

The causes which produce an obstruction of the biliary ducts are, gall-stones, inspissated or thick bile, spasmodic constriction of the ducts, and the pressure made by tumors situated in adjacent parts; hence jaundice is often an attendant symptom of inflammation or scirrosities of the liver, pancreas, &c., and frequently also of pregnancy.

Immoderate use of spirituous liquors predisposes to this complaint, as likewise a sedentary life, or the indulgence in anxious thoughts.

When gall-stones are lodged in the ducts, producing jaundice, acute pains are felt in the region of the parts, which will cease for a while, and then return again; great irritation at the stomach, with frequent vomiting will attend, and the patient experiences an aggravation of the pain after eating. A pain at the

top of the right shoulder is also another symptom of concretions in the gall bladder, or its ducts.

When calculi or gall-stones are passing through the duct into the duodenum, the symptoms are less obscure and uncertain than when lodged in the gall bladder. Sometimes an attack is preceded by, or accompanied with, a sense of coldness in the back and lower extremities; the person is seized with a sudden violent pain exactly where the duct enters the intestine, which is frequently so circumscribed that the patient will often say he can cover it with his finger, and sometimes it shoots through the back and extends up between the shoulders. Persons thus seized cannot lie down in bed, but are obliged to sit up with their body bent forward, which seems to afford a slight mitigation of the pain. Nausea and vomiting commonly prevail, so that nothing can be retained on the stomach; and sometimes bile is brought up, but not always; nor is vomiting a constant attendant. The bowels are invariably bound; indeed, the whole intestinal canal seems to partake of the spasmodic action induced in the duodenum by the irritation of the gall-stones.

Although the pain attendant on the passage of a stone along the biliary duct, is more severe than in inflammation of the liver, still an inflamed state of this organ is seldom induced. Sometimes the pain continues for several hours, and then a remission takes place, either in consequence of the calculus entering the antestine or, otherwise, falling back into the gall bladder. After an interval of some days or weeks the paroxysm perhaps returns again, indicating that the obstructing cause is not yet fully removed.

Biliary calculi or stones, are of various sizes, from a pea to that of a walnut, and in some cases are voided in considerable number; being, like the bile, of a yellowish brown, or green color. They vary also with regard to their figure and hardness; some being very rough and angular, and others oval or round and smooth.

The jaundice comes on with languor and inactivity, often in the extreme; loathing of food, flatulency, acidity of the stomach, and costiveness. As it progresses, the white of the eye, and then the skin, become tinged of a deep yellow; there is a bitter taste in the mouth, especially in the morning, with frequent nausea and vomiting; the urine is high colored, and tinges linen yellow; the stools are of a gray or clayey appearance, and a dull obtuse pain is felt in the right side, which is much increased by pressure with the fingers. There is also a pain in the top of the right shoulder or in the shoulder blade; and in cases where the pain is very acute, the pulse is apt to become hard, and full, with other symptoms of fever.

Where jaundice is occasioned by concretions or stones ob-

structing the biliary ducts, or by a redundancy of bile, if taken in time, but little difficulty need be apprehended in effecting a cure.

But where it is brought on by tumors of the neighboring parts, or has arisen in consequence of other diseases, the event will be more doubtful.

A gradual diminution of the sense of weight and oppression about the breast; a return of appetite; the stools becoming copious and easily procured; the urine increased in quantity, and of a more natural color, are to be regarded as favorable symptoms.

A violent pain in the right side, or in the region of the stomach, the skin becoming of a dark yellow, attended with a quick pulse, loss of flesh and strength, with dropsical swellings of the extremities, chilliness, wakefulness, melancholy, or hickup, denote great danger.

**TREATMENT.**—In mild attacks of jaundice, a dose of the cathartic, or of BUNNELL's pills, and afterwards taking the laxative bitter tonic three or four times a day, will remove the disease; or, if necessary, the pills may be repeated after two or three days.

If there is pain in the side, the painful part should be bathed with some stimulating wash, and have a hot brick or stone placed near it; and if there be pain in or near the pit of the stomach, the same application may be made to it. When there is nausea and vomiting, it should be allayed by the use of strong spearmint tea; and perhaps the pearl-ash water, or white lye, might also be useful. Injections must also be freely employed.

Where the complaint does not readily yield to this treatment, or if the attack be violent, the patient should immediately have a course of medicine, followed by the laxative bitter tonic, injections, &c. If the disease be caused by a gall-stone passing along the biliary ducts, frequent courses of the medicine will have a beneficial influence, not only by relaxing the parts, but the act of vomiting will facilitate the passage of the stone.

Dr. EWELL says, it is believed that a mixture prepared as follows, has destroyed biliary stones, viz: Take sulphuric ether, three parts, and spirits of turpentine, two parts, mix, and for a dose, take one dessert spoonful, or from two to three tea-spoonsful.

---

#### KING'S EVIL OR SCROFULA.

THIS disease consists in hard, indolent tumors or swellings, of those glands termed conglobate, in various parts of the body; but particularly in the neck, behind the ears, and under the chin, which after a while suppurate and degenerate into ulcers. From these ulcers, instead of healthy pus, a white matter, somewhat resembling curdled milk, is discharged.



The first appearance of scrofula is usually between the third and seventh year, though it may arise at any time between those periods and mature age; after which it seldom makes its first attack.

Children of a lax fiber or habit, with a smooth, soft, and fine skin, fair hair, rosy cheeks, and delicate complexion, are most disposed to this complaint; but those of a different character are not exempt from it. It is also apt to attack such children as show a disposition to the rickets, which is marked by a protuberant forehead, enlarged joints, and tumid or swelled abdomen.

Scrofulous persons are often comely and handsome, and rather distinguished for acuteness of understanding and precocity of genius. They are, however, seldom robust, or able to endure hardship or fatigue, without much exhaustion.

Scrofula prevails most in those climates where the atmosphere is cold and moist, where the seasons are variable, and the weather unsteady. From latitude 45 to 60 is the principal climate of this disease.

Besides climate, and exposure to moist air and atmospheric vicissitudes, every other circumstance which weakens the constitution, or impairs the general strength of the system, may be regarded as predisposing to this disease: thus, breathing an impure, tainted air, living upon food of an unwholesome or indigestible nature, which does not afford due nourishment to the body, favors an attack of king's evil, by reducing the strength, and rendering the person weakly.

Scrofula, according to Dr. THOMAS, is a disease of very frequent occurrence in England, particularly in the large manufacturing towns, appearing under various forms, and different degrees of severity, from a state of mildness, which hardly betrays any perceptible external symptoms, to a state of violence which produces the most miserable objects of human wretchedness.

The attacks of this disease appear to be somewhat affected by the seasons. They usually commence some time in the winter or spring, and often disappear or become much relieved during the summer and fall.

The first appearance of scrofula is commonly in small round, movable tumors under the skin, without pain or discoloration; which most commonly arise upon the sides of the neck, near the ear, or under the chin; though in some instances the joints of the elbows or ancles, or those of the fingers and toes, are the parts first affected. In these last instances, however, the swelling appears to be attached to, and almost surrounding, and stiffening the joint.

After a time the tumors become larger and more fixed, the skin which covers them acquires a purple or livid color; and

becoming inflamed, they at length suppurate and break into one or more little holes, from which oozes a matter in appearance somewhat healthy at first, but by degrees changes into a substance resembling curdled milk. And it is no uncommon thing to find tumors in various parts of the body, in all the different stages, from their first formation to those which are discharging matter.

As the ulcers continue to throw forth this unhealthy kind of matter, the tumors gradually subside, whilst the ulcers enlarge and spread unequally in various directions. After a while some of the ulcers heal; but other tumors being commonly formed in some other part, these soon break out; and, in this way, the disease may proceed on for years, until at last, appearing either to have exhausted itself, or the patient, it comes to an end. The scars left after the healing of scrofulous ulcers, are often of a peculiarly ugly puckering appearance.

The eyes occasionally become the seat of the disease, giving rise to painful inflammations, ulcerations, and sometimes blindness. In some instances the bones become affected at the bottom of deep ulcers, which is to be known by the black and fœtid discharges from the part, occasionally attended by pieces of bone. These should be taken from the ulcer as soon as they become detached.

**TREATMENT.**—The common course of medicine will be highly useful in every stage of this complaint, to correct and purify the fluids, and thus check the formation of tumors, or prevent their going on to suppuration.

The tumors should be bathed with highly stimulating washes to promote a healthy action in the vessels of the part, and the laxative bitter tonic taken several times a day. A good nourishing diet ought also to be indulged in, with moderate exercise, in fair weather; and if the patient be living in a low, damp situation, he should be removed to one more elevated and airy.

The use of the vapor and cold bath, will also be found highly advantageous, and ought to be daily resorted to until the urgent symptoms are removed.

Particular attention should be paid to the clothing of scrofulous patients, which ought to be of such a nature as to protect them against all inclemencies of the weather, and keep them comfortable and warm. In cold weather, a flannel dress should be worn next to the skin. Early rising is also regarded as an important thing for persons laboring under scrofula.

If ulcerations have taken place, or the tumors are any of them in an inflamed state, the common slippery elm poultice with the addition of a large portion of either bayberry or birth root pulverized, must be applied cold, and wetted occasionally with a tea of the tops and roots of wild lettuce, or of the beth-root,

or pond-lily. In warm weather these poultices ought to be renewed every twelve or eighteen hours, but in cold weather not so often.

At each renewal of the poultice, the ulcer must first be washed with mild soap suds, then with one of those teas just directed to wet the poultice with, and lastly, occasionally with the compound tincture of myrrh. If the ulcers are very deep, they may be washed out with a small syringe for that purpose; taking care not to throw the fluids in with so much force as to irritate the part and produce pain.

When this process has induced a change, and better appearance of the discharges from the ulcers, the poultices may be omitted, and the healing salve applied; or sometimes it may be advisable to lay a poultice over the salve.

By pursuing the foregoing directions, administering courses of medicine at suitable intervals, with the bitter tonic, to purify the fluids, and invigorate the system; and by judiciously treating the ulcers according to the rules laid down; and persevering a sufficient length of time, a great proportion of scrofulous cases may undoubtedly be cured.

### LOCKED JAW.

THIS complaint consists in an almost constant contraction of several or the whole of the muscles of the body, whilst the senses remain entire.

The complaint usually termed locked jaw, is caused by wounds; whilst another similar to it, is produced by colds, &c., which has been treated of under the head of convulsions or fits.

This disease may be caused by wounds in the flesh, and particularly of the tendons or sinews, made either by puncture, incision, or laceration; that is, by pricking, cutting, or tearing. In warm climates, lacerated wounds of tendinous parts, prove, as Dr. THOMAS observes, a never failing source of this painful and fatal complaint. It also often arises in both warm and cold climates, in consequence of some surgical operation, such as the amputation or cutting off a limb, &c. The disease generally shows itself about the eighth day from the accident, or operation.

The locked jaw, in some instances, makes its attack suddenly, and with violence; but commonly it comes on in a manner more slow and gradual. There is a slight stiffness in the back part of the neck, which after a while increases so as to render the motions of the head both difficult and painful; then comes on an uneasy sensation at the root of the tongue, with difficulty in swallowing, great tightness across the breast, with a pain just

above the pit of the stomach, shooting through to the back. A stiffness now takes place in the jaws, which soon increases to such a degree, that it becomes impossible to open the mouth; and this is the locked jaw.

**TREATMENT.**—We have so much confidence in the botanic remedies, that we think a case of locked jaw would scarcely ever occur, if such injuries as produce this complaint were properly treated by them. In all cases in which the locked jaw may be apprehended, the patient should have frequent doses of the nervine powder, and cayenne, with hot stones or bricks applied, to produce perspiration, and relaxation of the muscles.

If, however, symptoms of the locked jaw occur, the patient must be carried through a full course of the medicine; and the wound should be bathed or washed with the tincture of myrrh, or a decoction of lobelia; which will have a powerful tendency to promote a healthy action, and thus remove the cause of irritation. In extreme cases the wound may be washed with the most powerful stimulants, such as tincture of lobelia or of cayenne, or the anti-spasmodic tincture. This complaint scarcely ever occurs unless there is some previous deviation from a healthy process in the wound; and the sooner this is corrected the better the prospect and the more speedy the accomplishment of a cure. Bathing the wounded part in white lye, as hot as can be borne, and afterwards applying the common slippery elm poultice, has been found of great benefit in this complaint.

But if spasms have actually commenced, and the jaws are set, we must then have recourse to the anti-spasmodic tincture; in addition to which, the above applications must be made to the wound. The anti-spasmodic tincture may be given in doses of from half a tea-spoonful to two tea-spoonfuls, repeated at discretion, according to the symptoms.

As the jaws are set, and the teeth closed, the best way of getting the medicine down, is to hold the cheek, at the corner of the mouth, loose from the teeth, and then pour the medicine from a spoon, between the teeth and cheek, and it will immediately find its way to the throat, and afford relief.

This method of relieving the locked jaw, was first published to the world by Dr. THOMSON, and is far better than knocking out the teeth, as is done by the mineral doctors.

---

### MALIGNANT OR PUTRID SORE THROAT.

**SORENESS** of the throat, with fever, stiffness of the neck, and inflammation of the fauces or back part of the mouth quickly terminating in ulceration, characterize this disease.

The putrid sore throat frequently arises from a humid or moist



state of the atmosphere, and hence often prevails as an epidemic, making its attacks principally on children, and those of weak lax fibers. It is most prevalent in the fall and winter, though it may arise at any other season.

It is also believed to be contagious, and often passes through a whole family in that way.

In some instances it is said to be so blended with scarlet fever as to make it difficult to determine of which affection the disease partakes the most. It is also met with occasionally in measles.

Putrid sore throat commonly makes its attack with cold shiverings, nausea, and vomiting, succeeded by heat, restlessness, thirst and debility; the eyes are red, a stiffness is perceived in the back part of the neck, with a hoarseness of the voice, and soreness of the throat. On looking at the back part of the mouth, there appears a fiery redness in every part, with a slight degree of swelling in the tonsils, which, however, is not so great as to interfere with breathing or swallowing.

Upon further inspection of the month, it will very soon be found that a number of sloughs of a shade between a light ash color, and a dark brown, are to be seen on the tonsils, and other parts of the throat, or mouth; the breath is also highly offensive; the tongue is covered with a thick brown fur, and the inside of the lips is beset with blisters containing an acrid humor, which, when discharged, corrodes or excoriates the part upon which it falls. There is commonly, also, a discharge of thin acrid matter from the nose producing an excoriation of the nostrils. In infants, a purging is likewise apt to attend, which possesses the same acrid and excoriating character with the humor contained in the blisters and that discharged from the nose.

There is a considerable degree of fever from the first attack, with a small, frequent, and irregular pulse; and every evening the symptoms are increased, with slight remissions in the morning, attended with debility and general loss of strength. In some cases there is a delirium which is of what is termed the low muttering kind.

About the second or third day, large patches or blotches, of a dark red color, make their appearance on the face and neck, and by degrees spread, or appear on other parts of the body, even to the ends of the fingers, which feel swelled and stiff. These eruptions after a few days disappear without producing any remission of the symptoms.

Sometimes the inflammation extends up the eustachian tube, into the ear, producing ulceration, and occasionally deafness.—The whole neck sometimes swells, and assumes a dark red color.

As the sloughs continue to spread, they generally become of a dark color, the parts between them at the same time assuming

a purple hue; new specks also arise, and the whole fauces at length are covered with thick sloughs, which, on falling off, exhibit ulcers, sometimes very deeply seated.

In the worst cases, the fauces appear quite black, the sloughs corrode deeper and deeper, and spread throughout the whole alimentary canal, and terminate at length in mortification; or the symptoms of irritation go on increasing, and a severe purging coming on, the patient is cut off, generally before the seventh day, and, in some instances, as early as the third.

When the evening paroxysm of fever runs very high, with great debility, depression or irregularity of the pulse, early delirium, coma, much vomiting, and diarrhœa, accompanied with considerable swelling of the throat, and dark colored spreading ulcers, very fetid breath, livid spots on the body, or hemorrhage, we may calculate on the disease terminating fatally.

But, on the other hand, if the pulse becomes more moderate, and stronger, the breathing freer, the skin moist and soft, the red patches or blotches abundant on the skin, the back part of the mouth becoming more red, with a mitigation of the other symptoms, we may then expect a favorable termination. In cases where the fever is of a less putrid nature, and the symptoms are mild, and where the efflorescence or blotches, is succeeded by a remission of fever, and the remission continuing daily to become longer and more apparent, but little danger need be apprehended.

**TREATMENT.**—No time should be lost in administering a course of medicine at the very onset of this fatal malady.

The bowels should be relieved by the use of injections, whilst purgative medicines must be carefully abstained from, as they would prove highly injurious to the patient.

A free use must be made of the astringent tonics, such as the beth root, dewberry, bayberry, &c., with frequently repeated doses of the cayenne. On account of the ulcers being seated in the mouth, the cayenne may be steeped, and use the tea instead of giving the pepper in substance. Occasional doses of the diaphoretic powders will also be a proper remedy. Pepper sauce will likewise be found a valuable medicine, and ought to be frequently used, especially if mortification be apprehended. In conjunction with the astringent tonics, it is presumed that few remedies possess so high a power of preventing putrefaction as the pepper sauce.

Gargles must also be used to wash the mouth; for which purpose the pepper sauce, and a tea of some of the astringent tonics, with the addition of golden seal, may be used alternately, several times a day; and the steam of vinegar must be often applied, as directed for inflammatory sore throat.

Bathing the throat with stimulating washes, and applying

stimulating poultices, as directed for the complaint just alluded to, ought also to be adopted; and if the throat become so swelled or sore, as to prevent swallowing, the strength must be supported by nourishing injections. By pursuing the course which we have laid down, with such modifications as the peculiar symptoms of the case, or the judgment of the practitioner may dictate, there is no doubt this fatal malady might be robbed of many of its victims.

### MEASLES.

THIS disease is regarded as an inflammatory infectious fever, and is attended with cough, sneezing, a discharge of thin humors from the eyes and nose, and a determination of acrid matter to the surface of the body, showing itself in red spots over every part of it, though they never suppurate as in small pox, but go away in three or four days with a kind of mealy appearance.

Scarlet fever sometimes resembles the measles so exactly that it is difficult to distinguish between them; but fortunately for the suffering sick, in the botanical practice of medicine, this is a matter of little consequence. The redness of scarlet fever is more equally diffused than in measles, in which it appears in distinct spots somewhat resembling flea bites, whilst the skin remains of a natural color between them. In the measles, the eruption rises more above the skin, and causes a manifest roughness to the touch, which is scarcely perceptible in the scarlet fever, excepting a very little roughness sometimes in the arms. In the scarlet fever there is seldom a severe cough; the eyes do not water much, and the eye-lids are not red and swollen; all of which rarely fail to attend the measles. The time of the appearance of the eruption is also different in the two diseases; in scarlet fever it makes its appearance both on the face and arms on the second day; whilst in measles it shows itself about the third day on the chin and breast, and does not reach the arms or hands until the fourth or fifth day of the disease.

The winter season is most congenial to the spread of measles, though they may prevail at any other time, and they attack persons of all ages, but children are most liable to them. Like the small pox, when genuine, they never affect the same person but once in his life.

Persons of a scrofulous habit, or who are inclined to consumption, are liable to suffer very seriously from the after effects of measles; and these effects in all constitutions, are more to be dreaded than the measles themselves. A harassing and distressing cough, or inflammation of the eyes, sometimes follows the disease; or the patient may get through, and for a time

appear to be recovered, and sore eyes, a cough, or consumption may succeed, as a consequence, at some future period.

Measles sometimes leave behind them a chronic diarrhœa, which has proved fatal; and in other cases, a dropsy has ensued.

In some instances they make their attack in a very mild manner, and go through their course without medical aid of any kind; and in others the fever runs high, particularly after the appearance of the eruption, and is accompanied by a strong pulse, much coughing, great difficulty of breathing, and other symptoms of inflammation of the lungs.

An attack of measles is generally ushered in by chilliness and shivering, succeeded by heat, thirst, anxiety, pains in the head, back, and loins; heaviness, and redness of the face and eyes, with an effusion of tears, swelling of the eyelids, nausea and vomiting; and with these symptoms there are a dry cough, hoarseness, hurried breathing, frequent sneezing, and discharge of acrid matter from the nose.

About the third or fourth day, small red spots somewhat similar to flea bites, appear in clusters about the face, neck, and breast, and in a day or two more the whole body is covered with them. They do not arise into visible pimples, but by the touch are perceived to be a little rough.

The fever does not abate on the appearance of the eruption, as happens in small pox; on the contrary, it is usually much increased, and it does not cease until the eruption begins to go away. Also, the cough, hoarseness, difficulty of breathing, and running from the eyes and nose, are aggravated, on the appearance of the eruption.

On the fifth or sixth day, the spots are changed from a vivid red to a brownish hue, and begin to dry away about the face, and on the eighth or ninth day they disappear on the breast and other parts of the body; about which period it is no uncommon thing for a diarrhœa to ensue.

In more malignant forms of the disease, the fever assumes the typhoid type, livid spots appear on the body, with other symptoms indicating a putrid tendency. The eruption also appears earlier in the disease, and all the attendant symptoms are of an aggravated form.

The fever being mild, with a gentle diarrhœa, free and copious expectoration, moisture of the skin at the appearance of the eruption, denote a favorable termination of the disease.

But on the other hand, a high degree of fever, parched skin, hurried and difficult breathing, flushed countenance, unusually hard pulse, severe diarrhœa, and vomiting after the eruption, with great pain in the head and eyes, coma or delirium, livid color of the eruption, great prostration of strength, and intermittent pulse, indicate the greatest danger.



**TREATMENT.**—In mild attacks of measles, little more need be done than to take freely of the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne, and avoid exposure to cold; and at the same time paying particular regard to the state of the bowels, which ought to be kept loose by injections, and, if necessary, by adding some of the bitter root to the diaphoretic powders.

If there appears, about the third or fourth day, a manifest aggravation of the symptoms, and the eruption does not show itself; frequent doses of the cayenne, or a tea of equal parts of saffron and Virginia snake root, must be administered, at the same time applying hot stones or bricks to the feet, to induce a determination to the surface, and bring out the eruption. But if this does not produce the desired effect within some reasonable time, and there is great pain, restlessness, and difficulty of breathing, a few doses of the anti-spasmodic tincture, or a course of medicine, must be administered, either of which will rarely fail of fetching out the eruption, and effecting a mitigation of the symptoms.

If, however, the violent symptoms still continue unabated, although the eruption has made its appearance, frequent doses of the capsicum must be given in a strong tea of bayberry, or other astringent; and, if the urgency of the symptoms appear to demand it, the course of medicine should also be repeated at discretion. A mild purge, perhaps, might be beneficial, minding also to make a free use of injections. Sometimes a looseness of the bowels arises, which may be regarded as being beneficial, unless it be so violent as to produce debility, when it must be checked by the use of the pond-lily, dewberry, or any other astringent articles, and also by the use of astringent injections; or, if necessary, by a course of medicine.

To relieve the difficulty of breathing, the patient may inhale the steam of vinegar and water, as directed for inflammatory sore throat. A soreness and rawness of the throat often occur from the severity of the cough, to relieve which slippery elm, or flax seed tea should be taken. The tincture of lobelia, or the expectorant powder, may be used to loosen and relieve the cough.

The use of the vapor bath, occasionally, after the disappearance of the eruption, will be a good preventive of the sore eyes, and other troublesome complaints which are apt to follow the measles; and if the cough continue bad, threatening consumption, the whole course of medicine ought to be adopted, and repeated as occasion may require, until the urgent symptoms are removed.

---

## MERCURIAL DISEASE.

IN the first volume of this work, we dwelt long on the disastrous effects of mercury upon the animal economy; and now it

becomes our duty to point out the best means of relieving the system from its destructive consequences.

The mercurial disease is characterized by great depression of strength; a sense of anxiety about the breast; irregular action of the heart; frequent sighing; trembling, either partial or universal; a small, quick, and sometimes intermitting pulse; occasional vomiting; pale contracted countenance; sense of coldness; with the tongue but seldom furred.

Mercurial medicines have spread their ravages to such an alarming extent, that it has become an important part of the physician's study, to learn to designate and remove the painful and fatal maladies which are produced by their destructive powers. A great majority of the cases of liver complaint, and many of dyspepsy, which are so common of late years, may be traced to the use of mercury. A simple history of hundreds of chronic cases, of various kinds is—"I had the fever, was salivated, and have enjoyed bad health ever since."

But we have said much upon this subject in the first volume, to which we refer the reader for any further information he may want as to the specific effects of mercury upon the system.

**TREATMENT.**—It has been observed by medical writers, that there was no known remedy which would neutralize, or destroy mercury in the system; that those laboring under its morbid influence could only be relieved by such means as would promote its evacuation through the proper emunctories or out-lets, by which other useless and injurious matter is removed from the body. How forcibly then do these facts recommend the use of the vapor bath or steaming. This process, with the whole course of medicine, gives new energy to the living power, relaxes the constricted vessels, and thus enables the living machine to relieve itself of any poisonous matter by which it may be assailed or encumbered.

When, therefore, we have reason to suspect that an individual is suffering from the effects of mercury retained in the system, we should resort to steaming in the most thorough manner. Nothing but the highest heat which can be borne, will be sufficient to drive this dangerous substance from the body.

In general, the same taste will be experienced in the mouth whilst undergoing a process for expelling mercury, that occurred when the system was first under its influence; and in some instances salivation has ensued, and even purging.

The face often becomes swelled whilst in the vapor bath; to relieve which, the patient should cover his head, so as to admit the hot steam to his face, and keep it exposed to the vapor as long as he can bear it; which process must be repeated until the swelling is gone. Or, after the steaming, when the patient is in bed, take a red hot stone or brick, and cool it just so as

not to burn, then wrap it up in a cloth wet with vinegar and water, with a dry one out side of this, and place it near the face, covering the head and inhaling the steam as hot as it can be borne.

The steaming should be often repeated, the patient at the same time taking freely of the cayenne, and occasionally a full course of medicine. The bitter tonic, made very warm with cayenne, must be taken frequently during the day, and a dose of the nervine powder at night, or if there be much nervous agitation or trembling, the nervine powder, or its tincture, must be taken occasionally through the day. If costiveness prevail, the bitter root, or yellow parilla root, must be added to the bitter tonic. The sarsaparilla may also be used as a common drink, and there is little doubt that the spignet is equally as good.

The patient should live on a good nourishing diet, and take gentle exercise in the open air when the weather is dry ; but, by all means, avoid any sudden and violent exertions of strength, as fatal consequences have been known to result from such causes.

---

#### MILK SICKNESS.

THIS disease, so far as we know, is confined to the Western Country, and even to particular districts of it ; and is also often called Sick Stomach, and Puking Complaint.

The name which is first given, indicates the source whence this disease is usually derived, it being from a poison contained in the milk of animals, particularly the cow ; and the two last are indicative of some of the most prominent symptoms by which it is attended.

We are not in possession at present, of any definite or particular description of this obstinate, and often fatal malady ; but from the best information which we have, we present the following :—

Milk sickness usually comes on with lassitude and weariness, with sense of great exhaustion, and trembling, from slight exertions ; the breath is very offensive, having a peculiar and disagreeable smell. Obstinate costiveness either accompanies or succeeds these symptoms, which are soon followed by sickness at the stomach, and vomiting ; and great distress, with a burning sensation at the stomach. If the costiveness is not removed, the sickness and vomiting continue, and in a short time destroy the patient.

Cattle, hogs, sheep, and dogs, are likewise subject to this disease, and all alike die with it sooner or later. It is communicated to cattle and sheep, as is pretty well ascertained, by eating the leaves of a poison shrub ; hogs and dogs derive it

from eating the milk or dead carcasses of cattle or sheep that die of this disorder, which in them is called the *trembles*; and man takes the complaint from eating either milk, butter, or flesh of infected animals.

The trembles in cattle, and milk sickness in persons, is confined, so far as we know, mostly to a few small districts in Ohio and Kentucky, and perhaps may occasionally be met with in all the Western States.

We have seen several interesting communications from respectable individuals, on this important subject, but we are not able to glean enough from them to enable us to attempt a minute description of the shrub from which those persons suppose the poison is drawn.

**TREATMENT.**—In the milk sickness there can be no permanent relief from the vomiting until the costiveness is removed; and as this is attended with great difficulty, the most efficient means should be at once adopted. The sickness at the stomach and vomiting, usually prevent the possibility of administering physic in such a quantity as to do much good; and reliance must, therefore, be principally placed on laxative injections often repeated and long continued. In some cases, we are informed, forty injections have been administered before the bowels were sufficiently opened.

Charcoal has of late been highly extolled as a remedy in costiveness, and is said to open the bowels when other remedies fail. We are not aware, however, that this article has ever been applied to remove the obstinate constipation which invariably attends the milk sickness, but we are disposed to think it well adapted to that purpose, from its being less irritable to the stomach than the common cathartic medicines.

The injections ought to be made of a tea of the butternut bark or twigs, or of castor oil, or hogs' lard, and warm water, occasionally adding about the fourth of a tea-spoonful of cayenne, and administering in large quantity, as by this means the hardened *feces* contained in the *rectum* will be more readily dissolved and carried out of the system. There will also be an advantage, on this account, in retaining the injections until several of them are administered.

The most effectual method of checking vomiting in ordinary cases, is to administer the anti-emetic or pepper sauce, in table-spoonful doses, once in fifteen or twenty minutes; and perhaps it might also be advantageous in the milk sickness. Pearlash water, white lye, or a solution of salætatus, by correcting acidity of the stomach, might be advantageously employed, or strong mint tea might allay the irritation and check vomiting. It is customary, however, with some practitioners to give an emetic, which we think would be useful, as spontaneous vomiting is



certainly an evidence that some irritating matter is contained in or about the stomach. Promoting perspiration will, at the same time, be beneficial, and may be done, either by steaming, or by placing hot bricks, or stones, about the patient in bed. The bowels or abdomen may be bathed with pepper and vinegar, or with the bathing drops, and then have cloths wrung either out of hot water or a decoction of elder flowers, applied to them. Should the disease be attended with violent hickup, as is sometimes the case, a dose of the diaphoretic powders must be given in water or tea, as hot as can be conveniently swallowed, and repeated until this symptom disappears. After the costiveness is removed and the vomiting stopped, the patient should have a course of the medicine, if much debility and evidence of disorder remain, and in every respect be treated as a person recovering from other kinds of sickness.

---

## MORTIFICATION.

Wounds, amputations, inflammations, ulcers, and some diseases, have a tendency to terminate in mortification, the first process of which is termed gangrene.

The symptoms of gangrene in the four first mentioned cases, are—First, a sudden diminution of the pain and fever; secondly, a livid discoloration of the part, which from being yellowish, becomes of a green hue; thirdly, a detachment or separation of the cuticle or external skin, under which a turbid or dirty looking water is found; and fourthly, a subsiding of the swelling, tension, and hardness, while at the same time a crepitus or crackling is perceived on touching the part, owing to a generation of air in the cellular membrane. But when the part has become black and of a fibrous or thready appearance, and destitute of natural heat, sensation, and motion, it is then said to be in a state of mortification.

In putrid complaints, such as fevers, and sore throat, and in dysentery, inflammation of the intestines, and in any other disease ending in mortification, the symptoms, so far as visible, bear in common the same general appearances and characteristics which are discoverable in mortification of wounds, ulcers, &c.

In dysentery, inflammation of the bowels, &c., where mortification is about taking place, there will be a cessation of pain, and fever; the pulse becomes small, weak, and irregular; the face assumes a cadaverous or deathly appearance; the extremities become cold, with cold clammy sweats over the whole body; and the patient is comatose or sleepy, with symptoms of great debility.

**TREATMENT.**—A variety of articles are used as external applications in cases of mortification of wounded, or ulcerated parts. A poultice of charcoal and yeast, or of the bark of sassafras pounded fine, or smart weed bruised, boiled, and thickened with corn meal, with the addition of a small quantity of cayenne to either poultice, will be found very valuable remedies to prevent or check mortification. A poultice made of the bruised root of the wild indigo, boiled, and thickened with corn meal, has also been highly recommended as an application to mortified parts. The addition of a little capsicum, it is very probable, would increase the anti-septic power of this poultice as well as the others; though either would be highly valuable without it.

Dr. BEACH highly recommends the use of an alkali poultice, made by mixing the pulverized bark of slippery elm with weak lye, until of the proper consistence, and applying it moderately warm to the affected part.

The poultices should be frequently renewed, and at each renewal the ulcer ought to be washed with soap suds, then with a tea of witch-hazel leaves, white pond lily, dewberry, or some other astringent article, and lastly, with the compound tincture of myrrh; when a fresh poultice must be immediately applied.

If mortification has gone so far that the life of the part is completely destroyed, that part which is dead will separate from the living when the mortification ceases, and it should then be removed. After its removal, the wound should be dressed with the healing salve, and if there be symptoms of inflammation, or any other morbid action in the part, one of the poultices heretofore recommended, or the common elm and ginger poultice, may be applied over the salve.

The internal remedies for mortification, which form a very necessary part of the treatment, are such as increase the energy and tone of the whole system. For this purpose, occasional courses of medicine will be highly useful, and between these the diaphoretic powders, bitter tonic, and cayenne, may be employed alternately, or in such way as the judgment may dictate.

Wine is also considered highly useful, especially if the bitter tonic be infused in it, in the proportion of about an ounce of the latter to a quart of the former; which may be taken in doses of two or three table spoonsful, once in four or five hours.

A tea of the wild indigo, taken internally, is highly recommended by Dr. THACHER, as being valuable in mortification, either internally or externally applied. He recommends the tea to be taken internally, at the same time that the poultice is applied externally.

## MUMPS.

MUMPS are distinguished by a moveable swelling, arising sometimes on one, and sometimes on both sides of the face and neck, at or near the angle of the jaws.

This disease is contagious, and the same individual is liable to it but once in his life; and hence it often prevails epidemically, particularly amongst children.

The mumps sometimes come on, especially when they attack persons who have arrived at, or near to, mature age, with a sense of lassitude and inactivity; chills and slight fever; stiffness and pain about the lower jaw, with sometimes nausea, and vomiting. The salival glands then begin to swell, and continue to enlarge until the fourth day, when the swelling declines, and in a few days is entirely gone.

In some instances, the swelling suddenly subsides, with an increase of fever, when the disease becomes transferred to the breasts of females, or to the testicles of males. Such cases as these are usually caused by taking cold. When it attacks grown persons, therefore, great care should be taken to avoid exposure.

Sometimes, also, when the swelling of the face suddenly subsides, before the fourth day, the disease fixes itself in the head, with an increase of the fever, attended with delirium, and, in some cases with fatal consequences.

In a few instances where the swelling has been very large, suppuration has taken place, and occasioned great deformity, or by bursting inwardly, has produced suffocation.

There is, however, in general but little danger from mumps, excepting when the brain becomes affected, which, by proper treatment, may always be prevented.

**TREATMENT.**—In common, this complaint needs no medical treatment; all that is necessary being to have something tied about the face to keep it warm, and in every way avoiding exposure to cold.

If, however, there should be much fever at the onset of the disease, with nausea and vomiting, a course of medicine ought then to be administered, and followed by the bitter tonic and diaphoretic powders. Or, in milder cases, the patient may take the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne, and use other necessary means to promote perspiration, such as sitting before a warm fire, covered with a cloak, coat, or blanket; or he may lie in bed, with a hot brick or stone to his feet.

If the swelling of the neck should suddenly disappear, with an increase of the fever, and the disease seems likely to seat itself in the testicle, the breast, or the head, immediate recourse must then be had to a course of medicine, which ought to be repeated, if necessary, as the circumstances of the case may re-

quire. The bitter tonic, diaphoretic powders, or cayenne, should be used after, or between the courses. The bowels must also be attended to, especially if costiveness prevail, administering injections, or perhaps a mild purge.

The part which the swelling has left, ought to be bathed with some stimulating wash, and have a warm stone placed near it, to promote the reproduction of the swelling.

If the testicles of males, or the breasts of females, become swelled, in addition to the course of medicine just prescribed, the parts must be bathed with the bathing drops, or some other stimulating wash, and have cloths wrung out of hot water applied to the part, or warm stones wrapped in wet cloths may be substituted for the cloths.

A white bean poultice, applied to the testicles, has been highly recommended, in cases where the mumps are transferred to those parts; or the common elm poultice may be useful.

---

#### NETTLERASH.

THIS disease takes its name from an eruption on the skin similar to that produced by the stinging of nettles, and terminates by a disquamation or scaling off of the cuticle.

The eruption is not confined to any particular part of the body, but is somewhat dispersed over the surface, and is always attended with a considerable degree of heat and itching. In some instances the eruption is also either attended or preceded by a slight degree of fever. Sometimes the complaint lasts only a few days, whilst at other times it continues many months, appearing and disappearing at intervals. It likewise usually disappears in the day time, and breaks forth again in the evening, accompanied sometimes with feverish symptoms. It is attended with no danger, and is generally very readily cured.

**TREATMENT.**—A mild purge, followed by a dose of the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne, three or four times a day, for a short time, will generally effect a cure; or the vapor bath may be employed. If the complaint, however, should prove obstinate, a course of medicine must be resorted to, and repeated if necessary; pursuing the same measures as are recommended for measles.

---

#### NEURALGIA OR PAINFUL AFFECTION OF THE FACE.

THIS is one of the most painful chronic complaints to which the human frame is subject; but fortunately, it is of rare occurrence.

The most frequent seats of it are the nerves over the cheek



bone and just below the eye, the ala or wing of the nose, upper lip, teeth, or gums. Sometimes the forehead and temples, and inner corner of the eye, and even the globe of the eye itself, are affected.

This complaint comes on with acute pains shooting from about the mouth to the eye or ear, over the cheek, palate, teeth, &c., which are attended with convulsive twitchings of the flesh or muscles of the parts. The pain attacks quite suddenly, and is very peculiar, darting along the course of the nerves which are affected; and occurs in paroxysms of the most agonizing torture, succeeded by intervals of longer or shorter duration.

The same affection of the nerves has also been witnessed in the breast, foot, and uterus.

**TREATMENT.**—Frequent doses of a strong tincture of nervine powder, with the use of the bitter tonic; repeated courses of medicine, and occasional doses of the anti-spasmodic tincture, seem to promise the most efficient aid in treating this distressing malady.

Bathing the part immediately affected, with the bathing drops, tincture of lobelia, the anti-spasmodic tincture, or any other stimulating wash, should also be tried; together with the application of a hot stone, wrapped in a cloth wet with vinegar and water, near the part.

A method frequently resorted to by the medical Faculty is, to divide, that is, cut asunder, the affected nerve between the painful part and the brain; but although this often effects a cure, it sometimes only removes the complaint to other branches of the same nerve.

---

### NIGHTMARE OR INCUBUS.

THIS complaint occurs only during sleep; and those of a nervous temperament, whose digestive powers are weak, or whose bowels are much disordered, are most liable to its attacks.

Nightmare comes on with a sense of weight and oppression at the chest, often accompanied with a distressing dream; the person makes ineffectual efforts to speak and move; he moans and groans, and at length awakes, oftentimes frightened and much fatigued; having palpitations of the heart, with tremors, anxiety, and lassitude.

Sometimes the oppression and anxiety are so extremely great, that the person is under the most serious apprehensions of suffocation; in which case there is great exhaustion and debility; and the apprehensions are not much weakened on being awakened. Indeed, cases have been reported of its having, in a very few instances, proved fatal.

The causes which give rise to this complaint are, anxiety,

grief, despondency, intense thought, late hours, and heavy suppers. A spasmodic constriction of the diaphragm or midriff, and muscles of the chest, is believed to be the proximate cause of nightmare.

**TREATMENT.**—A dose of the nervine powder, or tincture of the same, or of the bitter tonic, or cayenne, at bed time, will, in general, prevent it. Where it depends upon a weakness of the digestive functions, tonic remedies ought to be resorted to; and if costiveness prevail, means must be employed for its removal. The vapor bath may also be used.

As a preventive, the person should endeavor to be as cheerful and tranquil as possible; take proper exercise; avoid food that is hard to digest, and never indulge in a hearty supper, especially of meat, immediately before going to bed.

---

### PALPITATION OF THE HEART.

**VIOLENT** and irregular action of the heart, is what constitutes this complaint.

During the attack, the motions of the heart are performed with greater rapidity, and generally with more force than usual, so that they may not only be felt with the hand, but may often be perceived by the eye, and even sometimes be heard. There is also, frequently a difficulty of breathing, a purplish hue of the lips and cheeks, and a great variety of other anxious and painful sensations.

In some instances the complaint is caused by a local organic disease of the heart or some of the large vessels in its immediate vicinity; in which case it is to be regarded as a dangerous symptom. But in general it is symptomatic of hysterics or some other nervous affection, when it may be readily removed.

**TREATMENT.**—A few doses of the nervine powder or tincture, will often remove the urgent symptoms of this unpleasant disease. Asafetida may also be employed with advantage, taking one or two pills, of ordinary size. If the general health be impaired, the patient should have a few courses of medicine, with bitter tonics and nervines several times a day, and continued until the difficulty is removed. Bathing the breast about the region of the heart with tincture of lobelia, or the bathing drops, will be found useful. Drinking daily of a tea of the common cuckold is represented as being highly valuable in this complaint.

Persons who are affected with attacks of palpitation should be careful to avoid all such causes as experience has taught them will produce the disease. These are mostly, fits of passion, sudden surprises, violent exercise, or great bodily exertion.

PALSY.

PALSY is characterized by a loss of sensibility or feeling, and the power of motion, in some part of the body, particularly of the left side.

This complaint may arise in consequence of an attack of apoplexy, or by any thing which prevents the passage of the nervous power or influence, from the brain to the organs of motion; and also by pressure on the nerves, in consequence of dislocations, or fractures of the bones, wounds, or other external injuries. It is also caused by the handling or using white lead, as in painting; by the poisonous fumes of metals; and by whatever has a tendency to relax, weaken, or enervate the body; hence those who lead a sedentary, luxurious, and irregular life; or such as are engaged in intense studies, or labor under great distress or anxiety of mind, are subject to palsy.

The aged and infirm are far more liable to its attacks than the young and robust.

Palsy generally comes on with a sudden and immediate loss of motion and sensation in the part; though in a few instances it is preceded by numbness, coldness, paleness, and sometimes slight convulsive twitches. If the head is much affected with the disease, the eye and mouth are drawn to one side, the memory and judgment are much impaired, and the speech is indistinct and incoherent.

Sometimes the paralytic affection is confined to one arm, very rarely to the leg and thigh, and occasionally to the tongue, causing stammering, or loss of speech. In some instances the bladder, and lower part of the intestines, become diseased, when the urine and stools pass off involuntarily.

If palsy attack any vital part, such as the brain, heart or lungs, it very soon proves fatal. When it arises as a consequence of apoplexy, it is considered difficult to cure; and paralytic affections of the lower limbs, arising from injuries of the spinal marrow by blows or other accidents, are generally incurable.

This complaint, though regarded as highly dangerous, particularly in advanced life, is sometimes removed by a diarrhœa, or a fever; and one person with whom we were acquainted was cured by a great and sudden shock, occasioned by a severe wound.

A feeling of warmth, and a slight pricking pain in the affected part, with returning sensation and motion, are favorable symptoms.

TREATMENT.—The vapor bath, with the course of medicine, will be highly useful in palsy, and ought frequently to be repeated. At the first onset of the complaint, a few doses of the anti-spasmodic tincture has effected a cure. The nervine powder, or tincture, may likewise be occasionally given, with beneficial effects.

Bathing the part affected, and particularly along the back bone, with cayenne and vinegar, or the bathing drops, applying them with much friction or rubbing, ought always to be resorted to, and often repeated; and after this is done, warm bricks or stones should be applied or placed near the diseased part.

Great care should be taken to keep the bowels loose by stimulating injections and laxative bitter tonics. Purges are also highly esteemed by some.

Electricity is a remedy almost universally employed in the cure of palsy, and often with the happiest effect. It ought, however, to be used with care, applying it only in slight shocks, often repeated. It is also recommended not to apply it to the head; as it is supposed that danger might arise from its application to that part.

Galvanism has likewise been employed, and highly extolled, in the treatment of this complaint.

---

### PILES.

THE piles consist of small tumors situated on the verge of the anus or fundament, which are separate, round, and prominent, though at other times they run together and form a tumid ring entirely surrounding it.

In some cases there is a discharge of blood from these tumors, which generally takes place when the patient goes to stool, when the disease is termed the bleeding piles: and in other instances there is no discharge, when it is called the blind piles.

This complaint may be caused by habitual costiveness, hard riding, excesses in drinking, the suppression of some long accustomed evacuation, exposure to cold, and the frequent use of strong purges of aloes. Many persons possess a constitutional predisposition to piles, and suffer more or less from it through life.

The piles are sometimes accompanied with a sense of weight in the back and lower part of the belly, together with a pain or giddiness of the head, sickness at the stomach, flatulency in the bowels, and fever.

On going to stool a sharp pain is felt in the fundament, and small tumors may be perceived to project beyond its verge. If these break, a quantity of blood is discharged from them, which affords much relief from the pain; but if they continue unbroken, the patient will experience much torture every time he goes to stool, and also feels an inconvenience on sitting down on a hard seat. The tumors are sometimes of so large a size internally, as to press upon the bladder, and produce much irritation and even pain in voiding the urine.



Piles, or hæmorrhoids, as they are technically called, are by no means a dangerous, but oftentimes a troublesome and disagreeable disease.

A considerable degree of inflammation occasionally attends the complaint, which sometimes suppurating, terminates in what are called sinuous ulcers or fistulas.

**TREATMENT.**—In the treatment of piles, we may commence by bathing the parts with either the tincture of myrrh, or the juice of smart weed, and the administration of a stimulating injection. In mild cases the use of either, a few times, will effect a cure; but if costiveness prevail, the injections should never be omitted. And the diseased part may also be occasionally washed with a warm tea, composed of any of the astringent articles.

The application of a block of wood which has been heated by boiling in water, or of a hot stone or brick, will likewise be found agreeable, as well as highly beneficial. A salve made by simmering the bruised leaves of the Jamestown weed or henbane, in fresh butter or hog's lard, and rubbed on the affected part, it is said, will afford speedy relief. Bathing the part with cold water is highly recommended by some.

Extract of wild lettuce, (*Lactuca elongata*,) also called milk weed, and trumpet weed, is highly extolled as a certain cure for piles. The whole plant is taken when in flower, cut up short and boiled in a suitable quantity of water for an hour; then strain, and press out all the juice, return the liquor to the kettle, and boil down to the consistency of tar, taking great care not to scorch or burn it. Then bottle close for use. Dose—one tea-spoonful three times a day until a cure is effected.

But if the complaint does not yield to the foregoing prescriptions, a course of medicine must be resorted to, and, if necessary, repeated occasionally, until the complaint is removed. The bitter tonic, diaphoretic powders, and cayenne, must be taken between the courses; and the fundament ought to have a little warm tallow applied to it often.

## PLEURISY.

**PLEURISY** is an inflammation of the membrane which lines the thorax, and is attended with an acute pain in the side, difficult breathing, fever, and a full, quick, and hard pulse.

This disease is induced most usually by exposure to cold, and by such other causes as produce inflammatory complaints; chiefly attacking persons of a vigorous constitution and full habit of body.

Pleurisy comes on with an acute pain in the side, which is much increased on making a full inspiration, and is accompani-

ed by flushing of the face, increased heat over the whole body, rigors, difficulty of lying on the side affected, with cough and nausea; the pulse is hard, full, and strong; the tongue white; and the urine high colored.

If the disease be neglected, or continue long, the lungs also become affected, and a high degree of inflammation is sometimes induced in them, with occasionally a fatal termination; or it may end in consumption.

If the fever and inflammation run high, and the pain suddenly ceases, with a change of countenance, and sinking of the pulse, great danger may be apprehended.

On the other hand, if the difficulty of breathing and fever abate, with the pain in the side more moderate, and moisture of the skin and expectoration ensue, a speedy recovery may then be expected.

**TREATMENT.**—The common course of medicine, repeated as occasion may require, with the bitter tonic, diaphoretic powders, and cayenne, freely and frequently given, and injections, are the proper remedies in this disease, together with the whole course recommended for the treatment of inflammation of the lungs, to which the reader is referred.

Purges should not be given in pleurisy, especially whilst the pain continues severe, or the fever high. The bowels must be kept in proper order by injections, and laxative bitter tonics; and the affected side should be occasionally bathed with the tincture of myrrh, bathing drops, or other stimulating wash, first made warm.

## POISONS.

Poisons are generally classed according to the substance from which they are obtained, as animal, mineral, and vegetable.

Animal poisons are communicated by the bite of mad animals, such as dogs, cats, foxes, and wolves; by the bites of snakes, such as the rattlesnake, pilot or mockasinsnake, and in some countries by many other kinds; by the stings of insects, such as the bee, the hornet, the wasp, the spider, and in other countries, the scorpion; and by infectious matter, such as small pox, measles, contagious fevers, &c.

The mineral poisons are, chiefly, the preparations of arsenic, copper, antimony, mercury or quicksilver, zinc, tin, lead, &c.

The vegetable poisons are, mushrooms, or a toad stool nearly resembling them, laurel, hemlock, nightshade, foxglove, henbane, prussic acid, tobacco, &c.

### ANIMAL POISONS.

THE treatment of the bite of mad animals has heretofore been noticed; and the poison of contagion will be found under the

heads of the diseases to which they give rise; therefore, it only remains for us, under this head, to speak of the poisons communicated by snakes and insects.

The symptoms attending the bite of the rattlesnake, the most common venomous reptile in this country, are nausea and vomiting; a full, strong, agitated pulse; swelling, first of the bitten part, then extending over the whole body; eyes suffused with blood; bloody sweats; hemorrhages from the nose, mouth, and ears; with which there is an indescribable pain, first commencing in the bitten part, and gradually extending over the body. The teeth chatter, whilst the pains and groans of the unhappy sufferer indicate his approaching dissolution.

**TREATMENT.**—The treatment of all venomous bites and stings is so similar, that, for the sake of brevity, we will make one description answer for all.

When a person is bitten by a venomous snake, on the hand, arm, foot, or leg, a ligature or string ought immediately to be tied around the limb, between the wound and the body, which will have a tendency to check the further absorption or passage of the poison into the body. As soon as possible, the part must be freely washed with the strongest tincture of lobelia, endeavoring to get it into the bottom of the wound, for which purpose it might be better to lay the wound open with a knife; and whilst this is doing, a tea-spoonful of the tincture should be taken internally.

The washing of the wound ought to be continued for some time, and afterwards occasionally repeated. The tincture internally, should also be repeated in the course of an hour or two; or sooner, if the unpleasant symptoms are not removed, or if they return.

But if, notwithstanding the use of the means just prescribed, the person becomes worse; or if the symptoms have assumed an aggravated character before medical aid could be obtained, a most thorough course of medicine must be immediately resorted to, in addition to the external application of the tincture, and repeated as the symptoms may seem to require.

A variety of other remedies are also recommended for venomous bites and stings. The juice of the common plantain has long been in use as a cure for stings of insects, bites of spiders, &c. For the bites of snakes, the Greek valerian or sweat root, is regarded by many as a specific; and although we have never tried this article, we have much confidence in its utility. Directions for using this medicine will be found under the proper head (*Polemonium reptans*.) in the materia medica. Indigo, moistened with vinegar, to the consistence of paste, and applied to bites and stings, is also highly recommended.

If the part bitten should suppurate, it must be treated the same as any other sore or ulcer.

The bites and stings of insects may be treated precisely on the same plan recommended for those of the rattlesnake. The lobelia appears to possess the property of disarming the poison of both animals and vegetables of its powers, and rendering it harmless upon the system. Bites and stings should, therefore, be immediately washed with the tincture or tea of this most valuable and important article, and if the animal be very venomous, or the system disturbed by the absorption of the poison, a dose of it should be taken internally, and, if necessary, repeated.

#### MINERAL POISONS.

THE symptoms which arise from all the mineral poisons are very similar. Their taste, in general, is said to be more or less like that of ink, and less burning than the taste of the concentrated acids and alkalies.

The individual sometimes complains of a closing or constriction of the throat; severe pains are soon felt in the fauces, stomach, and bowels, which are quickly augmented and become almost insupportable, with nausea and vomiting.

The matter thrown from the stomach is of various colors, often mixed with blood. There is also either costiveness or a diarrhœa, and the stools are sometimes bloody.

To these alarming symptoms are added, frequent fœtid belchings, hickup, difficulty of breathing amounting almost to suffocation; with a quick, small, and hard pulse, which is sometimes irregular.

An unquenchable thirst also prevails, with difficulty in passing the urine, cramps, icy coldness of the extremities, dreadful convulsions or a general prostration of strength, the countenance becomes changed, and oftentimes delirium arises, which may be regarded as the forerunner of speedy death. In some cases, however, the individual preserves all his mental faculties to the very moment of dissolution.

TREATMENT.—In cases of persons swallowing any of the mineral poisons, immediate recourse should be had to the tincture or any other preparation of the lobelia, which should be administered in sufficient quantity to produce speedy vomiting. Stimulating injections, with the addition of two or three teaspoonsful of the tincture of lobelia, ought also to be administered, to arouse the torpor of the bowels, and assist in producing vomiting. Pennyroyal tea, warm water, or almost any kind of fluid drink, should be freely given during the operation of the emetic, to promote the vomiting and wash out the stomach.

After the stomach is well cleansed, the patient should take mutton or veal broths, flaxseed or slippery elm teas, and milk, both for nourishment and to sheathe the bowels, which will



have a tendency to prevent their being acted upon by the poisonous particles of matter which may possibly remain after vomiting.

If some time elapses before medical aid is or can be procured, the anti-spasmodic tincture must be given in repeated doses of two or three tea-spoonsful at short intervals, until vomiting is produced, and the urgent symptoms removed. Injections ought also to be administered.

As soon as convenient after the vomiting, perspiration ought to be produced and kept up for several hours; and the health and strength of the patient promoted by the use of the tonics, both bitter and astringent. The exciting of a free perspiration ought to be carefully attended to, as by this means the poisonous matter, which may have been absorbed and passed into the blood, will be thrown out.

If the patient, notwithstanding the use of the means recommended, should continue in a debilitated condition, with other unpleasant symptoms, he should have a regular course of the medicine, which, if necessary, must be repeated, at proper intervals, until his health is restored.

#### VEGETABLE POISONS.

UNDER this head we will include the acids and alkalies. Many of the acids, it is true, are formed from mineral substances; but still the acid principle legitimately appertains to the vegetable kingdom, and the mode of treating poisons from either the vegetable or mineral acids, is essentially the same. The alkalies are wholly of vegetable production.

ACIDS.—The symptoms which ensue on swallowing any of the concentrated acids are, a very unpleasant, sour, burning taste in the mouth; an acute pain in the throat, which very soon spreads to the bowels; an insupportable offensive breath; frequent belchings; nausea, and copious vomiting of substances of various colors, sometimes mixed with blood, producing in the mouth a sensation of bitterness, with hickup.

Sometimes the bowels are costive, but more often there is a diarrhoea, with the stools more or less bloody; colic pains so acute that the individual cannot support the weight of the bed clothes, or even of his shirt; these pains also extend to the chest, causing difficulty of breathing, and great distress; pulse frequent but regular; great thirst, whilst drinking only augments the pain, and what is swallowed is soon rejected by vomiting. There are also shiverings, with an icy coldness of the skin, especially of the lower limbs; cold clammy sweats; frequent fruitless attempts to make water; great restlessness and anxiety; convulsive motions of the lips, face, and limbs; great prostration of strength; with the countenance but little altered at first;

the complexion soon becomes of a pale, or leaden color, and in most cases the mental faculties remain entire.

It also frequently happens that the inside of the mouth and lips are burnt, thickened, and covered with white or black patches, which, becoming detached, irritate the patient, and produce a very fatiguing cough; in which case the voice is changed; and sometimes there is a painful eruption of the skin.

The whole of these symptoms are not, however, always met with in the same person. And in addition to these effects, nitric acid, (aqua fortis) produces yellow spots upon the lips, or other parts of the skin on which it may have fallen.

**TREATMENT.**—It is a fact known to chemists, as well as persons who are much in the habit of reading, that acids and alkalies mutually neutralize each other. Thus, if pearl-ash be put into vinegar, each is neutralized, so that both the sourness of the vinegar, and the burning taste of the pearl-ash are destroyed, which is what is meant by neutralizing. And hence the evident propriety, in cases where any of the acids have been taken into the stomach, of administering alkaline preparations.

ORFILA, however, in his work on poison, says that the result of the many trials he has made is, that *calcined magnesia* is the best antidote to the acids. The poisoned individual must be made to drink largely of water, in which magnesia is diffused in the proportion of an ounce of magnesia to a quart of water; a tumbler full of which must be given every two minutes, in order to favor vomiting, and to prevent the deleterious action of that portion of the acid which has not exercised its corrosive power. However, as magnesia is not kept in every family, the time spent in procuring it at the drug shop, continues ORFILA, must not be lost upon the patient; he should be made to drink copiously of water, which will weaken the power of the acid, or of flaxseed tea, to which we will also add slippery elm, or any other mild drink.

He also recommends, in case the magnesia cannot be procured, to dissolve an ounce of soap in a quart of water, and administered as we suppose, in frequent small doses. He also recommends chalk, which to do good, must be taken in considerable quantity; and we have no doubt, that white ley, prepared as directed in the preparations and compounds, and taken freely, would be highly beneficial.

We would, however, in all cases recommend that an emetic be given as soon as possible, and at the same time prepare any of the foregoing articles, and administer them in suitable quantity.

**ALKALIES.**—The effects of the alkaline preparations are nearly similar to those which occur in taking the acids. It is only necessary to remark, that the taste of these poisons is acrid, burning, and urinous.

**TREATMENT.**—An emetic should be immediately administered, and at the same time make the patient drink largely of water made sour with the addition of vinegar, or lemon juice, to neutralize the alkali. No hesitation should be made about which to give first, either the vinegar or the emetic, but give whichever can first be got. Or if neither can quickly be procured, then give warm or cold water, until vomiting takes place.

**POISONOUS VEGETABLES.**—These are divided by ORFILA, into irritating, narcotic, or stupefying, and acrid-narcotic poisons.

The symptoms attending the introduction of *irritating* poisons are—more or less of a bitter taste in the mouth; burning heat, and great dryness of the tongue and mouth; painful constriction of the throat; nausea, vomiting, and diarrhœa; pains more or less acute in the stomach and bowels; strong, frequent, and regular pulse; with breathing disturbed and quickened. Frequently the individual staggers in his walk, appearing to be intoxicated; the pupils of the eyes are dilated; with such a state of prostration that the patient appears to be dead; the pulse grows feeble, and death closes the scene.

Some of this class of poisons produce convulsions of more or less violence, stiffness of the limbs, and pains so acute as to force from the patient the most distressful cries.

*Narcotic* poisons, when introduced into the system, produce stupor, numbness, heaviness of the head, inclination to sleep, slight at first, but soon becoming irresistible; a sort of intoxication, with a dull, heavy look; the pupil of the eye may be very much dilated, contracted, or in its natural state; there may be furious or gay delirium; sometimes there are pain and convulsions of various degrees in different parts of the body; palsy in the limbs; pulse variable, but in general it is full and strong at the commencement of the affection; breathing is often a little accelerated; with vomiting, especially when the poison has been applied to wounds, or given by injection; whilst the convulsions and prostration soon increase, and death puts an end to existence.

*Acrid Narcotic* poisons exhibit many, or all the symptoms of the other two divisions, with the addition of some others which we think it unnecessary to enumerate. This class includes, amongst other articles, tobacco, poison-hemlock, henbane, foxglove, spirituous liquors, &c.

**TREATMENT.**—The treatment of poisoning from vegetables of all kinds, introduced into the system, either by way of the skin or by the stomach, is so nearly similar that we will make one description of it suffice.

Immediately on any of those poisonous substances being swallowed, or so soon as practicable thereafter, the person ought to have an emetic, the operation of which should be promoted

by warm water or pennyroyal tea. The vomiting must be continued until the stomach is perfectly cleansed ; when proper means should be taken to produce, and keep up a free perspiration. If the patient is inclined to be sleepy, vinegar and water may be given to him, which will have a tendency to neutralize the narcotic qualities of the poison. If debility continues, with other bad or unpleasant symptoms, the course of medicine must be repeated as often as appears necessary, together with the frequent use of the bitter tonic.

In cases where poisons have been applied to the skin, producing eruptions or sores, the part should be washed with the tincture of lobelia, or a tea of pipsisway ; at the same time taking the diaphoretic powders to promote a determination to the surface of the body ; and if the health becomes affected, pursue the course which has just been recommended in other cases of poison.

---

#### PUTRID OR TYPHUS FEVER.

THIS fever takes the name of putrid from the symptoms of putrefaction which arise after a short continuance of the disease ; it is, however, more commonly known at the present time, by the name of typhus. In its milder forms it was formerly called nervous fever.

Typhus fever may be readily distinguished from such as are of an inflammatory character, by the smallness and weakness of the pulse ; the sudden and great debility which comes on at its first attack ; by the brown or black tongue ; by the dark fœtid matter about the teeth ; the livid flush of the countenance ; and by the acrid and more intense heat of the skin ; and, in the more advanced stages, by the petechiæ or livid spots, which come out on different parts of the body ; and by the fœtid stools which are discharged.

The most common cause of typhus fever is supposed by some to be contagion ; but it is only under certain circumstances that it is communicated in this way. When patients laboring under this disease, are confined in small rooms to which the air has but little access, and which are crowded by other persons who are breathing the air contaminated by the exhalations from the patient's breath, body, and stools, and these persons themselves perhaps, unhealthy from the want of proper food and cleanliness, it is no wonder if the fever should spread as if by the laws of contagion.

Hence it has been observed, that a want of proper cleanliness, or breathing a contaminated air, is more probably the cause of this disease than contagion. In towns and cities where it has sometimes committed such fatal ravages, its origin has commonly



been traced to the habitations of the poor, who live in damp and filthy cellars, whose living is often unwholesome and scanty, and who neglect personal cleanliness. And to this class of persons the disease has always proved most fatal, and to them it has often been confined.

Typhus fever may also be caused by whatever enervates or debilitates the system. Hence we find persons of a lax fiber, or who have been debilitated by other fevers, or by long fasting, hard labor, continued want of sleep, &c., most liable to be attacked by this disease. Persons of intemperate and dissipated habits are also predisposed to typhus fever.

On the first coming on of this complaint, the person is seized with languor, dejection of spirits, great depression and loss of muscular strength, universal weariness and soreness, pains in the back, head, and limbs, with rigors or chills; the eyes appear full, heavy, yellowish, and often a little inflamed; the temporal arteries throb violently; the tongue is dry and parched; respiration is commonly laborious, and interrupted with deep sighing; the breath is hot and offensive; the urine is pale; the bowels costive; pulse usually quick, small and hard, and occasionally fluttering and unequal. Sometimes a great load, heat, and pain, are felt at the pit of the stomach, with a vomiting of bilious matter.

As the disease advances, the pulse increases in frequency, often beating from 100 to 130 in a minute; the debility becomes vastly increased; there is great heat and dryness of the skin; oppression at the breast, with anxiety, sighing, and moaning; the thirst is excessive; the tongue, mouth, lips, and teeth are covered with a brown or black, sticky fur; the speech is inarticulate, and scarcely intelligible; the patient mutters much, and delirium arises. The fever continuing to increase still more in violence, symptoms of putrefaction show themselves; the breath becomes highly offensive; the urine deposits a black and fœtid sediment; the stools are dark, disagreeable, and pass off insensibly; hemorrhages issue from the gums, nostrils, mouth, and other parts of the body; livid spots or petechiæ appear on the skin; the pulse intermits and sinks; the extremities grow cold; hiccups ensue, and death finally closes the painful scene.

An abatement of the heat and thirst; the tongue becoming moist and clean; a moist sweat diffused over the whole surface of the body; the pulse becoming stronger, but less frequent, with a free secretion of saliva; swelling and suppuration of the *parotid*, *axillary*, or *inguinal* glands; a scabby eruption about the mouth, and the delirium and stupor abating or going off, may be regarded as favorable symptoms.

TREATMENT.—On the first attack of this complaint a course of medicine should be resorted to immediately, as by attending to it at the onset, the disease may often be cut short at once.

The state of the bowels must also be carefully attended to, especially if the stools be very fœtid and disagreeable, or if costiveness prevail, as these conditions scarcely ever fail to produce an increase of fever and delirium.

Cold bathing has been highly recommended for this disease, if applied in the early stages, by Dr. CURRIE, of Liverpool, as well as many others who have adopted this mode of treatment by his recommendation. But we think the use of the vapor bath, with the cayenne, to promote a free perspiration, and throw out of the system the morbid, useless, and putrid matter, and the application of cold water, is much to be preferred to the cold bath alone.

The course of medicine must be repeated, if the symptoms do not abate after the first one, as often as the symptoms appear to require it, until the feverish action subsides; when the appetite and strength should be restored with the bitter tonic, wine, &c. If the stools are very offensive, a mild purge may be given; for which purpose castor oil, or the butternut syrup may be employed; and injections at all times must be liberally used.

During the whole course of the disease, the astringent tonics with cayenne, must be freely and perseveringly administered, both by the mouth and by injection. The pepper sauce will also be found a very valuable article, in addition to the astringent and stimulant medicines, to change the putrid tendency of the fluids, which is so apparent in typhus fevers. The patient's drink may consist of water and vinegar, as well because it is pleasant and agreeable, as that the vinegar possesses an antiseptic power in putrid diseases.

Every means must be employed to keep up the strength of the patient in typhus fevers, whilst nothing should be done that is likely to reduce it. The food should be rich and nourishing; the drink cool and refreshing; whilst the room must be well ventilated, that is, have a free circulation of air through it, but never allowed to come in a current upon the patient. The stools ought to be removed as soon as passed; and every other means used to keep the apartment clean and sweet; and to render it more pleasant both to the patient and attendants, the floor should be sprinkled several times a day with warm vinegar and camphor. The clothes of the patient as well as of the bed ought often to be changed, and kept clean.

The internal use of yeast has also been recommended in putrid fevers. One or two table spoons full or more, may be stirred into a quart of beer, or any other pleasant fluid, of which the patient should often drink.

## REMITTENT OR BILIOUS FEVER.

By remittent is understood a fever that abates, but does not go off entirely before a fresh attack ensues; or, in other words, where one paroxysm succeeds the other so quickly that the patient is never without some degree of fever. It may also be observed, moreover, that the remissions happen at very irregular periods, and are of uncertain duration, being sometimes longer and sometimes shorter.

This fever is principally induced, as well as the intermittent, by the effluvia arising from marshes and stagnant waters, and is also apt to take place when calm, close, sultry weather quickly succeeds heavy rains or great inundations of water. In warm climates, where great heat and moisture rapidly succeed each other, remittent fevers often appear under a highly aggravated and violent form, usually prevailing as an epidemic. In this climate it is often very prevalent in the latter part of hot, dry summers and in autumn; sometimes being of a mild character, and at other times more violent. It appears most apt to attack persons of a relaxed habit, those who undergo great fatigue, breathe an impure air, and make use of poor and unwholesome diet.

Remittent fever generally comes on with a sense of heaviness and languor, attended by anxiety, sighing, yawning, and alternate fits of heat and cold. The patient then experiences severe pains in the head and back, intense heat over the whole body, with thirst, difficulty of breathing, and dejection of spirits; the tongue is white; the eyes and skin often appear yellow; sometimes there is a sense of swelling and pain about the region of the stomach; nausea and vomiting of bilious matter; with a frequent small pulse.

After the continuance of these symptoms for a while, the fever abates considerably, or goes imperfectly off by a gentle moisture diffused partially over the body; but returns again in a few hours, with the same appearances as before. In this manner, with paroxysms and imperfect remissions, it proceeds at last to a crisis, or is changed into a typhus, or an intermittent.

The disease of which we are speaking has acquired the popular name of bilious fever, owing to the fact, that in a majority of cases there appears to be an increased secretion of bile which is thrown up in vomiting, and also passes off by stool, often giving the stools a dark or black appearance.

Bilious fevers are most commonly to be met with along streams, in the neighborhood of marshes, and near stagnant waters; and they arise most frequently in the latter part of summer and in the fall, but may also occur at any other period during the warm season.

It often, however, appears in a much more aggravated form than that just described; for sometimes a severe delirium comes on and the patient may die during the first paroxysm; or the remission, perhaps, is scarcely perceptible, and is immediately followed by another paroxysm, in which there is a considerable increase of all the symptoms. The fever now runs much higher, the face is greatly flushed, the thirst excessive, the tongue is covered with a dark brown fur, breathing is laborious; the pulse is quick, throbbing, and tremulous. After a while, perhaps another short or imperfect remission takes place, but the symptoms again return with redoubled violence, and at length destroy the patient.

The symptoms of remittent fever are apt, however, to vary so much, according to the situation and constitution of the patient, and also the season of the year, that it is impossible to give a certain detail of them; for sometimes those pointing out a redundancy of the bile predominate; sometimes the nervous are most prevalent; and at other times the putrid.

A remittent fever is always attended with some hazard, particularly in hot climates. The shorter and more obscure the remissions are, the greater will be the danger, and each succeeding paroxysm will be attended with more danger than the former one was.

On the contrary, the milder the attack, and the nearer the fever approaches to an intermittent, the less we may apprehend a fatal termination. The grand object aimed at by many of the mineral doctors, in the treatment of this disease, is to change it into an intermittent fever, when, if they succeed, they think the patient out of danger, and abandon him to his fate; in which case he has the consolation of escaping the hazard of being destroyed by unnatural poisonous medicines, and of being cured in nature's own way.

**TREATMENT.**—In cases of remittent fever, immediate recourse must be had to the vapor bath, with the full course of medicine, and free use of injections. A dose of the cathartic pills, or of the black root, or of some other purgative medicine, may be administered if the intestines appear much disordered, either before or after the course of medicine. Care should be taken after the course, to keep up a constant perspiration or moisture of the skin, by the use of the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne, and the application of hot bricks, or rocks. The quantity of medicine, and the frequency of the doses, must be regulated altogether by the effects produced; the object is to keep up a perspiration, and if a small quantity will not answer, a larger must be used.

If these means do not remove the urgent symptoms, another course of medicine must be administered, if the case be a bad



one, within four-and-twenty hours ; after which the same plan must be pursued, as before recommended, to keep up the perspiration.

If the stools still appear dark, and are very disagreeable, another purge may be given to cleanse the intestines ; minding during the operation, to give the patient gruel, or nourishing broths, as well as the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne, to strengthen and stimulate ; thus preventing the prostration which usually follows the operation of purgative medicines. It ought, however, to be carefully borne in mind, that a sparing use should be made of purges in this as well as all other complaints, and that the surest indication for their use is a *looseness* of the bowels, with a foul appearance, and highly disagreeable smell of the stools.

The course of medicine must be repeated as often as may be necessary, and at such intervals as the case may require, until the fever is removed.

If there be symptoms of nervous irritation during the course of the disease, the nervine powder must be used in such quantity as appears requisite to allay them. And if there be great pain in the head, with restlessness, the forehead and temples should be often bathed with cold vinegar and water, and the whole body may be washed with the same, or with a weak solution of pearl-ash in water, especially if the means recommended for producing perspiration are not attended with the desired effect.

To restore the appetite and strength, the bitter tonic must be used ; and if extreme debility or exhaustion has been produced, wine or brandy may also be taken.

Great care must also be observed to guard against a relapse, by avoiding fatigue, exposure to cold, or damp air, and by strict attention to diet. The appetite often being too strong for the digestive powers, the patient must be on his guard against eating too much, as fatal relapses have sometimes arisen from that source ; and if at any time he should find himself much oppressed by food, a dose of the bitter tonic, or of golden seal must be taken, which if it do not relieve, and the symptoms are urgent, indicating a relapse, an emetic, or a full course of medicine, should be immediately administered. Moderate exercise during the recovery will be useful, but ought not to be carried to fatigue.

---

#### RHEUMATISM.

THIS complaint is distinguished into chronic and acute ; being considered as chronic, when there is little or no fever or inflammation, but pain ; and acute, when both fever and inflamma-

mation exist in a high degree. These distinctions, however, are more fanciful than real, only indicating different degrees of the same disease.

Rheumatism may arise at any time of the year, when there are frequent changes of weather from hot to cold, or from dry to wet; but spring and fall are the seasons in which it is most prevalent. It attacks persons of all ages; but adults, and persons advanced in life, as well as those whose employments subject them to alternations of heat and cold, are most liable to it.

The acute rheumatism in some respects resembles the gout. Rheumatism usually comes on in a more gradual manner than gout, for the most part giving the patient warning by a slow increase of pain. Nor is it so apt to be fixed to one part as gout, but often wanders from place to place. It seldom attacks the small joints, as gout almost invariably does, but is commonly confined to the larger ones, as the knees, hips, back and shoulders. The acute rheumatism is generally attended by a continual fever, whilst the gout has periodical remissions.

This complaint often occurs in so mild a form as to produce little or no inconvenience, from which it may be traced by almost imperceptible gradations up to cases of the most painful and inveterate character, attended with strong symptoms of inflammation, and a high degree of fever.

Rheumatism is accompanied with a peculiar pain about the joints, most commonly in the knees, hips, or shoulders, sometimes attended with swelling and extreme soreness or tenderness to the touch, and a vast increase of pain on being moved. In worse cases, or those termed acute, there are also rigors, succeeded by fever, thirst, anxiety, restlessness, and a hard, full, and quick pulse.

When the rheumatism affects the hip joint it is often called *Sciatica*; and when it attacks that part of the back styled the lumbar region, it is called *Lumbago*. These distinctions are, however, of little consequence in a practical point of view, as both affections are to be treated the same as ordinary rheumatism.

Little danger is attendant on rheumatism; but a person once attacked by it, ever afterward is more or less liable to returns of it, and sometimes an incurable stiffness of the joints occurs in consequence of repeated attacks.

It is caused, in general, by whatever obstructs the perspiration, or passage of the fluids through the vessels of the part; and hence it may arise from any exposure to cold, wearing wet clothes, sleeping in damp beds, or rooms, or on the ground; or by being suddenly cooled when in a high state of perspiration.

Those who are much afflicted with this complaint are very apt to be sensible of the approach of wet weather, by the wandering pains which they often experience previous to a storm.

**TREATMENT.**—A great many different, as well as discordant, remedies have been used for the alleviation, or cure of rheumatism. Nothing, however, that we as yet know of, has sustained the character of an unfailing specific; though several have been ushered into public notice as such.

In mild attacks simply wrapping the affected part in flannel often affords salutary relief, and, if persisted in, generally effects a cure. In addition to this, bathing the part with the bathing drops, or with pepper and vinegar, will be highly serviceable; and in cases attended with much soreness, swelling, or pain, it ought never to be omitted. Tying a strip of gum elastic around the affected joint has also been used with success, after other means had failed.

Sometimes pouring cold water on a rheumatic joint will give ease to the pain when nothing else seems to avail or do much good; or first steaming it for some time, and then pouring on the water, in many instances will do better. The good effects of these means will be further promoted by frequent, or occasional doses of the diaphoretic powders or the cayenne; and if the patient is confined to his bed, a hot stone or brick should be placed near the affected part, not only with a view of promoting a healthy action in the diseased joint, but also of producing general perspiration, and giving energy and vigor to the whole system.

In many cases of rheumatic affection there is such a want of action and sensibility in the part, that it becomes insensible to the effects of the strongest stimulants. Where this is found to be the case, as it is more or less on all occasions, the full effects which would otherwise result from the employment of stimulating washes are not produced. In order to favor the operation of those external means, the part should be bathed with the strongest infusion of the cayenne in vinegar, and then hold it over a lively steam. Or what is more certain, in the worst cases, of producing the burning sensation, which is what is wanted, we may take the pods of red pepper, and steep them a short time in warm vinegar, or water, then open, and lay them nicely on the painful part, and apply a flannel bandage or wrapper over them; in addition to which, if we choose, a hot rock may be placed near the part. By pursuing this course, we may be sure of producing the desired effect, in a short time.

An ointment made by boiling peppers in water until the strength is extracted, then skimming out the pods, or straining the liquor, adding hog's lard, and simmering down, has been highly recommended as an external application to rheumatic affections.

In addition to external applications of every kind, to the part immediately affected, the use of the vapor bath will be found highly advantageous, nay, indispensably necessary in all bad cases: and if there be symptoms of inflammation with great pain,

and fever, the whole course of medicine must be administered, and daily repeated until the urgent symptoms are removed.

In cases of this kind, the diaphoretic powders and cayenne must be taken several times a day, as well between the courses, as after these become unnecessary, until the complaint is entirely removed.

To strengthen and restore the weakened joint to its healthy state after the pain and soreness have left it, we should bathe it daily with some stimulating wash, shower it with cold water, and keep it covered with a flannel cloth.

If stiffness of the joint follows the rheumatism, the part should be bathed with some stimulating wash, or the ointment of which we have just spoken, or the nerve ointment, and be often held over a hot steam of vinegar and water; or herbs, such as tansy, mint, &c. may be used instead of the vinegar.

In a late work, published by Dr. GUNN, of Knoxville, in Tennessee, we find a new method of producing perspiration in the treatment of rheumatism, very highly recommended by him, from practical experience of its virtues in a great many cases, both in Tennessee and Virginia.

The superiority of Dr. GUNN's vapor bath over the common method, (if it really be superior) consists in the medicated fluid with which the vapor is made. He directs half an ounce of salt peter, one ounce of Seneca snake root, well bruised, and half an ounce of sulphur, to be put into a quart of whiskey, and stand five days before using. The patient may then be surrounded with a blanket, being naked, as for steaming in the common way, and having red hot stones placed under him, the liquor just described must be poured very slowly, or rather dropped, through an opening in the blanket on the stones, by which he says a powerful sweat will be produced, which should be continued for a quarter of an hour, if the patient be strong enough to bear it so long. He also directs that if the patient becomes faint or sick, whilst in the bath, he should be immediately taken out; but we presume that with the aid of the cayenne, or the diaphoretic powders, taken before, or during the operation, and by applying cold water to the face, breast, &c. the faintness and sickness might readily be removed.

There are also two other remedies often used in the treatment of rheumatism, and which are, by some, held in high estimation, that we deem worthy of a place here. These articles are a tincture of the common poke-weed or pigeon-berry, and the tea or tincture of squaw or rattle-root. The first mentioned article may be prepared, by filling a vessel with the ripe berries, and then pouring on them as much spirits as the vessel will contain, letting it stand, until the virtue of the berries is extracted—Dose, two table-spoonsful, three times a day. The latter may be pre-



pared by infusing a handful of the roots in a quart of boiling water, and taken in doses of a common sized teacup full, three or four times a day. We are constrained, however, to notice one circumstance connected with this subject; that the effect produced upon the system by a large dose of the tincture of the rattle-root, (which is sometimes used instead of the tea,) in some instances, is very alarming; though we have heard of no case in which any bad consequences have followed its use.

Dr. WILLIAM RIPLEY, of Cincinnati, in whose sound judgment and practical experience we have much confidence, informs us, that preparing the rattle-root in tea prevents almost entirely the alarming effects which have been known to follow the use of the tincture. It is very possible, indeed we think highly probable, that a compound of the tincture of the poke-berries and tea of the rattle-root might be a more valuable remedy for rheumatism, than either of them alone. [See *materia medica*, article *Phytolacca decandra*.]

---

#### RING WORM AND TETTER.

THESE complaints, though not considered as precisely the same, are both to be managed in the same way.

RING WORM is more common in warm than in cold climates, and shows itself in small red pimples, which break out in a circular form, and contain a thin acrid fluid. When the body is heated by exercise, these circular eruptions itch, and on being scratched discharge their contents, which falling on the sound parts, spread and increase the disease to a much greater extent than at the commencement.

In some cases the disease seems so universal that the whole system becomes tainted; the skin puts on a leprous appearance, and is much disfigured by blotches, whilst the unhappy patient is in continual torment from the intolerable itching and painful excoriation.

TETTER consists in an eruption of broad itchy spots dispersed here and there over the skin, of a whitish or red color, which gradually spread until they meet or run into each other, discharge a thin fluid, and either form extensive excoriations of the skin, or end in bad ulcers.

After a while scurfy scales make their appearance, which peel off, leaving the under surface red; but the eruption soon makes its appearance, and goes the same round again and again, until the disease is either cured, or goes off spontaneously, which latter, however, rarely occurs. Some persons seem to be constitutionally predisposed to eruptions of this kind.

TREATMENT.—Various remedies have been recommended for

this complaint, and used with different degrees of success.—Washing the part with ink made of ink-powder, or with alum water, often effects a cure, especially of the ring worm. The juice of the black walnut husk or shuck, applied to the affected part, is also a useful remedy.

Washing the part in salt and water, has sometimes effected cures when other applications failed; as also the tincture of lobelia, and even the anti-spasmodic tincture, have been successfully resorted to as an external application in eruptions of the skin. Cedar oil is said to have cured these complaints, when other articles had been ineffectual.

Blood-root or red puccoon, steeped in good vinegar, has, however, been more highly recommended, perhaps, than any other article for the treatment of ring worm and tetter. The part affected should be washed with this liquid, two or three times a day.

In BEACH's *American Practice*, we find the following recipe for making tetter ointment, which the writer says he has never applied without benefit.—Take of Indian turnip and olive oil, of each one ounce; common plantain leaves, white lily leaves, [or root,] and beeswax, each two ounces; white turpentine and fresh butter, each, half a pound. Bruise the leaves and roots, and simmer them with the other articles in an earthen vessel, over a slow fire, and closely covered; strain, and when nearly cold, add two drachms (one fourth of an ounce) of yellow ochre. This must be applied to the part, and seldom fails of doing good.

The use of the sulphur bath, made by burning the sulphur and confining the vapor to the part, or to the whole body, is also highly recommended for eruptions of the skin, by some physicians of this country, and particularly by those of France.

The daily, or less frequent, use of the vapor bath, by promoting the discharges by the skin, which it also cleanses and softens, is a highly useful remedy in all diseases of this kind.

---

### RUPTURE.

THIS is an unnatural protrusion of some portion of the contents of the abdomen, generally dependent upon a laxity of the parts. It is produced in children by crying, coughing, vomiting, and other like causes; and in grown persons, by blows, violent exertions of strength, strains, &c. It has been observed that ruptures were most frequent amongst the inhabitants of those countries where oil is much used as an article of diet.

A rupture is a kind of sack or tumor, protruding from the abdomen, in various situations, but most usually in the groin, scrotum, labia pudenda, the upper and fore part of the thigh, the navel, and at various points on the surface of the abdomen.

The contents of these tumors are as various as their situations.

Instances have occurred of the stomach, womb, liver, spleen, or bladder, being found to form their contents. But a portion of the intestines, or of the omentum or caul, are found to be the most common contents of rupture tumors.

On the first appearance of a rupture, the protruded sack is commonly of a very small size, and the bowels frequently return to their proper place without any assistance; but by their repeatedly coming out, it is gradually increased, in some cases, to a large size.

Ruptures sometimes prove fatal before the cause of the difficulty is known: Therefore, whenever sickness at the stomach, vomiting, obstinate pain and costiveness of the bowels, give reason to suspect a rupture, all those places where they usually appear should be carefully examined; as by neglecting this inquiry, the case may become incurable, or the individual may even die, before the cause of the difficulty shall become known.

**TREATMENT.**—The principal danger in this complaint arises from the liability of the protruded part to become inflamed, by which it is enlarged, rendering it impossible to be returned, and liable to mortify. Therefore, whenever a rupture is discovered, efforts should immediately be made to return the protruded intestine into the abdomen. If the difficulty have lately happened and there be no swelling nor inflammation, this may generally be accomplished with little difficulty.

To do this, lay the patient on his back, with his head very low and his breech raised high with pillows or blankets folded, when a gentle pressure must be made upon the tumor with the fingers, in which more dexterity than force is requisite, to push the gut back by the same opening through which it had escaped. The patient, if arrived at years of discretion, can do this to much better advantage than any one else.

But should these means prove unavailing, or if there be pain, soreness, swelling or inflammation in the part, woollen cloths wrung out of hot water, or a hot stone wrapped in wet cloths, must be applied to the tumor, and renewed as often as they become cool; in addition to which, an injection or two, composed of catnip tea, with half or a whole tea-spoonful of lobelia in it, must be administered, which will have a tendency to relax the constriction and swelling of the part, whereby the rupture may be reduced. To do this, the plan already recommended must be adopted.

The application of fomentations of bitter herbs, such as mayweed, tansy, hoarhound, wormwood, catnip, or hops, may be employed; or it may be bathed with the nerve ointment, or any soft oil. The patient may likewise be steamed, or “let an alkaline poultice be applied over the parts and over the seat of the stricture.” Dr. BEACH says he has found this application

of great value in ruptures which were difficult to reduce. All persons, however, should be cautioned against the employment of cold applications to ruptures as is recommended and practised by the medical faculty, as they will rarely fail to do mischief.

If, however, the above mentioned means fail of relaxing the tumor so that it can be reduced, or if the symptoms be violent, a regular course of medicine must be immediately resorted to, which, together with the external applications, will, if persevered in, generally remove the inflammation, and so relax the part that the rupture may be reduced, that is, the intestine returned to its proper place. When this has been accomplished, it will be necessary to procure a truss, which may be got at most apothecary stores, and apply to the rupture, which will prevent it from again coming down.

The application of a truss, however, will rarely effect a cure, though with young persons, or if the rupture be not suffered to continue long unattended to, the constant wearing of one for a great length of time, may ultimately enable the ruptured walls of the abdomen to close and become sound. We find, however, in the "American Practice," the extract of oak bark highly recommended for the cure of rupture, as having been used with great success by a few practitioners in Europe. The manner of preparing this remedy is as follows :

Take a few pounds of oak bark, (we are not informed which kind,) and steep in a sufficient quantity of cold water, for twelve or twenty-four hours ; then put both bark and water into a large kettle, and keep boiling over a gentle fire, for two or three days, adding, when necessary, boiling water from time to time, so that the bark may be constantly covered. The object in boiling is to extract all the virtues of the bark. After this long and slow boiling, the bark should be removed and the boiling continued until the extract is reduced to a very thick consistence, when it is fit for use.

After a rupture has been reduced, take some of this extract of the oak bark, warm it so as to soften it, then bathe the part with it, and apply the truss. This operation must be repeated three or four times a day. By these means ruptures of many years' standing, according to an European author, have been cured in a few days or weeks ; though in general it required a continuance of three months.

---

#### ST. ANTHONY'S FIRE OR ERYSIPELAS.

THIS disease is an inflammation of the skin, commencing generally with fever, drowsiness, and oftentimes delirium.

Every part of the body is liable to the attacks of erysipelas, but it more frequently appears on the face, legs, and feet, than



any where else when seated externally ; and in warm climates it is a more frequent form of inflammation than that which terminates in suppuration.

Although the disease under consideration sometimes attacks infants, and occasionally youth, yet it seldom occurs before the person has arrived at mature age ; and is most usually met with in advanced life, more often amongst women than men, particularly those of a sanguine, irritable habit or temperament. In some people there exists a predisposition to the disease, sometimes returning periodically, making its attacks once or twice a year, and in some instances much oftener, producing great exhaustion and debility.

St. Anthony's fire is brought on by the different causes which produce inflammations in general ; such as injuries of all kinds, the application of stimulant acrid matters to the skin, as blistering plasters, exposure to cold, particularly during a course of mercury, obstructed perspiration, &c. &c.

In slight cases, where it attacks the extremities, it makes its appearance with a roughness, heat, pain, and redness of the skin, which becomes pale when the finger is pressed upon it, but returns to its former color when the finger is removed. There is also a burning and itching of the part ; and a slight fever. These symptoms continue for a few days, when the surface of the part affected becomes yellowish, the cuticle or scarf-skin falls off in scales, and the disease will be at an end.

But on the other hand, if the attack has been very severe, and the inflammation high, there will be pains in the head and back, great heat, thirst, and restlessness ; the part affected will be slightly swelled ; the pulse small and frequent ; and about the fourth day perhaps, a number of little blisters, containing a clear, or in some instances a yellowish fluid, will appear. In some cases the fluid contained in the blisters is viscid or sticky, and instead of running out when the blister is broken, it adheres to, and dries upon the skin.

In unfavorable cases these blisters occasionally degenerate into obstinate ulcers, which sometimes end in mortification. This, however, does not often happen ; for although it is not uncommon for the skin and blisters, to appear livid or blackish, this usually disappears with the other symptoms of the complaint.

This disease appears to be most dangerous when it attacks the face. In this case it comes on with chilliness, succeeded by fever, thirst, restlessness, with drowsiness, or tendency to coma and delirium, and the pulse is frequent and full. After two or three days, a fiery redness shows itself on some part of the face, which at length extends to the head, and gradually down the neck, leaving every part which the redness has occupied a little swelled.

The whole face at length becomes full and the eye-lids are so much swelled as to deprive the patient of sight. Nearly the same appearances follow the redness and inflammation of the face, as those described on the extremities.

No remission of the fever follows the appearance of the redness on the face; but on the contrary, it is increased as the inflammation spreads.

In the course of the disease the disposition to sleepiness and delirium occasionally increases, and the patient is sometimes destroyed between the seventh and eleventh days of the complaint.

**TREATMENT.**—As this disease oftentimes goes off spontaneously by a sweat, we should commence the cure by steaming, and then giving an emetic; in other words, administer a course of medicine, and, if necessary, repeat it at suitable intervals until the inflammation and fever are removed.

In proof of the propriety of emetics we not only have the general principles of medical philosophy, but also the authority of eminent medical men. Dr. ABERNETHY says, "I'll be hanged if erysipelas is not always the result of a disordered state of the digestive organs; but how to put it to rights," (he very candidly observes,) "I do not know."

Now we do not introduce this remark of ABERNETHY's as proof direct, of the propriety of emetics, but to show his opinion of the cause of the complaint. It is admitted perhaps, by all, that in disordered digestion emetics are valuable.

After the course of medicine the perspiration must be kept up by frequent doses of the diaphoretic powders, and cayenne, aided by the application of hot bricks, or stones. To allay the heat and irritation of the inflamed part, dusting it over with flour, or starch, has been highly recommended; but we think the application of cold water a far better means of accomplishing that object. If the inflammation is seated on such a part that water cannot consistently be poured on it, cloths wet in cold water may be applied instead of it. Stimulating washes, containing a portion of golden seal, may also be used both previous to the cold applications, and afterwards; or the common elm poultice may be applied to the inflamed surface.

As a means of strengthening the digestive powers, the bitter tonic may be given three or four times a day, both during the existence of the inflammation and afterwards; and if symptoms of mortification show themselves, the most energetic measures should be pursued; for which see under the proper head.

---

#### ST. VITUS' DANCE.

THIS disease is marked by convulsive motions, most generally confined to one side, and affecting principally the arm and

leg. When any motion is attempted to be made, various muscles act which ought not to, and thus a contrary effect is produced from what was intended.

This complaint is said to be chiefly incident to young persons of both sexes, particularly those of a weak constitution, or whose health and vigor have been impaired by confinement, or by the use of scanty and improper nourishment. It usually makes its attacks between the age of ten and fifteen, occurring but seldom after maturity. But the only cases of this complaint which we have seen, occurred after maturity, and grew worse with age. These, moreover, were undoubtedly hereditary in the male line, whilst the females were entirely exempt from the disease. In some, the symptoms appeared earlier in life than in others, but all the males, sooner or later, became affected, and gradually grew worse, at least for several years, though the females, as just stated, were not known to be afflicted with this unpleasant disease. This unfortunate family appeared to have the complaint equally in all parts of the system, and were never free from its influence only when in bed or asleep. A very remarkable circumstance connected with the history of this family was, that one individual who could scarcely be said to be still one moment, was an excellent marksman with the rifle, often, for his own and others' amusement, shooting birds on the wing.

St. Vitus' dance, in addition to its being hereditary, as has just been stated, is occasioned by various irritating causes, such as teething, worms, acrid matter in the bowels, offensive smells, poisons, &c. It arises likewise in consequence of violent affections of the mind, as horror, fright, and anger. In many cases it is produced by general weakness and irritability of the nervous system, and in a few it takes place from sympathy at seeing the disease in others.

This complaint is sometimes preceded by a coldness of the feet and limbs, or a kind of tingling sensation which ascends like cold air up the back, with a flatulent pain in the left side, and obstinate costiveness. At other times it comes on with yawning, stretching, anxiety about the heart, palpitations, nausea, difficulty of swallowing, noise in the ears, giddiness, and pains in the head and teeth.

The disease first affects the legs, by a kind of lameness, and the patient drags them after him in an odd ridiculous manner, nor can he hold his arms still, but is constantly throwing or moving them about in an ungraceful manner, which it is impossible for him to avoid. When he eats or drinks, he uses many singular gesticulations before he can carry the food or drink to his mouth; the head in some cases partaking of the same convulsive action. Sometimes various attempts at running and leap-

ing take place, and at others the head and trunk of the body are affected by convulsive motions. The eye loses its lustre and intelligence, and the countenance is pale and expressive of vacancy; swallowing is occasionally performed with difficulty, the speech is often impeded, and sometimes completely suspended.

When this disease arises in children, it usually ceases again before mature age, and in adults is often carried off by a change from the former mode of life. Unless it passes into some other disease, such as epilepsy, or its attacks are violent, it is not attended with danger.

**TREATMENT.**—As costiveness generally prevails in this disease, strict attention should be paid to the bowels, using injections and laxative bitter tonics, with occasional courses of medicine to invigorate the whole system. The tincture of nervine powder ought also to be taken, and if this does not, after a reasonable time, appear likely to check the involuntary action of the muscles, we may substitute the anti-spasmodic tincture, in doses proportioned to the age and symptoms, two or three times a day. An infusion of skullcap, made by pouring a quart of boiling water upon one ounce of the plant, strained, and sweetened with loaf sugar, and drank freely by the patient, is said to be almost a specific for this complaint; especially, when used alternately with the nervine tincture.

Where little debility prevails, and much costiveness, repeated purgings have been highly recommended, as having been attended with great success. If this mode of treatment, however, should be ventured upon, every precaution should be taken to prevent debility. The bitter tonic, and occasional doses of cayenne, ought to be administered, to which may be added the nervine tincture, with a good nourishing diet, and once in a while a course of medicine.

---

### SCALLED HEAD.

**SCALLED**, scald, or scalt head, consists in an inflammation of the skin of the head, producing a discharge of a peculiar gluey matter, which sticks among the hair, and often gradually increases until the whole head is covered with a scab.

Children are principally subject to this complaint, particularly those of the poor; and it frequently arises in consequence of uncleanliness, or from the want of a due proportion of wholesome nourishing food, and possibly from bad nursing. In many instances it is propagated by contagion, either by using a comb imbued with the matter from a diseased head, or by putting on a hat or cap worn by a person laboring under the complaint.

This scalled head first commences with a brownish spot on some part of the head; which soon discharges a peculiar matter.



producing a scab. Other sores soon form on different parts, and, if not checked, the whole head, in time, becomes one scab, from which issues a very offensive matter.

**TREATMENT.**—We may commence the cure of this unpleasant disease, by anointing the head with oil, hog's lard, or fresh butter, when it ought to be covered with the leaf of skunk, or common cabbage, or a bladder may be drawn over it. The oil is to soften the scabs; and the cabbage leaves, or bladder, to promote perspiration of the head, and thus assist in still further dissolving the hard scabs. These applications ought to be made at night; and in the morning the leaves must be removed, the head washed with soap suds, endeavoring to get the scabs all off; and when this is accomplished wash it with a preparation of equal parts of the tincture of myrrh, tincture of lobelia, and a strong tea of bayberry, pond-lily, or beth-root. After the washing, the head must be carefully kept from the air by drawing a bladder over it, or by the use of a cap, handkerchief, or cloth; and if the case be a bad one, the patient ought to have a course of medicine occasionally. If the bowels are costive, they must be relieved by injections, and kept regular by the laxative bitter tonic, of which the psylla ought to form a part, and at the same time taking three or four times a day of the diaphoretic powders, to assist in promoting a healthy action in the system.

The head must be dressed every day in the following manner:—After washing clean with mild soap suds, it must be then washed with lime water, made by slacking a piece of lime, of the bigness of a hen's egg, in a quart of water. After washing with this, apply the tinctures of lobelia and myrrh, and the astringent tea as before directed, when the following ointment may be applied to the sore:—Take two table-spoonsful of pure tar, one table-spoonful of powdered charcoal, two tea-spoonsful of sulphur, or powdered brimstone, to which must be added of hog's lard sufficient to make a soft ointment. Or instead of this, **WELLS'** scrofulous ointment (hereafter mentioned in this work) will, perhaps, be a better application. In either case, when the dressing is completed, the bladder cap should be applied to shield the head from the air.

Simply sprinkling the head with powdered charcoal after washing, has proved highly efficacious in scalled head; and drinking a tea of yellow dock-root, yellow parilla, and sassafras, may be regarded as a valuable remedy. The diet should be wholesome and nutritive, avoiding salted meats and fish.

---

#### SCARLET FEVER.

**THIS** disease attacks persons of all ages, but children and young persons are most subject to it; and it appears at all sea-

sons of the year, but is most frequent in the latter part of fall and beginning of winter, at which period it often prevails as an epidemic.

Scarlet fever is generally regarded as a contagious disease, though it is by some disputed as being such. It is also said by some, that the same individual is liable to have it but once in his life, though it is pretty generally admitted, at the present day that this is not the fact.

As an epidemic, scarlet fever does not always assume precisely the same character. This diversity probably depends upon the dissimilarity of constitution in different individuals, different seasons of the year; different states of the atmosphere. different conditions of the individual when exposed to the contagion, &c. &c.

The disorder to which scarlet fever bears the greatest resemblance is measles, for the distinguishing symptoms of which, see *Measles*.

This complaint, like other fevers, commences with languor, lassitude, chills, or shiverings, heat, confusion of ideas, thirst, dry skin, anxiety, nausea, and vomiting. The stools are usually of the common quantity, urine high colored and turbid, and the pulse weak and varying from 100 to 120 strokes in a minute.

About the second or third day, numerous specks, or minute patches, of a vivid red color, appear about the face and neck; and within twenty-four hours, a like efflorescence is diffused over the surface of the body, and occasionally even tinges the inside of the lips, cheeks, palate, and fauces.

Sometimes the efflorescence is continuous over the whole body; but, frequently, on the trunk there are intervals of a natural color between the patches, with dots scattered over them. There is an increase of fever in the evening, at which time the rash is most florid or red, and is less so in the morning.

On the fifth day the eruption begins to decline; the intervals between the patches begin to widen, and the florid hue fades. On the sixth, the rash is very indistinct, and is wholly gone on the seventh.

But the description which we have given, is of the disease in its mildest appearance. In the more malignant forms of the scarlet fever, we find, in addition to the symptoms first enumerated as being of an aggravated character, soreness of the throat; inflammation and ulceration of the tonsils; the breathing is frequent and laborious; the pulse quick, small, and depressed.

In the progress of this form of the disease, one universal redness often pervades the face, body, and limbs, with some appearance of swelling. The eyes, and nostrils, likewise, partake more or less of the redness; and a tendency to delirium often prevails.

Sometimes also a disposition to run into putrefaction takes place, which is known by the pulse being small, indistinct, and irregular; the tongue, teeth, and lips, are covered by a black fur or incrustation; with fætid breath; livid color of the cheeks; deafness and delirium; and great prostration of strength. Ulcerations of the fauces also arise, similar to the putrid sore throat; and the tongue is liable to be excoriated by the slightest touch. The rash or redness, is usually faint, excepting perhaps a few irregular patches, which soon change to a livid or dark red color. It also appears later in the disease, is very uncertain in its duration, and in some instances suddenly disappears in a few hours after it comes out; but may, perhaps, show itself again in two or three days.

When scarlet fever terminates favorably, the fiery redness gradually abates, and is succeeded by a brown color; the skin becomes rough, and peels off in small scales; the swelling subsides, and the health is gradually restored.

The mild forms of this disease are not to be regarded as dangerous; but when it partakes much of the character of putrid sore throat, or appears much inclined to putrefaction, it must be viewed in a more unfavorable light.

**TREATMENT.**—In mild cases of this complaint nothing more may be necessary than to give occasional doses of the diaphoretic powders, saffron tea, or cayenne, to promote perspiration, and, if the bowels are costive, an injection ought occasionally to be administered whilst the digestive powers may be restored, and the bowels regulated with the laxative bitter tonic.

Dr. CURRIE, of Liverpool, states that the affusion of cold water, at the commencement, and during the hot stage of this fever, completely removes the disease and prevents any efflorescence or redness from appearing. His method is to strip the patient entirely naked and dash four or five gallons of the coldest water he could get, over the body; repeating the operation ten or twelve times in twenty-four hours, if the heat or fever continued to return so often.

He further adds, that he pursued this course with so invariable success, in upwards of one hundred and fifty cases, that he could not contemplate it without emotions of surprise, as well as of satisfaction. Those who wish to try this practice would no doubt increase the good effects of the cold affusion, by administering a dose of cayenne, or of the diaphoretic powders previous to applying the water.

But we think, nevertheless, that using the vapor bath to promote perspiration, and then pouring on the cold water, is a more sure and speedy method of removing the heat and fever than the cold water alone.

In bad cases the course of medicine should be resorted to,

and repeated as the circumstances of the case may require, until a cure is effected.

If a soreness of the throat takes place, it must be treated as directed under the head of malignant, or putrid sore throat; and where mortification is apprehended, we should resort to the means recommended under that head.

If purgative medicines are at all admissible in scarlet fever, it must be at the first onset; and even then, the tendency to run into typhus, and end in putrefaction, is sometimes so great as to render cathartics dangerous.

The appetite and strength should be restored with the bitter tonic, wine, nourishing food, and gentle exercise.

---

### SCURVY.

THIS complaint is arranged, by Dr. Good, under three different heads or species; which he denominates *petechial*, *land*, and *sea* scurvy.

The first species, or *petechial* scurvy, is characterized by numerous small spots, resembling flea-bites, chiefly appearing on the breast, arms, and legs; with a pale countenance.

The second species, or *land* scurvy, shows itself in circular dark or purple spots in the skin, of different sizes; often in stripes or patches, scattered irregularly over the legs, arms, and body; with occasional hemorrhages from the mouth, nose, or internal parts; attended with great debility and depression of spirits.

The third species, or *sea* scurvy, is characterized by spots of different hues, and found principally at the roots of the hair; the teeth are loose; the gums spongy, and apt to bleed; the breath is fetid; and extreme universal debility prevails.

All these varieties, however, may be contemplated under one head as only different degrees of violence, or mildness, of the same disease. The last species named is not, however, denominated sea scurvy from its exclusive prevalence at sea, but because it is there that it is most common, rages with most violence, and occasions the greatest havoc.

The same causes which produce this fatal malady at sea, will also do it on shore; and in armies and garrisons reduced to short allowance or unwholesome provisions, like causes have given rise to a scurvy of a most malignant and fatal character; especially where they have been worn down by fatigue or anxiety, and exposed to a damp air.

The causes which generally give rise to scurvy are, severe labor; weak or unwholesome diet; breathing an impure air; anxiety of mind; debilitating menstrual evacuations; and, at sea, by living on salt provisions.



In the worst forms of this disease, there arises a tendency to putrefaction; and a singular disposition, as related by Lord Anson, in old wounds after being long healed, to break open afresh, and become ill conditioned sores; the same thing also happening with broken bones.

The scurvy comes on gradually with lassitude, weariness, faintness, and pains in the limbs; dejection of spirits, anxiety, and oppression at the breast; loss of strength and debility.—After this there often are shiverings, nausea, and vomiting. The purple spots, which are the principal characteristic of the disease, commonly appear first on the legs, and afterwards, at irregular periods, on the thighs, arms, and trunk of the body. The spots sometimes appear on the inside of the mouth, tonsils, lips, or gums; and it is from here the first hemorrhage issues, though as the disease advances, blood also flows from the nose, lungs, stomach, intestines, and uterus. The bleeding is oftentimes profuse; and the disease is accompanied with dropsical swellings of the legs.

The state of the bowels is various; the stools being sometimes frequent and offensive; whilst at other times an obstinate costiveness prevails.

Our description thus far has been principally confined to the milder forms of scurvy. In the worst degrees of it, such as has sometimes taken place in long sea voyages, all the symptoms which have been described become aggravated; and the last stage, says Dr. Good, is truly distressing. Blood is frequently discharged from the intestines, bladder, and other organs. The slightest motion brings on faintness, and often immediate death. Catchings of the breath and syncope or fainting, become frequent and dangerous; yet the patient is so insensible of his real weakness, that he often attempts exertion, and dies in the very effort; though more frequently he survives the attempt for a short time, and especially when animated by some happy motive, as the hope of getting on shore, and then suddenly sinks into the arms of death.

**TREATMENT.**—As diet has a great influence in the cure of scurvy, we will first direct the reader's attention to this subject. A person laboring under this disease ought to use no salted animal food, but on the contrary, he should live mostly on vegetables, and what meat he does eat should be fresh. Of vegetables, he should use of those termed alkalescent, such as garlicks, scurvy-grass, water-cresses, &c.; mustard, horse, and common radish, and lettuce; all of which may be freely eaten without cooking, together with beets, carrots, parsnips, turnips, cabbage, &c., which may be prepared by the common process of cookery. Sour fruits are also useful.

The drink may consist of vinegar and water, sour butter-

milk, good cider, spruce beer, or, what is far better, lemon-juice, which must be mixed with water and sweetened with sugar. Indeed, this last article is now considered, in conjunction with proper diet, a specific for scurvy.

If the digestive powers have become much impaired, a course of medicine ought to be administered, and the bowels stimulated by injections. The daily use of the vapor bath will also be found highly beneficial, and the course of medicine should be repeated as the exigencies of the case may seem to require.

The wine-bitters must be taken two or three times a day; and a tea made of the roots of the narrow-dock, ought also often to be drunk during the intervals between taking the bitters. We have known one bad case of scurvy cured by no other means than the dock-root tea faithfully persevered in. There is no doubt that this article possesses, in a high degree, the power of curing this disease. If the fresh roots can be procured, a small handful of them may be sliced up and steeped in a quart of water, of which the patient may drink from a fourth to a half tea-cupful several times a day; and if the dried root is used, one tea-spoonful of the powder may be steeped in half a tea-cupful of hot water, and taken as a dose three or four times a day, in conjunction with the wine-bitters.

The common bur-dock has also been advantageously used in cases of scurvy, and if the narrow-dock cannot be procured, this might be substituted for it. The medicinal powers of the smooth or broad-leaved-dock, which so nearly resembles the narrow kind, is said by some to be fully equal to the latter, in the cure of diseases of the skin, for which it is so celebrated; and in the absence of the narrow, the broad-leaved-dock may be used instead of it.

---

## SHINGLES.

THIS disease, in Dr. Good's arrangement, is a variety of tetter, characterized by an eruption of blisters on some part of the trunk: appearing in clusters, which are disposed to spread round the body like a girdle.

The name of this complaint is a corruption of either a French or Latin word, signifying a belt or girdle.

An attack of shingles is sometimes preceded by sickness and headache; but in most instances the first symptoms are, heat, itching, and tingling on some part of the body, which, when examined, is found to be covered with small red patches of an irregular shape, situated near together, upon each of which numerous minute elevations or pimples are seen clustered together. These pimples, in the course of twenty-four hours, be-

come enlarged to the size of small pearls, are perfectly transparent, and filled with a clear fluid.

The clusters are of various sizes, one, two, or even three inches in diameter, and surrounded by a narrow red margin or ring. During three or four days, if the disease be not checked, other clusters arise in succession, and extend with considerable regularity in a line drawn both ways round the body; though sometimes, like a sword belt, over the shoulder.

As the patches which first appeared subside, the blisters partially run together, and assume a livid or blackish hue, terminating in thin dark scabs. About the twelfth or fourteenth day, the scabs fall off, when the skin under them appears red and tender; and where the most considerable sores have been, there are pits made by scars.

This complaint is generally to be regarded as of little consequence; though it is sometimes accompanied, especially on the decline of the eruption, with an intense deep-seated pain in the chest.

The shingles may occur at all seasons, but it is most apt to arise in summer and autumn.

Persons between twelve and twenty-five years of age are most liable to attacks of this disease, though individuals more advanced are not exempt from it. It is caused by colds, sudden fits of passion, violent exercise, cold indigestible food, and intemperance. Occasionally, it is said to have appeared critical in bowel complaints and affections of the lungs.

**TREATMENT.**—In general, little need be done in affections of this kind. If, however, there should be a deep-seated pain in the chest, a course of medicine ought to be administered, and followed with the laxative bitter tonic and diaphoretic powders. The bitter tonic should be sufficiently laxative to keep the bowels loose; and if obstinate costiveness attend, a purge may be administered, aided by injections.

The affected part may be washed with the bathing drops, or the tincture of lobelia or of blood-root, or cold substances may be applied to it. A tea of the dock-root, we also think, might be useful in this case, as well as in all other diseases of the skin, either taken internally or applied externally.

---

## SMALL POX.

THIS complaint has been very justly regarded as one of the greatest scourges of the human race. It is supposed that it was unknown to the ancient Greek and Roman physicians, as no definite description of the disease has been found in their writings. The first account of it is met with in the works of the Arabian

physicians ; and from Arabia the small pox was introduced into Europe, where it spread devastation and death, unrestrained, if not accelerated, in its destructive career, by the means adopted to oppose it.

Persons of all ages and both sexes are liable to this malady, but the young are more exposed to its influence than persons who are very old. It is also said to be more prevalent in the spring and summer, than at other seasons of the year.

This disease is of a highly contagious nature, and the same individual is, in general, liable to take the affection but once in his life ; though a very few instances have occurred, in which the same person had a second attack. Some individuals, on the contrary, appear altogether unsusceptible of the small pox, although exposed to its infection, and continue so through life ; whilst others remain so only for a time, and then readily take the complaint. With some also the disease produces but little indisposition, though instances of this kind are very rare.

Small pox commences with restless uneasy sensations, great dislike to motion, chilliness and heat, vomiting, soreness of the throat, pain in the head and small of the back, great thirst and stupor. On the third or fourth day the eruption appears on the face, neck, and breast, in small spots resembling flea-bites, which increase every night for the ensuing four days ; during which time the whole body commonly becomes spotted with them, though the face is almost always much more thickly covered than any other part.

Wherever the pimples appear, the part gradually swells ; the eye-lids particularly are often so much distended as to produce blindness. The spaces between the pimples are of a reddish cast, and, as the pimples suppurate and fill with matter, these spaces grow redder. About the eighth day the suppuration is complete ; and on the eleventh the inflammation abates, and the pustules, as they are called when filled with matter, begin to decline and dry away by degrees and scale off, and wholly disappear by the fourteenth or fifteenth day, excepting those on the extremities, which, as they come out later, commonly remain a few days longer. The fever is inflammatory.

Such is the ordinary course of the mild forms of small pox, but there often are great variations in the severity of the symptoms, according to the degree of fever and extent of the eruption, which are proportionate to each other ; if the fever is high, the eruption will be considerable, and if moderate, it will be less, and the pustules few. When the pimples are few and scattered, there will be but little indisposition ; but when they are numerous, the soreness, swelling, and fever will be very distressing. If the patient be an infant, convulsions sometimes occur previous to the appearance of the eruption, as well as afterwards.



We have stated that in the mild forms of small pox the fever is inflammatory; and we might also have said that the pimples are separate and distinct from each other; but in the more violent and malignant varieties of the disease, the fever assumes the putrid or typhus form; the pustules run into each other, becoming confluent, as it is termed, and the disease often ends in death.

The distinct small pox is not considered dangerous, excepting when the fever which precedes the eruption is extremely violent, or when it attacks pregnant women, or symptoms of putridity arise. When there is a tendency to putrefaction, the disease often proves fatal between the eighth and eleventh days, but in some instances death is protracted till the fourteenth or sixteenth. Small pox is apt to leave behind it a predisposition to inflammatory complaints, particularly sore eyes, and inflammation of the lungs, and not unfrequently scrofula.

**TREATMENT.**—We take the liberty here of laying before the reader a statement of the medical treatment of small pox, furnished by Dr. ISRAEL WILSON, a respectable botanical practitioner of the city of Cincinnati. We also deem it proper to say that a number of botanical practitioners in that city have had ample opportunity of testing the new practice, and have found it highly efficacious.

Dr. WILSON informs us that he has had about fifteen cases of small pox, of which number only one died; and in this case a raving delirium immediately supervened on the taking place of the fever, which was before he saw the patient; and it being a child, he was prevented from administering medicine.

The following is a statement of the manner in which one case was treated, and may be regarded as a fair sample or specimen of the general mode of managing all the others.

“On the first of May, 1830, Dr. WILSON was called to see a patient affected with a severe pain in the head and back, attended with stupor and general prostration of the powers of the system, and a quick but not full pulse. The case was soon recognised to be small pox.

“In the first place an injection was administered to relieve the bowels, which were much constipated or bound; when a regular course of medicine was resorted to, (including steaming) after which two more injections were given at short intervals, by which the bowels were sufficiently opened. The injections were, however, continued as often as once in eight hours until the eruption appeared, and the pustules became filled with matter. The cayenne and astringent compound were likewise freely used during the same time; and after the filling of the pustules, the bitters and tonic cordial were resorted to, and continued until the patient was entirely well, which was in about two weeks from the time Dr. WILSON first saw him.

“He has not found it necessary to resort, in any case of small pox, to more than two courses of medicine to produce the eruption, when the fever has always abated. The injections were made more stimulating than he makes them in other cases of disease.

“It is also worthy of remark, that none of his patients have had pits remaining in their faces after the disappearance of the pustules, as is often the case with persons cured under the old practice of medicine.”

Other practitioners of the botanical school, however, in the treatment of small pox, do not resort to the steaming process. Those who omit it, give medicine to promote perspiration; and relieve the bowels by injections or mild purges. To produce perspiration, the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne, may be used, repeating the doses so often that the system shall be constantly under the influence of the medicine.

Of the comparative value, or success, of treating small pox with or without the process of steaming, we are unable to judge; and, therefore, those who may meet with this disease must form an opinion for themselves, as we can only say, that from all the testimony which we have obtained of those who ought to know, we have no hesitation in believing that either mode is far more successful than the old method of treating it. We are the more particular in thus expressing our sentiments on this subject, in consequence of reports of the inadequacy of the botanical practice to cure small pox, which have grown out of two recent cases of failure; and also because it is so directly in opposition to the mode adopted by the mineral doctors. Their practice consists in a diet wholly of *vegetable* food, purgatives every few days, cold drinks, light clothing, and exercise in the open air, or in a cool room. We also take the liberty of introducing a communication from Dr. RIPLEY on this important subject. We could wish, however, that he had gone a little more into detail respecting his treatment of the small pox; but as it is, we think it valuable, and believe that whilst it goes, in general, to substantiate the statement of Dr. WILSON, it will also, with a little attention, be found sufficiently explicit to answer all the purposes intended:

“I have always found,” says the doctor, “in the primary fever of small pox, an almost perfect resemblance to ordinary bilious fever; but in general the rigors are more severe, and continue alternating with flashes of heat, for a longer time than is usual in that disease. But the action varies in different cases, from the lowest typhoid type, to the highest inflammatory form, which last is the most common; whilst in general the danger increases as it approaches the typhus; and I verily believe that no physician can discriminate so closely as to detect the small pox by the symptoms alone, before the eruption appears.

"But the difficulty of discriminating makes no difficulty in practice to those who adopt the botanic plan, as it requires the same treatment with that form of fever which it resembles, and the same motto may be used in either case—'support the powers of life, and never poison your patient.' 'The more the symptoms incline to typhus, the greater the deficiency of nervous energy; and, of course, the difficulty of keeping the determining powers to the surface is increased. In such cases it must not be supposed that the danger is over when the eruption is out, for the tendency to strike in, will be in proportion to the diminished energy of the nervous system, which appears in the first stage; and the sinking or flattening down of the pustules will perhaps be the first symptom indicating an unfavorable condition of the system. But where there is more energy, all the symptoms of fever may increase, and bile will accumulate in the stomach, and a thorough emetic becomes necessary. The anti-spasmodic tincture is always best in such cases; and if the throat is sore, and hot medicine dreaded, still it is needed, and the throat is cured by it. Let the diet be good and nourishing throughout.

"To make myself better understood by those who employ no doctor, I would advise a course of medicine in the first place, when the cold chills commence; it will be proper to steam before giving an emetic if the patient is cold and the pulse low; but if otherwise, give the anti-spasmodic tincture first, and after the operation it will be proper to steam if the fever is off; if not, rub the patient all over with a flannel cloth wet with the compound tincture of myrrh, or pepper vinegar, and repeat the dose of anti-spasmodic tincture till the fever abates, or as often as it rises after an intermission. In most cases under this treatment there is very little fever after the eruption appears, through the whole progress of the disease. If the secondary fever\* appears, it is when the pustules are about drying up, when the same treatment may be applied as at first, to subdue the fever. But beware of refrigerating cathartics: use the syringe to keep the bowels in order, with diaphoretic tea and anti-spasmodic tincture."

We cannot well leave the present subject without laying before the public some account which we have received of the very successful use of the squaw or rattle-root, in cases of the small pox.

If the reader do not already know it, he may be informed that in the early days of this republic, the jurisdiction of the country along the Susquehanna river, about Wyoming, was claimed by the State of Connecticut, the laws of which disallowed of the practice of inoculation. Two physicians, however, as our in-

---

\* This name is applied to the fever which often arises in violent cases, after the pustules have appeared.

formants state, had so far disregarded the law as to inoculate one or two families in a private manner, with a view, as was supposed, of introducing the small pox into the neighborhood.—Unfortunately for them, however, the circumstance got to the ears of the magistrates, and the doctors were obliged to take measures to stop the progress of the disease or become liable to a heavy penalty.

As they were returning from the magistrates, before whom they had been cited, to their inoculated patients, they were overheard by a person standing behind a tree, talking about the peculiar circumstances in which they were placed, and the means they should use to extricate themselves from their embarrassments. The person who had secreted himself, continuing to observe their movements, saw them dismount from their horses and dig something from the earth that they carried away with them, which he found upon going to the spot, to be the squaw or rattle-root. His curiosity now prompted him to repair to the house of the inoculated family, which was near by, where he saw the bruised root steeped into a strong tea, and freely administered to the family; and as no symptoms of small pox ever appeared, he very naturally concluded that the rattle-root tea destroyed the virus of the matter introduced by the process of inoculation.

Such is the simple narrative of the circumstances, as related to us by two individuals who lived in the same neighborhood at the time, and who were near relatives of the person who made the discovery; and we have unbounded confidence in the facts as stated; but whether the rattle-root prevented the inoculation from taking effect, is a matter involved in doubt. We have, however, more satisfactory evidence of its power to destroy the small pox virus, than is deducible from the case just related, and which we derived from the same source.

The individual who made the discovery of the doctors' using the rattle-root, very naturally concluded that if it would destroy the virus before it had produced its specific effects upon the system, it would also weaken its force and disarm it of its destructive powers after those effects had made their appearance. With these views, he embraced the first opportunity to recommend a trial of it, and found it succeeded beyond his expectations, in removing the urgent symptoms of this fatal malady, and reducing it to a mildness which, under similar circumstances, he had not been accustomed to see; and the experiment, repeated again and again, not only by himself, but by others, and the effect which followed being so uniformly the same, left no doubt on the minds of our informants, that the rattle-root may be regarded as a specific against the effects of the small pox poison.

But before leaving the subject, we will relate one case, amongst many others, in which the remedy in question gave ample evi-



dence of its happy powers. A female, considerably advanced in life, took the small pox which made its appearance in its worst form, and ultimately arose to such a height that she was abandoned by her physician as beyond the possibility of cure. The individual who had made the discovery of rattle-root, happening to be a particular friend of the old lady's, and hearing of her hopeless situation, immediately set out to visit her, being a distance of many miles. When he arrived, she had been speechless several days, and to all appearance was beyond the reach of medicine. True, however, to his purpose, and possessing the confidence which experience had given him in the virtues of the rattle-root, he immediately prepared some of the tea, which he commenced giving her, and in a short time had the satisfaction of hearing her speak, and eventually to see her restored to health.

We have now stated the most material facts respecting the use of the rattle-root in the treatment of small pox, as they have been related to us by persons in whom we put the highest confidence. But we do not ask the reader to place full reliance upon the alleged virtues of this root, although in all cases where in we have employed it as a remedy, though not in small pox, we have found it an article of very active, but we think, not dangerous powers. It will be little or no disappointment, however, to us if, on trial, it should fail to produce the effects which have been attributed to it; though we must confess that we feel some confidence in its virtues. But even should it, on a fair and full trial, fail, it will share no more than the common fate of many other articles which have been highly extolled, in consequence of some favorable circumstances attending the first few cases.

We will close the present article with a request that those who have it in their power to test the virtues of the rattle-root in small pox, would cautiously try its effects; as it ought to be borne in mind that it is only by experience we can fully ascertain the value of any article, and by which means alone the healing art can arise to that degree of perfection which we devoutly hope it will, at no distant period, attain.

#### INOCULATION AND VACCINATION.

THE object of producing the small pox by inoculation is to disarm this fatal plague of its terrific powers; as by propagating it in this manner it is rendered far more mild than when communicated in the natural way. In the latter mode of taking the disease, it is computed that of adults, from one fourth to one third die with it; and of children about one seventh; whilst in cases of inoculation, not more than one dies in five or six hundred.

Yet, great as is the intrinsic advantage of inoculation says

Dr. Good, there is one evil which has always accompanied it, and which it is almost impossible to provide against; and that is, the wider diffusion of the contagion through the atmosphere by the indiscriminate use of inoculation in all places. And hence, continues he, it has been very forcibly observed, by those who have written most warmly in favor of vaccination, that small pox inoculation is upon this ground a greater public evil than good; since the multitude, who will not consent to be inoculated, receiving the natural disease more generally than they otherwise would do, the total mortality from this complaint is greater than before inoculation was had recourse to.

The method of communicating the small pox by inoculation, like the disease itself, appears to have come from the East, and especially from China; where it seems to have been practised from time immemorial. The first public attempt at inoculation in England, was an experiment made upon six condemned criminals, all of whom were fortunate enough to recover, and thus redeemed their lives.

The matter intended to be used for inoculation should be taken on the seventh or eighth day, or previous to the taking place of suppuration; and it is of no consequence from what subject, whether young or old, with a disease slight or serious, or even from a dead person, it is equally the same. The usual place of inserting the matter is between the elbow and shoulder, and is done in a very simple manner; a needle is as good as any thing, though a lancet is commonly used. All that is necessary, and all that ought to be done, is to make the smallest possible scratch, or puncture that will start the blood, into which a minute quantity of the matter must be deposited.

The puncture or scratch, does not so completely disappear in this case as in vaccination; but is often scarcely visible for two or three days; about which time a minute pimple will be seen and a little itching may be felt, and sometimes there is a slight inflammation. On the sixth day a pain and weight are felt in the arm-pit, proving that the virus or poison is conveyed into the system. On the seventh or eighth day, slight shiverings, headache and pain in the back are perceived, and are immediately followed by the eruption, which, for the most part, is confined to a single pustule immediately at the point where the matter was inserted, or a few which directly surround it.

A rosy, or a narrow deep red circle, surrounds the pustule; which, in unfavorable cases, turns of a purple or livid color, and the head or center of the pustule sinks or flattens.

The treatment should be the same as that recommended for the disease when taken in the natural way.

VACCINATION is the substitution of a still more mild and less dangerous, as well as a different, disease than that produced by

inoculation, for the natural small pox, and which is known by the name of kine or cow pox. The contagion was first derived from the cow, and hence its name.

Cow pox, says Dr. Good, first attracted attention in the county of Dorset, England, about forty or fifty years since, as a pustular eruption, derived from infection, chiefly showing itself on the hands of milkers who had milked cows similarly disordered. Those who had been thus affected, were found unsusceptible of taking the small pox; and so well were the people satisfied of this fact, that an inoculator, who attempted to communicate the small pox to one who had been previously infected with cow pox, was treated with ridicule. A formal trial, continues Dr. Good, was made, however, and it was found that no small pox ensued. About the same time, a farmer of sagacity of the name of NASH, duly attending to these facts, had the courage to attempt inoculation on himself, in which he completely succeeded. And from these, and numerous similar facts, originated the practice of what is now generally termed vaccination; the whole honor of which is attributed to Dr. JENNER, and which, in all probability, will immortalize his name. To this, however, we do not object, after recording the facts of the case; and which, we will only observe, afford additional evidence that the great benefactors of the world are not always found in the temples of wealth, nor the mazy walks of science, but amongst the hardy sons of nature, whose original, untutored minds, unshackled by the forms of science, are left free to pursue the dictates of reason, truth, and common sense.

After it became known that having the cow pox procured an exemption from the small pox, attempts were made to inoculate with matter from the human subject, which was found not only to succeed, but also to produce a much more mild disease than that derived, by milking, from the cow.

The matter for inoculation, or, as it is now termed, vaccination, may be taken from the pustule at any time after it is formed, before the ninth day of the disease. But after the ninth day from the time of vaccination, the matter usually becomes so inactive as not to be depended upon. Good matter is clear or transparent; and none other should be used. Of late, however, the scab has been preferred to vaccinate from. For this purpose, take a scab from a well formed pustule, pare off the edges with a knife, then shave down the central portion and moisten it with a little cold water, when it is fit for use.

In performing the operation of vaccination, the same instruments may be used, and the same plan pursued, that were recommended for inoculating for the small pox, observing great care to make the puncture or scratch no deeper than just to start the blood, or there will be danger of the matter being

washed away by the bleeding. On the third day after vaccination has been performed, a very small inflamed spot appears where the matter was inserted in the arm; which gradually increases in size and hardness, and produces a small round tumor slightly raised above the level of the skin. About the sixth day, a discolored speck appears in the center of the tumor, which is caused by the formation of matter; and this speck goes on increasing in size as the matter augments, until the tenth day; at which time it exhibits in perfection, the peculiar character or appearances that distinguish it from the small pox inoculation. Its shape is round, or sometimes a little oval, the margin or edge is very distinguishable, and is always smooth or regular; and the center of the pustule is depressed or sunken, so that the edges are elevated above it; being, moreover, of a bluish brown color, whilst the fluid or matter which it contains is clear and colorless.

About the eighth day, when the pustule is completely formed, a pain will be felt in the arm-pit, with perhaps a slight headache, shivering, lassitude, loss of appetite, and increase of the pulse. These symptoms may continue, in a greater or lesser degree, for one or two days, but always go off spontaneously, without leaving any bad effects behind. During this time the pustule becomes surrounded by a red inflamed circle, about an inch or inch and a half in diameter, which is an evidence that the vaccine matter has produced the proper constitutional effect upon the system.

After this period, the matter in the pustule gradually dries up, the red circle fades, and, in a day or two, imperceptibly vanishes; so that it is seldom discoverable after the thirteenth day from the vaccination. About this time, the pustule hardens into a thick scab of a brown appearance; and, if not removed purposely or accidentally, falls off in about a fortnight, leaving the skin sound and uninjured. No medical treatment is required in vaccinated cow pox.

---

### SPASMODIC CHOLERA.

THIS formidable disease appears to have had its origin in that part of the continent of Asia called the East Indies, whence it is sometimes called *Asiatic*, or *Indian* cholera. It commenced its ravages in the year 1816 or '17, and after spreading devastation and death over many parts of the continent of Asia for about twelve years, it visited the Phillippine and other islands of the Chinese Sea, and at length, in 1829, entered Europe. Continuing its destructive career, it successively traveled over many of the kingdoms of Europe, and finally made its appear-



ance in the summer of 1832, on the American continent at Quebec and Montreal, where it gave melancholy proofs that its virulence was by no means assuaged by its passage across the Atlantic. Nor has its malignant character been in the least mitigated by a year's residence in the United States; but is at this very moment [summer of 1833,] sweeping off its victims in many parts of the country with fearful rapidity.

The symptoms of this dreadful malady are usually spoken of as appertaining to two stages; the *premonitory* and the *collapsed*. The premonitory symptoms are; derangements of the bowels, such as looseness, in which the discharges are frequent and copious, thin and slimy, of a whitish color and often attended with griping pains in the intestines. Pains in, or sickness at, the stomach, and dizziness of the head, are also considered as premonitory symptoms of the cholera; all of which, in places where the disease is prevailing, should be carefully attended to and guarded against.

After some one or more of these symptoms has continued for a longer or shorter time, that is, for a few minutes or hours, the collapsed stage comes on, so suddenly in some cases, as almost instantly to prostrate the person to the earth. This stage of the complaint is generally of but short duration, as the patient must be quickly relieved by medicine or he is soon cut off by the disease.

In the collapsed stage there is a deadly coldness of the extremities, with spasmodic twitchings of the fingers and toes, gradually extending along the limbs to the body. The skin of the hands and feet is pale and shrunk or wrinkled; sickness, or burning pain at the stomach comes on, with retchings, vomitings, and violent cramps or spasms, great thirst, anxiety, and oppression; distortion of the features; cold breath and tongue, the latter of which is usually moist and whitish; failure of the circulation; and finally, a dreadful universal spasm puts a period to the suffering of the unhappy patient.

Such are a few of the many and varied symptoms attending the progress of this terrific malady, though all of them are not often found united in the same patient. Indeed, in some instances the power of life is so suddenly and fatally prostrated, that the organs of the system at once become insensible to the influence of stimulus of any kind; and nothing is perceptible but "a mortal coldness and arrest of the circulation, and the patient sinks, insensible of pain, into the arms of death!"

TREATMENT.—From all that we can glean from the various fragments and ephemeral publications emanating from botanical physicians, upon the treatment of this scourge of nations, it would seem that, in general, it is pretty easily cured in its first or premonitory stage. To check the diarrhœa, which consti-

tutes the chief symptom in this stage, little more, in common, seems necessary, than placing the patient in bed, with a hot brick at the feet, and administering the best remedies to check diarrhœa, such as tincture of myrrh and bayberry, cholera syrup or mixture, decoction of wild-cherry bark, cat-tail flag root boiled in milk, or any other astringent article, with diaphoretic powder or cayenne to promote perspiration. If perspiration, however, should not be produced, or the symptoms not be mitigated, by these means, more vigorous measures must be taken. A hot rock may be placed at each side of the patient, and a stimulating injection administered, and, if necessary, repeated. The extremities, stomach, and bowels should also be freely bathed with an infusion of warm pepper and vinegar, or other hot stimulating wash, applied with much friction. If there be much nausea or vomiting, and the means recommended fail, recourse must be had to some of the anti-emetic mixtures, which should be administered without delay.

The perspiration, when produced, should be kept up for from twelve to twenty-four hours, according to the violence of the attack or other condition of the patient. If by these means the disease be thrown off, the patient should continue taking the cholera syrup several times a day, or if there be symptoms of nervous irritation, an occasional dose of the nervine powders must be taken, together with the bitter tonic, until the symptoms are entirely removed.

But if the foregoing treatment prove unavailing, or if the collapsed stage come on, more vigorous measures must be taken. The anti-spasmodic tincture, in addition to the other articles recommended, must be freely employed, as a vomit, and injections, containing two or three tea-spoonsful of the same tincture, ought to be often administered; and we would recommend, as speedily as possible, the application of the vapor bath.\* At any rate, the most powerful means must be employed to promote perspiration, both by the external application of heat to the surface, and by the internal administration of the most powerful stimulants. If nothing can be retained on the stomach, as is often the case, an emetic must be administered by injection. For this purpose the quantity of fluid used should be small, so that it can the better be retained; using either the tincture or tea of lobelia, or the seeds, in the quantity of from one to two table-spoonsful in each injection; repeating them, for three or four times, every ten or fifteen minutes.

If free and full vomiting, of a dark morbid matter, takes place from administering an emetic, in any form, we have good

---

\* Some respectable practitioners think a *dry* heat alone ought to be used, and that vapor or *moist* heat ought never to be resorted to in cholera.

reason to hope for a recovery ; but if the matter ejected from the stomach be light colored, thin, and watery, the prospect may be considered as highly doubtful. In cases of the latter kind, Dr. N. HIXSON, of Maysville, Ky., informs us he has found cold affusion, by pouring on the patient a bucket full, or more of cold water, would excite reaction, and thus increase the pulse, and restore the circulation and heat to the surface. When this is done, he gives an emetic, which is followed by that kind of discharge indicative of a favorable termination of the complaint. Cold affusion, under such circumstances, may seem like a rash and hazardous experiment, but Dr. HIXSON assures us that he has generally found it beneficial. When he did not find it so, he immediately proceeded to employ the vapor bath, and steamed as long as the patient could well bear it, and then applied the cold water, which, as he informs us, always increased the pulse and restored the circulation and heat to the skin. This condition of the system he considered as indicating the favorable moment for an emetic, which, under these circumstances, always produced a good effect. During the foregoing operations, the patient must take freely of the cayenne, or diaphoretic powders, or both may be taken alternately, not only to guard against the shock from the cold affusion, but to stimulate the system, and assist in producing reaction. Our informant also recommends the employment of diuretics to relieve the suppression of urine which always attends cholera.

The reputed great success of Dr. HIXSON in the treatment of the fatal malady under consideration, has induced us to give the foregoing, which he communicated to us during a personal interview ; and now leave to be tested by such as may have opportunities for doing so.

If, notwithstanding an emetic has afforded relief, the patient should relapse, no matter at what period, whether of a day or an hour, another emetic must at once be given as the only means of arresting the disease. We have known one case in which four emetics were given in the course of twelve hours, and another in which seven or eight were given within the lapse of thirty-six hours, with the happiest effect ; and without which, there is no doubt, the patients would have both been numbered with the dead. We are satisfied, in short, that emetics are the principal dependence in cholera, and ought to be repeated as often as appears necessary to keep the patient in an improving condition. During the intervals, the patient should have repeated small doses of cayenne, cholera syrup, diaphoretic powders, or tincture of myrrh, and a decoction of bayberry, cherry bark, and pond lily, or cat-tail flag-root boiled in milk, or any other astringent article which may set well on the stomach ; giving any or all of them alternately or

in any other prudent manner which the circumstances of the case may suggest.

When the disease is entirely removed, the patient may take, occasionally, a small dose of either the cholera syrup or bitter tonic, and, more frequently and freely, of the wine bitters or the tonic cordial, to promote digestion and restore the strength; carefully avoiding every thing, in the least degree, liable to produce relapse.

Before quitting this subject, we feel disposed to offer a few remarks on the change of diet so commonly resorted to wherever the cholera prevails. Much has been said, written and printed, in relation to this matter, a great portion of which we consider erroneous. No sudden and essential change can ever be made in the quality of our food without affecting the irritability of the bowels; therefore the utmost care and discretion should be exercised in this particular when exposed to an attack of cholera. We ought certainly to avoid every thing that is hard to digest, as well as those articles that we know are apt to irritate the intestines and produce diarrhœa. In all other respects we should pursue our usual course of diet, providing it be a tolerably regular one; but by all means avoid overloading the stomach, and especially hearty suppers. Eating too much, we have no doubt, is a more prolific cause of cholera than eating a wrong article, though both have done much mischief. As a general rule, when exposed to cholera, we should eat less than usual, as most persons habitually eat too much. Irritability of the stomach and intestines seems to be what mainly predisposes to cholera; therefore, overloading the stomach, or eating food hard to digest or that is apt to produce a diarrhœa, will be sure to increase the hazard of an attack of the fatal malady. It, therefore, behooves all to exercise prudence in regard to diet, and not suddenly to make great or essential changes in it; and yet to avoid such articles of food as are known to irritate the stomach and intestines or produce diarrhœa; and likewise never overload the stomach, especially at supper. These cautions ought also to be particularly observed during recovery from cholera.

Another error, as we think, has been committed in relation to this complaint, in the employment of remedies as *preventives*. When a person is in good health, as a general rule, he can take no medicine that will make him any less susceptible of disease; but subjecting his organs to the influence of medicine whilst in health, should he be attacked, the remedies will not then produce so prompt and so good an effect as if none had been previously taken. We therefore think the practice of taking preventives of cholera, at best a doubtful, if not an absolutely pernicious custom. Whilst in health we need no medicine, but when once attacked with cholera, no time should be lost in employing



the best means to check it; and among the most important, we think, is quietness and rest; for which purpose let the patient retire to bed and remain there until fully recovered.

---

### SPRAINS.

SPRAINS are the effects of severe strains of the tendons, or ligaments, and most frequently happen in the ancles, knees, or wrists.

Accidents of this kind, especially if severe, are usually followed by a painful inflammatory swelling of the part.

TREATMENT.—Many things have been recommended and used as external applications to sprains; but the pouring on of cold water is perhaps better than any thing else. Wormwood or tansy, bruised and bound on the part, is useful; or either of those articles may be steeped in vinegar, and applied; occasionally moistening the herb as it becomes dry, with some of the vinegar in which it was steeped. Chamomile may also be used in the same manner. The nerve ointment will likewise be found very useful in removing the pain and soreness.

The leaves of the common bur-dock, bruised and applied to sprains, is highly recommended, it being said that it will give immediate relief. In the first place, however, we would recommend that the part be bathed with pepper and vinegar, or with the tincture of myrrh; and if redness and inflammation appear, cold water ought to be poured on it; previously taking a dose of the diaphoretic powders or of cayenne.

The sprained limb must also have rest, and should not be allowed to hang down; and where weakness remains, after the swelling and soreness are gone, in addition to pouring cold water on the weak joint, wearing a tight bandage around it will be useful.

---

### SUBSTANCES STOPPED BETWEEN THE MOUTH AND STOMACH.

CHILDREN as well as grown people are liable to attempt swallowing substances of such size or shape as to stop or stick in the œsophagus or gullet. These may be hard crusts of bread, or of hard baked meat, fish bones, boiled potatoes, pins, pieces of money, thimbles, rings, &c. Accidents of this kind are always dangerous, and sometimes fatal.

TREATMENT.—It is very common with mothers, when children are choked, to strike the palm of the hand with considerable force on the back, which will often cause the substance to fly out. Another simple mode which we have seen tried, and

in which some put much faith, is simply rubbing the center of the forehead with the thumb or finger. We know not, however, upon what principle this process operates to remove the foreign body from the throat, if it even does it. Sneezing, excited by the use of snuff of any kind, should also be resorted to, as relief has been obtained in this way.

If either or all these means fail, an attempt should immediately be made to extract the lodged substance with the fingers; and there are perhaps few cases, if taken in season, but what might be relieved in this manner. But if the offending material cannot be felt, or if felt, cannot be taken hold of, so as to extract it, a careful examination must be made by pressing down the tongue with a spoon handle, or some other suitable instrument, so that the lodged substance may be seen if it has not descended too low; which may enable us, if visible, to contrive some means best adapted to its removal. If a hook appears most eligible, one may quickly be made by bending a small wire; or if forceps be thought best, and none are at hand, a pair may be soon made by taking a piece of wire of suitable length, flatten the two ends, and then bend them nearly together, leaving room, however, for the lodged body to pass between them, with which it may be seized and withdrawn.

But if the body have gone so low as not to be seen, then we must be governed by the nature, or shape, or size of it, as to the instrument to be employed or the means to be used. If it be a bulky substance, the only chance may be to push it down into the stomach, which can be done with a piece of whale bone or wire with a small piece of sponge tied nicely to the end of it. After moistening this instrument, which is called a *probang*, with the mucilage or tea of slippery elm, it must be cautiously introduced into the throat, and the obstructing substance carefully pushed down into the stomach. There is some hazard, however, in this operation, as the gullet has sometimes been ruptured, or otherwise so injured as to destroy life. But if the lodged body be of such a nature that a wire hook can take hold of it, this may be employed; or instead of this, a wire may be bent so as to form a loop which may be introduced around it, and extract it in this way.

Another method recommended by Dr. EWELL is to attach to the end of a small flexible piece of whalebone, or smooth split of white oak, a bunch of thread, doubled so as to make an immense number of nooses, which is to be pushed down the throat, and then give it such a motion as might be best calculated to entangle the lodged body, and withdraw it.

Pins have been dislodged by riding on horseback, or in a carriage. Another method which has been successfully employed is, to take a very small piece of dry sponge, which must be at-

tached to the end of a silk or cotton string, and introduced into the throat below the foreign body, when, by throwing warm water into the throat, the sponge will swell, and withdrawing it by the string, the lodged substance may come with it.

The patient should occasionally take a swallow of the elm mucilage, with which also the instruments ought to be moistened. Or for want of the elm bark, any other mucilage, oil, or butter, may be employed.

If these means fail, or if it be thought unnecessary or imprudent to try them all, an emetic should be given by injection. For this purpose the tincture or powder of lobelia may be administered in warm water, two tea-spoonsful at a time, once in fifteen minutes, until it operates. Or if the patient can swallow, the emetic may be administered by the mouth. The elm tea should also be given to lubricate the throat to facilitate the ejection of the obstructing substance.

If inflammation takes place, a poultice must be applied to the throat, continuing the elm mucilage and occasionally inhaling the vapor of vinegar as recommended for sore throat, and the patient treated in every other respect as for other inflammations. If swallowing be not interrupted, the strength may be supported by nourishing broths or soups; or if they cannot be swallowed, they must be administered by injection.

## SUSPENDED ANIMATION.

THE animal functions may become suspended without life becoming extinct, by different causes, such as drowning, hanging, or suffocation; or it may be caused by extreme cold, or lightning.

DROWNING has been treated of under that head, and it only remains for us to speak of suspended animation from hanging, suffocation, cold, and lightning.

HANGING.—In hanging, the appearances discoverable externally, are very similar to those which occur in drowning; and the means which ought to be used for restoration may be the same as those recommended in accidents of that kind.

SUFFOCATION.—Under this head we include all cases of suspended animation that are caused by breathing air which is unfit for the purposes of supporting animal life, such as *carbonic acid gas*, usually called *damps*, abounding in wells, cellars, vaults, caverns, &c., and *hydrogen*, and *nitrogen gases*, and the gases which are generated by putrefying substances, or in fermenting liquors.

The first sensations experienced on inhaling noxious gases are, giddiness, headache, stupor, faintings, numbness, and some-

times convulsions. The head, face, and neck, of the affected person, are swollen ; the eyes are protruded from their sockets ; the tongue hangs out at one side of the mouth ; the jaws are firmly closed ; the face is of a livid, and the lips of a deep blue color ; the abdomen is inflated ; the body is insensible to pain ; and the person appears to be in a deep sleep.

In some instances these gases, by being inhaled, produce an immediate suspension of the animal functions ; whilst in others, the circulation and even breathing go on in a feeble and imperfect manner. Cases of death, in consequence of inhaling carbonic acid gas, have occurred within the last few years with an alarming and increasing frequency, in consequence of persons incautiously descending into wells without first ascertaining the state of the air contained in them. This is a very easy thing to do, by merely letting down, slowly, a lighted candle, when, if the well contains this gas, the candle will go out ; in which case it will be highly dangerous, if not absolutely destructive, to enter the well. In some instances, however, a person may live where a candle will not burn.

The burning of charcoal in tight rooms also renders the air unfit for respiration ; and many melancholy cases of death have occurred from this cause.

**TREATMENT.**—In the treatment of suspended animation from the inhalation of poisonous gases, we may commence with dashing cold water in the face and on the breast, at the same time exposing the patient to a free and pure air. A stimulating injection must be administered as soon as possible, and repeated if animation be not soon restored.

The face, temples, and lips, must be bathed with strong vinegar ; and hartshorn, or volatile salts, should be held near the nose. It has also been recommended to blow into the lungs, or, which is better, inflate them with oxygen gas.

The anti-spasmodic tincture ought also to be given internally, by pouring a tea-spoonful into the mouth, which may be repeated at discretion, until the patient is capable of swallowing, when the diaphoretic powders, steeped, may be administered instead of this tincture ; and if the patient continue feeble and languid after being restored, the vapor bath should be resorted to ; and if necessary, the whole course of medicine.

**COLD.**—In cases of suspended animation arising from this cause, the countenance becomes pale and shrivelled, and the limbs are stiff. An excessive desire to sleep always precedes a suspension of the animal powers when caused by cold, which the strongest resolution is incapable of overcoming.

**TREATMENT.**—In cases of this kind, and especially where the vital flame is nearly extinct, it is recommended to plunge the patient into a cold bath made of sea or salted water for a



few minutes, then to be taken out, wiped dry, placed in a warm room, and rubbed by several persons with warm hands.

We are, however, inclined to believe, that immediately removing the patient to a warm but well aired room, and occasionally sponging, or dashing the body with cold water, would be better than the cold bath. By immediately placing the body in a warm room, if any breathing remained, the warm air would be inhaled into, and have a beneficial effect upon the lungs; whilst dashing cold water upon the person would give a shock that would more likely be followed with a salutary reaction, than would plunging the patient into a cold bath.

As the warmth and signs of returning animation become more visible, the cold water must be omitted, whilst the warmth of the room should be increased gradually; and after the living power becomes pretty well restored, a hot brick may be placed at the feet, and be continued until perspiration is produced.

As internal remedies, whilst the patient is insensible, we might occasionally pour a little tincture of myrrh, or tea of cayenne, into the mouth, but not enough for scarce any of it to reach the stomach; and injections of warm water, or of pennyroyal tea ought also to be administered. As the vital flame increases, we may increase the stimulants, by adding tincture of myrrh to the injections, and giving occasional doses of the diaphoretic powders in tea, and at length when the living power is pretty well restored, we may give the cayenne both by mouth and by injection. If faintness occurs during recovery, the face, breast, or back, should be wetted with cold water or vinegar.

If a person has exposed his hands, feet, or other parts of the body, to the action of severe cold, so that they are frozen or frost-bitten, he should avoid suddenly approaching a fire, as it might cause a violent and painful inflammation, and even mortification. The affected parts should be covered or rubbed with ice or snow, or immersed, if practicable, in cold water; or cloths folded in several thicknesses, and frequently wet with cold water, may be applied to them. After this course has been pursued until the cold or frost is abstracted, the part should be bathed with the tincture of myrrh, using brisk friction. If there be much pain or inflammation, the common elm poultice must be resorted to. A few doses of the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne, should also be given, to excite perspiration.

When the extremities are frozen, says an intelligent writer, and even when quite black, it is the custom in Russia to rub the parts with warm goose grease; repeating the application so often as to keep them always covered with the grease. This method, continues he, has been found to restore their life and circulation with great effect. The oil or grease of common fowls, will probably answer as good a purpose.

The same course of treatment, as above laid down, should be pursued in those cases of inflammatory swellings called chilblains, which also arise from the effects of frost.

**LIGHTNING.**—A stroke of lightning appears to exhaust the system of its stock of nervous power, and as a consequence of which, the limbs do not become stiff, but remain flexible, the countenance appears pale, and the blood does not coagulate. When the electric fluid has acted with great power, disorganization takes place; bleedings occur at the mouth and nose; the blood vessels are ruptured; the thin delicate membrane which encloses the brains is torn in pieces; the brains are altered in their appearance; the skin along the region where the fluid passed, is of a very black color, and driven into ridges; and speedy putrefaction takes place. In such cases life can never be restored; but where the organs have suffered no material injury, although considerable violence is done to the surface of the body, a cure may frequently be effected.

**TREATMENT.**—The treatment of the effects of lightning is thus laconically described in the Annual Report of the Royal Humane Society, for 1818:—

“When a person is struck by lightning, strip the body, and throw buckets full of cold water over it for ten or fifteen minutes; let continued frictions, and inflations of the lungs, be practised; let gentle shocks of electricity be made to pass through the chest, when a skilful person can be procured to apply them; and apply blisters to the breast.”

In the extremely flaccid or soft and loose state of the muscles as well as of the blood, which succeeds a stroke of lightning, we should very naturally conclude that the application of cold water was strongly indicated; as this appears to be the most powerful means which are readily obtained, of restoring firmness and proper tone to the relaxed muscular fibers. At any rate, muscular relaxation from other causes, are known to yield to cold applications more promptly than to any other external means whatever; and hence appears the usefulness and propriety of dashing the naked body with cold water when injured by an electric shock. And as lightning is usually accompanied by rain, it would require but a moderate effort of the imagination to fancy that the All-wise Creator had so designed it that the means of preservation should accompany the dangerous element; as some are actually supposed to have been preserved by the falling of rain, when stunned to insensibility by lightning, in the open air.

Gentle shocks of electricity, when passed from the chest to the back, have been observed also to give firmness of tone to the relaxed fibres and to the blood; and from its surprising effects on poultry, upon which ABILGAARD performed numerous expe-

riments, there is reason to believe it would have a beneficial influence upon the human system. But the cases to which this mode of affording relief can be applied, are so very few, that the great and most general dependence must be placed in the application of cold water; which, perhaps, to do the most possible good, ought to be continued until the skin and muscles have become sensibly firm and more contracted. But instead of the blisters upon the breast, as recommended in the Humane Society's Report, we would advise the application of vinegar in which pepper has been steeped, or of pepper-pods, as directed for rheumatism.

We also think that stimulants should be introduced into the mouth and intestines; for which we also have the authority of Dr. Good, who says, "stimulants of the most active kind ought to be resorted to without loss of time." We would therefore advise that the anti-spasmodic tincture be occasionally poured into the mouth, whilst stimulating injections are thrown into the bowels. After the patient has recovered his senses and power of motion, if the muscles remain relaxed, and the debility continues, the application of cold water may be repeated daily, with the use of the bitter and astringent tonics, until the health is perfectly restored.

---

### TOOTHACHE.

THIS distressing malady arises from various causes, such as cold, rheumatic affection, the introduction of some foreign matter into the tooth when it is decayed, &c.

TREATMENT.—The application of something warm to the part, as a hot brick or rock, wrapped in a wet cloth, or holding the head over a steam having it covered with a blanket; bathing the face or jaw with pepper and vinegar, or applying to the face a paper wet with vinegar and sprinkled with cayenne; or holding heating substances in the mouth, such as the compound tincture of myrrh, pepper tea, &c., or chewing a small piece of the bark of *Xanthoxylon*, will be found of great benefit. [The same plan may be pursued in cases of ague, or pain in the face and jaw.]

The introduction into the diseased tooth, if it be hollow, of a little lint, or cotton wool, moistened with either the anti-spasmodic tincture, or oil of summer savory, oil of cloves, or of nutmegs, &c., will often afford relief. Previous to the application of any of these articles, the hollow or cavity of the tooth should be carefully cleansed of all extraneous matter; and if it be found necessary to renew them, the same precaution ought also to be taken at each renewal.

The most certain means, however, of getting rid of this painful disease is to extract the tooth. By having this done season-

ably, the adjoining teeth will be preserved from being affected with caries or decay from the diseased tooth. If toothache takes place in a sound tooth, it should not be extracted.

---

### ULCERS.

ULCERS are defined, a solution of the continuity of the soft parts of the animal body; that is, a dissolving or separating of parts which are united. But in the popular acceptance of the term, an ulcer is understood to be an old, or a large sore.

They are produced by a variety of causes, and accompany several different complaints. Thus we have the *simple*, the *sinuous*, the *fistulous*, the *scorbutic*, the *scrofulous*, and the *venereal* ulcers, together with a few other distinctions which have been made by systematic writers.

The simple ulcer is that which takes place in consequence of slight wounds, and usually heals in a short time, without much attention.

The sinuous ulcer is deeply seated in the flesh, and opens to the surface by a small pipe or tube.

The fistulous ulcer is nearly similar to the sinuous, but the pipe or passage is smaller and generally longer, with its orifice or mouth and internal surface callous or hardened. Fistulous ulcers are most common about the anus.

Scorbutic ulcers are such as attend the scurvy, of which, as well as of the scrofulous, we have heretofore spoken. Venereal ulcers will be found under the proper head.

**TREATMENT.**—In ulcers of every kind, if the general health is impaired, the proper measures must be taken to restore it, at the same time that we make applications to the affected part. The means to be adopted to answer the first intention will, of course, depend upon the degree of debility or of indisposition which may be present. But in all bad or extensive ulcers, whether the health appears materially impaired or not, it will, in general, be advisable to administer occasionally a course of medicine: and this will be more especially necessary if the ulcer has been of long continuance, or is attended by a considerable discharge. By this means we not only purify the fluids of the body and dispose the ulcer to heal, but all the secretions and excretions are promoted, and the discharge by the ulcer is turned into its natural channel, and the sore may be healed without danger.

A general tonic and strengthening plan, in other respects, must be pursued, such as a daily use of bitter tonics, either the common or laxative, or the wine-bitters, together with moderate exercise.

External applications are also of much importance, and may



be varied according to the appearance or nature of the ulcer, which may readily be distinguished with but little attention or observation.

In general, poultices ought first to be applied in all cases, but especially to those which are painful or inflamed; and these should be renewed once or twice in twenty-four hours. If the weather be very warm, or the discharges great, it will, in general, be best to renew them twice; and if the weather be cold, or the discharges small, once will be entirely sufficient. A formula for making different kinds of poultices will be found under the proper head, in the compounds.

At each renewal of the poultice if the sore is very foul, first wash with mild soap suds, then with a tea of wild lettuce, dew-berry root, witch-hazel, or the astringent tonic; and if the ulcer be a bad one, we may then apply the tincture of myrrh, and if still worse, it may be sprinkled with cayenne. The tea of the bitter-root is also highly recommended as a wash for ulcers, and we have no doubt of its efficacy.

In deeply seated ulcers, such as the sinuous, or the fistulous, a small syringe will be necessary in dressing them, as without this they cannot be washed out from the bottom. But in throwing in the fluid it should not be done with so much violence as to irritate the tender surfaces of the sore, which will make the washing more hurtful than useful; and this is more especially to be guarded against after the healing process has commenced.

The poultices should all be applied cold, especially if the sore be painful or inflamed, and occasionally wetted by pouring cold water, or any of the forementioned teas cold, between the poultice and the ulcer. This will remove the inflammation and relieve the pain. The poultice must be continued until the inflammation is subdued, and a discharge of healthy matter takes place. Healthy matter, or pus, very much resembles cream, both in color and consistence.

After continuing the poultices until the pain and inflammation are gone, and the ulcer discharges good matter, they may be discontinued, and the healing, or sumach, salve, substituted instead of them. Sometimes, however, healthy matter may be discharged whilst the sore continues red and inflamed. In these cases it is often advantageous to lay a plaster of salve on the ulcer, and then cover the whole with a poultice.

In sinuous, and particularly in the fistulous, ulcers, where the edges are callous, in which case the surface of the pipe approaches towards a gristle, after washing out as has been directed, the tincture of myrrh may be injected; and if it do not create a local action in the part, with a disposition to heal, we may substitute a tea of cayenne pepper, or even the anti-spasmodic tincture. Ulcers with callous edges, or with pipes, have lost that sensibili-

ity and activity in those parts, which render other ulcers sensible to the common applications which dispose them to heal. Hence it becomes necessary to apply more powerful stimulants to arouse the vessels to greater activity, as by no other means can a cure be effected. The tincture of lobelia is also a valuable external application for all kinds of ulcers. A strong decoction of *chestnut* leaves, used as a wash, several times a day, has cured some inveterate cases. An ointment made by bruising *sweet* or *Seneca clover*, and simmering it with fresh lard until the strength is extracted, strained and applied to the ulcer, is likewise recommended as exerting a specific effect.

There is another condition in which ulcers are sometimes found, of which it may be necessary to speak. Here, as in the callous ulcers, the action is feeble and languid, which is owing, perhaps, to the general debility of the constitution.

In the cases of which we are speaking, instead of the red or florid color of the surface of the sore, and especially of the *granulations*, there is a glassy, half-transparent appearance in the part. There is, in fact, an evident want of action and vigor in the ulcer.

Cases of this description, perhaps, might be best treated with warm stimulating poultices; and in addition to these, the stimulating washes recommended for the callous ulcer should be freely used, together with the tonic plan herein before advised, to promote the general health; and the diet, as in all other kinds of ulcer, must be rich and nourishing.

---

## VENEREAL DISEASE.

THE venereal complaint is very contagious, though it can only be communicated by actual contact. "The prevalence of this dreadful disease among mankind," says Dr. GUNN, "is another proof, amongst the many others that might be adduced, that it is the interest of mankind to be virtuous if they wish to be happy." Yet it has sometimes happened that the venereal disease was contracted innocently.

At what time, or place, this complaint had its origin, is unknown; but it first attracted attention in Europe about the year 1493, and quickly spread its ravages over large districts; and very soon to every commercial part of the world.

The most usual means by which the venereal disease is communicated is by illicit intercourse between the sexes; and hence the disgrace attached to it is such that many persons conceal their real situation until their constitutions are ruined.

The venereal complaint, strictly so called, may appear in two ways, either in ulcers, or, as they are commonly called, chan-

cles, on the privates, or the general health may first become affected; though this last is rare.

Chancres make their appearance commonly about the sixth day after the infection, though sometimes sooner, often later, and occasionally not till the lapse of several weeks, in the form of minute pimples of a peculiar kind, having a hard, inflamed base, of a pale red hue, and an irritable or painful point. This pimple soon opens with a very small hole, becomes ulcerated, and discharges a small portion of clear matter, which produces fresh chancres wherever it touches the skin.

Another symptom which succeeds the chancres, is swellings called buboes, which are supposed to be produced by the absorption of virus from the chancres, and is communicated to the inguinal glands situated in the groin, which become inflamed. These tumors, when first perceived, are small, but hard and fixed, and attended with an obtuse pain. They gradually enlarge, and the pain becomes more acute, which renders walking troublesome and unpleasant; and if they are not seasonably opened will burst spontaneously, discharging a considerable quantity of matter.

If the disease is not cured in this stage, the whole system, sooner or later, will be sure to become affected, when the very foundations of life are with quickness and certainty sapped, and existence itself rendered a burden to the unhappy patient.

The symptoms which attend the constitutional affection are, soreness and ulcerations of the tonsils, *uvula*, roof of the mouth, and tongue; which renders the voice hoarse and the swallowing difficult. Copper colored spots appear on the skin, which are at first scurfy, afterwards throwing off scales, and eventually produce scabs covering foul ulcers, which gradually grow deeper, and discharge an offensive matter.

The disease still continuing to advance, irregular shooting pains are felt through the limbs, which at night are so severe as to prevent sleep. The bones at length become diseased, and often swelled or enlarged, and finally grow rotten. The ulcerations in the back part of the mouth are still going on, and spread also to the adjacent bones of the palate and nostrils, which are gradually destroyed and carried away, rendering the speech imperfect, and flattening the nose to a level with the face.

At length the complexion becomes yellow, the appetite is impaired or lost, the hair falls off, the strength decays, a hectic fever sets in, and death finally comes to remove from the unfortunate sufferer his load of wo.

TREATMENT.—So soon as a person discovers that he or she has contracted this formidable complaint, which will be known by the appearance of the chancres, or ulcers, about the organs of generation, the part affected should be washed thoroughly

with the tincture of lobelia, or of myrrh, or both may be mixed in equal proportions. This application will produce a smarting, but, as Dr. GUNN says, "they are now on the stool of repentance," and must therefore prepare their minds to bear it. This washing should be strictly attended to three times a day, previous to which, however, the sores must be cleanly washed with soap suds. After each washing with the tincture apply a little lint, or salve, to the sore; and be careful to wash the hands, as bad ulcers have been formed on other parts by neglecting this wholesome process, after dressing venereal sores.

As an internal remedy, we would advise a tea-spoonful, or more, of the tincture of lobelia, with half the quantity of cayenne, at night on going to bed, and a hot stone should be placed at the feet to promote perspiration. During the day, the patient may drink freely of strong tea of sarsaparilla, and three or four times in the day take a dose of the laxative bitter tonic; and twice a day he may take a dose of half a tea-spoonful of balsam of fir on sugar, which will be more especially necessary if there be any discharge from the penis, or, in case of a woman, from the vagina, or from the urinary passage. In cases of these discharges, it has also been found useful to inject into the urinary passages a strong decoction of the astringent tonic with more or less of the tincture of myrrh in it; and we have no doubt the tincture of lobelia, or the tea of wild lettuce, might also be profitably employed.

If this course be adopted early in the disease, it will perhaps never fail of effecting a cure; but if the constitutional symptoms, as they are called, have made their appearance, which we have heretofore described, the course of medicine must be resorted to, and repeated as the case may demand; at the same time continuing the external and other remedies, as before directed. And if ulcers break out, they must be treated agreeably to the directions under that head.

If a gleet, which is a discharge from the *urethra*, remain after the disease is removed, which sometimes happens when treated by mercury, the general plan herein directed, as to internal remedies, and particularly the use of the fir balsam, and injections into the *urethra*, should be advised, together with the application of cold water to the part.

It has been usual to confound *clap* or *gonorrhœa* with the disease of which we have been treating; though by the most learned modern authors it is considered as a distinct malady. The symptoms are, burning and scalding sensations in the *urethra*, in making water, which are pretty soon succeeded by a discharge of matter from the same part, at first of a white color, then yellowish, and finally it becomes of a greenish cast. The cure for this is the same as that recommended for dis-



charges from the urinary passages, in the venereal complaint and gleet, together with careful attention to keeping the penis washed clean from the matter which is discharged from it.

---

## WHITE SWELLING.

THIS is a most dreadful disease, seated commonly in the knee joint, though sometimes in the ancle, or in the wrist, or elbow. It takes its name from the circumstance of there being no inflammation or discoloration of the skin which covers the swelling, and seems to be a complaint partaking of the nature of both scrofula and rheumatism; and may often be said to unite the horrors of both. The disease, in fact, is distinguished by authors into two kinds, the rheumatic, and the scrofulous, as it shows symptoms of one or the other of these affections.

In the rheumatic species of white swelling, which is its mildest form, an acute pain is felt extending over the whole joint, and sometimes along the muscles which are connected with it. A swelling of the part also at the same time commences, which, in different patients, progresses with different degrees of rapidity; but the joint is always sufficiently swollen to cause a perceptible difference of size between it and the corresponding one of the sound limb. The skin which surrounds the swelling generally becomes considerably tense; but there is scarcely ever any discoloration of it at this stage of the disease.

Any motion of the joint causes, from the first, a considerable increase of pain; and the patient always finding most relief from pain when the muscles are relaxed, keeps the limb in a bent posture, which generally becomes stiff in this position.

The swelling now increases with greater rapidity, and the joint frequently enlarges to twice or thrice the natural size; the limb, both above and below the affected part, wastes away, though sometimes it becomes dropsical; the pains are more severe and intolerable; and finally, perhaps, abscesses form in various parts of the swelling, and break out into bad ulcers; which are very similar in their character to those treated of under the head of scrofula.

In that species of the disease termed the scrofulous, the pain at the commencement is more acute and confined to a particular point, most frequently to the very middle of the joint; but the swelling is less considerable than in the rheumatic species.

An increase of pain on motion, and a stiffness of the joint takes place, in this as in the other species, and as the disorder advances, the pains increase in violence and the swelling becomes more considerable; the ends of the bones appearing to partake of the disease, they also are enlarged. In time, the

swelling in this form of the disease assumes the same appearances as it does in the rheumatic kind; and in both, the constitution becomes equally affected, and both may have the same termination; that is, death, unless their progress is arrested by the use of proper means.

**TREATMENT.**—In general this may be the same as that prescribed for scrofula, to which the reader may refer. In addition to this, we subjoin the following curative means, extracted from BEACH's "American Practice," a part of which the author says was obtained from an Indian native:—

If a cure is attempted before suppuration has taken place, he recommends an attempt to disperse the swelling by steaming it in the following manner:—Take of catnip, hearts of mullen, wormwood and mayweed, two double hands full of each, and of soft soap, one pint; boil in six quarts of water until the strength is extracted from the herbs. Then place the affected joint over the steam arising from this decoction, for fifteen or twenty minutes, covering it with a blanket in such manner as to confine the vapor to the diseased part. We would recommend, in order to make the steam more lively and penetrating, and of course more useful, that a red hot brick, or rock, be occasionally placed in the decoction of herbs.

Immediately after this local application of vapor, he directs the part to be bathed with an ointment made by dissolving half an ounce of camphor in half a gill of spirits, to which is added a large table-spoon full of *laudanum*, simmered in the marrow of three hog's jaws, or a small quantity of lard or sweet oil.

This course is directed to be repeated daily, but he says not how long, though we suppose for a reasonable time, when if it do not disperse the swelling, then apply a strengthening plaster. We must be permitted to observe that we do not recommend the *laudanum*, but only introduce it as a part of Dr. BEACH's remedy; instead of which we would advise the same quantity of the anti-spasmodic tincture.

If the foregoing treatment does not remove the complaint, he directs a poultice to be made, for promoting suppuration, as follows:—Take dandelion roots, hearts of mullen, catnip leaves and flowers, of each a handful. Bruise, and boil in sweet milk, thicken with pulverised slippery elm bark to a proper consistence for a poultice, and apply to the diseased joint about blood warm. The steaming must still be continued as before directed, at evening, immediately after which the poultice is to be applied, and so continued daily until suppuration takes place, with a free discharge of matter, and the inflammation has subsided. When the ulcer assumes this condition, it should be dressed with salve until healed. Or it may be otherwise treated in the general method recommended for scrofulous and other ulcers.

We cannot omit observing, however, that in most cases of this painful malady, an occasional course of medicine, in addition to Dr. BEACH's treatment, will be found beneficial, and should therefore be resorted to at the discretion of those concerned.

---

WHOOPIING COUGH.

THIS disease is mostly confined to children, being usually propagated by contagion, and is attended with a suffocative, convulsive cough, and a deep shrill sound termed a whoop, from which it takes its name.

Whooping cough commonly comes on with some little difficulty of breathing, thirst, and a gentle quickening of the pulse. Next succeed a hoarseness and cough, with difficult expectoration. These symptoms continuing for a while, they become more marked, and the disease assumes its characteristic form.

Expectoration at first is very moderate, but gradually becomes more copious, though it is always viscid or tough. The peculiar difficulty and great exertions in coughing, bloat the face which turns purple, and the eyes swell and become prominent. Vomiting often attends the fits of coughing, which is a good symptom, and is frequently succeeded by a craving for food.

The duration of whooping cough is very uncertain, lasting from a few weeks to as many months, or even a whole year, going off gradually, and often imperceptibly. And however tedious or distressing it may be, it seldom proves fatal, excepting to very young infants, or such as are debilitated by other diseases.

**TREATMENT.**—Attention in this case must be given to the means of loosening the cough, and allaying the spasmodic irritation. For either of those purposes, and especially for the first, emetics have always been found the most serviceable; to accomplish which, a tea-spoonful, or more, of the tincture of lobelia may be administered towards bed-time; and previous to retiring to bed, half a tea-spoonful, or more, of the tincture of lady's slipper or the nervine tincture should be given. During the day, if the cough be troublesome, the child ought to drink frequently of a tea of the diaphoretic powder, made very sweet, to which plenty of cream should be added to make it palatable.

The skunk-cabbage root pulverized, is also a valuable remedy in whooping cough. It is both loosening to the cough and quieting to the nerves, and may be given in doses of a fourth or half tea-spoonful, once or twice a day. Stimulating washes, such as the pepper sauce, bathing drops, &c. frequently afford great benefit by being applied, with gentle friction, along the back bone, breast bone, or the lower region of the stomach. It may also be advisable to bathe the feet in warm weak ley, as often,

at least, as every evening, and afterwards apply drafts of burdock, skunk-cabbage, or horse radish leaves, &c.

If, however, the symptoms become violent, or attended with much debility, we may administer a course of medicine, and repeat it as the circumstances of the case may seem to require; and in the latter stages, the bitter tonic should be resorted to, as a means of giving tone to the whole system; for which purpose the cold bath has also been highly recommended. When costiveness attends, in any stage, it should be removed by injections; physic having been found to afford no alleviation to the most urgent symptoms. In general, when there is little or no looseness of the bowels, the best injections for children are made of catnip tea, with the addition of a little tincture of myrrh.

## WORMS.

Not only the human body, but also the bodies of other animals, are liable to have their intestines infested with worms. There are three kinds most usually met with in man. These are the small white worm, called also *ascarides*; the long round worm, or *teres*; the tape worm, or *tænia*, which is a white, flat worm, consisting apparently of joints, and is frequently of great length; some of which are reported to have been thirty, forty, and even sixty feet long.

The different kinds of worms are represented as choosing different portions of the intestines to live in; for instance, the small white worm selects the rectum; the round worm, the small intestines, and sometimes the stomach; and the tape worm, the whole intestinal tube.

The cause of worms may fairly, we think, be attributed to a weakness of the digestive powers, and debility of the intestines; which may also be assisted by unwholesome food, and a weak, vegetable, and debilitating diet. It is a disease most common to children, but is often met with in grown persons, particularly those of a relaxed habit, whose digestion is weak, and who live much upon a milk and vegetable diet.

The symptoms indicating worms are extremely various and contradictory, often imitating many other complaints. But in general, some one or more of the following will be found present in such cases:—Headache, dizziness, disturbed sleep, appetite sometimes lost and sometimes greedy, pains in the stomach, gripings, looseness, very disagreeable breath, gratings of the teeth during sleep, which is often disturbed by frightful dreams, picking at the nose, a peculiar paleness or whiteness about the mouth, hardness and fullness of the belly, short dry cough, heat and itching about the anus, nausea, fever, and sometimes convul-



sions; but the most certain evidence of worms is their ejection from the bowels.

**TREATMENT.**—In the cure of worms, three objects ought to be kept in view:—First, cleansing the intestinal canal of whatever morbid matter may be retained in it, and which probably may be the element in which the worms live; secondly, strengthening the system generally, and the intestines particularly; thirdly, destroying the worms by the use of those medicines termed vermifuges or anthelmintics.

Of the two first objects, that of cleansing the canal, and of strengthening the system, we know that we possess the means of accomplishing them, at least so soon as the irritation of the worms has ceased; but the vermifuge medicines are of doubtful character; and moreover, those articles which are known to kill worms when applied to them out of the body, are as well known to weaken the tone of the stomach and intestines when taken internally, and consequently have a strong tendency to defeat the other intentions of cure.

These different remedies may all be used at the same time, or at least, we need not wait until one object is accomplished before we attempt another.

The course which we have found, in general, to have the best effect in curing worm complaints, is to give the butternut syrup, in sufficient quantity to produce a free and thorough evacuation of the contents of the bowels, and during the operation, as well as afterwards, to make use of a strong tea of the poplar bark, with the addition of a little cayenne pepper. By pursuing this course we have succeeded in curing several very alarming cases of fits arising from the irritation of worms. In each case of this kind, however, the stomach had been previously well cleansed by an emetic of lobelia.

The Carolina pink has acquired considerable fame in the cure of worms, and we believe not without just cause. Two circumstances, however, we think, have conspired to injure the character of this valuable herb:—the one is, that by keeping long [*Thacher*] it loses its virtues, and hence frequently fails in producing the desired effect; the other is, that some other poisonous weed has sometimes been gathered with the pink, and when steeped and given along with it, has produced very alarming effects. This weed is said to be a vine, and in order to avoid hazard, the pink, before being steeped, should be carefully picked over, and every thing else rejected.

If the case be a bad one, we may first administer an emetic, and then commence giving a strong decoction of the pink made very sweet, when the child will often relish the taste of it so well as to drink enough of its own accord. If it appears, however, likely to drink an unreasonable quantity, it should be restrained.

but it may take from one to three pints in twenty-four hours, when it must be smartly purged with the butternut syrup. The poplar bark tea, as before directed, or the bitter tonic, in decoction or in wine, may be used during and after the operation, giving it three or four times a day.

Instead of the pink, we may, if we choose, give the cowhage; the stiff hairs of which are to be scraped from the pods and mixed with syrup or melasses until they have become thick, and a tea-spoonful or more must be administered to the child for three successive mornings; when it should be followed by a purge of the butternut syrup, and the bitter tonic as before directed.

The oil or spirit of turpentine, has also been highly recommended, as well as the oil of wormseed. The spirits of turpentine may be given in doses of half or a whole tea-spoonful, or even more, which may be repeated for two or three days, when it should be followed by the butternut syrup and bitter tonic, as before directed. The oil of wormseed may be given in doses of one drop to each year of the child's age, up to eight or ten years, when the quantity may be less in proportion. Drop the oil on a lump of sugar, and grate it into a table-spoonful or more of water, and repeat it morning and night for three or four days, when it must be followed by the butternut syrup to purge the bowels, and the bitter tonic to restore their tone. Spirits of turpentine and oil of wormseed combined, and applied externally to the bowels, we have no doubt would be found highly efficacious.

Charcoal, it is said, according to the latest and most enlightened experience of the medical schools of Europe, is a valuable medicine for worms. The mode of giving, or the quantity to be given, we have not seen stated, but as the article possesses no dangerous powers, fears need not be entertained in using it. It sometimes happens that worms ascend into the throats of children, and choke them; in this case a little salt dissolved in water, may be given with happy effect. Any of the preparations mentioned under the head of "anthelmintics," may be advantageously used in this complaint.

---

## YELLOW FEVER.

THIS fatal and most distressing disease is confined either to the hot climates of the South, or the hottest seasons of the more temperate regions of the North.

Yellow fever appears, at least in its present malignant form, to be a modern disease. It was first noticed in the island of Barbadoes, in the year 1647, and soon after made its appearance in various other islands of the West Indies; and, in 1693, in

Boston. In 1699 it visited Philadelphia and Charleston, after which it made its appearance in both those places several times between the years 1732 and 1748, during which last year it also appeared in New York.—[*Dr. Currie.*]

The next appearance of this fatal epidemic was at Philadelphia, in the year 1793, just one hundred years after its first visit to the then British colonies in North America, at Boston. Since that date it has several times made its appearance in both Philadelphia and New York, as well as many other places along the sea-board.

The yellow fever is by some considered as only a more intense form or higher degree of remittent fever, whilst others regard it as a distinct variety, or even species, of fever.

Yellow fever makes its attack with a diversity of appearances and symptoms, some of which are common to all fevers, and others peculiar to itself. Occasionally the symptoms are very mild; but more commonly they are violent and distressing from the beginning. We cannot perhaps do better in describing this disease than to abridge the account given by Dr. CURRIE, who had several times witnessed its ravages in Philadelphia.

In general, says he, it attacks suddenly, without any previous indisposition, with a chill, pain in the head and limbs, sometimes sickness at the stomach, the eyes are red and painful, the pulse often full and frequent soon after the cessation of the chill, when the skin becomes very hot, face flushed, great oppression and stricture about the breast, extreme restlessness, and frequent sighing.

The heat of the skin, and pain in the head and limbs, usually increase during the first thirty-six hours, and then gradually decrease for the same length of time; so that at the end of seventy-two hours, the patient is sometimes entirely free from all symptoms of the disease, and a speedy recovery takes place; but more commonly there is only a short and partial remission, which in a few hours, is followed by a far more distressing train of symptoms, particularly a burning sensation in the stomach, accompanied with almost constant sickness, and straining to vomit. The pulse now becomes small, quick, and irregular; the stomach painful on pressure; and generally a costive state of the bowels.

These symptoms, if not relieved by proper means, continuing to increase, are, in a short time, succeeded by a cessation of pain and fever, and a vomiting of a flaky, dark colored matter resembling coffee grounds, or a mixture of soot and water. This matter, which is called the black-vomit, is usually thrown up at short intervals, and appears to contain more fluid than has been drank.

In this stage of the disease, during the intervals from vomiting,

the patient feels so much ease that he imagines himself out of danger, and converses fluently, though often incoherently, sometimes getting out of bed and walking the room, but is soon exhausted and obliged to lie down. Convulsions, or lethargy, generally follow these exertions, and the scene is quickly closed by the curtain of death!

The symptoms which distinguish this fever from every other that has appeared in this country, says Dr. CURRIE, are the suddenness of the attack, commencing in most cases without any preceding lassitude or indisposition; the redness of the eyes and flushing of the face, and the long duration of the paroxysm, being generally thirty-six hours before any considerable abatement takes place. To this may be added, the new and severe train of symptoms which soon follow the remission, the golden yellow color of the skin, and black vomit.

In some instances, however, instead of the black vomiting, the patient becomes comatose or sleepy, and dies without a struggle; whilst in others, putrid symptoms of a most virulent character occur, and bleeding takes place from the nose, mouth, eyes, ears, or bowels, and even from parts where blisters have been drawn. In the first stages of the disease, as it occurred in Philadelphia, the tongue was generally covered with a white fur resembling a piece of white muslin. After the third or fourth day the tongue was brown and much drier; but when the black vomiting occurred, it became moist, and nearly as clean as in health.

**TREATMENT.**—Attacks of yellow fever, require, in general, the most prompt and efficient treatment. In the early stages, if the strength be not greatly impaired, nor symptoms of putrefaction make their appearance, a mild purgative may be administered. But if the attack be violent, and attended with great prostration of strength, or if there be symptoms of putrefaction, our reliance for cleansing the intestines must mainly be placed on injections.

To allay the excessive heat and dryness of the skin, the alkaline wash, so highly recommended by Dr. ROGERS and others, might be resorted to, and repeated at discretion. This wash is directed to be made by dissolving one and a half table-spoonfuls of pearl-ash in three gills of hot water, with which the body and limbs are to be washed. Simple cold water has been highly recommended for the same purpose, and used, we are told, with very beneficial effect. In conjunction with either of those remedies, we ought to administer frequent doses of the diaphoretic powders, or cayenne, mixed with warm aromatic teas, such as pennyroyal, catnip, &c., to promote perspiration. Some cases are related, where simply a strong decoction of boneset or thoroughwort, taken freely, effected a cure.

When black vomiting has come on, the case is considered as



hopeless, though some have recovered even in this stage. Dr. CURRIE observes, that this dreadful symptom has more frequently been relieved by a mixture of equal parts of lime-water and new milk, taken in doses of from one to four table-spoonfuls every hour or oftener, than by any other remedy.

But the great dependence in all stages of this terrible malady, must be in repeated courses of medicine; and the earlier in the disease they are employed, the better. The alkaline wash, as well as the cold water, may likewise be used between the courses, together with the usual means of stimulating the system and promoting perspiration; such as the cayenne pepper, diaphoretic powder, the application of hot bricks, or rocks, stimulating injections, &c. If pains in the stomach, with nausea, arise, the region of the stomach ought to be bathed with the bathing drops, or pepper and vinegar, or a large poultice of mustard may be applied to it; and if putrid symptoms make their appearance, a free use must be made of the pepper sauce and tincture of myrrh.

The room in which the patient is confined ought to be well ventilated, that is, have a suitable admission of pure air; and the floor should be frequently sprinkled with vinegar, or with camphor, and the stools immediately removed, as well as every thing else of a filthy nature. The clothes of both body and bed, must be frequently changed and kept clean.

During recovery, the patient should make liberal use of the wine-bitters, or he may take the bitter tonic in any other form; and live on a nutritious, wholesome diet; carefully guarding against relapses.

## CONCLUSION.

WE have now brought our description of diseases, or rather the different symptoms of disease, with the method of cure, to a close. In the performance of this part of our work, we have availed ourselves of the privilege which all authors of popular medical works have assumed, since the days of Dr. BUCHAN, of borrowing either the ideas or language, or both, of preceding writers. Indeed, so much has been written upon this subject, that a medical treatise cannot now be attempted without servilely copying, or otherwise falling into the track pursued by one's predecessors.

It may possibly have been anticipated by some of our readers, that the method laid down for the treatment of disease would have been more diversified and extensive, in consequence of the advantages which have been derived from experience, and the mass of materials in our possession. We will remark upon this point, that we fully expected ourselves, to have introduced a much greater variety into this department, but were deterred, chiefly, from the following considerations, which we deemed important:—

The materials which we had with much labor and considerable expense collected for the work were mostly in a detached or unconnected form, and, therefore, required much time and careful attention to enable us to introduce them in a proper manner into the work. To this we may also add, that many of the articles and compounds, which we contemplated publishing, were untried by ourselves, and therefore we could not speak of them with that confidence which is so desirable in a matter of so much importance to the health and well-being of the human family. Some articles that we intended to introduce were, moreover, on such authority that we could not consistently give them a formal introduction under the head of treatment, although we have reason to hope they may prove highly valuable.

Before any thing is thus recommended, we think it ought to be well tested by competent persons, upon whose authority the fullest reliance may be placed. We, therefore, concluded to arrange the greater part of the knowledge we had thus obtained, and which we originally contemplated introducing into the treatment of diseases, under appropriate heads in the *materia medica*. The attentive reader will there find them, with their mode of preparation and manner of using, as well as a

statement of what cases they have been found useful in ; and by a judicious application he will be enabled to form a correct estimate of their value.

We will take the opportunity of expressing the obligations which we feel ourselves under to numerous individuals, who have so generously assisted us, by communicating their knowledge and experience, in aid of this work ; and they will please accept our thanks for this, the same as if their names were here mentioned.

It is not our intention, however, by any means, to give publicity to all the recipes and other communications which have been so kindly furnished us, but will select such only as appear most likely to be generally or extensively useful.

We deem it proper further to observe, that in describing the symptoms of disease, it is utterly impossible to give a description of any particular complaint, that will always apply in every case to the disease intended to be described. Symptoms oftentimes occur which it would be in vain to attempt a description of ; whilst in other cases, many of those which are described may be wanting. It is only by taking them in a group and comparing them with the general train of symptoms, that we shall be enabled to give a correct *name* to the disease ; in which, however, the best read physicians frequently disagree ; and hence arises the most disastrous consequences by administering poisonous medicines which, even in the practice of those who approve of them, may be wrongly and very improperly used. But there is nothing of this in a practice where poisonous medicines are excluded.

If a person becomes sick, we go about restoring him to health, regardless of *names* ; if we know the name, well ; if not, we are not deterred from administering medicines, either a single article or a full course, according to the *urgency* or *violence* of the symptoms. And hence we are constrained to acknowledge, that all the lengthy and tedious descriptions of disease which swell the countless volumes written upon medicine, are comparatively of little value. Even the trouble that we have taken, and the expense which we have incurred in collating, revising, and publishing the descriptions given in our own book, we regard more as an offering upon the altar of public prejudice, fashion, and folly, than as a really useful and intrinsically valuable addition to the general knowledge of the nature of disease, and of the general method of treatment and cure.

We will conclude by referring the reader to the common *course of medicine*, and general mode of *treatment*, in all alarming cases, rather than to vain attempts at giving a correct

*name* to the disease, which is a matter of small consequence compared with the knowledge of the means of effecting a cure.

The course of medicine, so often referred to under the head of *Treatment*, will be found very particularly described in a succeeding part of this volume; together with all the general directions necessary to enable almost any person, aided by common sense and a little experience, to cure the usual maladies incident to a family.



## NEW VEGETABLE MATERIA MEDICA

---

THE original plan for the arrangement of the articles constituting this department, was to place them in classes agreeably to the classification proposed in the first volume; but we soon found this would require much time, reflection, and attentive discrimination; more, indeed, than we could possibly bestow. We discovered, moreover, that so much difficulty would attend the classification of many valuable articles which we intended to introduce, that the advantages would not, at this time, repay the labor. Yet we will not conceal our firm convictions that important advantages might result from the classification of medicines according to their most obvious effects upon the system. Its tendency would be to simplify the healing art, and thus render it more intelligible to the whole community; which ought to be the grand object and aim of every person who attempts to write upon this subject.

We have abundantly shown, as we trust, that the indications to be answered in the treatment of disease, are few and easily comprehended; and now if all the various articles calculated to answer each one of those indications could be thrown together under one head, how much more easy would it be for an individual, having but a slight knowledge of medicines, to understand and apply them. The practitioner, or the family, could at once refer to the class from which he or they wished to make a selection, and choose such as appeared most appropriate to the case. There would be something highly systematic, beautiful, and yet simple in such an arrangement; and we hope, that ultimately, the advancement of medical science will lead to this important result.

In this, as well as in the preceding part of the present volume, we have drawn our descriptions, and all other important information, from every accessible source, and hope that we shall be pardoned throughout, for crediting but few quotations or authorities which we thought proper to use. The works principally consulted are, THOMSON, RAFINESQUE, ROGERS, THACHER, BIGELOW, BARTON, CULLEN, and SMITH.

The reader will observe, that in the *Materia Medica*, the first name, in *capitals*, is the systematic, botanic, or technical term by which the article is distinguished; after that follow the common names, of which most plants can boast more than one, and oftentimes several different vegetables bear the same name. From this source originates a great deal of confusion, which the invention of botanical names, and a more exact method of describing plants, was intended to correct.

It may be proper to observe, however, that some very valuable plants, which will be introduced into this work, were derived from persons whose opportunities did not enable them to give correct botanic names; nor have these articles, so far as we know, been introduced into any botanical work hitherto published. We have, therefore, been under the necessity of giving them such names as were furnished us, and content ourselves with recording their virtues. Some of them were also derived from the Indians, and for some of these no names are known amongst the whites.

[Since the publication of the second edition, we have been enabled to obtain the botanical names of most of the plants just alluded to, and have also corrected many others which, from difficulties inseparably connected with works of this kind, were erroneously given. In the performance of this duty, we feel it incumbent upon us, to acknowledge the disinterested assistance of Dr. J. L. RIDDELL and I. A. LAPHAM, and to the former more particularly for his services in correcting many of the descriptions which were either too brief, or otherwise defective.]

## ACIDUM ACETOSUM.

*Common name*—VINEGAR—ACETOUS ACID.

VINEGAR was known many ages before the discovery of any other acid, excepting those which exist ready formed in the different kinds of vegetables, particularly in sour fruit.

This agreeable, pungent acid, is produced by the fermentation of saccharine matter or sweet vegetable juices, such as cider, wine, beer, sap, &c. The process by which vinegar is formed is termed the acetous fermentation, which is nothing more than the absorption of oxygen gas from the atmosphere.

From the mucilaginous impurities which all vinegars contain, they are apt, on exposure to the air, to become turbid and ropy, and finally, entirely spoiled. This inconvenience may be remedied by boiling the vinegar for one hour, in open bottles placed in a kettle of water over the fire; after which they are to be kept corked.

Vinegar possesses strong antiseptic powers, and is hence employed, to correct the putrid tendency of the fluids in putrid and pestilential fevers, and in scurvy. Mixed with water, it makes not only an agreeable but a useful drink in all *febrile* diseases. It is also useful to settle the stomach in cases of nausea or vomiting; and administered by injection is said to be useful in costiveness. It is also very serviceable in obviating the poisonous effects of vegetables, particularly those which are termed the narcotic poisons.

In dysentery, vinegar in which salt has been dissolved, is recommended as a valuable remedy. It is prepared and used as follows:—

Take any quantity of vinegar and add to it as much salt as it will dissolve; to one table-spoonful of this mixture add two of hot water, and give to the patient at a dose, to be frequently repeated. The same mixture may also be applied to inflammations, swellings, sprains, &c.

The vapor of vinegar inhaled into the lungs, is useful in all diseases of these organs, as well as of sore throat; and diffused through the rooms of the sick, it corrects the putridity of the air, and renders it more wholesome and agreeable to both patients and attendants.

## AGRIMONIA EUPATORIA.

*Common names*—AGRIMONY, COCKLEBUR, STICKWORT.

COMMON agrimony has a perennial root, with a rounded hairy stem, growing from one to two feet high; leaves alternate, rough, ragged, hairy, and unequal, lower ones the largest. Blossoms yellow, growing on a long terminal spike, which is a continuation of the main stem; producing a small green bristly bur, which often sticks to clothes that come in contact with it.

The root of agrimony is a mild astringent tonic, and may be used in tea for bowel complaints, fevers, &c. The leaves have also been employed for the same purpose, and are said to be useful for jaundice, scurvy, &c. We have also heard this herb highly spoken of as a remedy for worms. "Taken in tea, of both root and herb," says Dr. ELISHA SMITH, "for a long time, it will almost invariably cure the scrofula." He also recommends it in gravel, asthma, and cutaneous diseases. "The best way to take it is in a strong decoction, sweetened with honey."

---

 ALCOHOL.

## ARDENT SPIRITS—SPIRIT OF WINE.

ALCOHOL is the pure unadulterated spirit, or stimulating, intoxicating principle of whisky, brandy, and all other kinds of inebriating drinks. It is formed during the process of what is termed the vinous fermentation, which can only in general take place in fluids impregnated with sugar. Wine, cider, beer, and all sweet juices of vegetables, by passing through the vinous fermentation, generate alcohol; and in order to procure it in a more concentrated form it is distilled, and the alcohol being more volatile than the water with which it is mixed, on the application of heat it rises and passes off through the worm or pipe, leaving the greater portion of the water behind. The materials from which the spirit is made give to it different names. Thus, spirit made by the distillation of the fermented juices of fruits, as wine, or cider, is called *brandy*, when of the juices of plants, as the sugar cane or sap of maple, &c., or rather from the sugar or melasses manufactured from these substances, it is called *rum*; and when from malted grain, as barley, rye, &c., it is called *whisky*. But notwithstanding that pure alcohol is so much lighter or more volatile than water, it cannot all be distilled off from the fluid which contains it, without more or less water passing over with it. Hence, in order to obtain the alcohol more pure, whisky or brandy must be re-distilled.





AGRIMONIA EUPATORIA, ( Agrimony ).





ALETRIS FARINOSA, (Star-grass).





Equal quantities by weight of pure alcohol and water form proof spirit, which is extensively used as a *menstruum* in medicine and the arts. Many substances do not yield their medicinal properties to water, which are nevertheless readily given out to, or are dissolved in, proof spirits, or in alcohol. Medicinal *resins*, can only be dissolved by alcohol, and *gums* by water. The virtues of plants reside sometimes in resin, sometimes in gum, and sometimes in both. Hence the menstruum, or solvent, must be varied according to the qualities of the article. But in general, for making tinctures, proof spirits are used; the alcohol dissolving the resinous, and the water the gummy parts. Alcohol is employed in tincturing camphor, myrrh, &c., and is also used for dissolving the vegetable oils, and thus are produced the various essences.

---

#### ALETRIS FARINOSA.

*Common names*—STARGRASS, BLAZING STAR, ALOEROOT, MEALY STARWORT, &c.

Root perennial, small, branched, crooked, blackish outside and brown within. Leaves radical, from six to twelve, spreading on the ground like a star, lanceolate, entire, very smooth, with many longitudinal veins, ends of the leaves sharp, pale green, about three or four inches long. Stem round, erect, from one to two feet high, naked except a few scattered bracts or scales, ending in a long spike of white, somewhat scattered flowers. Found in almost all parts of the United States, growing on poor dry soils in open situations on hills, prairies, and borders of woods.

The root is the part employed as medicine, being a very bitter and valuable tonic and stomachic, promoting, in small doses, the appetite and digestion, but in larger ones is apt to produce nausea and vomiting. The bitterness appears to reside in a resinous matter which is fully imparted, in tincture, to alcohol, which it renders extremely bitter; whilst water is rendered much less so. The tincture becomes turbid by the addition of water.

The stargrass may be given in tincture, decoction, or substance, though the first and last forms are undoubtedly the best; or it may be incorporated into cordials or syrups. A dose of the powder should not exceed half a tea-spoonful. It is useful in all cases of debility and loss of appetite, fevers, colic, and rheumatism.

It may not be improper here to observe that a plant was introduced into the first and second editions of this work under the name of *aletris alba*, so similar to this in its external appearance

as to be readily confounded with it by careless observers. The plant alluded to proves to be the *helonias dioica*, which see.

## ALKALI.

UNDER this head we shall include all the alkaline articles, most commonly used in medicine—such as chalk, soda, and lime. Their use is to neutralize acidity, which renders them peculiarly proper in dyspepsy, as well as in all diseases attended by, or arising from sourness of the stomach. In administering alkaline draughts, for acidity of the stomach, much pain is occasionally produced by the gas generated in the process of neutralizing, as we see in mixing a glass of soda water. To prevent this unpleasant symptom, the alkali should be taken in small quantity at a time. Administered by injection, alkalies are said to allay tenesmus like a charm.

### CARBONATE OF SODA.

Soda possesses, in general, the same properties as pearlash, but is much less caustic or biting to the taste. A solution of it is an excellent gargle for cleansing the mouth, gums and throat, both in the diseased and in the sound state; at the same time whitening the teeth, and dissolving those incrustations called tartar, which often form upon them, without injuring the enamel. A small quantity of this solution, occasionally swallowed, after washing the mouth, effectually removes a bad breath.

### CARBONATE OF POTASH, OR PEARLASH.

A solution of pearlash is very serviceable in acidities of the stomach, and in all complaints arising therefrom, such as cholera morbus, diarrhœa, dysentery, headache, &c. A diluted solution drank warm, in bed, is good to promote perspiration, and if it does not act in this way, it generally goes off by urine. A wash of pearlash is an excellent external application in fevers, neutralizing the septic acid, and softening the skin, which gives a tendency to the flow of perspiration.

Pearlash is often employed in a neutralized state, that is, dissolved in vinegar, to allay irritation, to check vomiting, and to promote perspiration.

### BICARBONATE OF POTASH, OR SAL ÆRATUS.

The *bicarbonate of potash*, commonly called *sal æratus*, is milder and more agreeable to the taste, than the pearlash, and may be used for the same purposes, in its stead.

Sal æratus is manufactured in New England in distilleries and breweries, by suspending pearlash in an open vessel over the

beer or wort whilst fermenting, whereby it becomes exposed to and combines with the carbonic acid gas which escapes from the fermenting beer. In this way the pearlash will become saturated with the carbonic acid in the course of five or six weeks, when the process is completed.

#### CARBONATE OF LIME, OR CHALK.

This article is very highly extolled by some as a remedy in cholera morbus, and is also very useful in diarrhœa, as well as all cases of acidity of the stomach. It may be taken in doses of one tea-spoonful or more. Chalk is sometimes applied externally, to scalds and burns, by sprinkling the powder on the affected part. The preferable kind for any of the above purposes, is probably that which is termed "*prepared chalk*."

#### CALX, OR LIME.

Lime, as it exists in common lime-stone, in chalk, and marine shells, is combined with carbonic acid, which neutralizes its alkaline qualities, and prevents it from slacking. The carbonic acid is driven off in the form of gas, during the process of burning, when it is converted into what is called quick-lime.

Lime dissolved in water, is esteemed a very valuable remedy in dyspepsy, and in all cases of acidity and debility of the stomach. By some it is esteemed much superior to pearlash. Possibly this might be useful in worm complaints, to dissolve the mucus in which those vermin are said to reside.

To make lime water, take of fresh burnt lime, four ounces; cold water, two quarts; first slake the lime, and then put the lime and water immediately into a large bottle, cork tight, and shake well together. After the lime has all subsided at the bottom of the bottle, shake it up again, and repeat this eight or ten times, when it will be fit for use. When wanted for use, pour off, carefully, about a tea-cup full of the water and add to it half the quantity or more of sweet milk, which may be taken as a dose, to be repeated several times a day. The milk covers the biting taste which it otherwise would have, and renders it not disagreeable.

---

#### ALNUS SERRULATA.

*Common names*—TAG ALDER, BLACK ALDER.

TAG alder is a perennial shrub or bush, rising to the height of from five to ten feet, many shrubs growing from the same root, bearing a large, roundish, or rather obtuse, dark green leaf, with tags or cones somewhat similar to witch-hazel. Found in wet-lish lands, or along streams.

The tag alder is a very good tonic. The tags, bark, boughs,

or leaves may be taken freely in strong tea, and are very valuable in all diseases of the skin, particularly for boils, which by a timely use of the alder, may often be prevented from suppurating or coming to a head. It is made much use of by herbalists for all eruptions and humors of the skin, with great success.

Externally, in poultice, it is used by the Indians, for swellings, strains, and the leaves bruised and applied to women's breasts, repels milk. The cones and twigs made into a salve by boiling in water and then adding lard or butter, make an excellent ointment for burns and scalds, and probably for other sores. Cloths kept constantly wet in the strong tea, and applied to hot swellings, afford much relief.

---

#### AMARANTUS HYPOCHONDRIACUS.

*Common names*—AMARANTH, PRINCE'S FEATHER, LOVELY BLEEDING.

THE amaranth is an annual plant, much cultivated in gardens for its beautiful red appearance, rising to the height of from three to five feet. The whole plant is more or less red, but the blossom most so, being of a deep, bright red, whilst the leaves are dark. Prince's Feather is the name by which it is most commonly distinguished; but amaranth is a better and more elegant term, which ought to be adopted. This article is too well known to need a more minute description.

The amaranth is an astringent, and as such, the leaves are used in decoction for bowel complaints. But it is most celebrated as a remedy for profuse menstruation, and has often cured when other remedies have failed.

---

#### AMOMUM ZINGIBER.

*Common names*—GINGER, ALSO DISTINGUISHED BY RACE, AND BLACK, AND WHITE GINGER.

GINGER is a perennial shrub, growing about three feet high, a native of the East Indies, but now cultivated in the West Indies, in large quantities. Race, is a term applied to ginger in the root, to distinguish it from that which is ground. The black ginger, is the root prepared with less care than the white; the white, also called Jamaica ginger, being washed and scraped previous to drying.

Ginger is a warm and moderately stimulating aromatic, of much value in medicine, mostly used in combination with other articles, and is an important ingredient in the diaphoretic or sweating powders. For medicine, it is better to purchase the sound roots, as that which is ground is often prepared from such



roots as are worm-eaten and unsaleable, besides being adulterated with other articles. Dose, from half to a whole tea-spoonful, in warm water sweetened. Externally, very valuable in poultices.

---

### AMYGDALUS PERSICA.

*Common name*—PEACH TREE.

THIS valuable tree affords not only a most delightful fruit, but also furnishes very valuable medicine. The bark, leaves, blossoms, kernels, and gum, are all highly useful.

The bark, leaves, or flowers, in tea or syrup, are an excellent purgative, and may be given to young or old; useful in colics, bowel complaints, worms, and fevers. A strong decoction may be given to children, in tea-spoonful or larger doses, every hour or oftener, until it operates; to grown persons, in larger quantities. It also acts as a diaphoretic and tonic. A tea of either the peach tree leaves or bark is one of the best remedies for bloody urine, and very probably may be found beneficial in other complaints of the urinary organs, and for bleeding from other internal parts. If reliance is placed upon the peach tree physic, in fevers, it ought to be given daily for several days, so as to produce moderate purging; at the same time administering the cayenne pepper, diaphoretic powders, or bitter tonic, and applying hot rocks to aid in promoting perspiration.

RAFINESQUE says that the blossoms are much used in Europe for worms, colic, and gravel, in the form of tea.

The kernels taken from the stone of the peach, is a most valuable tonic, and is particularly serviceable in bowel complaints, and in all cases of extreme debility. They are best, however, combined with other articles, and usually exhibited in a cordial or syrup.

In a late work, by Dr. ELISHA SMITH, of New York, which we have several times quoted, and which fell into our hands since the publication of the first edition, we find the following remarks respecting this article:—"Peach pits tinctured in brandy, in proportion of four ounces to a quart, form a powerful tonic in debility, fever and ague, &c., and is remarkably efficacious in curing the whites. A tea-spoonful of this preparation may be taken three or four times a day."

As an external application to inflammations, the peach tree leaves bruised and boiled and employed as a fomentation, or thickened with bran as a poultice, and often renewed, are said, by good authority, to be valuable.

High wines, or alcohol made from peach brandy, is a valuable menstruum for making the tincture of myrrh, being much more pleasant than that made from whisky.

The gum which exudes from the peach tree answers all the purposes of Gum Arabic, and is said to be superior to it.

---

### ANETHUM FÖNICULUM.

*Common names*—FENNEL, SWEET FENNEL.

FENNEL is a perennial plant, native of Italy, where it grows wild, but in the United States is cultivated in gardens, though sometimes growing spontaneous. The seeds are a good aromatic; as such are useful in bitters, and a variety of other compounds. They also yield an excellent oil, which is good to expel wind, and promotes urine.

---

### ANGELICA ATROPURPUREA.

*Common names*—MASTERWORT, WILD ANGELICA.

Roots perennial, numerous, large, and long. Stem round, smooth and hollow, growing from three to five feet high, branched at the top, giving rise to several large bunches of umbelliferous flowers. Leaves large, few, jagged, and hairy.

The seeds and roots of the masterwort are very useful for colic, wind in the stomach, and all flatulent complaints; being at the same time a grateful aromatic, stimulant, and stomachic medicine. It is also one of the articles entering into Dr. FINCH's remedy or treatment of gravel. The fresh root is said to be poisonous, which is dissipated in drying.

---

### ANGUSTURA BARK.

THE Angustura bark is imported from the Spanish West Indies, and may be regarded as a valuable tonic. The best menstruum for extracting its medicinal qualities is proof spirit, in which it ought to be tinctured, or it may be taken in substance.

It increases the appetite, removes flatulence and acidity arising from dyspepsy, and is a very effectual remedy in diarrhœa arising from weakness of the bowels, and in dysentery; acting without oppressing the stomach. Dose, half a tea-spoonful.

---

### ANTHEMIS COTULA.

*Common names*—MAYWEED, DOG FENNEL, WILD CHAMOMILE, DILLY, DILLWEED, FIELDWEED, STINKING CHAMOMILE.

Root annual, crooked, fibrous. Stem erect, from eight to eighteen inches high, much branched from the bottom.—



ANGELICA ATROPURPUREA, ( Masterwort ).



WATERBURY'S CONSUMABLE JOURNAL



Leaves alternate, double pinnated, giving the plant a ragged appearance. Flowers many, white and yellow, forming a terminal corymb, on a naked peduncle. Grows in great abundance near houses, along roads, walks, wastes, &c. It is a species of Chamomile, for which it may be substituted on all occasions; but for internal use, the flowers being least unpleasant, ought to be preferred.

The Mayweed has been long and extensively used in domestic medicine, with advantage. It is reputed an active tonic, sudorific, anodyne, and emetic. Useful in colds, fevers, rheumatism, hysterics, epilepsy, dropsy, and asthma, either internally or externally applied. Internally the herb is used in tea, and externally in fomentations—for rheumatism, hysteric fits, piles, pains, and bruises. It may be given in tea when taking an emetic, and is better than warm water to promote vomiting. In small doses, taken warm, it always acts as a sudorific, promoting copious perspiration.

---

#### ANTHEMIS NOBILIS.

*Common name*—CHAMOMILE.

THIS common herb is a native of the south of England, but is now cultivated in gardens for the purpose of medicine. The flowers have a strong, but not unpleasant, aromatic smell, and a very bitter, nauseous taste. They are used in spasmodic diseases, hysterics, colics, vomiting, &c.

The whole plant is also valuable as an external application, possessing a relaxing power, and enters into the composition of Dr. THOMSON'S nerve or relaxing ointment, which is applied to hard swellings, corns, callouses, shrunk sinews, &c. Bruised and moistened with vinegar, it is useful to apply to sprains and bruises.

---

#### APIUM PETROSELINUM.

*Common name*—PARSLEY.

THIS common garden vegetable is mostly cultivated for culinary or cooking purposes, but it is also highly valuable as a medicine.

Parsley is a pretty active diuretic, and may be used in dropsy, and all ordinary suppressions of the urine, and inflammations of the kidneys and bladder. The root, made into a tea, or decoction, is the part generally used for medical purposes.

Professor CHAPMAN states that he cured one case of dropsy of the abdomen with it, after the patient had been twice tapped.

## APOCYNUM ANDROSÆMIFOLIUM.

*Common names*—BITTER DOGSBANE, WANDERING MILKWEED, BITTERROOT, HONEYBLOOM, FLYTRAP.

THE root of this plant is perennial, near the size of the little finger, running horizontally under the surface in various directions to a considerable length, of a dark red, or black color, when broken exuding a milk, and having a woody pith. Stem smooth, covered with a tough fibrous bark like hemp, milky, growing from three to five feet high, branching towards the top, and red on the side exposed to the sun. Several stalks arise from one root, or rather branches of the root, bearing white blossoms, tinged with red, which give it a distant resemblance of buckwheat. Leaves opposite, ovate, acute, and entire.

The seed is contained in pods of a dark red color, which grow in pairs, from two to three inches long, the size of a pipe stem, very pointed, always hanging down, and containing a kind of cotton. It grows in wetish lands, plains, mowing grounds, by the sides of fences, woods, &c., in all parts of the country. The best time to gather this article is in the fall after the top has ceased growing, when the roots may be dug from the earth, washed clean, and the bark beaten from the woody pith contained in them with a wooden maul or a mallet, and the bark then be dried in some airy situation where it is not exposed to the rain and dew.

The dogsbane or bitterroot, acts as an emetic, cathartic, and powerful tonic; being intensely bitter. Its cathartic power is, however, not strong, and may rather be regarded as a laxative than cathartic. If given in large doses, however, it produces a purgative effect upon the bowels, and used in this manner, at the commencement of a fever, will often throw it off. In too large doses, it also operates as a dangerous emetic.

It is a most important article in the laxative bitter tonic, being useful not only for its laxative, but also for its tonic qualities. It is said that the Southern Indians employ it in the venereal disease, and consider it a specific. A wash made by steeping the root, is good for ulcers, scald head, and very probably may be found useful as an external application in many diseases of the skin. We think it might also prove highly serviceable in worm complaints.

Its virtues are impaired by age, and, therefore, it should be gathered fresh every year, and kept from the air.



APOCYNUM ANDROSAEMIFOLIUM, ( Bitter-root ).





## APOCYNUM CANNABINUM.

*Common name*—INDIAN HEMP.

THIS plant very nearly resembles the foregoing, in its external appearance, so much so, that a superficial observer might readily confound them together. The principal difference consists in the color of the flower and appearance of the leaves. In this species, the flowers are greenish yellow, with the internal parts pinkish or purple; whereas in the former species they are white tinged with red. The leaves in this species are oblong-ovate, sharp at both ends, and somewhat white or downy on the under side; whereas in the former species the leaves are ovate, sharp or acute at the outer end, and smooth on both sides. Like the *A. androsæmifolium*, the Indian hemp also grows throughout the United States, and in similar situations, having likewise a milky juice, and a tough fibrous bark, similar to hemp, from which it derives its common name. Like the former species too, it is the root that is medicinal, which is to be procured and prepared in the same manner.

The Indian hemp is emetic, cathartic, diuretic, diaphoretic, and expectorant; but is introduced here principally as a hydragogue cathartic, and diuretic, highly useful in the treatment of dropsy. The best form of using it is in decoction. Half an ounce of the powdered root may be steeped in a pint of boiling water, of which the patient may take from one to three table-spoonfuls, or more, two or three times a day, or oftener if necessary.

---

AQUA.

*Common name*—WATER.

WATER is a liquid, transparent, colorless substance, diffused in the atmosphere, and over the whole surface of the globe. At thirty-two degrees of Fahrenheit's thermometer, water becomes solid, forming ice; and at two hundred and twelve degrees, it boils, becoming transformed into vapor, and passes off into the air. Water was formerly considered a simple substance, until towards the close of the eighteenth century, the great improvements in chemical science demonstrated that it was a compound, consisting of eighty-five parts of oxygen and fifteen of hydrogen gas.

All the natural waters, that is, water procured from wells, springs, rivers, &c., are more or less impure; and it is only by distillation that it can be obtained entirely clear from all impurities. Pure water has neither smell nor taste, and is per-

fectly transparent. If water on shaking it, throws up air bubbles, giving it a sparkling appearance, it contains *carbonic acid gas* or fixed air. Such water will turn the vegetable blues to a red color. Water which has the smell of sulphur, contains *sulphuretted hydrogen gas*; and if it have an inky taste, it has iron in it, and is technically styled *chalybeate* water. By exposure to the air, chalybeate water gives off the carbonic acid which holds the iron in solution, and the iron is deposited, giving to the earth over which it flows a reddish appearance, similar to the rust of iron.

Lime, and various other substances, also abound in water, and either render it unwholesome for drinking and cookery, or unfit for many manufacturing purposes, or both.

Water containing those foreign substances of which we have been speaking, is denominated *hard*. The cause of this hardness is an acid or sourness, which, though commonly imperceptible to the taste, is sufficient to dissolve those materials which are held in solution in the water. It is this acid that dissolves or decomposes the soap, and prevents hard water from washing; the acid neutralizing the alkali of the soap, and setting the oil or grease at liberty. And hence too, the addition of a little lye to hard water *softens* it, by neutralizing the acid, and thus renders it fit for washing with soap.

In the preparation of medicine, soft water ought always to be preferred, as it is a much better solvent than that which is hard. Rain water is the purest; next, river water; and then spring water; the water of wells being generally hardest of all.

Cold water is one of the best external applications to painful or inflamed ulcers, to fresh wounds, and rheumatism. Applied in this way, it is a favorite remedy with the Indians, who say that if persevered in, it will cure. For rheumatism they bathe the affected parts often and continue it long.

---

#### ARALIA NUDICAULIS.

*Common names*—SMALL SPIKENARD, FALSE SARSAPARILLA.

SPIKENARD root is perennial, brown, yellowish, creeping, twisted, sometimes many feet long, the thickness of the finger: one stem and one leaf mostly rising together, and less than two feet high; flower stem straight, leafless, with three small simple naked umbels at the end; leaf with nine folioles or leaflets, ovate, oblong, rounded at the base, end acute, edges indented or notched, surface smooth; flowers from twelve to thirty in each umbel, small and yellowish; berries small, similar to elder berries in size. Found from New England to Carolina and Indiana,



ARALIA RACEMOSA, ( Spikenard ).





more common in the north than in the south; grows in deep woods, and good soils. It has a balsamic, fragrant, and warm aromatic sweetish taste.

All the spikenards are popular medical plants throughout the United States. They are healing, pectoral, sudorific, stimulant, diaphoretic, cordial, depurative, &c. The roots and berries are most efficient.

The roots bruised or chewed, or in poultice, are used for all kinds of wounds and ulcers by the Indians. Fomentations and cataplasms are useful for cutaneous affections, erysipelas and ringworms. An infusion or decoction of the same are efficient substitutes for those of sarsaparilla, and are even more powerful in all diseases of the blood, syphilitic complaints, chronic rheumatism, local pains, bellyache, &c. As a pectoral, both roots and berries may be used in syrups, cordials, decoctions, &c., and have been found useful in coughs, catarrh, cachexia, languor, pains in the breast, &c. The cordial of spikenard is recommended for the gout, and the juice or essential oil for the earache and deafness.

---

#### ARALIA RACEMOSA.

*Common names*—SPICNET, SPIKENARD, WILD LIQUORICE,

Roots perennial, brown or brownish yellow, tapering, several growing from one common head, about the size of a finger. Stems sometimes one, sometimes more, arising from the same root, from two to four feet high, reddish brown, and somewhat branched. Leaves biternate, consisting of nine folioles or smaller leaves. Flowers growing in umbels, of a yellowish white. Berries resembling small elder berries.

The roots and berries are the parts used, and are popular remedies throughout the United States, for coughs, female weakness, and as general tonics. Used in tea or syrup. The roots bruised and used in poultice, are applied by the Indians to all kinds of wounds and ulcers, and also to ringworms. RAFINESQUE says, they are more efficient than the sarsaparilla, in syphilis and all other complaints in which that article is used.

---

#### ARALIA SPINOSA.

*Common names*—XANTHOXYLON, PRICKLY YELLOW-WOOD, SEA-ASH, TOOTHACHE TREE, SHOTBUSH, &c.

THIS article grows in the Southern States, where it is too common to need any description. The bark is the part used as medicine, and is a most powerful, pungent, warm aromatic, promising to become a highly valuable addition to the Botanic materia medica.

One pound of the pulverized bark, added to three pounds of the diaphoretic powders, makes, as we are informed by Dr. REED, a highly valuable medicine in the treatment of dropsy, in addition to the courses of medicine and other means advised under that head.

It is a most powerful sialagogue, promoting the discharge of saliva in an astonishing manner; which renders it very valuable in ardent fevers where the mouth and throat are dry and parched. Dr. GUNNIN styles the pulverized bark "saliva powders," saying that in cases of the most extreme dryness of the mouth, in which the African pepper will scarcely produce any effect, small portions of this powder, occasionally put into the mouth, will produce a moisture and relieve the difficulty of breathing, to the great advantage of the patient. He also cures the soar throat by the same means.

Dr. QUIN also remarks, that a mixture of this with lobelia in proportion of seven parts of the latter to one of the former produces vomiting, in much smaller doses than the lobelia alone; seldom requiring more than one and a half or two tea spoonfuls.

---

#### ARCTIUM LAPPA.

*Common names*—BURDOCK, CLOTEUR.

THE root of this plant is often used in decoction, for cutaneous complaints, and in many instances with good success.—It is also employed as a diuretic; and is also said powerfully to promote perspiration; the seeds still stronger and more valuable. The latter are likewise used with good success in rheumatism, scurvy, gout, inflammation of the kidneys, and venereal disease, in which it is said they are preferable to sarsaparilla. Combined with lobelia, they form a powerful diaphoretic medicine; and might be advantageously compounded with many other articles less nauseous than the lobelia. The seeds are bitter, and are said to be purgative. In doses of one to two tea-spoonfuls, pulverized, three times a day, they are said to have cured dyspepsy when other remedies had failed. The leaves, applied to the feet, are highly useful in many complaints, and particularly in febrile diseases.

---

#### ARISTOLOCHIA SERPENTARIA.

*Common names*—VIRGINIA SNAKEROOT, SNAKEWEED, SNAGREL, WHITE SNAKEROOT.

THE root of this herb consists of numerous small fibers issuing from one common head or caudex, and are of a dark yellow



ARISTOLOCHIA SERPENTARIA, ( Snake-root ).







**ARUM POLLYPHYLLUM**, ( Many-leaved Wild Turnip ).



color when fresh, but become darker on drying. Stem round, slender, weak, crooked, and jointed, from six to ten inches high, bearing from three to seven scattered leaves, and one to three flowers near the ground. The leaves are somewhat singular, long, and heart shaped at the base or broad part.

Snakeroot delights in shady situations, and abounds in all parts of the United States; said to be most abundant in the Alleghany and Cumberland mountains.

The root has an agreeable, pungent, aromatic smell, very similar to the fibrous roots of the spice bush; and a warm, bitter, pungent taste. Dr. THACHER says that by decoction, its medical properties are entirely destroyed; but in this he is most certainly mistaken. It may be used alone in tea or tincture, or compounded with other articles for bitters, or added to the diaphoretic powders, in which it will be found highly useful.

Snakeroot is greatly esteemed in typhus fevers, being considered diaphoretic, tonic, antiseptic, and stimulant. It is used in pleurisy, rheumatism, remittent fevers, and all other complaints.

---

#### ARUM TRIPHYLLUM.

*Common names*—WILD TURNIP, INDIAN TURNIP, DRAGON TURNIP, DRAGONROOT, PEPPER TURNIP, WAKEROBIN.

THIS is a hardy perennial plant, growing in almost every situation, shady or open, soil wet or dry, rich or poor. The root is round, flattened, tuberous, with many white fibers putting out around its upper part near the stem; externally it is dark and wrinkled; internally, white. Leaves, three in number, growing at the top of the stalk; and a single blossom of the same color of the leaves, producing a roundish cluster of red berries.

In its green state the Indian turnip is powerfully acrid, stimulant, expectorant, carminative, and diaphoretic. By drying, however, it loses the greater part of its intolerable pungency, together with much of its virtue; but even then it is a valuable medicine. It may be kept in its green state by burying it in sand in a cellar.

This article must be used in substance, and generally enters into compounds for cough, when in a dry state; or the fresh roots may be grated, and mixed with three times their weight of sugar, thus forming a conserve, which must be taken in teaspoonful doses, three times a day. A poultice made by bruising the green roots and leaves, is said to be very useful for scrofulous swellings, &c.

## ASARUM CANADENSE.

*Common names*—WILD GINGER, COLTSFOOT, HEART SNAKE-ROOT, COLTSFOOT SNAKE-ROOT, &c.

Root perennial, horizontal, round, fleshy, jointed, throwing out fibers, brown outside and within. Leaves radical, round, hairy, supported on long foot-stalks, veined, kidney-shaped, somewhat resembling a colt's hoof, two from a root. Only one flower growing from the root between the two foot-stalks which support the leaves, of a dark purple, darkest inside, and growing so close to the ground as to be nearly concealed.

Grows in rich shady woods, often in a moist soil, in nearly, if not quite, all the States.

The root of the wild ginger is a warming stimulant; useful to promote perspiration, and may be used for that purpose in all cases of colds, female obstructions, whooping-cough, fevers, &c. It may be made in a tea and administered in small doses frequently repeated, as it is apt to nauseate the stomach in large ones. "The best preparation," says RAFINESQUE, "is a cordial made with the tincture and syrup [or melasses;] the tincture is colored a dark red by the resin."

The dried leaves, reduced to powder, make an excellent snuff which may be used in all diseases of the head and eyes; and the whole plant infused into beer makes it grateful and medicinal.

---

ASCLEPIAS SYRIACA.

*Common names*—MILKWEED, SILKWEED.

THIS is the common silkweed, which so plentifully abounds in almost all parts of the country, bearing a large pod containing a silky substance, which has sometimes been mixed with cotton and spun into yarn, for gloves, candle wick, &c., and has also been made into paper, hats, and even put into beds. It produces a most beautiful blossom, of a delightful lilac color, at the termination of the branches at the top of the plant.

The root of this herb appears to possess nearly the same properties as the butterfly root, but its powers are not so strong. It may be used for the same purposes and in the same manner. The Southwestern Indians are said to use it as an emetic.

Dr. SMITH observes, "the root has lately been found effectual in the cure of dropsy. It is a powerful diuretic, sudorific, emmenagogue," &c. "Boil eight ounces of the dry root [in six quarts of rain water] to three; of this a gill may be taken four times a day for dropsy, increasing the dose according to the





*ASARUM CANADENSIS*, ( Wild Ginger ).





ASCLEPIAS SYRICA, ( Cotton-weed ).







**ASCLEPIAS TUBEROSA**, (Pleurisy-root).



*Prunella vulgaris* L.



PAPTISIA TINCTORIA, (Indigofera).





effects. For other complaints, a larger dose may be taken. Or the roots in tincture with gin, may be used in dropsy and gravelly disorders."

---

### ASCLEPIAS TUBEROSA.

*Common names*—PLEURISY-ROOT, BUTTERFLY-WEED, WHITE-ROOT, CANADA-ROOT, SILKWEED, WINDROOT, FLUXROOT, SWALLOW-WORT.

THIS beautiful plant flourishes best in a sandy or gravelly soil, by the way side, along fences, and in old or uncultivated fields. It abounds throughout the United States, but is most plentiful at the South.

The butterfly-weed has a large, white, crooked, branching, perennial root, sending up several erect, though often decumbent, round hairy or woolly stems, branching at the top, green or red. Leaves promiscuous, very hairy, pale on the under side, of an oblong shape, and thick or fleshy. Flowers in terminal corymbose umbels, of a most beautiful brilliant orange color, distinguishable from all the flowers of the field.

The butterfly root is highly extolled for the cure of pleurisy, all cases of difficulty of breathing or shortness of breath, and in short, all diseases of the lungs. In every affection of this kind, it may be regarded as one of the most valuable of the milder articles of the materia medica; and as a diaphoretic is by some thought to be unrivalled.

In practice, it may be used alone in strong decoction, or in substance, giving it in tea-spoonful or larger doses, repeated as often as the exigencies of the case may require. Or it may be very profitably combined with other diaphoretics, or with the bitter, and astringent, tonics, as it cannot be used amiss in any complaint.

It also acts as a very mild purge, which makes it peculiarly applicable to the bowel complaints of children. It relieves pain in the breast, stomach and intestines; promotes perspiration, and assists digestion, and acts as an expectorant and carminative.

---

### BAPTISIA TINCTORIA.

*Common names*—INDIGOFERA, WILD INDIGO, INDIGOWEED, HORSEFLY-WEED, INDIGO BROOM, &c.

Root perennial, irregular, large and woody, blackish outside, yellowish within, and sending off many slender branches or fibers. Stems two or three feet high, round and smooth, of a

yellowish green color with black spots, very much branched at the top. Leaves alternate, small, somewhat heart-shaped, and broadest towards the outer end. The blossoms are of a golden color, and are succeeded by a swelled oblong pod, of a bluish or blackish hue, as indeed is the whole plant, and becoming quite black on drying. The taste of the root is unpleasant, sub-acrid and nauseous. Growing on poor soils, mostly on hills.

Both the root and plant may be used for medicinal purposes, either externally or internally. If given in too large doses, however, it proves both emetic and cathartic. But it is not esteemed by any means valuable for those purposes, being regarded as too severe. Internally, in a weak decoction, it is considered highly useful as an antiseptic, in mortification, and all putrid complaints. For internal use, half an ounce of the dried root may be steeped in a pint of water, of which about two or three table-spoonfuls may be taken once in five or six hours. If it should prove too cathartic or loosening to the bowels, about half the quantity, more or less, of the dewberry, or of bayberry root, must be added to it. Internally, however, it must be used with caution, especially if in its recent or fresh state.

Externally, the indigofera may be applied in poultice, wash, fomentation, or ointment, to ulcers of every description, but particularly to those which are in a mortifying, or mortified state, being considered by some as the most powerful antiseptic or preventive of mortification known. It is also applied by some herbalists, in poultice, to swelled female breasts; and in putrid or ulcerous sore throat, it is highly recommended. It may also be made into an ointment with lard or cream.

As a substitute for the *B. tinctoria* which is scarce in Ohio and many other places, the *B. alba*, or prairie indigo, abounding in the Western prairies, may be employed in the same manner as the former. It very much resembles the *B. tinctoria*, but has one striking difference in the color of the flower, which is white.

---

### BERBERIS VULGARIS.

*Common name*—BARBERRY.

THE barberry is a shrub growing from four to eight feet high, with long bending branches, covered with many small dots, and some occasional thorns, often three together. Leaves crowded, unequal, smooth, and glossy. Flowers nodding or pendulous, rather small and yellow. Found in mountains, hills, and amongst rocks, in barren soils. Most common in New England; rare in the Western country.

The bark of the barberry is a good bitter tonic, slightly astrin-



CAPSICUM MINIMUM, ( Cayenne Pepper ).





gent, and at the same time laxative. It may be used in putrid fevers, dysentery, and generally in all cases of disease, either alone or combined with other tonics.

---

### BETULA LENTA.

*Common names*—BLACK BIRCH, SWEET BIRCH, SPICE BIRCH, &c.

THE black birch tree is too common to need any description. The bark smells and tastes much like the winter green. It is deemed a good tonic, and as such, may be either used alone in strong tea, or it may be combined with other tonics, and used in decoction, or made into a syrup, and taken to restore the strength, and tone of the bowels, after dysentery. It is also said to be useful in gravel, and to remove female obstructions. Always grows on upland. Scarce in the West.

---

### CAPSICUM ANNUUM.

*Common names*—CAYENNE PEPPER, RED PEPPER, COCKSPUR PEPPER.

CAYENNE pepper is cultivated in both tropical and temperate climates, and needs no description. The imported article, so extensively used in medicine under the name of cayenne, is most generally an indiscriminate mixture of the pods of several varieties of the capsicum. The common red pepper, of which so many varieties abound in our gardens, is a species of the capsicum, but possesses far inferior powers to that which grows in the tropical climates, and especially in Africa, which is considered best of all.

Cayenne pepper is one of the most pure and powerful stimulants ever introduced into the practice of medicine. It was perhaps first used by an English or Scotch physician, of the name of MAKATRICK, and has since become one of the most important articles in the physiological botanical practice of medicine, for which the world is much indebted to Dr. THOMSON. It enters, in some proportion or other, into almost all our compounds, and is extensively and advantageously used as an external application in every case of disease requiring external remedies.

RAFINESQUE says that "even the use of it, (cayenne,) often produces fevers and inflammatory disorders, obstructions, bloody piles, sores," &c.—This is a gross mistake, founded on popular error, and rests upon nothing else. Dr. THACHER also favors the same idea, saying that the use of capsicum is not without danger "from the inflammation it is liable to induce." The

popular opinion from which this error originated is, however, fast wearing away, and more rational views of medicine and medical philosophy taking its place.

There can be no doubt that the cayenne pepper is a pure and unfailing stimulant, acting upon the living machine in a most forcible and healthy manner, in unison and harmony with the laws of nature or animal life. Instead of its being dangerous, or producing fevers, inflammatory disorders, obstructions, &c., there is nothing used, as a general stimulant, so valuable as capsicum. It removes obstructions, fevers, inflammations, piles, liver complaints, and all diseases to which the human frame is liable, in conjunction with other means, being universally applicable in all cases. We have confirmed these assertions by much experience and very extensive observation, and can therefore recommend it to the sick, with all the confidence which a knowledge of these facts inspires.

It sometimes, however, especially when taken into an empty or cold stomach, produces pain, occasionally very severe, so as to be alarming to those unaccustomed to it. This is attended with no danger, as it will, in general, soon pass over. All hazard of producing pain in this way may be avoided by giving smaller quantities, and thus increase the action of the stomach in a gradual manner; or if produced, may often be removed by taking a little sweet oil, cream, or milk. The intolerable burning sometimes induced by accidental contact of cayenne with any external sensitive part of the body, may likewise be effectually and speedily checked by the application of cream or sweet oil.

Cayenne is often employed with the highest advantage, sprinkled on foul or bad ulcers, and may be used, tinctured in brandy or steeped in vinegar, to bathe the bowels in dysentery and colic, or for rheumatism, inflammations, pains or soreness; and the tea or fine powder may even be put into the eyes to cure them when sore. A small quantity of cayenne is highly useful in what are termed passive inflammations, and indolent tumors, externally applied. Dose, from one fourth to a whole tea-spoonful, in hot water sweetened.

---

### CARBO LIGNI.

*Common name*—CHARCOAL OF WOOD.

CHARCOAL possesses a number of singular properties, which render it important in medicine and the arts. It is incapable of putrefying or rotting like wood; and it is said there yet exists charcoal made of grain, probably since the days of JULIUS

**CÆSAR**, which is so perfect that the wheat may be distinguished from the rye.

Charcoal possesses the peculiar property of correcting the empyreumatic or burnt taste of distilled spirits; of depriving rancid oil of its unpleasant flavor; and of checking the putrefaction of fresh meat and restoring it to its natural taste.

In medicine, charcoal is of great utility in arresting mortification, applied in the form of poultice with yeast, or taken internally in large doses if mortification of the bowels is apprehended. It is also very serviceable in costive habits, moving the bowels without producing much debility; and likewise in bleeding at the stomach, in intermittent fever, and in dysentery. It ought, for all purposes, to be fresh prepared, or kept in close stopped vessels.

A very eligible mode of preparing charcoal for use, free from impurities and disagreeable taste, is to put pieces of wood in an iron cylinder or tube, leaving it open at one end, when it must be placed in the fire and there kept until no more smoke issues from it; then the tube must be taken from the fire, and the open end is to be closed with clay until it becomes cool. Or, instead of wood, pulverise some well burnt charcoal and put it in the tube, or place it in a covered crucible or other vessel, and keep it in a red heat until it ceases to give out any flame or vapor; when it should be cooled and closely bottled for use. Old gun or pistol barrels answer the purpose of preparing charcoal very well. The reason why it should be kept in close stopped vessels is, it absorbs fixed air when exposed to the atmosphere, which renders it unfit for use, or at least very much impairs its virtues.

“The Paris Codex,” says the United States Dispensatory, “directs the preparation of charcoal for medical use to be conducted as follows:—Take any quantity of thoroughly burnt charcoal, very light, sonorous, and pure, made from the wood of the linden-tree, willow, poplar, or some other of the lighter woods, and moisten it with water. Reduce it to powder in an iron mortar, or by means of a mill; and having mixed it with water to form a thin fluid mass, let it stand for a few days; after which, place it on a linen cloth to drain. Make up the paste into round cakes, and expose them to the rays of the sun until they are thoroughly dried. By this process of insolation, the charcoal is stated in the Codex to be completely deprived of all adventitious color and smell, and to be singularly improved in efficiency; advantages which are not equally obtained, when it is dried in the shade.”

For correcting the empyreumatic taste of spirits, the charcoal must be added to, and agitated with it, when it may be allowed to subside, and then be poured off for use; and for restoring putrid

meat, it may be sprinkled on the meat, or boiled with it a short time, and then the water changed. For this latter purpose, or indeed for any of them, red hot coals taken from the hearth will answer, but is not so good as that prepared in the manner just described.

Charcoal is also useful as a tooth powder, to cleanse the teeth and sweeten the breath; and also to cleanse foul and fetid ulcers. When used as a tooth powder, it may be applied dry, or mixed with vinegar and water and used as a wash.

For internal use, charcoal may be given in doses of from one to three table-spoonfuls, in melasses, or, in obstinate cases of costiveness, in as large quantities, and as often repeated, as the stomach will bear; but in all ordinary cases of every kind, a table-spoonful three times a day will generally be sufficient.

### CASSIA CHAMÆCRISTA.

*Common names*—PRAIRIE SENNA, PARTRIDGE-PEA.

THIS plant very much resembles the one which immediately follows, but is smaller and more delicate. Stem from one to three feet high, seldom much branched. Leaflets in eight or ten pairs, much smaller than those of the American senna, only about half an inch long, and one-eighth of an inch wide, margin entire. Flowers golden yellow, situated along the stems. The leaves are sensitive, folding up on being touched. Found on the Western prairies.

The virtues of this plant are said to be in all respects similar to the *C. marylandica*, but, at the same time, better.

### CASSIA MARYLANDICA.

*Common names*—AMERICAN SENNA, WILD SENNA, LOCUST PLANT.

Root perennial, crooked, woody, black, and fibrous. Stems, many, round, upright, nearly smooth, growing from three to six feet high. Leaves few, alternate, large, compounded of many small leaflets, growing in eight or ten pairs. Flowers of a bright golden yellow, with dark spots, forming a scattered cluster at the top of the stem. The fruit consists of long pods, a little swelled at the seeds, covered with a few slight hairs. Found in all the States, in rich moist soils, principally near streams.

The American senna, like the imported article of the same name, is a mild purgative, but is said by BIGELOW to be weaker by one third. It answers all the purposes of the Alexandrian senna, and is far cheaper; "operates," says RAFINESQUE, "with





CAULOPHYLLUM THALICTROIDES, (Blue Cohosh ).





CASSIA, ( Senna ).

† Fig. 1, is a specimen leaf of the ovate leaved Alexandria senna. 2. Specimen of the acute variety of the same. 3. Specimen of the Tephrosia or silver leaved Alexandria senna. 4. Specimen of the India or Trinnevelly senna. 5. Specimen leaf of the Coriaria myrtifolia,—an article with which senna is sometimes adulterated. These are of a grayish-green color, and are tinged with blue. They have three parallel nerves, one prominent one in the centre, and one on each side between this and the edge or margin of the leaf. 6. A specimen leaf of the Cynancum oleæfolium or argel, a variety of the Alexandrian senna.





mildness and certainty, at the dose of an ounce in decoction." The leaves and pods are both employed, and may be advantageously used, either by themselves or compounded with other cathartic medicines. THACHER says, about half an ounce of the leaves infused in half a pint of hot water, is a proper dose for an adult. Its griping effects may be prevented by the addition of some aromatic, with sal æratus or soda; and its cathartic powers increased by its combination with bitters.

---

#### CAULOPHYLLUM THALICTROIDES.

*Common names*—BLUE COHOSH, BLUE COHUSH, BLUEBERRY, PAPPOOSE-ROOT, SQUAW-ROOT, &c.

Root perennial, yellow inside, brown outside, hard, irregular, knobby, with many fibers. Stem upright, straight, smooth, from eighteen to thirty inches high, divided at the top into two or three branches, each branch supporting three leaves, in the center of which, come out the flowers. Flowers small, yellowish-green, succeeded by dark blue berries, enclosing a hard drupe or stone.

The blue cohosh root is much used by the Indians, and by many herbalists among the whites. It is considered by SMITH the most powerful anti-spasmodic in the compass of medicine; and at the same time is perfectly safe.

Amongst the diseases in which it is useful, he names hickup, colic, cholera morbus, epilepsy, hysterics, and he supposes every other species of fits, and even the ague. He also says that he speedily cured one case of inflammation of the uterus by a decoction of this article. It is likewise esteemed very highly by some in worm complaints; and by its anti-spasmodic power is said to prevent the griping of cathartics when combined with them for that purpose.

It is said that the facility of child-birth among the squaws, is owing to their drinking a tea of cohosh root for two or three weeks before their expected time; and experience, says SMITH, has proved amongst white women that it is of especial service. He directs a handful of the roots to make half a pint of tea; administer one half the quantity, and then fill up the vessel again with hot water. It may also be used in tincture, syrup, or cordial.

---

#### CELASTRUS SCANDENS.

*Common names*—BITTER-SWEET, FEVER-TWIG, STAFF-VINE.

By most herbalists the bitter-sweet is treated of under the name of *amara dulcis*, or of *solanum dulcamara*; but these

names belong to a plant very different from the one now under consideration.

The bitter-sweet is a woody vine, climbing trees, sometimes to the height of thirty feet, but commonly not higher than ten or fifteen; and at other times, when nothing comes within its reach to entwine upon, it creeps along the ground. When it happens to come in contact with a bush or sapling of suitable size, it frequently climbs in a beautiful spiral form around it, and is often taken off and converted into a walking staff, whence one of its names. The leaves are ovate and pointed; of a light green hue; the berries hang in bunches, and become red in the fall. The roots are of an orange red color, pretty large and long.

The bark of the root is esteemed by some as a tonic, taken internally in tea; said to remove obstructions of the liver and spleen, and to promote the secretion of urine. Externally, it is applied in poultice or ointment to hard tumors and indurated swellings of every description, and to swelled cows' bags, for which purpose it is very useful.

In addition to the foregoing account of the virtues of this plant, we find the following in the "Botanic Physician," by ELISHA SMITH:—

"The bitter-sweet is a powerful and useful medicine, though, like most of the invaluable medicinal plants which Nature so profusely furnishes to our hands, its virtues are appreciated but by a few. It increases all the secretions and excretions, particularly sweat, urine, and stool, and excites the heart and arteries. It is an excellent discutient, detergent, and resolvent medicine, and may be employed both externally and internally. It is peculiarly beneficial in real liver complaints, and in all cutaneous affections; also in rheumatism, scirrous swellings, ill conditioned ulcers, scrofula, whites, jaundice, and obstructed menses. Cancers of the breast have been cured by the application of the juice over the cancer, and the green leaves over the breast. For internal use, boil half a pound of the bark to one gallon; the dose, a gill three times a day. It is also good in fevers and dropsical swellings."

---

#### CENTAUREA BENEDICTA.

*Common names*—BLESSED THISTLE, BELOVED THISTLE, HOLY THISTLE.

This is an annual exotic plant, cultivated in gardens; and useful as a stomachic and tonic; said also to be sudorific and diuretic, purgative and emetic. Leaves, flowers, and seeds are used; very bitter and somewhat nauseous to the taste. "An infusion,



CELASTRUS SCANDENS, ( Bitter-sweet ).



*Passiflora ligularis*



made in cold or warm water, if drunk freely, and the patient kept warm, occasions a plentiful sweat, and promotes the secretions in general."

---

### CEREVISIÆ FERMENTUM.

*Common names*—YEAST, BARM, BREWER'S FOAM.

YEAST, for medical uses, may be procured from the brewers, or it may be made in either of the three following ways:

1.—Thicken two quarts of water with about three or four spoonfuls of rye or wheat flour, boil for half an hour, sweeten with half a pound of brown sugar; when nearly cold, put into it four spoonfuls of fresh yeast, shake it well together in a jug, and let it stand one day near the fire to ferment, leaving the jug unstopped. Then pour off the thin liquor on the top, and cork up the remainder for use.

2.—Boil one pound of clean washed potatoes to a mash; when half cold add a cupful of yeast, mix them, and it will be ready for use in two or three hours.

3.—Take one pint of yeast, and add half a pint of melasses, and one quart of lukewarm water. Stir these well together and let the mixture stand in a moderately warm place till active fermentation is produced; it may then be set in a cool place and kept for use. In warm weather it should be made fresh every day.

Yeast, says Dr. THACHER, has acquired considerable celebrity for its virtues in the cure of putrid fever and malignant ulcerous sore throat. Dose, one or two spoonfuls every two or three hours; should it purge or gripe, the dose must be diminished.

Externally, yeast may be combined with slippery elm and cracker, or with charcoal, and applied to dangerous ulcers, or parts threatened with mortification.

---

### CHELONE GLABRA.

*Common names*—SNAKEHEAD, BALMONY, TURTLEHEAD, TURTLEBLOOM, SHELLFLOWER, BITTERHERB, &c.

Root perennial; stem erect, though sometimes decumbent, from two to four feet high, angular or four square; flowers terminal, generally white, though of different colors in different varieties; as white spotted with red, and purplish; and of a most singular shape, resembling the head of a snake with its mouth open. Leaves opposite, bearing a distant resemblance to mint leaves, of a dark green color when fresh, almost black when dry, and intensely bitter. Grows in wetland, and by the side of brooks, both in open grounds and in the shade.

The snakehead is a most powerful bitter tonic, and one of the best things to promote the appetite we ever used, and may be administered by itself or combined with other articles. **RAFINESQUE** says that it is an active cathartic, as well as tonic; but of this we have had no experience. The leaves are the best, and may be given in fevers, jaundice, and all other diseases, either in powder, tincture, or decoction. Wine is thought to be the best menstruum to tincture them in.

It is said that the Indians make use of a strong decoction of the whole plant in eruptive diseases, biles, sores, and piles. It is the best bitter known. **SMITH** says, as a vermifuge, "I think it has no superior, rarely failing to expel the worms. It should be administered in infusion, continued for a time, and followed by a suitable purge. An ounce of the dry herb is sufficient in any case for children."

---

#### CHENOPODIUM ANTHELMINTICUM.

*Common names*—WORMSEED, JERUSALEM OAK, STINKWEED, WORMWOOD.

Root annual, branched. Stem upright, branched, branches axillary to the leaves, and terminating with panicles of flowers, which are yellowish-green, growing from two to four feet high. Leaves alternate or scattered, oval, dotted on the under side, margin or edges indented with large unequal obtuse teeth. The whole plant is distinguished by a peculiar smell, different from all others; and which to some is highly offensive. Found in all the States.

The wormseed is a powerful vermifuge medicine, used for worms both in America and Europe. Either the decoction, pulverized seeds, or oil, may be administered; the seeds may be formed into an electuary by mixing them with honey or melasses, in the proportion of about one part of the seeds to three parts of melasses, giving for a dose, to a child of three years old, a table-spoonful, two or three times a day. Care ought to be taken to disguise the taste of the wormseed in any form that it may be administered; for this purpose the oil of anise, orange peel, sugar, or honey can be employed.

---

#### CHIMAPHILA UMBELLATA.

*Common names*—PIPSISEWA, WINTERGREEN, RHEUMATIC-WEED, PRINCE'S PINE.

Root perennial, woody, creeping, sending up stems at various distances. Leaves growing in irregular whorls, few, ever-



CHELONA GLABRA, ( Balmony ).





green, long, wedge-shaped, edges jagged with teeth, smooth and shining. Found in all the States, but most abundant in the mountainous parts of the Eastern and Middle States, growing in dry sandy lands, and elevated shady situations. Flowers, from three to six, purple and white, or reddish-white, growing at the top of the stem, forming an imperfect umbel.

A tea of the tops and roots of this plant is a valuable internal medicine for fever, rheumatism, diseases of the urinary organs, scrofula, cancers, dropsy, and nervous debility. Externally it is used for bathing rheumatic joints, washing cancerous, scrofulous, and other bad ulcers, and hard swellings. It acts as a diaphoretic, diuretic, and tonic.

---

#### COLLINSONIA CANADENSIS.

*Common names*—RICHWEED, RICHLEAF, OXBALM, HEALALL, KNOTROOT, STONEROOT, &c.

Root perennial, knotty, rough and hard, throwing out many slender fibers. Stem erect, round, straight, from eighteen to thirty inches high, terminating in several branches at the top which produce the flowers and seeds. Leaves few, opposite, broad, large and thin, not more than two or three pairs on a stem. Flowers numerous, pale-yellow, possessed of a peculiar balsamic fragrance. Found in all the States; rare towards the South and West, but is replaced in this section of country by other similar species.

The richweed is said to be tonic, carminative, diuretic, and stimulant; being highly prized as an external application to sores, painful parts, swellings, poison, headache, &c. Taken in tea, for headache, colic, cramp, dropsy, indigestion, &c., internally; applied in poultice or the whole leaves, externally; used both fresh and dry.

---

#### COMPTONIA ASPLENIFOLIA.

*Common names*—SWEETFERN, SWEETBUSH, FERNBUSH, FERN-GALE, SWEETFERRY, SPLEENWORT-BUSH, &c.

THE sweetfern is a small shrubby bush, very much branched, growing from two to four feet high; having long horizontal roots. Leaves many, alternate, from three to five inches long, and half an inch broad, each side or edge jagged, bearing some resemblance to the common ferns. Flowers appear before the leaves, succeeded by a kind of round bur containing the seeds. The whole plant possesses a strong, peculiar, resinous, and spicy scent, which is particularly observable on rubbing the leaves be-

tween the fingers. Found throughout the United States, particularly in mountains and sandy plains.

Sweetfern is an astringent tonic; much used in diarrhœa and all cases of looseness of the bowels, in children or adults. It makes a very grateful, pleasant tea, with the addition of cream and sugar, which children rarely, if ever, refuse. It is also used in asthma, fevers, inflammations, rheumatism, &c.; and often as a fomentation.

We are also informed by IRA FINCH, Esq., that a strong tea freely drank, and the leaves put in a cushion to sit on, and between the sheets to lie on, has cured the St. Vitus' dance.

### CONVALLARIA MULTIFLORA.

*Common name*—SOLOMON'S SEAL.

LEAVES alternate, clasping the stem, ribbed, oval-oblong, color dark green. Flowers many, hanging along the side of the stalk, axillary to the leaves. Stalk always inclining to the earth, giving the plant an arched appearance.

The roots of this plant are said to be a mild, yet very healing restorative, and useful in all cases of female weakness, such as whites, and immoderate flowing of the menses. It is also recommended for consumption and general debility. May be used in tea, syrup, or cordial. The mucilage of the roots is recommended to be applied to inflammations and piles.

### CONVOLVULUS PANDURATUS.

*Common names*—BINDWEED, MANROOT, WILD POTATOE, MAN-IN-THE-GROUND, KUSSANDER, &c.

Root perennial, very large, often three inches or more in diameter, and two or three feet long, branched at the bottom, milky, of a yellow color, rough or full of longitudinal depressions or fissures. Stem a climbing vine, of a purplish color, from three to twelve feet long. Leaves cordate or heart-shaped at the base, alternate, often somewhat fiddle-shaped, deep green on the upper, and pale on the under side. Flowers resembling the morning-glory, white or purplish. Found in all parts of the United States, in open situations, and sandy, poor, or loose soils.

The root is cathartic, diuretic, and pectoral. It is used in dropsy, gravel, coughs, consumption, asthma, &c. The extract is by some considered a very valuable cathartic, equal to jalap, rhubarb, or scammony. It may also be used in substance or



CHIMAPHILA UMBELLATA, ( Pipsisewa ).



*Rosa carolina* L.





CONVALARIA MULTIFLORA, ( Solomon's Seal ).





COPTIS TRIFOLIA, ( Gold-thread ).





decoction. For coughs, consumptions, and asthmas, it may be made into a syrup with skunk cabbage.

---

### COPTIS TRIFOLIA.

*Common names*—GOLDTHREAD, MOUTHROOT.

Roots perennial, creeping, with many fibers, color bright yellow. Leaves ever-green, on long slender petioles or foot stalks, growing three together. Flowers, white and yellow, growing on a separate stem or scape, rising to the same height with the leaves. Found in Northern latitudes, in mossy swamps and bogs of ever-green woods, and on the rocks of the White mountains, in Labrador, Newfoundland, &c.\*

Goldthread is a pure intense bitter tonic, promoting digestion and strengthening the system; useful in all cases of debility. It has also been used as a popular remedy in sore mouth canker, &c. The roots are the only part used, and may be given in the form of powder, or tincture, in tea-spoonful doses, two or three times a day.

---

### CORNUS FLORIDA.

*Common names*—DOGWOOD, BOXTREE, BOXWOOD.

THE common dogwood is a shrub, or small tree, growing from ten to thirty feet high, with few crooked, spreading branches, having a rough blackish colored bark, outside, reddish within, bark of the extreme branches smooth and reddish on the outside, having rings where the old leaves grew. Leaves opposite, pale on the under side. Flowers terminal, large, white, of a peculiar shape, appearing very early, succeeded by oblong berries, ripening in the fall when they become red. Found all over the United States, on dry hills, and in swampy, moist lands.

The dogwood bark is tonic, astringent, antiseptic, and stimulant; that from the root being the strongest. By some it is considered equal to the cinchona bark; and may be used in all cases of fever, particularly intermittent, remittent, and typhus. It may be given by itself in powder, in doses of a tea-spoonful, often repeated, or it may be steeped and drink the tea. The berries may also be tinctured in spirits, and make a very good bitter. The fresh bark ought not to be used, as it is apt to affect the bowels.

---

\* We have recently been informed by Dr. J. L. RIDDELL that the goldthread abounds plentifully near Akron, Ohio

The flowers appear to have the same properties as the bark and berries, and are used by the Indians as well as whites, for fevers and colics.

A decoction of the bark is esteemed a good medicine for the yellow water of horses; and joined with sassafras is employed to clean foul ulcers; would probably be good applied to them in poultice.

### CROCUS OFFICINALIS.

*Common name*—SAFFRON.

SAFFRON is a bulbous rooted perennial plant, very generally cultivated in gardens in Europe, and is likewise found in similar situations in America. Its smell is pleasant and aromatic; the taste, a fine aromatic bitter, giving when chewed, a deep yellow color to the saliva.

Saffron is very fragrant, and is highly esteemed, as it exhilarates the spirits when taken in small portions; but if used in too large doses it produces immoderate mirth, with many of the consequences resulting from the inordinate use of ardent spirits. This article was formerly much used, and considered a good remedy in hysterical affections, and in female obstructions; but at the present time it has fallen very much into disuse, excepting for the complaints of infants, such as the jaundice, redgum, and eruptive diseases in general, &c., for which it is an excellent remedy. We think this article has been unjustly neglected, as there is no doubt it possesses valuable medicinal powers. Joined with nervines and tonics, it is, doubtless, useful in hysterics and hypochondriasis.

### CUNILA MARIANA.

*Common names*—DITTANY, MOUNTAIN DITTANY, STONE-MINT, MOUNTAIN-MINT, SWEET-BASIL, &c.

Root perennial, fibrous, yellow. Stem about a foot high, smooth, yellowish or purplish, slender, hard, brittle, branched; branches opposite or nearly so. Leaves opposite, remote, small, smooth and of a deep green on the upper surface, and bluish-green on the under surface. Flowers numerous, small and handsome, bluish-purple, pink or white, forming terminal clusters or corymbs. Found in all parts of the United States, growing amongst rocks and on dry knobs and hills, unknown in the plains and alluvion soils.

The whole plant has a warm, fragrant, aromatic pungent taste and smell, residing in an essential oil, easily extracted by distillation.



CROCUS SATAVIS, ( Saffron ).







**CYPRIPEDIUM HUMILE, ( Red Lady's-Slipper ).**



(Common form of the butterfly)

Dittany is deemed stimulant, tonic, nervine, and sudorific. The whole plant is used, commonly, in warm infusion; and is a popular remedy in many parts of the country, for colds, headaches, hysterical affections, fevers, and all cases in which it is an object to excite perspiration.

It is also said to be good for the bites of snakes, externally applied; killing rattlesnakes by holding it to the nose with a stick. The Indians, it is likewise said, use it for wounds, and to expel dead children.

---

### CUCURBITA PEPO.

*Common name*—PUMPKIN.

THE common pumpkin needs no description. The seeds are highly recommended, in decoction, as a diuretic. If the oil can be obtained, however, it is better. "I make," says Dr. SMITH, "great use of it. The dose may be from six to twelve drops, three or four times a day, or oftener if required." He also says, "it is, perhaps, without exception, the most certain and efficient diuretic we possess," relieving spasm of the urinary passages, and scalding of the urine.

---

### CYPRIPEDIUM PUBESCENS.

*Common names*—YELLOW LADY'S SLIPPER, MOCCASON-FLOWER, AMERICAN VALERIAN, UMBIL, &c.

Root perennial, of a pale or dark yellowish cast, with many long, round, crooked fibers, growing in a mat. Stems one to five, growing from the same root, rising one or two feet, bearing from three to seven leaves, and from one to three yellow flowers. Leaves alternate, sheathing the stem, with many parallel nerves, giving them an uneven appearance. Found all over the United States; very rare in some places, inhabiting all kinds of soil, but most common in wet lands or swamps.

There are several species as well as varieties of the umbil, some smooth and some hairy; and exhibiting a diversity of color in the blossom. But all very nearly correspond in the shape of the flower, which is of a singular, hollow, bag-like form, open at the top, compared by some to a moccason; and hence, by the Indians, termed moccason flower.

The lady's slipper is one of the most valuable articles of vegetable medicine. Its operation upon the system appears to be in harmony with the laws of animal life, giving tone to the nervous system; and hence is useful in all cases of nervous irritation, hysterical affections, spasms, fits, and all derangements of

the functions of the brain; such as madness, delirium, &c., and in all cases of inability to sleep, particularly in fevers, consumptions, &c.

The roots are the only part used, and ought to be gathered in the spring before the tops begin to grow much, or in the fall after they begin to die. After digging, they must be carefully separated, washed clean, and dried in the sun or in a dry airy room. When fully dry, they should be packed away in barrels, or pulverized and bottled for use. Dose, one tea-spoonful in hot water sweetened, repeated as often as necessary.

---

#### DAUCUS CAROTA.

*Common name*—GARDEN CARROT.

THIS root is in frequent use, and though it will not yield any grained sugar, it affords a great deal of a sweet juice, strongly nutritious. When boiled, it affords a tender, and not very flatulent, food. The roots, when scraped small, and made up into a poultice, take off the disagreeable smell which attends ulcerated cancers. The raw carrot may be scraped or grated, then made into a cataplasm with cold water, and applied to any fetid ulcers; or carrots may be boiled a sufficient time till they become soft enough to mash into pulp. The raw carrots are, however, preferable. Turnips prepared the same way are said to answer a similar purpose. They are both to be applied immediately to the ulcer, without the intervention of any other substance.

---

#### DELPHINIUM CONSOLIDA.

*Common name*—LARKSPUR.

THE larkspur is cultivated in gardens, and is too common to need a description. This article is introduced on account of its being highly recommended as a cure for cholera morbus. The flowers are the only part used. Take as many of these as can be held between the thumb and two fingers, steep in a pint of water until half evaporated; then sweeten, and take a tea-cupful as a dose, at short intervals, until relief is obtained. Said to be a certain and speedy cure.

---

#### DIOSCOREA VILLOSA.

*Common names*—YAM-ROOT, CHINA-ROOT.

THIS plant is a twining and climbing vine, resembling in some respects the morning-glory. The root is of a most singular tortuous form, of a woody consistence, with numerous spiny protu-





*Dioscorea villosa*, (Yam-root).



be-ances. It is perennial, and doubtless endures a greater number of years than the roots of most plants of similar habits. The sprangles are usually near half an inch in thickness, and the whole root in favorable situations is often found to weigh half a pound. The stem is a climbing annual vine, winding around small shrubs, and insinuating itself among brambles, often attaining the height of six or eight feet. Near the ground, the leaves usually appear in verticillate clusters, or whorls, varying in number from two to eight or more in a bunch, dependent on the luxuriance of the soil. Higher up, the leaves are alternate. They are always on pretty long footstalks, and of the form of a heart, with the point acute and turned to one side; commonly roundish as well as cordate and nearly two inches across. Almost always you may count just nine nerves or portions of framework, proceeding from the base towards the apex. The flowers show themselves in May and June; they are very small and white, arranged on little stems which come out just above the leaves. The seeds are triangular some like buckwheat, though four times as large, with wings at the angles. The yam-root grows plentifully in the Western States, delighting in fertile hill-sides, thickets, and open woods.

An infusion of the root is a valuable remedy in bilious colic. An ounce of the powdered root must be boiled in a pint of water, and half of it given at a dose. It acts with remarkable promptitude in affording relief. I have been informed that Dr. MILLER, of Neville, Ohio, values the tincture highly as an expectorant. He says it is also diaphoretic, and in large doses emetic.

For the introduction of the dioscorea into this work, we are indebted to the kindness of our friend, Dr. J. L. RIDDELL.\* He has not informed us upon what principle it is supposed to afford relief in bilious colic, whether as an anodyne, cathartic, or some other. We have no doubt, however, of its value in this complaint, and, at the same time, think it highly probable that further investigation will disclose its usefulness in other diseases.

### DOLICHOS PRURIENS.

*Common names*—COWHAGE, COWITCH.

THE cowhage is an exotic plant, growing in hot climates, especially in the West Indies. It bears a pod about four inches long, round, and about the thickness of one's finger. These pods are thickly beset with stiff hairs, which, when applied to the skin, occasion an intolerable itching. The ripe pods may be

---

\* To the same gentleman our acknowledgments are also due for the introduction of the *Cassia chimæcrista*.

dipped into melasses, which, with the hairs, are then scraped off with a knife. This process is repeated with fresh pods until the melasses becomes about as thick as honey with the hairs, when it is fit for use. Or the hairs may be first scraped from the pods, and then mixed with the melasses, to the proper consistence.

This medicine is a valuable vermifuge, acting mechanically; the sharp hairs penetrating and destroying the worms, without occasioning any inconvenience to the patient; the stomach and intestines being defended from injury by the mucus which lines the alimentary tube. From a tea-spoonful to a table-spoonful of the melasses may be taken as a dose, according to age, once or twice a day, for a day or two, and the worms carried off by a mild purge; the stools, in some instances, consisting almost entirely of these vermin.

A decoction of the roots of cowhage is said to be a powerful diuretic; and an infusion of the pods, twelve to a quart, is accounted a certain remedy for the dropsy.

---

#### EPIPHEGUS VIRGINIANUS.

*Common names*—BEECH DROPS, CANCER-ROOT.

THIS is altogether a singular plant, chiefly found growing upon the roots of the beech tree. The root is bulbous, yellowish, covered at the bottom or lower end with a mat of short, crooked fibers. Stem from eight to fifteen inches high, much branched, beset with scattered short scales instead of leaves, of which the plant is quite destitute. Flowers remote, but numerous, situated just above the scales, all along the branches. The plant is usually of a yellowish-white color, intermixed with reddish or dark purple, white and yellow stripes. Found in all parts of the United States.

The beech drops are astringent, bitterish and nauseous; useful as a remedy for sore mouth, dysentery, and no doubt might be advantageously employed in other cases requiring astringent medicines; and are actually said to have been of great service applied to obstinate ulcers. They are also supposed to have been used in cancerous affections with a happy effect, and even to have performed cures of that dreadful scourge of the human race. For ulcerous and cancerous affections, the beech drops may be pulverized, both roots and tops, and the powder sprinkled on the ulcer, or a tea may be made and used as a wash. The internal use, at the same time might also be advantageous



## ERIGERON PHILADELPHICUM.

*Common names* — COCASH, FROSTWEED, SCABIOUS, SKEVISH, SKABISH, SQUAW-WEED, FIELD-WEED.

Roots perennial, yellowish, formed by many branching fibers. The whole plant is pubescent or hairy, growing to the height of two or three feet; stems from one to five, straight, branching near the top, terminating in numerous downy flowers, of a yellowish and white, or purplish and blue appearance. Leaves oblong, lower ones the largest, very small at the top. It continues in bloom until the autumnal frosts, which has given rise to one of its names, frostweed. Found all over the United States, growing in fields, which it often overruns; seldom seen in woods or mountains.

There are also two other species of this plant, *Erigeron canadense* and *Erigeron heterophyllum*, which are valuable articles of medicine, and may be used indiscriminately with the *Erigeron philadelphicum*. They are tonic, diuretic, sudorific, and astringent in a powerful degree. Their oil, says RAFINESQUE, is so powerful that two or three drops dissolved in alcohol, have arrested suddenly uterine hemorrhagy, in the hands of Dr. HALES, who employs the oil of the *Erigeron canadense*.

The last named species is very common in all parts of the country, abounding mostly in cultivated fields, particularly fallow grounds and stubble fields, growing from three to six feet high, branched near the top, the stem thickly set with long narrow leaves which give the plant a somewhat ragged appearance. This species is known by the common names of *marestail* and *fleabane*. The other two species are often found growing together, and are used indiscriminately under the common names given at the head of this article. Found in open woods and along the banks of streams.

The diseases already relieved or cured by these plants, continues RAFINESQUE, are chronic diarrhœa, dropsy, suppression of the urine, inflammation of the kidneys, gravel, gout, suppressed menstruation, cough, cutaneous eruptions, hemorrhagies, dimness of sight, rash, cold hands and feet, &c. Enough, one might well think, to be cured by three simple plants, all possessing the same virtues. They certainly contain active properties, as all who have used them can testify, and we sometimes fear that they are too powerful to be used without the utmost discretion. They certainly deserve a careful investigation, and if found too powerful for using without hazard, should be expunged from practice; but if not, they ought to be retained.

The whole plants are used fresh or dry, in infusion, decoction, or tincture. The extract is rather fetid, but more astringent than

the infusion or tincture, and less so than the oil, which is one of the most efficient styptics.

The extract and syrup have been given with success in dry cough, bleeding at the lungs, and other internal hemorrhages. The dose of the extract is from five to ten grains, (about a quarter to half a tea-spoonful,) often repeated.

As a diuretic, the infusion, decoction, or tincture, are preferable as being more active; some of these preparations have increased the daily evacuations of urine from twenty-four to sixty-seven ounces. A pint or two of the infusion or decoction may be administered daily, and agrees well with the stomach. From two to four drachms of the tincture may be taken during the day; and is made by digesting one ounce of the leaves or flowers in a pint of proof spirits.

Some preparation or other of those plants is said to afford speedy relief in all diseases of the bladder and kidneys attended with pain and irritation. They are also useful, applied externally, to wounds, and a poultice is said to dissolve hard tumors. The essence, made by saturating alcohol with the oil, and a little taken in water, at the same time applying, if practicable, some of it externally, will instantaneously stop the most dangerous hemorrhage.

We are unwilling to leave this subject without advising those who may make use of these articles to do it cautiously, as our own experience would not justify recommending an indiscriminate application of them without some care and attention. It might, perhaps, be best to combine them with less active astringents.

---

#### ERYNGIUM AQUATICUM.

*Common names*—CORN SNAKEROOT, BUTTON SNAKEROOT, RATTLESNAKE'S MASTER.

Root perennial, somewhat bulbous, about one inch long, the lower end decayed or rotten, giving off many fibers. Stem round, about two feet high, somewhat branching, bearing on its top large balls covered with a white bloom. Leaves scattered, long, resembling young corn leaves, having spines or prickles along their edges, and one at the extreme point. The root is extremely pungent to the taste, possessing powerful and valuable properties. Found in the prairies of the Western States.

The corn snakeroot is a powerful diuretic, stimulant, expectorant, and antidote to the poison of snakes, and other poisonous bites or stings. The root, says PETER SMITH, needs only be chewed (or bruised) and laid on the wound, and a little of it swallowed; which, if done when the bite is first inflicted, pre-



**ERYTHRONIUM AMERICANUM, ( Adder-tongue ).**



*Plant of the same species as the one in the preceding plate.*



vents the place bitten from swelling. It is generally, continues he, first or last applied, a speedy cure.

When this root is employed for dropsy or gravel, it should be given in a weak tea and continued but a short time, and then followed by tonics, such as agrimony tea, columbo root, or bitters.

---

### ERYTHRONIUM AMERICANUM.

*Common names*—ADDERTONGUE, DOGTUOTH VIOLET, SNAKE-LEAF, RATTLESNAKE VIOLET, YELLOW SNOWDROP, &c.

Root perennial, bulbous, very deep in the ground, covered outside with a brown loose tunic, white inside, with fibers issuing from the base or bottom of the bulb. Leaves appear to be radical because near the ground, smooth and shining, one the first year, two afterwards, long, narrow, broadest at the outer end, spotted green and purple, giving them a somewhat singular appearance. Flower yellow, nodding, supported by a smooth shining stem, at some distance above the leaves; appear very early in the spring. Found in the Northern and Middle States.

With regard to the virtues of this singular though common plant, we extract the following from SMITH's "Botanic Physician:"—

"The bulb of the root and leaves are emetic, emollient, suppurative, and anti-scorfulous when fresh, nutritive when dry. The dose to vomit is twenty-five grains of the fresh root, or forty of the recent dried root. But its greatest value consists in its being a remedy for the scrofula. This property which it possesses was but lately discovered, but experience has established it in many instances. The fresh roots and leaves are stewed in milk, and applied to the scrofulous sores as a poultice, healing them speedily; or the fresh bruised leaves may be laid on, renewing them often. The infusion is to be drank at the same time."

---

### EUGENIA CARYOPHYLLATA.

*Common name*—CLOVE TREE.

THIS is a beautiful tall tree, a native of the Molucca Islands. Cloves are the unexpanded flowers, picked from the tree and dried. They have a strong aromatic flavor, and pungent taste.

Cloves are stimulant and sudorific; but in general only used in combination with other articles, such as the diaphoretic powders and bitters. The oil of cloves is used as a cure for toothache; a little of which may be put on some lint and introduced into the hollow of the tooth.

## EUONYMUS ATROPURPUREUS.

*Common names*—BITTER-ASH, SPINDLE TREE, INDIAN-ARROW, BURNING BUSH.

THE bitter-ash was introduced into the two first editions of this work under a wrong name and partially a wrong description, as well as having some properties attributed to it which it does not possess. It will be found in the two first editions under the head of *Cornus Hercules*.

The bitter-ash is a shrub, or large bush, growing from eight to fifteen feet high, bark smooth, dark gray, interspersed with large white irregular shaped spots, which disappear towards the termination of the branches; considerably branched, branches shooting up at very acute angles, often three together in the specimen which we examined; the extreme portions of the branches constituting the growth of the preceding year, are of a dark green color with many dark spots, whilst those portions which appear to have been produced two years preceding, are less green, with stripes or lines of white; at least such was the case with the garden specimen from which this description was drawn. Leaves petiolate, opposite on the young branches, alternate on the old, oblong ovate, acuminate, serrate, deep green on the upper, and light on the under side. Flowers a kind of *cyme* or a cluster, often axillary to the leaves, very small, dark reddish-brown inside, inclining to green outside, producing an angular shaped, rough involucre or husk, which opens in the fall, exhibiting the beautifully bright fiery red fruit, or berries, in strong contrast with decaying nature, which has procured for it the name of *burning bush*.

The bark of the root is the part employed as medicine, and should be gathered at the time that it will peel off easily, when it should be beaten with a hammer or mallet, carefully dried and preserved for use. The bark when dry is of a light brown color outside, white within, rough and much wrinkled, resembling in its appearance the dried root of spignet.

The bitter-ash is an excellent laxative, bitter tonic, useful in all cases of debility; particularly valuable as a tonic after intermittent fever or fever and ague. It may be used alone or combined with balmony or any other tonic. Dose from half to a whole tea-spoonful three or four times a day.

## EUPATORIUM AGERATOIDES.

*Common names*—POOLROOT, WHITE SNAKEROOT.

Roots small, fibrous, of a dirty white, from two to four inches long. Stem from two to three feet high, somewhat angular and

furrowed, branched, branches axillary to the leaves, lower ones shortest, gradually becoming longer as they approach the top where they extend themselves so as to form a somewhat spreading head, producing clusters of white flowers, and overspreading the face of the country along roads and in open situations frequently to a great extent. Found in all parts of the country; most plentifully in the West. Leaves opposite, the pairs crossing each other, supported on long foot-stalks, very broad at the base, the extreme point very acute, edges jagged with very large obtuse teeth.

The root of this plant is the part used as medicine. It appears to be a warm stimulating tonic; producing in the mouth, when chewed, a warm aromatic pungent sensation. Its usefulness, in gravel we learned from IRA FINCH, Esq. but the first knowledge which we obtained of its medicinal virtues was derived from the Indians, who use it as a cure for the ague. It no doubt possesses active properties worthy of further investigation.

---

#### EUPATORIUM PERFOLIATUM.

*Common names*—BONESET, THOROUGHWORT, JOEPLYE, FEVER WORT, THOROUGHSTEM, CROSSWORT, SWEATING PLANT, INDIAN SAGE, &c.

Root perennial, horizontal, crooked, with few fibers, sending up many stems, which are upright, branched toward the top; from two to five feet high, hairy, pale or grayish-green color. Leaves opposite, and so formed as to give the stem the appearance of penetrating them through the center, where they are the broadest, and gradually tapering to a point, rough and woolly. Flowers in dense terminal corymbs, of a dull, or dirty white color. Found in swamps, marshes, and wet meadows, throughout the United States.

Boneset is sudorific, tonic, antiseptic, cathartic, emetic, diuretic, stimulant, &c. It is an intense bitter tonic, possessing very active powers. In large doses, the warm decoction proves emetic, and a cold infusion acts as a powerful tonic. It is also said to act with much effect upon the skin, removing obstinate cutaneous diseases. Large doses of the cold infusion often operate as a cathartic.

It is likewise said to be an antidote to the bite of snakes; and an excellent remedy for bilious colic attended with obstinate constipation of the bowels. For this purpose, a tea-cupful of the cold infusion must be given every half hour until it produces a cathartic effect.

The warm infusion acts as a sudorific, producing copious

perspiration. It is also an excellent article for coughs; and is likewise used in hysterical complaints. In dropsical complaints it is employed as a diuretic. The leaves are the part of the plant which is used for medicinal purposes, of which the extract and syrup contain all the medicinal properties, and are least disagreeable to the taste.

---

### EUPATORIUM PURPURIMUM.

*Common names*—QUEEN OF THE MEADOW, BONESET, GRAVEL-ROOT.

Root perennial, long, fibrous, white or brownish colored. Stems many, three to six feet high, round, smooth, of a purple color around each joint, bearing many corymbose, terminal, purple or pale reddish blossoms. Leaves in whorls, from three to five at a joint, broad, lanceolate, rough or wrinkled, and jagged. Grows commonly in wetish ground, or near streams, though sometimes on high dry land.

The root of this plant is stimulant, bitter, astringent, and powerfully diuretic, useful in all diseases of the urinary organs, dropsy, rheumatism, gout, and female weakness and obstructions. It is thought by some to be a solvent of the stone, and esteemed an unfailing remedy in gravelly complaints. Whether this be true or not, there is no doubt it is a very valuable article of medicine for diseases of this character, as well as for the peculiar weakness of females. Used in strong decoction freely.

---

### EUPATORIUM TEUCRIFOLIUM.

*Common name*—WILD HOARHOUND.

This is an annual plant, growing from one to two feet high, found in all parts of the country, particularly at the south, where it grows in great abundance, and has obtained a high reputation as a domestic remedy in the prevailing fevers of that climate.

The wild hoarhound was first noticed in THACHER's materia medica, to which, and to verbal information and personal observation, we are indebted for its introduction into this work. It is a valuable tonic; much used by the planters along the seaboard of the Southern States, and considered preferable to the Peruvian bark for the cure of fevers. It is also said, by Dr. JONES, to be diaphoretic, diuretic, and mildly cathartic. Usually administered in the form of infusion; one ounce of the dried leaves infused in a quart of water may be taken daily in doses of half a tea-cupful, more or less every hour or two.





EUPATORIUM PURPUREUM, (Queen of the Meadow).





*FRASERA CAROLINENSIS*, ( American Columbo ).





There is no doubt that it might be advantageously combined with other tonics.

---

### FERULA ASAFÆTIDA.

*Common name*—ASAFETIDA PLANT.

THE drug known by the name of asafetida is the resinous gum of a perennial plant, growing in the mountains of Persia. The gum is obtained from the roots of plants which are at least four years old. The roots are cut off and the juice suffered to exude, which is afterwards dried in the sun.

This article has a strong fetid smell, and a bitter, acrid, biting taste. It loses some of its smell and strength by age, a circumstance which ought to be particularly regarded in its administration. That which is accounted best is of a clear or pale reddish color, and variegated with a great number of elegant white tears.

Asafetida is a highly valuable remedy; acting as a stimulant, anti-spasmodic, expectorant, emmenagogue, and anthelmintic. Its action upon the system is quick and penetrating, affording great and speedy relief in spasmodic, flatulent, hysteric, and hypochondriacal complaints, especially when they arise from obstruction of the bowels. When spasms and constipations have weakened the power of life, and the functions are performed in a languid manner, the asafetida generally affords effectual relief; as it promotes digestion, enlivens the spirits, and increases the peristaltic motion, which makes it a valuable remedy for persons in advanced age.

It has been used as an anti-spasmodic and expectorant in asthma and whooping cough. As an anthelmintic it has often expelled worms; and may be administered for this, as well as for other purposes, either by the mouth or by injection. It may be given in the form of pills, tincture, or dissolved in simple water. One pill of a size convenient to swallow may be taken as a dose, in ordinary cases, and repeated as circumstances may appear to require; or from ten to fifty drops may be taken of the tincture, made by dissolving one ounce of asafetida in ten ounces (one and one fourth pint) of alcohol, digest seven days and filter.

---

### FRASERA CAROLINIENSES.

*Common names*—COLUMBO ROOT, INDIAN LETTUCE, MEADOW PRIDE, PYRAMID, YELLOW GENTIAN, &c.

THE root of this plant is triennial, that is, lasting three years, yellow, rough, horizontal, spindle shaped, growing sometimes

to the length of two feet, with but few fibers. Stem from five to ten feet high, erect, smooth, with but few branches, excepting near the top, where they form a handsome pyramid giving rise to numerous yellowish-white flowers. Leaves partly radical, forming a star, spreading on the ground; the residue of them in whorls around the stem, four to eight in a whorl, smaller than the radical or lower leaves. Found in the southern, western, and southwestern States; rare in many places, and in others extremely abundant.

The columbo root is both emetic and cathartic when fresh. When dry, an excellent bitter tonic and antiseptic. Used in fevers, colics, nausea, indigestion, debility, diarrhœa, &c.—Cures gangrene or mortification, by external and internal application. As a laxative it is substituted to rhubarb, particularly for children, and to remove the costive habits of pregnancy. A tea-spoonful of the powder in hot water will relieve the oppression of an over loaded stomach, so common with dyspeptic and other weak patients. Taken with cold water, it is said, adds to its efficiency, and prevents nausea and vomiting. It may be used alone, or combined with other tonics, and employed in all cases requiring this class of medicines. The root should be collected in the fall of the second year, or spring of the third year, of its growth.

### GALIUM APARINE.

*Common names*—CLIVERS, CLEAVERS, GOOSEGRASS.

THIS plant grows to the height of two or three feet; stem square, slender, weak, having many joints, branched; rough or sharp with teeth or prickles; from each joint grow eight small pointed leaves; flowers small and white. Grows in woods and fence corners.

This plant made into a strong infusion in *cold* water, and drank freely, is good for gravelly complaints, and all obstructions of the urine. "Cleavers," says Dr. SMITH, "is one of the most valuable diuretics that our country produces. I have found it an excellent and speedy medicine in all suppressions of the urine and gravelly complaints, and is a powerful discutient." There are in this country many other species of Galium which possess similar virtues.

### GAMBOGIA.

*Common name*—GAMBOGE.

THIS article is a concrete vegetable juice, of a gummy, resinous nature, the production of an East Indian plant. The best



*GALIUM APERINE* [ *ASPERULA* ], ( Clevers ).





sort is of a deep yellow color, without smell, and having but very little taste.

Gamboge is one of the most active cathartics, and also operates as an emetic. Its great activity and drastic nature render it an improper purgative administered alone; but it may be advantageously combined with other more mild substances, to give them activity. For this purpose it enters into BUNNELL's pills, and many other cathartic compounds.

---

#### GEUM VIRGINIANUM.

*Common names*—EVANROOT, CHOCOLATEROOT, THROATROOT, CUREALL.

THE root is perennial, small, brown, horizontal, and crooked. Stem round, hairy, erect, growing about two feet high, surmounted by a few terminal, white flowers. Found in most of the eastern, middle, and western States.

The root of this plant is an astringent tonic; very useful in dyspepsy, and in bleeding at the lungs, consumption, diarrhœa, dysentery, colic, sore throat, &c. Said by Dr. JONES, to restore to health the most feeble and shattered constitutions. The root is used boiled in milk, or in water, sweetened, and makes a palatable drink, or in powder. The dose is a pint of the decoction, daily, or two or three tea-spoonfuls of the powder mixed with honey or melasses. There are several species of this plant, all of which are available as medicines.

---

#### DOG GLYCYRRHIZA GLABRA. WHOG

*Common names*—LIQUORICE, SWEET LIQUORICE.

THIS is a perennial plant, native of Europe. The root is the part used as medicine, and is of a sweet, agreeable taste. The sweetness is extracted by water, which, by evaporation, forms a dark colored extract called liquorice ball, possessing the virtues of the root.

Liquorice root, or its extract, is a useful article in coughs, hoarseness, and asthma, affording relief by lubricating the throat and loosening tough phlegm. It may also be combined with other articles, either to increase their usefulness, or modify their taste.

The *G. Lepidota*, of Missouri, and perhaps other Western States, would probably be a useful substitute for the European species.

## HAMAMELIS VIRGINICA.

*Common names*—WITCH HAZEL, SPOTTED ALDER, WINTER-BLOOM, SNAPPING HAZELNUT, &c.

WITCH hazel is a shrub, growing from ten to twenty feet high, branches irregular, crooked, and knotty; bark smooth, gray, with brown spots. Leaves rather large, smooth, alternate, oval or roundish. Flowers appear in the fall or winter, generally after the leaves have fallen off, the fruit ripening the next autumn. Found in most of the States; growing on hills, mountains, stony banks, and near streams.

The bark and leaves are slightly bitter, and very astringent. The leaves are a most valuable article of medicine, as an astringent tonic and styptic. They may be employed in tea for bowel complaints, bleeding at the stomach, lungs, and all other internal hemorrhages; and in snuff for bleeding at the nose; and no doubt might be advantageously applied to wounds to stop the effusion of blood. As a styptic to check internal bleeding, the witch hazel, perhaps, is amongst the best articles known.

The Indians, it is said, consider the witch hazel a valuable article of medicine, applying the bark in poultice or wash to painful tumors, and external inflammations. A poultice of the bark is said to be efficacious in removing painful inflammations of the eyes.

## HEDEOMA PULEGIOIDES.

*Common names*—PENNYROYAL, SQUAW MINT, TICKWEED, &c.

THIS plant is too common to need any description, abounding in all parts of the country. It is a warming stimulant, and diaphoretic, much used to promote perspiration, and to facilitate vomiting. The juice with sugar is said to be useful in whooping cough. A strong decoction of the leaves and stalks of pennyroyal is in high repute with some as a remedy in female obstructions. It may be used either in decoction, tincture, or essence.

## HELIANTHUS OCCIDENTALIS.

*Common name*—INDIAN FEVER-ROOT.

THIS plant has not heretofore been introduced into any medical work, nor does it appear to have been described by EATON, or any other botanist. It unquestionably belongs to the *Helianthus* genus; and as it seems to be an exclusively Western species, we have, at the suggestion of Dr. J. L. RIDDELL, adopt-



CASSIA MARYLANDICA, ( American Senna ).







MYRICA CERIFERA, ( Bayberry ).



ed as the specific name, *occidentalis*, as descriptive of its location, or rather of the region wherein it was first discovered.

This plant has a perennial horizontal root, throwing off many fibers, dark colored, strong rich taste, sending up several stems, which are round, faintly striped, covered with short, almost imperceptible hair or down, from two and a half to three feet high. Leaves scattered, supported by long foot-stalks which sheath the stem, and like it are covered with down, which, towards fall, becomes stiff and rough. Flower heads yellow, large, one to two inches in diameter.

A strong decoction of the root of this plant, drank freely, will operate as an emetic, and by continuing its use more moderately, relaxes the bowels, promotes perspiration, and effectually cures fevers. This article is also one of the sweating plants used by the Indians, and there is no doubt that its usefulness in fevers is partly owing to its diaphoretic property. It promises to become a valuable article of medicine.

---

#### HELONIAS DIOICA.

*Common names*—UNICORN, STAR-ROOT, BLAZING STAR.

Root perennial, rather smaller than the little finger, irregular, from one to two inches long, of a dirty dark color, very hard, full of little pits, rough and wrinkled, having numerous small, darkish colored, fibrous roots, which when deprived of their outside bark somewhat resemble hogs' bristles; end of the caudex or main root often dead or rotten. Leaves radical, pale, smooth, ever-green, lanceolate, and in the winter lying flat on the ground in rays, resembling a star, whence some of its names. Stem from eight to eighteen inches high; upright, naked, terminating in a spike or tassel of white dioecious flowers, that is, bearing male and female flowers on different plants. Found in thin soils.

The root is the part principally used, and is highly celebrated as a tonic and general strengthener of the system. Dr. ROGERS says it relieves colic, stranguary, rheumatism, and jaundice. It also has a powerful tendency to prevent abortion, and those who are liable to accidents of this kind, ought to make frequent use of it. Half a tea-spoonful of the powdered root may be taken three times a day, in a gill of warm water; or, for ordinary use, a portion of it may be added to the bitter tonic. By some it is highly valued in suppressed menstruation.

The Unicorn is also an excellent remedy for coughs, consumptions, and all complaints of the lungs, promoting expectoration and insensible perspiration. The constant use of it, however, sometimes makes the mouth sore, when it must be laid

ry, and some other expectorant used until the mouth gets well, and then it may be resumed again.

---

### HUMULIS LUPULIS.

*Common names*—HOPS, HOP-VINE.

THIS common plant needs no description. It is a very strong bitter, accompanied with a small degree of aromatic flavor, and astringency. It also possesses some narcotic power, as its administration is often followed by sleep; reducing the pulse sometimes from ninety-six to sixty. The narcotic effects of hops are different, however, from those of opium, not being followed by that debility and languor which always succeed the use of that article.

The hop is also an excellent stomachic bitter, very useful in dyspepsy and other affections of the digestive organs. It has also been highly extolled as a remedy in inflammations of the kidneys, and gravelly complaints. A strong infusion of hops, it is said, proves a certain solvent of the stone out of the body, and hence has been inferred its usefulness in gravel and stone. It has been asserted by high authority, that it seldom fails to alleviate the pain, and increase the secretion of urine, when taken internally.

If, as has been stated, an infusion of the hop will dissolve the stone out of the body, we think it might be usefully employed by injecting it into the bladder. For this purpose, we would suggest the following plan:—A catheter may be introduced into the bladder and the urine suffered to pass off; then with a syringe whose pipe is fitted to the tube of the catheter, inject enough water about blood-warm to wash out the bladder; this must then be suffered to pass off by the catheter, and the hop infusion, also about blood-warm, injected and retained for half an hour, or as long as the patient can conveniently endure it, when it should be suffered to pass off through the catheter; and if the infusion of the hop have produced much irritation, another washing with warm water might be advisable, to which, perhaps, the addition of a little sweet milk, or of flax-seed, or slippery elm tea, might be useful.

We think also this course would be advantageous in using the injections recommended in our treatment of the gravel; but as it had not at that time occurred to us, we trust that the acknowledgment of it will be a sufficient apology for introducing it here. We are also aware that many obstacles to the successful treatment of gravel by injection will present themselves; yet, when we consider the hopelessness of effecting a cure by any other means than the dreadful operation of cutting out the stone, we



HYDRASTIS CANADENSIS, ( Golden Seal ).





ought cheerfully to give every thing a serious consideration that holds out even a faint prospect of relief by milder means.

The medicinal properties of the hop appear to be concentrated in a yellow powder which may be obtained by beating and sifting the hops before using them for other purposes. This substance, denominated lupuline, forms an important ingredient in Dr. J. T. WELLS' ague pills.

Hops are also a very valuable external application for pains, especially of the spasmodic kind. For this purpose they may be put into a small bag, thoroughly moistened with hot vinegar, and applied to the painful part. A poultice or ointment prepared from hops, has likewise been employed as an anodyne application to cancers and other painful ulcers.

The hop is one of those medicines, the habitual use of which soon renders it inert upon the system; we must therefore begin with a small dose, and gradually increase it. One grain of the lupuline, four of the extract, a tea-spoonful of the tincture, or two ounces of the infusion, are considered sufficient to commence with. An over-dose is said to produce sore throat, nausea, purging, tremor, headache, &c.

---

#### HYDRASTIS CANADENSIS.

*Common names*—GOLDEN SEAL, YELLOW PUCCOON, YELLOW ROOT, GROUND RASPBERRY, INDIAN PAINT, &c.

Root perennial, crooked, wrinkled, rough, and knobby, of a bright yellow color, with many long fibers. Stem round, simple, straight, growing from eight to fourteen inches high, bearing commonly two rough leaves at the top somewhat resembling the leaves of the sugar maple, in the center of one of which appears the flower, which gives rise to a fleshy, red, many-seeded berry. Found mostly in the Western States.

The golden seal is a powerful and valuable bitter tonic; highly useful in all cases of debility and loss of appetite. It may be used alone or combined with other tonics. Very useful during recovery from fevers, for dyspepsy, or any other complaint, to remove the heavy, disagreeable sensation often produced by indigestible food, by taking a tea-spoonful in hot water sweetened. It is also employed by Dr. J. T. WELLS as a remedy for inflammations, for which purpose he considers it highly valuable. Used both externally and internally, in powder or decoction.

A decoction of the golden seal is also a very valuable remedy as a wash for sore eyes. It is likewise highly probable that it may be found useful as an external application to ulcers, as RAFINESQUE says, the Indians use it for sore legs, and many external complaints, as a topical tonic.

## ICTODES FŒTIDA.

*Common names*—SKUNK CABBAGE, SKUNKWEED, &c.

THIS common and well known plant takes its name from its smell, which greatly resembles the peculiar odor of the skunk. Grows in wettish lands, having a great many fibrous roots, running deeply into the earth; sending up numerous large, bright, green leaves, but without any stem or stalk.

The roots and seeds of the skunk cabbage are expectorant, anti-spasmodic, and anti-hysteric.

As an expectorant, they are useful in asthma, cough, consumption, and all affections of the lungs that need medicines of this kind. As an anti-spasmodic, they are used in hysterics, whooping cough, convulsions of lying-in-women, and in all spasmodic affections, and are said to be not inferior in efficacy to the best remedies of that class. As an anti-spasmodic, the pulverized root of skunk cabbage may be administered in half or whole teaspoonful doses, repeated according to circumstances; and as an expectorant, it may be given in similar doses once or twice a day, or combined with other expectorants. It may also be employed in syrup, for complaints of the lungs. An over-dose produces vomiting, headache, vertigo, and temporary blindness. It loses its strength by long keeping.

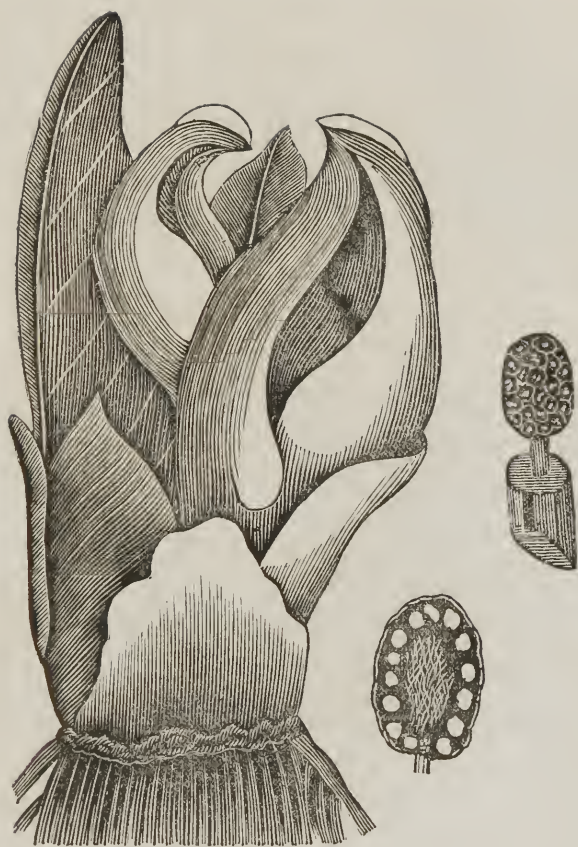
---

## IMPATIENS PALLIDA.

*Common names*—CELANDINE, TOUCH-ME-NOT.

THIS is an annual plant growing in wet lands, rising to the height of from two to four feet in rich soils, branched, with large joints at the origin of the branches, of a tender, watery, transparent appearance. Leaves alternate, ovate, pointed at each end, shallow scollops and little rounded projections along the margin. Flowers yellow, spotted with orange, hood-shaped, succeeded by pods, which, when fully ripe, burst suddenly, or if touched about this time will instantly fly to pieces and scatter the seed; hence called *touch-me-not*.

This common herb is highly esteemed by some as a remedy for jaundice, taken in tea either alone or combined with soot from the chimney. It is also esteemed a good diuretic, useful in dropsy; and its juice is found beneficial for removing warts and ring-worms, salt-rheum, or tetter, and for cleansing foul ulcers. It may also be used for the same purposes in decoction, or it may be applied to ring-worms, &c., in poultice boiled in milk.



ICTODES FÆTIDA, ( Swamp-Cabbage ).





## INULA HELENIUM.

*Common name*—ELECAMPANE.

A VERY common plant, growing about houses, along roads, and in cultivated grounds, producing large leaves, and large yellow flowers.

The root of the elecampane has long been celebrated as a valuable remedy for various complaints, particularly all diseases of the lungs, such as coughs, consumptions, and asthmas. It likewise promotes urine and insensible perspiration, gently loosens the bowels, and possesses the general properties of a strengthening restorative medicine. It is also said to be good for worms. It may be used in the form of a tea, electuary, or syrup, or the roots may be candied in syrup or melasses.

## JEFFERSONIA DIPHYLLA.

*Common name*—TWIN-LEAF.

Root perennial, small, fibrous, very numerous. Leaves many, growing on long petioles or footstalks, divided into two equal parts. Scape or flower stem producing one single white flower. Abundant in Ohio.

This root needs further investigation; but so far as known it is a good external application to sore eyes, ulcers, &c. It is said the Indians use this plant as a diuretic in dropsy; and there is no doubt, from the sensible qualities of the article, that it may become a valuable internal remedy in various diseases, as a tonic.

Since the publication of the second edition of this work, the tonic properties ascribed to this plant have been partially confirmed, and others ascertained of which, previously, we had no knowledge. It is said, on the authority of Dr. I. D. JONES, of Worthington College, O., to be stimulant, diaphoretic, anti-rheumatic, and anti-spasmodic. Especially useful in chronic rheumatism. [*Flora of the Western States.*] Its stimulant and anti-rheumatic qualities are also confirmed by other respectable authority, from which source we have also obtained the following methods of preparing and using it. For making the tincture, infuse two ounces of the dried root in a quart of spirits; of which a dose is one large table-spoonful three times a day. For a decoction, steep one ounce of the roots in a quart of boiling water; of which a dose is about the third of a tea-cupful three times a day. Either preparation may be taken more frequently if deemed necessary.

## JUGLANS CINERIA.

*Common names*—BUTTERNUT, WHITE WALNUT.

THIS tree is too well known to need any description, being found in rich, moist, or rocky soils, near streams, in almost all parts of the country.

The inner bark of the butternut tree, and especially of the root, is a mild and efficacious purge, leaving the bowels in a better condition perhaps than almost any other in use. In diarrhœa, dysentery, and worms, it is the best cathartic which we have ever employed. The bruised bark applied to the skin will produce a blister.

It may be prepared in extract, pills, syrup, or cordial. For preparing the cordial, take any quantity of the fresh bark, split it into slips, of half an inch wide, beat with a hammer so as to reduce it to a soft stringy state; then put it into an earthen vessel, packing it close, and pour on it of boiling water sufficient to cover the bruised bark; set the vessel on coals near the fire, having it closely covered, and allow it to stand and simmer for one or two hours. Then strain off the liquor, and add sugar or melasses sufficient to make a syrup, when it may be bottled and from one quarter to one half the quantity of proof spirits added to preserve it. Dose for a child, from half to two great spoonfuls, repeated at intervals of half or a whole hour, until it operates. For grown persons, the dose must be much larger. This preparation is mild but highly efficacious for the bowel complaints of children or adults, and will cure without giving enough to operate as physic: but for dysentery and worms enough should be administered to operate freely on the bowels. It may be given in all ordinary diseases of children with the happiest effect, being a most valuable family medicine.

The syrup is made in a similar manner, only it is boiled down so as to make it much stronger, and more actively purgative.

---

JUNIPERUS COMMUNIS.

*Common name*—JUNIPER SHRUB OR BUSH.

THIS is an ever-green, growing on dry, barren commons, and hilly grounds, in many parts of the United States, and in Europe. It is somewhat remarkable that no grass or herbage will grow beneath this shrub.

Wherever the juniper gets a hold in the earth it throws out roots from its branches, giving rise to new shrubs, and spreads in all directions, forming beds many rods in circumference. BIGELOW says it seldom rises more than two or three feet from

the ground. The tips of the branches are smooth and angular; leaves growing in threes, slender and pointed. Berries fleshy, roundish, oblong, of a dark purplish color, and are the part principally used in medicine.

When these berries are of a good quality they yield, by distillation, a large quantity of pungent, volatile oil, of a peculiar flavor, being the same that it imparts to gin, and which gives this liquor its diuretic qualities. The berries of juniper, or the essence made from the oil, is a valuable diuretic, useful in all dropsical complaints. The berries in a moderately strong infusion, with the addition of a little gin, are frequently used in dropsy.

---

#### LAURUS BENZOIN.

*Common names*—SPICEWOOD, SPICEBUSH, FEVERBUSH, &c.

A DESCRIPTION of this spicy, aromatic bush, is deemed quite unnecessary. A tea made from the twigs is esteemed a good drink in intermittent fevers, having a tendency to relax the solids, attenuate the fluids, and promote perspiration. It is also considered an efficacious remedy for worms, and is often given to children for this purpose. The berries boiled in milk have been found a salutary medicine in dysentery; and no doubt may prove valuable in all complaints of the bowels. The oil from the berries is a fine stimulant, used, says RAFINESQUE, for bruises, colics, itch, and rheumatism; and we think might become an article of trade in this country where the berries abound in such profusion.

---

#### LAURUS CAMPHORA.

*Common name*—CAMPHIRE TREE.

THE camphor laurel grows in great abundance, and to a considerable size, in the forests of Japan; and is not uncommon in green-houses in England.

Camphor exists in distinct grains in the wood of the root, body, and branches of the camphor tree, and is extracted by the process of sublimation; which is conducted in the same manner as distillation, only that in sublimation, heat is applied to dry solid substances, whilst in distillation it is applied to fluids. Camphor, however, is a proximate principle of vegetable matter, and exists in many other plants besides the camphor tree, especially those of an aromatic quality.

When the camphor is brought to Europe, it undergoes a second sublimation, with the addition of one twentieth of its weight of lime, by which it is rendered more pure.

Great use is made of camphor externally, in the form of liniment, to disperse swellings, tumors, and pains, and to relieve bruises, sprains, &c. It is one of the ingredients in opodeldoc.

Camphor dissolved in spirits is an almost universal family medicine, used as a stimulant and anodyne, in fainting, headache, colic, &c.

---

### LAURUS CINNAMOMUM.

*Common name*—CINNAMON TREE.

THE cinnamon tree is a native of Ceylon, in the East Indies, but is now cultivated in Jamaica, and other West India islands. Grows from four to ten feet high, very bushy; leaves resemble the laurel, and have the hot taste and smell of cloves when chewed. Cinnamon of the shops, is the inner bark of the tree.

This bark is a useful and elegant aromatic, very grateful to the taste and to the stomach. It is stimulating, tonic, carminative, and stomachic. Useful combined with bitters, diaphoretic powders, &c. The oil of cinnamon is a powerful stimulant, a little of which may be put on lint, and applied to hollow teeth, to cure the toothache.

---

### LAURUS SASSAFRAS.

*Common names*—SASSAFRAS, SAXAFRAX.

THE sassafras tree has been long regarded as a valuable medicinal article. The bark has a fragrant smell and very agreeable spicy taste. The flavor of the root is most powerful; that of the branches most pleasant. The flavor and odor reside in a volatile oil, which is readily obtained by distillation. The bark, leaves, and pith, abound with a large quantity of mucilage, which is useful in dysentery. A very small quantity of the pith infused in a glass of water gives to the whole a ropy consistence, like the white of an egg; and is an excellent application to sore eyes. The bark of the root is the part principally employed.

Sassafras is stimulant, tonic, and antiseptic. A small quantity of the oil, applied to an inflammation on the surface, will generally cure it. The bark bruised, and formed into a poultice with corn meal, is a powerful antiseptic, applied to mortifying ulcers. It is probable that the oil or its essence may have a still more powerful effect, and might also be used internally for the same purpose, in all cases of mortification, and particular-



ly of the bowels. The mucilage is said to be good in gravel and catarrh.

The medicinal properties of sassafras are very volatile, and therefore lose much by long keeping.

### LEONTODON TARAXACUM.

*Common names*—DANDELION, PISSABED.

This plant is too common to need a description, growing almost every where in improved lands that are not ploughed, as pastures, meadows, yards, &c.

We extract the following from a communication published in the "Eclectic and Medical Botanist," written by an individual whose practical knowledge is, we are assured, a sufficient guarantee for the correctness of his observations:

"*Diuretic*.—Producing an increased secretion of urine and serviceable in many of the nephritic affections; and when we take into consideration that even *vis medicatrix naturæ* when encroached upon by morbid excitement, and especially when aided by this diuretic article, frequently employs the emunctuaries of the venal organs to carry off the more serous parts of the blood, which in some instances (such as dropsy) is very considerable, thus reducing excess of action in particular organs.

"We perceive that this article is susceptible of a much more extensive practical application than it has met with. If diuresis be desired more than this article alone will produce, the *Apium petroselinum* (common garden parsley) is a valuable adjunct.

"*Diaphoretic*.—Promoting an increased exhalation from the external surface and sympathetically influencing almost every function in the animal economy—and directly relieving congestion by equalizing excitement and circulation—applicable to almost every form of febrile and inflammatory action. As an auxiliary the *Asclepias tuberosa*, (pleurisy root,) or *Eupatorium perfoliatum*, (boneset or thoroughwort,) I have found it serviceable, especially the former.

"*Aperient*.—Moderately purgative to the bowels, and is perhaps the best article we can resort to with expectation of radical cure in cases of constipation from biliary obstructions, or deficient peristaltic action. To increase its cathartic effects add *Iris germanica*, Flower-de-luce (or common blue flag of the gardens—the large.)

"*Anti-spasmodic Expectorant*.—In pulmonary diseases I have found the dandelion an invaluable remedy. I believe I will venture a prediction. If ever any one article cures a



confirmed consumption, it will probably prove to be this. Possessed of such active and extensive medical properties, which may be so managed in its exhibition as to produce almost any effect to any extent desired on any function, tissue or set of organs, in the animal machine, what may we not expect from it? In asthma and catarrhal coughs, let those who *persevere* in its use, judge for themselves.

“*Tonic*.—The bitter principle with which the dandelion is endowed renders it a valuable strengthening remedy in *all cases of debility*, especially such as are connected with much *nervous irritability*, where tonics are generally inadmissible. To the dyspeptic (especially if *nervous*,) I would say, try it *perseveringly*.

“*Alterative*.—In no one point do I esteem the dandelion more valuable than this, especially on the biliary system—here I could write a volume—but I have already extended this article beyond my design when I commenced; suffice it to say in conclusion, that I consider the dandelion much better adapted to chronic than acute forms of disease.

“My common form of employing it, is the expressed juice of the herb, (top and root,) obtained at any time in the spring or summer, or a decoction of the roots obtained in autumn. I sometimes use a semi aqua spiritous tincture *saturated*. In many cases, at first I employ a *quantity sufficient to produce a decided effect* on the *urinary organs*, the *bowels*, or the *skin*.”

It is also remarked in the same communication, that the action of any of the foregoing properties may be augmented and its specific effects increased, by combining with the dandelion other articles whose action upon the system is known to be such as will facilitate the operation we wish to produce.

RAFINESQUE says that the milky juice of the stem of this plant removes freckles from the skin.

---

### LEPTANDRA VIRGINICA.

*Common names*—BLACKROOT, BRINTONROOT, BOWMANROOT, CULVER'S PHYSIC, &c.

Root perennial, black or dark colored, many small fibers growing from a long woody caudex or head. Stems, several rising from the same root, round, somewhat hairy, growing from two to four feet high, branching, branches bearing on their tops a spike or tassel of white crowded flowers. Leaves in whorls, of four or five at a joint, long, narrow and pointed edges set with unequal sharp teeth. Growing in wetish lands, near streams, and in open glades and plains.

The blackroot is very highly celebrated by those best ac-



LEPTANDRIA VIRGINICA, ( Black-root ).





**LIATRIS SPICATA, ( Colic Root ).**





quainted with its virtues and effects, as an efficient purge, operating with mildness and certainty, without producing that depression of the living powers so common to other purgative medicines. In typhus and bilious fevers, it removes the black, tarry, morbid matter, from the intestines, which it seems so necessary to carry off by some means or other, and does it in a most natural manner, without weakening the tone of the bowels, or leaving behind it the poisonous sting so often remaining after the use of calomel, that almost universal cathartic in fevers. The blackroot is also a diaphoretic, antiseptic, and tonic. It may be taken in doses of a heaping tea-spoonful, in half a gill of boiling water, sweetened if most agreeable, repeated in three hours if it do not operate.

This appears to be the same article mentioned by PETER SMITH, under the names of *Culver's* or *Brinton's* root, with which he says his father "used to cure the pleurisy with amazing speed." This root was also a favorite medicine with the famous Indian Doctor HOUGH. He says it is "a most mild and efficacious purge in fevers, in disorders of the stomach or bowels, to destroy vicious humors in the blood, to remove costiveness, or to cool fevers."

The Wyandot Indians likewise speak of this root in terms of high commendation; saying it is a very good healing purge.

---

#### LIATRIS SPICATA.

*Common names*—COLICROOT, BUTTON SNAKEROOT, BACKACHE-ROOT, DEVILSBIT, GAYFEATHER.

Root perennial, about the size of the finger or larger, and from one to two inches long, rough and knobby, sending off a great many very small fibrous roots, almost like hair. Stem round, about three feet high, supporting on its top a long spike or tassel of scaly, purple colored, blossoms, in shape bearing a distant resemblance to an oak acorn. Found in the prairies of the Western States.

The colic root is a warming stimulant, diuretic, sudorific, carminative, and anodyne. The root is used in colic, backache, dropsy, &c. It may be given in tea alone, or advantageously combined with other articles, particularly the diaphoretic powders.

---

#### LINUM USITATISSIMUM.

*Common name*—FLAX.

THIS valuable article is said to have come originally from those parts of Egypt which are exposed to the inundations of the Nile

An infusion or tea of flax-seed, sweetened with honey, is useful for coughs, asthma, and scalding of the urine. The seeds also make an excellent poultice; and the fresh oil is by some esteemed equal to the castor oil.

---

### LIRIODENDRON TULIPIFERA.

*Common names*—YELLOW POPLAR, WHITE-WOOD, TULIP-TREE.

THIS is a native of, and well known tree in, the United States. It attains a great size, and may be ranked amongst the noblest trees of the forest.

The bark of both body and root has long been employed in this country as a tonic of high rank. It is a strong bitter, somewhat aromatic and astringent; found useful in dysentery, hysterics, dyspepsy, worms, and all cases of debility. For worms it is highly recommended, and has become a popular remedy in many places.

The pulverized bark of the poplar may be given in half or whole tea-spoonful doses; or it may be combined with other tonics. It is best given in substance, though it may be administered in infusion, decoction, or tincture. The bark of the root is best for medicine, and ought to be gathered in the latter part of winter or spring.

---

### LOBELIA CARDINALIS.

*Common names*—CARDINAL FLOWER, CARDINAL PLANT, RED LOBELIA

Roots perennial, fibrous, whitish, of a nauseous pungent taste, affecting the mouth and throat in a manner similar to the lobelia inflata. The stem is erect, pubescent or hairy, growing from two to four feet high, terminating in a long spike of brilliant red colored flowers, which distinguish it from all other plants common to the soil where it grows. The leaves are broad-lanceolate, of a shining green, and unequally toothed on the margin. The time of flowering is from the last of July till September, when it may readily be distinguished in marshes, meadows, and in low wet situations, in all parts of the country.

"Few plants," says BARTON, "equal in beauty this gaudy flower. Indeed it is far more showy and elegant than a multitude of exotics so industriously cultivated. Wherever seen, it is greatly admired, and perhaps it only requires to be generally known, in order to obtain a high station in the catalogue of favorite plants." We can add, on these points, our own testimony to the truth of Dr. BARTON's remarks.



LOBELIA CARDINALIS, ( Red Lobelia ).





LOBELIA INFLATA, ( Lobelia ).





Of the medicinal powers of the *lobelia cardinalis*, but little at present is known. The Cherokee Indians, it is said, employ it with success in the treatment of worm complaints. A "root doctor" of some respectability, considers it a most powerful nerve, superior to any thing else known. He employs the roots, but in what form or quantity we do not know. Of the medicinal properties of this plant, we can say nothing from our own experience; but from its sensible qualities, reputed powers, and the well known activity of the *lobelia* genus, we think it worthy of further investigation. Indeed we could wish to see a more thorough examination of the medicinal properties of every plant belonging to this genus, as there is little doubt that a valuable addition of active and useful plants might thereby be added to the vegetable materia medica. And we will take the liberty of suggesting, that those who may feel disposed to investigate the properties of the plant under consideration, should not confine themselves to the root alone, but extend their experiments to the leaves also.

#### LOBELIA INFLATA.

*Common names*—LOBELIA, EMETIC HERB, EMETIC WEED, INDIAN TOBACCO, EYEBRIGHT, PUKE WEED, &c.

*LOBELIA inflata* is a biennial plant, growing from eight to thirty inches high; stem erect, milky, branched. Leaves alternate, milky, oval, or oblong, acute, edges jagged with unequal teeth. Flowers scattered along the branches, small, pale blue, axillary to bracts somewhat similar to the leaves but much smaller, upper ones the smallest. Seed vessel a small oblong, roundish pod, crowned with several little bracts which are the calyx of the flower. Dr. THOMSON fancifully supposes the pod to resemble the human stomach. Seeds many, very minute, brown, resembling tobacco seeds.

*Lobelia* is a common plant in most parts of the United States, growing by the road side, rarely in woods, in the greatest abundance in stubble fields, especially the next season after the crop is taken off. When broken, a milky, acrid, juice exudes from the plant, of a most penetrating diffusible nature, which, if applied only to the eyelid, produces a powerful effect upon the eye, whence the name eyebright. This plant being biennial, throws out the first year only a few radical roundish leaves laying close to the ground; the next year it produces the stem, branches, and seeds. The leaves and roots of the first year are as powerful as the mature plant, excepting the seeds, which are the strongest.

The whole plant is acrid and nauseous, producing salivation;

whence, we suppose, originated the mistaken supposition that it causes the slavers in horses and cattle. It is not known to produce this affection; but, on the contrary, horses and cattle are affected in this way when feeding on pasture grounds where this invaluable herb does not grow.

The lobelia is the most valuable and efficient emetic known; its full merits being scarcely appreciated even by those who are in the habit of making frequent use of it. It also acts as a sudorific, expectorant, and diffusible stimulant; and for the relief and even cure of asthma, and as an anti-spasmodic, its equal has not yet come to the knowledge of the world. As a stimulant it extends its effects to every part of the system, removing obstructions, and restoring a healthy action, wherever the one exists, or the other is needed. Its action or effects may often be sensibly felt or known by a pricking sensation over the system, particularly in the fingers and toes, frequently attended by another singular sensation, comparable to the purring of a cat. Professor RAFINESQUE says that some of the medicinal properties of lobelia were known to the Indians; it being used by them to clear the stomach and head in their great councils.

A diversity of symptoms attend the operation of lobelia emetics, evincing the magnitude of its power and the surprising energy of its operation on the human system, which often terrify those who are unacquainted with its superior and astonishing influence and efficacy in arresting diseased action, and restoring health and harmony to the human machine. Its effects are different on different individuals, and upon the same individual at different times. Sometimes there will be severe pain in the stomach and bowels; strange, agitated, and indescribable, but not always unpleasant, sensations. Convulsive motions of the lower jaw, often attended with a convulsive breathing, like the sobbing of a child. General distress, or universal sickening feeling. Sometimes perfectly easy and quiet, without the power to move hand or foot, or even of rolling the eyeballs in their sockets; and at other times great restlessness and anxiety, with symptoms of a most alarming character, prevail. In some instances the countenance becomes pale, and the skin cold, with the appearance of approaching death; whilst in others, the countenance assumes a florid appearance, bearing the marks of health.

These symptoms, together with a great variety of others which it would be impossible to describe, are very alarming to those who are unacquainted with the lobelia; and we mention them here in order to guard such, against unnecessary fears from their occurrence. The practitioner and patient may be assured that we have never seen nor known of an instance in which those alarming symptoms produced, or were followed by, any



LOBELIA SYPHILITICA, ( Blue Lobelia ).





permanently bad effect. Dr. THOMSON, who claims the honor of first introducing the lobelia into general notice, speaking of them, says, "they appear to be the effects of the last struggle of disease, and are a certain evidence of a favorable turn of the disorder." However we may disagree with Dr. THOMSON in calling that a *cause* which is only an *effect*, we must acknowledge that he has hereby furnished us with a valuable hint. The alarming effects of lobelia are probably caused by the restoration of a healthy action to diseased parts which have long been accustomed to a morbid sensibility and a diseased action. A healthy operation being thus suddenly restored, and the organs not being properly prepared to receive the new impulse, an unusual and oftentimes alarming train of symptoms are produced. But this state is generally of short duration; the organs soon become accustomed to their new and healthy action, the perturbation of nature subsides, and the patient feels no ill effects from the previous unpleasant symptoms. And what still further confirms these views is, that those alarming symptoms are almost always followed by a more rapid improvement of health, and are, therefore, to be regarded as indications favorable to the prospects of a speedy recovery.

As an antidote to poisons of all kinds, whether animal or vegetable, the lobelia stands unrivalled; particularly in the cure of hydrophobia. Several well attested cases of cures of this terrible and fatal disease, have come to our knowledge, one of which occurred in the city of Cincinnati, an account whereof is published in the appendix to this volume.

The lobelia is used in powder, infusion, or tincture, of the leaves and pods, or the seeds, either simply by itself or compounded with other articles. The best time to gather it is in the fall, when the leaves are beginning to turn yellow, as the seed is then ripe, and we have the advantage of the whole plant. For preparation and doses, see under the heads of compounds and course of medicine.

---

#### LOBELIA SYPHILITICA.

*Common names*—BLUE LOBELIA, BLUE CARDINAL FLOWER,  
HIGHBELIA.

THE blue cardinal flower is a common plant in the Western country, and is found in most of the Western, Southern, and Southwestern States. The roots are perennial, white, fibrous, from one to three inches long. Stem erect, somewhat angled, hairy towards the top, from one to three feet high, terminating in a spike of dense, clustered, large, pale blue blossoms. Leaves large, diminishing in size towards the top, crowded on some

plants, and resembling the leaves of the lobelia inflata, finely indented on the edges with unequal teeth. Growing in wetish lands, along dry runs or drains, often in clusters. The whole plant is milky.

The root of this species of lobelia is the part which is principally used for medicine, and is said to be diuretic, cathartic, sudorific, purgative, emetic, and anti-syphilitic, from which last reputed property it has derived its specific name. It is said by CHAPMAN, that some of the Western physicians use it with success as a cure for the dropsy. Its diuretic properties are certainly worthy of further investigation; but it is introduced here principally from its high recommendation as a remedy in diarrhoea and dysentery. From half to a whole tea-spoonful of the pulverized root taken in water, and repeated if necessary, is said by some who have often tried it, to be a certain remedy in those complaints. We think it worthy of a trial.

---

#### MACROTRYS RACEMOSA.

*Common names*—RATTLEWEED, SQUAWROOT, RICHWEED, BLACK COHOSH, BLACK SNAKEROOT, &c.

Root perennial, black, with a large caudex or head, and many long fibers. Stem from three to six feet high, sometimes slightly crooked, jointed, and terminating in a spike of white blossoms. The leaves are of that kind termed biternately compounded, arising from the root and forming a considerable cluster about eighteen inches or two feet high. Found all over the United States, growing in rich open woods, particularly on rich hill sides, and near fields.

The rattleroot is considered astringent, diuretic, sudorific, anodyne, emmenagogue, and tonic. It is an Indian remedy, and much used in rheumatism, and also to facilitate child-birth, whence its name squawroot. It is used as a popular remedy in the treatment of rheumatism, fever and ague, and is also a powerful medicine in cases of female obstructions. It is likewise said to be a valuable remedy in small pox, an account of which has already been given under that head. It is used by the Indians as an antidote for the bite of snakes; for which purpose it is bruised and applied to the wound. It is also said to cure the itch.

Rattleroot has, however, acquired the greatest celebrity as a cure for coughs and consumptions. In diseases of this character, we have many testimonials of its value, which are entitled to the fullest confidence, even in cases of confirmed consumption. A number of cases of pulmonary complaints are detailed in a late inaugural essay, by G. W. MARRAS, M.D.



**MACROTrys** [**BOTROPHIS**] **RACEMOSA**, (Black Cohosh).



*Asplenium (Linn.) [illegible]*



MENTHA PIPERITA, ( Peppermint ).





under our notice within the last few days, in which it appears the rattleroot produced the most decidedly beneficial effects. He also tried it in one case of intermittent fever which had resisted the ordinary treatment for six weeks, and cured it in four days, by administering the saturated tincture, beginning with twenty drops, afterwards increased to a tea-spoonful, and after the chills ceased to return, using a strong decoction. Dr. MEARS also records several cases of diarrhœa in which the rattleroot effected speedy cures. He likewise records one very bad case of pain and inflammation of the shoulder, in which the squawroot was used with the most decisive advantages.

Dr. MEARS appears to use the tincture, decoction, or powder, of this article indiscriminately. Of the tincture, he administers from twenty drops to one tea-spoonful at a dose; the decoction, he appears to have used in doses of one great spoonful, every two hours for children of three or four years old; and the pulverized root, in doses of from five to ten grains, (about half a tea-spoonful) three times a day. The decoction is made by steeping from a fourth to half an ounce of the powdered root in a pint of water.

The tincture has been known sometimes to produce an alarming effect, and is thought, by some, to be dangerous, which we, however, think doubtful. The decoction may be taken in much larger quantity without producing any unpleasant effect; and on that account is preferable to the tincture.

---

### MARRUBIUM VULGARE.

*Common name*—HOARHOUND.

THIS is a common perennial plant, growing on road sides, along lanes, near houses, and amongst rubbish. The leaves have a very strong smell and bitter taste. Said to be good for poisons, to check and cure salivation, to remove obstructions, and highly valuable in a sweetened infusion for coughs and asthma; and in large doses laxative.

---

### MENTHA PIPERITA.

*Common name*—PEPPERMINT.

VERY common in wet land. Hot and pungent, being the strongest of all the mints. Useful to check nausea and vomiting, to expel wind, relieve hysterics, and prevent the griping effects of cathartics; for which purposes it is very frequently employed by the Reform Colleges of New York and Worthington. Bruised and applied externally to the stomachs of chil-

dren, it is useful to allay sickness and vomiting. It is mostly used in the form of essence.

---

### MENTHA VIRIDIS.

*Common name*—SPEARMINT.

Grows on the banks of streams, and in wet land; has a warm, rough, bitter taste, and strong aromatic smell. Used in decoction, oil, or essence, for complaints of the stomach, and to expel wind. Also very valuable to remove sickness at the stomach, and to check vomiting.

Dr. BEACH, in his "American Practice," recommends what he terms "the spirits of mint, which is made by bruising the green plant, and adding sufficient fourth-proof Holland gin to make a saturated tincture, which makes a preparation remarkably efficacious in suppressions of urine, gravelly affections, &c." "The dose of this preparation is a wine-glass full, drank as often as the stomach will bear. Cotton wet with the above liquid, and applied to *piles*, affords immediate relief."

---

### MINISPERMUM CANADENSE.

*Common names*—MOONSEED, YELLOW PARILLA, VINE MAPLE.

Root perennial, horizontal, very long, yellow, woody, with somewhat jointed, fibers issuing from each joint. Stem a woody vine, from three to six feet high, small, of a dark green color, twining around whatever it may come in contact with. Leaves scattered, very broad, round cornered, somewhat resembling the maple leaf, grows in rich and often moist lands, near streams, &c.

The root of the parilla is a pleasant bitter tonic and laxative; useful in all cases of debility; strengthens the nervous system; very good for worms. May be used simply by itself, or combined with other tonics.

This article has also acquired much popularity in many places and with many persons, as a remedy in both the venereal and mercurial diseases; and there seems to be no doubt that it is highly valuable in both these complaints. In the following extract from Dr. GUNN's "*Domestic Medicine*," there is no doubt he alludes to the yellow parilla, although he calls it sarsaparilla, and thinks it (erroneously) the same as the imported article sold under that name. "It may be considered," says he, "as one of the most valuable roots in the Western country, and although possessing great power, is entirely innocent. It ought most certainly to be used in all cases where mercury has had any effect on the system, or in which there is the least doubt



**MENISPERMUM CANADENSES, ( Yellow Parilla ).**





that any infection lurks in it connected with venereal." We will also add, that by some it is considered as a specific in this loathsome disease.

---

### MITCHELLA REPENS.

*Common names*--PARTRIDGEBERRY, CHECKERBERRY, ONEBERRY, WINTER-CLOVER, SQUAW-VINE.

THIS is a small, ever-green, perennial procumbent vine, lying close to the ground. Leaves opposite, small, and round. Flowers in pairs, white, and hairy within. Fruit a bright scarlet red berry.

Wherever this little vine grows, it is commonly abundant; being usually in beds or mats, covering the ground with its ever-green verdure. It is found in shady woods on almost every variety of soil, from rocks and poor dry knobs, to the wet rich surfaces of swamps.

The checkerberry is highly esteemed by some as a remedy in diarrhœa and piles, for which it is prepared by boiling in sweet milk, and drinking freely of it. The tea, says RAFINESQUE, is used in New England as a diuretic for dropsy, and also the same preparation for gout. He likewise adds, that the berries are a popular remedy for diarrhœa in the North, and for suppression of urine in Carolina.

We extract the following account of the singular virtues of this plant from SMITH'S "Botanic Physician:"—

"This is an invaluable plant for child-bearing women. I first obtained the knowledge of its use from a tribe of Indians residing in the west part of New York, though not without considerable difficulty and intrigue. The squaws drank it in decoction for two or three weeks previous to, and during delivery, and it was the use of this herb that rendered that generally dreaded event, so remarkably safe and easy with them."

---

### MONOTROPA UNIFLORA.

*Common names*—FITROOT, ICEPLANT, PIPEPLANT.

THIS plant is not uncommon in the Western States, growing in shady solitary places. It is a singular herb, several plants often growing from the same root, white, each stem bearing a single blossom on the top, and without leaves.

It is said to be a good nervine, useful in epilepsy and convulsions, simply by itself or combined with lady's slipper. The juice mixed with water, used for sore eyes; and probably might be available in other cases, both externally and internally, in which astringents are useful; considered equal to the *berch* drops.

## MYRICA CERIFERA.

*Common names*—BAYBERRY, CANDLEBERRY, WAX MYRTLE, SWEET GALE, WAXBERRY.

BAYBERRY is a shrub, growing in almost every kind of soil, from Canada to Georgia. It rises from two to twelve feet high, being largest in the South; the top is much branched, and covered with a grayish bark. The leaves are oblong, wedge-shaped, broadest at the outer end, sometimes entire, but frequently toothed near the extremity. The fruit is a grayish berry, which grows in clusters on the sides of the branches, and is covered with a substance called bayberry tallow, of which candles are often made.

The bark of the root is the part used as medicine, and is possessed of powerful medicinal properties, being an astringent tonic of the purest and best kind, available in all diseases. In large doses, when the stomach is foul, it often operates as an emetic. It is also a powerful errhine, making an excellent sneezing and headache snuff. It enters into a number of compounds, being useful in all complaints, particularly diarrœha and dysentery. Dose, from half to a whole tea-spoonful in hot water sweetened.

---

MYRISTICA MOSCHATA.

*Common name*—NUTMEG TREE.

THE nutmeg tree, the fruit of which is the common nutmeg, is a native of the Molucca Islands. The involucre, husk, or shell, of the nutmeg is called mace, and possesses all the virtues of the nutmeg, with less astringency.

Nutmeg is a pleasant aromatic, stomachic, astringent, and nervine. We direct its use only in two compounds, though it might be employed in any others which the taste or fancy may indicate or desire.

---

MYRRHA.

*Common names*—MYRRH, GUM MYRRH.

THIS article is not a proper gum, but a gum-resin, and is the concrete juice of an East Indian shrub, of which little or nothing is known to botanists. The best myrrh is of a reddish-brown color, partly transparent, of a bitter and slightly pungent taste, and strong aromatic, but not disagreeable odor.

Myrrh is a good tonic, antiseptic, and vermifuge. It strengthens the stomach, assists digestion, and promotes the secretions.



MYRICA GALE, (Sweet Gale.)





MYRRHA, ( Myrrh ).







NEFETA CATARIA, ( Cat-mint ).





NYMPHÆA ODORATA, ( White Pond-lily ).





It is highly useful in malignant, putrid, and pestilential disorders; and eminently serviceable in ulcers, both externally and internally applied. It is prepared in tincture, twelve ounces of the best myrrh to a gallon of alcohol, high wines, or Frenchbrandy. The myrrh should be pulverized and added to the brandy in a bottle, placed in a sun heat, often shaking for eight or ten days, and then poured off or filtered. Or it may be placed in water and boiled, and after the brandy remains for a few minutes at the boiling heat, must be taken out and corked. After it has become cool and well settled, pour off or filter, and bottle for use. This is also a valuable remedy for dysentery. The addition of an equal quantity of the tincture of aloes is supposed to add to its efficacy as a worm medicine. The tincture of myrrh may be taken in doses of a tea or table-spoonful, or more. For the best mode of preparing it, see under the head of "*Compounds.*"

---

#### MYRTUS PIMENTA.

*Common names*—ALLSPICE TREE, PIMENTO TREE.

THIS tree is a native of Jamaica, and produces the allspice or Jamaica pepper. Allspice is the fruit plucked from the tree before it is ripe, and dried in the sun. Its smell resembles a mixture of cinnamon, nutmeg, and cloves, whence the name *allspice*. It is a warm, grateful, aromatic stimulant, much used as a condiment in cookery; and in medicine is very advantageously substituted for the more costly spices. It enters into Dr. WELLS' colic drops.

---

#### NEPETA CATARIA.

*Common names*—CATNIP, CATMINT.

THIS common plant is accounted valuable as an external application in poultice to swellings; internally for headache, colic female obstructions, hysterics, worms, and spasms. Administered by injection, it relieves the restlessness and colic of children, for which it is highly valuable. It may also be administered by the mouth for the same purpose. Very valuable common herb.

---

#### NYMPHÆA ODORATA.

*Common names*—WHITE POND-LILY, TOAD-LILY, &c.

ROOT perennial, nearly the size of one's wrist, very long, somewhat hairy, horizontal, blackish, and knotty, always growing in

the water. Leaves large, round, cleft from the edge to the stem which is in the center, each lobe ending in a short, acute point, upper surface smooth and glossy, without veins, lower surface reddish, with radiating nerves. Flowers large, white, giving out a sweet odor, opening to the sun in the morning and closing at night.

The root of the white pondlily is a very valuable article of medicine, for either internal or external use. Internally it is an astringent tonic, used in diarrhœa, dysentery, and all cases of debility. Externally it is useful, in poultice, for biles, tumors, inflammations, ulcers, &c. The leaves are also useful for the same purpose. The fresh juice of the roots mixed with lemon juice, is said to be good to remove freckles, pimples, or blotches from the skin. A tea of the root may be used at discretion; or it may be compounded with other astringent or bitter articles, and employed as a tonic.

---

#### ONOSMODIUM HISPIDUM.

*Common names*—FALSE GROMWELL, WILD JOB'S-TEARS,  
GRAVEL-WEED.

Roots perennial, large, resembling elecampane roots, dark colored on the outside, light yellow within. Stems several from the same root, from one and a half to three feet high, branched towards the top, branches curved. Leaves lance-oval, with an acute point, scattered large on the stem, much smaller on the branches, several prominent nerves visible on both sides, very rough, seeming to be drawn into little dots or elevations. The whole plant is very hispid or hairy. Flowers yellowish-white, axillary to the leaves on the branches, producing a hard whitish oval seed, about the size of hemp seed, and resembling the garden Job's-tears. Grows on the borders of prairies, on hill sides and other open situations, and is said to delight in a rich limestone soil.

This plant was introduced to our notice by Dr. A. ROBINSON, of Indiana, as a solvent of the stone. Its medical properties have been discovered by the Indians in Tennessee, by roasting and eating the roots for food. Both the roots and seeds are employed for curing the stone. They are used as follows:—

Take half a pound of the bruised roots and two table-spoonfuls of the pulverized seeds, steep the roots in three pints of boiling water until the strength is extracted, then pour the decoction on the seeds, and drink a tea-cupful of it once in two hours for twelve hours, or until it operates on the bowels as a cathartic, when, as directed in the original recipe, the sediment or seeds must be taken. This finishes the process, which, it



PANAX QUINQUEFOLIUM, ( Ginseng ).



would seem, is relied upon to effect a cure. There is a caution in the recipe, however, not to continue the use of it too long, for fear of producing too great a discharge of urine, from which we infer that if once taking the medicine as described, it must be repeated. It would seem, also to be a powerful diuretic, as well as solvent of the stone.

---

### OXALIS STRICTA.

*Common names*—WOOD SORREL, SHEEP SORREL.

THIS is a very common, perennial plant, growing in woods and shady places. Stem from five to ten inches high, branched; leaflets in threes, at the ends of the branches, obversely heart-shaped. Flowers yellow, with the central part inclined to orange. The leaves have a pure and pleasant acid taste; and may be used in all cases in which acids and antiseptics are indicated.

The inspissated or concrete juice of the sheep sorrel has, of late, become somewhat celebrated as an external application for cancerous affections. Repeated cures of cancers are reported to have been performed with this simple article; and we have no doubt that much confidence may be placed in it, in the treatment of this painful and highly dangerous affection. A salve made of the sorrel has also been very advantageously used in cancers; a remarkable instance of which is related in the appendix in the case of JOHN PEGG.

The juice of the sorrel is prepared for use in the following manner:—Take of the sorrel, any quantity, bruise it in a mortar, and then press out the juice, put it on pewter plates or dishes, and set it in the sun. When it has become of a proper consistence to form a plaster, it ought to be put into earthen or glass vessels to preserve it for use. When applied to the ulcer, spread a thin plaster of it on a piece of bladder, leather, or cloth, of a size suitable to cover the sore. These plasters must be occasionally renewed, washing the cancer with soap suds at each renewal. Two plasters have been known to cure a bad cancer of the female breast; and in other instances one has been sufficient.

This remedy has been kept a secret, and the knowledge of it sold at a high price.

---

### PANAX QUINQUEFOLIA.

*Common names*—GINSENG, GINSANG, GINSHANG.

Root perennial, fleshy, yellowish-white, spindle-shaped, often forked. Stem from eight to eighteen inches high, round,



smooth, divided at the top into three branches, supporting from three to five oblong leaves, broadest towards the outer end, and jagged. Flowers small and white, producing a large red berry.

This plant is said to be the famous ginseng of China, to which country it was formerly exported, and commanded a high price. Ginseng, in the Chinese language, means, according to RAFINESQUE, man's health, which indicates the high estimation in which this article is held by them. The American ginseng is said, however, to be inferior to the celebrated Chinese plant, though possessing the same virtues.

The roots have a pleasant camphorated smell, and sweetish, pungent, and slightly aromatic, bitter taste. We introduce the article here, as a gentle stimulant, tonic, and nervine. But the Chinese attribute to it wonderful powers; such as that by chewing the root, when walking, a person will not become fatigued; it warms the stomach and bowels; cures the colic and obstructions of the breast; sustains excessive labor of both body and mind, preventing weariness and dejection; quenches thirst, assuages hunger, prevents dropsy, promotes the appetite, assists digestion, prevents unpleasant dreams and frights, strengthens the judgment; cures nervous, asthmatical, and hysterical affections; removes all the disorders of weakness and debility; and also cures or relieves, according to JARTOUX, almost "every ill that flesh is heir to." "Such," says RAFINESQUE, are the wonderful properties ascribed to this plant by the Chinese authors, after an experience of two thousand years. They often unite it with orange peel, ginger, liquorice, cinnamon, peach-kernels, honey, &c., to aid its effects; and prescribe it in powders, electuary, extract, pills, and decoction."

The root of the ginseng is a mild but pretty efficient nervine, either taken in powder, decoction, or tincture. It is also a good stomachic and restorative medicine; and as a gentle and agreeable stimulant, is a valuable medicine for children. Drs. GREENWAY and CUTLER, have found it useful in convulsions, nervous affections, palsy, vertigo, and dysentery. The leaves are also said to make a very grateful medical tea. Dose, from one to two tea-spoonfuls of the powder, in hot water sweetened or it may be mixed with honey or melasses.

---

#### PARTHENIUM INTEGRIFOLIUM.

*Common names*—NEPHRITIC PLANT, CUTTING ALMOND.

Root very singular, issuing from a caudex or head, at first small, but gradually enlarging until it terminates very abruptly, and then giving off other roots of the same or similar form; each portion forming a distinct root resembling in shape and



*PARTHENIUM INTEGRIFOLIUM*, ( Cutting Almond ).



*Quercus macrocarpa* (Mill.) B.S.P.

size a young radish, but growing horizontally with the large end foremost, giving off a few fibrous roots and sending up stalks from near the large ends or butts of the principal roots, which are blackish outside, and bluish-gray within.

Stems several arising from the same root, round, very hard, of a dark red color, growing from eighteen inches to two feet high, branched towards the top, branches axillary to the leaves. Leaves, some of them radical or nearly so, the others scattering and few, very obtusely dentate or notched, lower ones petiolate, upper ones partly clasping the stem, stiff and harsh, upper ones the smallest, partly diamond shaped.

Flowers a kind of white button, cymous or partly umbelliferous, growing at the extremities of the branches.

This plant is highly esteemed by some practitioners as a remedy in diseases of the urinary organs. The root may be sliced, infused in cold water, and drank in moderate quantities, for suppressions of the urine, and especially when a painful scalding or burning sensation attends its discharge, or when it is voided by drops or in very small quantities.

#### PHYTOLACCA DECANDRA.

*Common names*—POKE, SCOKE, PIGEONBERRY, GARGET-ROOT.

Root large, perennial, branching, covered, with a very thin brownish bark or skin. Stems many, annual, large, green at first, afterwards purple or red, smooth, branching, rising from four to eight feet. Leaves large, scattered, smooth, oblong. Flowers opposite the leaves, on long racemes or spikes, producing many fleshy, dark purple berries, depressed or flattened. Found in abundance throughout the United States.

The poke root is generally regarded as a strong poison, though by some recommended as a good emetic. We think it, however, not to be relied upon for this purpose. Externally, the roasted root is often advantageously applied as a poultice to swellings, bad ulcers, and rheumatic joints. The juice of the berries, dried in the sun to a proper consistence for a plaster, is said to have cured cancers; and the external application of the juice of the leaves, is recommended for the cure of the itch, ring-worm, &c.

The poke is introduced into this work principally on account of its high reputation as a remedy for rheumatism. For this purpose, the ripe berries are collected in the fall, the juice pressed out, and about half the quantity of brandy (or enough to preserve it,) added to it, and bottled for use. We are also very strongly of the opinion that equal quantities of this juice and a strong decoction of the rattle root, with brandy

enough to preserve the mixture, taken in small doses, would probably make a better medicine for rheumatism than any single remedy ever tried. We wish some individual whose opportunities allow him to make frequent and extensive trials, would test the power of this compound.

[We have the pleasure of informing the reader that the above suggestion, which was made in the first edition, has been seized upon by Dr. T. PITTMAN, of Georgia, and two most inveterate cases cured by this prescription, after all other remedies usually employed, both by the medical faculty and the Botanic practitioners, had proved unavailing.]

---

### PIMPINELLA ANISUM.

*Common name*—ANISE.

THIS is an annual plant, native of Syria, Crete, and other parts of the East. The seeds, which is the part of the plant used, have an aromatic odor, and a warm sweetish taste.—They afford by distillation a considerable quantity of oil, which has a strong flavor, and sweet but not pungent taste.

Anise is good to expel wind from the stomach or bowels, and is a grateful stimulant and stomachic. The seeds enter into bitter tonic compounds; and the oil or essence, into several compound tinctures, either as medicinal agents, or to cover the bad taste of other articles.

---

### PINUS BALSAMEA.

*Common names*—BALSAM FIR, HEMLOCK FIR, CANADA BALSAM.

THE fir tree is a native of northern climates, where it is most common. It also grows as far south as Tennessee, where it is confined to the highest mountains.

The liquid resin, called balsam of fir, or balsam of Canada, is of a light color, very tenacious or sticky, and inflammable. It is found in small blisters on the surface of the fir trees; these blisters are pierced with a knife or some sharp instrument, from which the balsam exudes, and is thus collected for use.

As an internal remedy, this balsam is advantageously employed in complaints of the breast and lungs, either pain, soreness, or cough; it strengthens the nervous system, loosens the bowels, cleanses and heals internal ulcers, and diseases of the urinary passages, often proving useful in the cure of gleet as well as the preceding stages of the venereal complaint; and in fluor albus or whites. Externally, this valuable balsam is applied to



ulcers and wounds, being an excellent ingredient in healing salves. Dose, internally, half a tea-spoonful, or less, with sugar or melasses.

---

### PINUS CANADENSIS.

*Common name*—HEMLOCK TREE.

THE inner bark of the common hemlock tree affords a very good astringent, which may be employed in all cases where articles of that class are indicated. The leaves and boughs are famed for producing perspiration by drinking the tea and sitting over the steam. The oil and essence are a good stimulant tonic, useful in colds, &c. The oil is also a valuable ingredient in bathing drops. It is said that a fomentation of the hemlock is highly useful, as an application to swelled testicles, caused by the translation of the mumps to these parts. It may likewise be applied to similar swellings of the breasts of females.

---

### PIPER NIGRUM.

*Common name*—BLACK PEPPER.

THE vine which produces the black pepper is a native of the East Indies, which seems, indeed, to be the nursery of the spices. The dark color of black pepper is owing to the berries being gathered and dried before they are ripe.

Black pepper appears to possess, in an inferior degree, the stimulant properties of cayenne, for which it may be substituted, but is probably slightly astringent. It may be used as a substitute for the cayenne, or red pepper, when neither of those articles can be obtained. Dose, from half to a whole tea-spoonful, in hot water sweetened.

---

### PLANTAGO MAJOR.

*Common names*—PLANTAIN, GREAT PLANTAIN.

THIS common herb needs no description. Its most popular use is as an antidote to poisonous bites and stings. Also said to be good for ulcers, sore eyes, bowel complaints, bloody urine, &c. For either external or internal application, the tea or expressed juice may be used, or the bruised leaves may be applied externally for stings, bites, slight wounds, sores, or tumors.

“The ancients esteemed it highly, and employed it in visceral obstructions, hemorrhages, particularly from the lungs, consumptions, dysentery, and other complaints.”

## PLANTAGO CORDATA.

*Common name*—WATER PLANTAIN.

Root perennial, having one or more tap roots issuing from the caudex or head, and immediately on the under side of the caudex is a singular cup or depression. Leaves radical, ovate, often somewhat cordate, with irregular tooth-like projections from the margin, supported on long footstalks, of a light green color, very much resembling the common plantain. Stem from ten to twenty inches high, terminating in a spike or tassel, in all respects similar to the common plantain; found in the wettest soils, and shady places.

The root of water plantain is considered very valuable as an astringent in dysentery, for which purpose it may be given in strong decoction, after the bowels have been cleansed with a mild cathartic. It should be gathered in the fall.

In a late tour amongst the Indians, we were assured by the Wyandots, that it was a very useful external application for old sores, wounds, and bruises, whether inflamed or inclined to mortify. For this purpose, take the roots, wash them clean, and boil till soft. Mash into a poultice, and apply to the sore, first washing it with the water in which the roots were boiled, and repeat two or three times a day, if the case be bad. It removes inflammation, reduces swelling, and cleanses and soon heals the most foul and inveterate ulcers.

---

PODOPHYLLUM PELTATUM.

*Common names*—MANDRAKE, MAY-APPLE.

THE mandrake is a common plant, growing throughout the United States, in shady, and oftentimes, moist situations. Root perennial, horizontal, round, long, larger than the largest goose-quill, jointed, with fibrous roots issuing at each joint. Stem smooth, round, and erect, from eight to eighteen inches high, divided at the top into two branches, each branch supporting a single large leaf. Flowers large, white, only one on a plant, growing from the forks of the stem.

The root of the mandrake is, by some, considered poisonous and unfit for medicine, whilst by others it is regarded as one of the most valuable articles. All who have written upon the subject, however, agree in recommending it as a most certain, safe, salutary, and efficacious purge. Almost all botanical physicians make use of it for this purpose, and one, of some celebrity, (Dr. S. ANNIBAL,) it is said, calls it "the king of roots," relying upon it in all cases of disease. The dose usually given, is from half



**PODOPHYLLUM PELTATUM, (May-apple).**





POLEMONIUM REPTANS, ( Greek Valerian ).





to a whole tea-spoonful. The best time to give it is at night on going to bed, and it will commonly operate the next morning, it being slow but sure. In small doses it is a gradual and easy laxative; but in large ones it is active and drastic. Useful in dropsy and pleurisy.

Dr. LOBSTEIN says he has never known its employment fail of procuring immediate relief in cases of incontinence of urine.

The root is also prepared in syrup which makes a mild pleasant purge; the dose being two spoonfuls. The Cherokees use the fresh juice of the root for deafness, putting a few drops into the ear. [*Rafinesque*.] The Wyandot Indians say that roasting the root destroys the poison it contains, and makes it less drastic.

The Indian Doctor HOUGH, recommends the powdered root as an escharotic to cleanse foul and ill-conditioned ulcers, and dispose them to heal, and to promote the exfoliation or removal of carious or rotten bones. He directs the powder to be sprinkled on the affected part once in from two to five days. It will destroy proud flesh, he says, without injury to the sound parts. We have also seen the whole roots used to cure the poll-evil of horses, by plunging the root into the very bottom of the sore, and letting it remain there for several days.

---

### POLEMONIUM REPTANS.

*Common names*—GREEK VALERIAN, ABSCESS-ROOT, BLUEBELLS, SWEATROOT.

Roots perennial, small, numerous and fibrous, white, or dirty white, all growing from one common head. Leaves many, radical, pinnate or compounded of many small oblong-ovate folioles or little leaves arranged in two rows, one on each side the petiole or footstalk which grows from six to sixteen inches in length, reclined or spreading, the inner or upper side of the footstalk channelled its whole length, the edges of the channel being thin and sharp. Flowers small, blue, appear early in the season, producing small seeds. Several stems often arising from the same root, growing in damp woods to the height of one or two feet.

The root of this plant is the part employed as medicine, the knowledge of the virtues of which was derived from the Indians, and has been confirmed by the experience of several Botanic practitioners. The Indians make a tea of the roots and drink freely of it in fevers, pleurisies, and in all cases where they wish to produce a copious perspiration.

A tincture is made by infusing a handful of the roots in a quart of whisky, taking half a wine-glassful three times a day, to cleanse the system or blood of vitiated humors, and has thus been found

very valuable to persons afflicted with boils. There is no doubt that further experience may prove this to be a valuable article in most cases of disease.

Since the publication of the foregoing, all the virtues therein ascribed to the sweatroot have been amply confirmed, and others assigned to it, of which we then were ignorant. The sources whence our information has been obtained are such that we think it entitled to full credit, and we therefore, with greater pleasure, offer it to the public.

A valued correspondent at Zanesville, Ohio, assures us that we "will find this plant excellent for consumptions, and all affections of the lungs and liver." He also states that a lady who had a severe affection attended by violent pain in the left side, was cured by taking a compound of this article with manroot, (*Convolvulus panduratus*), after other means had failed. "The person," says our correspondent, "who communicated this plant to me, received his knowledge from the Indians; and he informed me that he cured his mother of consumption with it. The tea made from it," says he, "may be drank freely, though it will sometimes vomit when the stomach is overloaded with it; but this is rare. I believe it to be a valuable root, and that it may be combined with other articles to advantage."

From two other respectable persons, who reside near Mechanicsburgh, in this state, we learn verbally, that the sweatroot is not only highly valuable for consumption, but is also very useful in all chronic complaints, particularly serofula, scrofulous and other ulcers, and for the bites of snakes. They call the article Abscess-root.

They state that consumptions have been repeatedly cured by it, and in some instances, when the disease was in its worst stage, and after other approved means had been perseveringly tried but failed.

For use, they direct a small handful of the roots to three pints of boiling water, steeped down one half. Dose, half a tea-cupful every four hours. In chronic complaints, after using a short time, it often produces a singular sensation on the surface of the body—a kind of pricking. It is thought best before employing this article in consumption, to administer a course of medicine, which promotes a free expectoration from the lungs.

For snake bites, take the roots and tops of the sweatroot, bruise them in a mortar and mix with new milk to the consistence of a poultice, and apply to the bitten part; or if this be impossible or inconvenient, as is the case with cattle and horses, wash the part with the milk, after the root has steeped awhile in it. The tea is also to be taken internally at the same time. Or if inconvenient to make a poultice as directed, chew the roots and apply them to the part, and drink the tea or eat some of the roots.



POLYGALA SENEGA, (Seneca Snake-root).





The same individuals also say that the sweatroot acts upon the bowels as a powerful astringent, and its use must, therefore, be followed with or attended by laxative or cathartic medicines.

---

### POLYGALA SENEGA.

*Common name*—SENECA SNAKE-ROOT.

Root perennial, firm, hard, branching, crooked, and woody. Stems many, annual, smooth, occasionally tinged with red, from eight to twelve inches high. Leaves numerous, alternate or scattered, long, narrow, and pointed, bright green on the upper, and pale on the under side. Flowers white, in a close terminal spike. The spike opens gradually, so that the lower ones are in fruit while the upper ones are in blossom. The root has an unpleasant and somewhat acrid taste, and is the part to be used. Grows in most parts of the United States, generally on the sides of hills, and in dry woods.

The Seneca snake-root is deemed an antidote to snake bites, as well as being stimulant, diuretic, expectorant, emetic, purgative, sudorific, and emmenagogue. Useful in coughs, pleurisies, asthma, croup, and female obstructions. It may be given in powder, tea, or syrup. The proper dose of the powder is from one third to half a tea-spoonful, every three hours until the desired effect is produced. For the croup of children, the decoction is used, which must be made strong, and given in tea-spoonful doses every hour or half hour, as the urgency of the symptoms may demand, until it acts as an emetic and cathartic. During the intervals between giving the tea-spoonful doses, a few drops should be often administered so as to keep up a sensible action in the throat; and this must also be continued after the vomiting, by which means, in the course of from two to eight hours, a membrane is oftentimes discharged by the mouth, of one, two, or even three inches in length; though sometimes swallowed and discharged by stool. Nothing ought to be drank for some minutes after each dose.

---

### POLYGONUM PUNCTATUM.

*Common names*—SMARTWEED, SMARTGRASS, WATER-PEPPER.

THIS valuable plant, growing almost every where near the habitations of man, is too common to need any description. "It is a powerful antiseptic, and allays inflammation, discusses cold swellings, particularly such as affect the knee joint, and dissolves congealed blood in bruises, blows, &c. For these purposes, it should be applied in strong decoction and poultice. The juice destroys worms in the ears, when dropped into them."

To remove inflammation or to prevent or check mortification, take the herb, bruise and boil it in a suitable quantity of water; bathe the part affected with the liquor, and apply the bruised herb hot, as a fomentation, renewing as it becomes cold. This we are assured, by good authority, has been used with happy results.

The decoction has also been successfully employed as a diaphoretic to promote perspiration, and also for bowel complaints, gravel and other obstructions of the urinary organs, coughs and colds, worms, and piles. For the latter it may be applied externally as well as internally. When the virtues of this article become fully developed, there is no doubt it will be found highly valuable.

---

### POLYMNIA UVEDALIA?

*Common name*—BEAR'S FOOT.

A VALUABLE vegetable, of which the following is the best description that we have been able to obtain:—

Roots very abundant, large and long, enlarging as they proceed from the common head so as to resemble, in some degree, a small sweet-potato, blackish outside and whitish within. Stems frequently several together, growing five or six feet high, bearing leaves the size of a man's hand, and very much resembling in shape the foot of a bear, whence its common name.

The great value of this article principally consists, so far as at present known, in its being a specific for the cure of white swelling. For this purpose the root is boiled in any kind of oil or soft grease, and made into an ointment, with which the swelled parts are to be bathed two or three times a day, and after each bathing place a flannel cloth over the swelling, when, having a flat iron or smoothing iron heated to a suitable temperature, it should be *ironed* by passing the iron quickly over the flannel for a short time. The ironing not only facilitates the absorption of the ointment, but also relaxes the parts and stimulates the languid vessels to more vigorous action, thus assisting in the removal of the disease.

This method of removing white swelling was kept a secret and employed with uniform success by a woman in Carolina, for several years. It has effected cures in many instances after all other means had been tried in vain. One case is related, of a very severe character, in which the swelling had extended from the hip to the ankle, that was cured with this remedy in one month. The ointment also affords relief applied to the ear in earache and deafness.

NOTE.—The reader will perceive by the note of interrogation affixed to the botanical name, that we are doubtful of its correct-



POPULUS TREMULOIDES.



POPULUS BALSAMIFERA



POPULUS GRANDIDENTATA.



POPULUS CANDICANS.



ness. We adopted it on the suggestion of an experienced botanist, who, without being positive, thinks it probably correct. If it be the *P. uvedalia*, we may add, that the leaves are opposite, flowers yellow, compound, somewhat resembling the cup-plant, and belongs with that to the same class and order in both the *artificial* and *natural systems*. This order (LV) of the natural system is noted by botanists as being “tonic and secernant stimulant.”

---

### POPULUS TREMULOIDES.

*Common names*—POPLAR, QUAKING ASP, QUIVER LEAF, ASPIN.

THE quaking asp is a common tree in most parts of the country, growing to various sizes, some trees large enough for sawing-timber. The leaves are round, smooth, and jagged, and the petioles or footstalks, being flattened transversely with the surface of the leaves, the least breath of air agitates and keeps them in motion; whence the name of quaking asp, &c. There are several species of the poplar, all valuable for medicine, but that with tags is considered best.

The bark of this tree affords one of the finest of bitter tonics. It may be used in powder, decoction, or tincture, for diarrhœa, obstructions of the urine, indigestion, faintness at the stomach, consumption, and worms. The bark may also be pulverized and compounded with other tonics, and used in all cases.

---

### POTENTILLA CANADENSIS.

*Common names*—FIVEFINGER, CINQUEFOIL.

A TRAILING vine, common in old fields, or other poor uncultivated grounds; too well known to need any description.

“The root,” says SMITH, “is a gentle astringent, and has been found by experience to be very beneficial in fevers, particularly when there is great debility, lassitude, and night sweats, which last it seldom fails to check; it also helps the appetite. It is taken in decoction, or may be boiled with milk. It is serviceable in allaying fluxes, immoderate flow of the menses, &c.”

---

### PRINOS VERTICILLATUS.

*Common names*—WINTERBERRY, BLACK ALDER.

THIS is a common shrub or branching bush, growing usually in swamps, near ponds and streams, and in wet lands. It is usually found in bunches, from six to ten feet high, having alternate branches; bark of a dark ash color, spotted with white.



Leaves alternate or scattered, oval, pointed, edges jagged with sharp teeth. Flowers small, and white, producing irregular bunches of berries which remain attached to the sides of the branches until winter, presenting, with their beautiful red color, a delightful contrast with fading nature. This shrub may be readily distinguished by its berries, from the *Alnus serrulata*, another shrub called black or tag alder, which we have heretofore mentioned.

The bark of the winterberry is highly celebrated as a tonic, alterative, antiseptic, and vermifuge. Useful in all cases of recovery from fevers, and other sickness; in dropsy, jaundice, mortification, eruptions of the skin, and externally for foul ulcers, mortified parts, &c. For mortification, it may be used alone, or combined with sassafras or other stimulating tonics, in decoction, both externally and internally. For all complaints of the skin this article is an excellent remedy, by drinking a tea-cupful of the decoction several times a day, and using the same frequently as a wash.

The berries are also used for the same purpose as the bark, and may be tinctured in spirits, which makes a good tonic for all complaints, particularly for worms.

Dose, from half to a whole tea-spoonful of the bark three or four times a day, in hot water sweetened; or an ounce of the bark may be steeped in a pint and a half of water down to a pint, and taken in gill doses every two or three hours.

### PRUNUS VIRGINIANA.

*Common names*—WILD CHERRY, BLACK CHERRY.

Too common to need a description. Bark bitter, tonic, astringent, and anthelmintic. Useful in all cases where astringent or bitter tonics are indicated, and especially so in disorders of the stomach and bowels, and those attended by nervous excitability and local irritation; and hence peculiarly useful in cholera, as we have in some measure tested. The bark of the root most powerful, and may be used externally as a wash for foul or mortifying ulcers; internally, it should be used with care. Leaves poisonous to cattle.

### PTELEA TRIFOLIATA.

*Common names*—HEALALL, AGUEBARK, PICKAWAY ANISE, WINGSEED, &c.

THE *Ptelea trifoliata* is a shrub or bush, growing usually in clusters from five to ten feet high. The roots are long and

crooked; of a singularly mottled and rough appearance outside, which consists of a kind of brawny or scurvy material, and when rubbed off, leaves a smooth, white, thick unctuous bark, inclined to yellow when dry, which is the medicinal part.

The stems or shrubs are covered with a lightish colored, sometimes spotted, bark, on which arise peculiar little ruptured elevations, whilst the branches, towards their ends, are dark or brown, very smooth, and of rather a thick or clumsy appearance.

Leaves on long footstalks, scattered on the branches, ternate, entire, dark green on the upper, and light on the under side, recurved or bent backward.

Flowers diœcious, paniced or clustered, the clusters either scattered, or growing from the ends of the branches, of a greenish-white color, producing, towards autumn, a cluster of light colored, two celled samaras or double winged flat seed vessels containing two seeds.

The bark of the root of healall, is an excellent stimulant expectorant tonic; useful in all cases of debility, and particularly in agues or intermittent fevers. It has also been highly extolled as a remedy in consumptions of the lungs, having been sold, as a nostrum, at a high price. In this instance it was tintured in whisky. The powdered bark of the root may be administered in doses of a fourth or half a tea-spoonful in hot water, three times a day; or a table-spoonful of the tincture an equal number of times during the same interval. The tincture is made by infusing two ounces of the powdered bark in a pint of proof spirits and the same quantity of water.

Equal parts of the ptelea and the bitter ash, (*Euonymus atropurpureus*.) is highly recommended in all complaints of the breast and lungs. Used in the same way as the bitter tonic or other bitters. The ptelea is also a valuable addition to any of the bitter preparations.

The leaves, according to *RAFINESQUE*, are useful in healing wounds and for worms, either in tea or poultice. He also says, that in Louisiana this shrub is called *Boispuant*.

---

### PYROLA ROTUNDIFOLIA.

*Common names*—WILD LETTUCE, WINTERGREEN.

Root perennial, long, round, white, and horizontal. Leaves evergreen, small, round, smooth, resembling the round smooth-leaved garden lettuce. Flower stems, ten or twelve inches high, supporting numerous white flowers. A tea of this article is good to take internally for diseases of the skin; and externally to wash ulcers and all eruptions of the skin

## RHAMNUS CATHARTICA.

*Common names*—BUCKTHORN, PURGING BUCKTHORN

THIS shrub grows in woods, or hedges; and attains, if cultivated, the height of fifteen feet. The berries have a faint disagreeable smell, and nauseous bitter taste. They have been long esteemed as a cathartic, celebrated in dropsy and rheumatism. They occasion griping, sickness, and dryness of the mouth and throat, leaving a thirst of long continuance. They may, however, be combined with other cathartics, and are thus united in Dr. REED's celebrated anti-bilious pills.

The bark of the buckthorn is said to be of great service in reducing inveterate inflammation of the eyes, and for curing the itch, as it cleanses the skin and relieves the burning heat without repelling the humors. Used in decoction as a wash. Also said to be tonic, and antiseptic.

---

## RHEUM PALMATUM.

*Common name*—RHUBARB.

THIS root is a native of China and the East Indies, but is now cultivated in both Europe and America. The rhubarb employed in medicine is imported from Russia, Turkey, and the East Indies. But that which is raised in our own gardens, if allowed to attain to the age of six, eight, or ten years, is said to be equally good or better than the imported.

Rhubarb is a fine mild and tonic purge, very useful in bowel complaints, as it has a tendency to leave the bowels in a costive state; it therefore should never be used in costive habits. Dose from one to two tea-spoonfuls.

A very elegant and pleasant medicine for children may be made by scorching or rather roasting, but not burning, pulverized rhubarb, and putting about one ounce to a pint of brandy with enough essence of cinnamon to give it a good flavor, and then sweetening very sweet with loaf sugar. This, in tea-spoonful or larger doses, is a very valuable remedy for all bowel complaints.

---

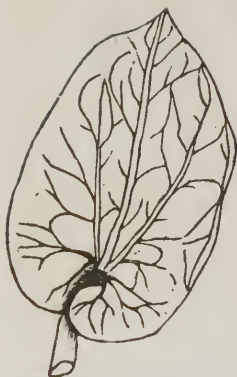
## RHUS GLABRA.

*Common name*—SUMACH.

THE common upland sumach rises to the height of from five to ten feet, producing many long compound leaves which turn red in autumn. The berries are also red when ripe, and are



RHEUM PALMATUM.



RHEUM EMODI.



RHEUM COMPACTUM.



*Quercus alba*



*Quercus alba*



*Quercus alba*





**RUBUS STRIGOSUS, ( Red Raspberry ).**



(Faint text, likely a botanical name or description)



of an agreeable but very sharp acid taste. The bark, leaves, or berries, may be used as medicine, and possess valuable properties, being astringent, tonic, and diuretic. Either of them may be used in strong decoction, in all cases in which medicines of this class are needed. The berries made into a tea and sweetened, make a pleasant drink for children. The bark of the root is said to be a mild cathartic.

In strangury the sumach is said to promote the discharge of urine, relieving difficulties of the kidneys, and strengthening the urinary organs. The berries and leaves are found equal to nutgalls in dying or making ink, giving a deep and permanent black.

An infusion of the bark of the root is said, by Dr. FAHNESTOCK, to be almost a specific for mercurial salivation.

---

### RUBUS STRIGOSUS.

*Common name*—RED RASPBERRY.

THERE are several species of the raspberry good for medicine, but the red is the kind most highly recommended, the leaves of which are the part used. The stem grows from two to four feet high, commonly straight and without branches, very thickly covered with stiff hairs. The leaves are somewhat similar to the common black raspberry leaves, pale green on the upper, and almost white on the under side.

No author, we believe, has mentioned this article medicinally but Dr. THOMSON. The leaves are a valuable astringent; in decoction, useful in bowel complaints, and for external application, to moisten poultices for burns and scalds, and for washing sore nipples. A strong tea is an excellent article, says Dr. THOMSON, to regulate the pains of women in travail.

---

RUBUS TRIVIALIS.—*Common name*—DEWBERRY.

RUBUS VILLOSUS.—*Common name*—HIGH BLACKBERRY.

THESE articles are too common to need a description; and as both possess the same properties, they are arranged under the same head. They are valuable astringents, rather too powerful to use without some care. The dewberry is considered the best; and has cured dysentery after the bayberry and Dr. THOMSON's best remedies had failed. The tea of the roots may be administered in tea-cupful doses, for adults, and table-spoonful, for children, and is far less offensive to the taste and stomach than most other astringents in use. One ounce of the root to a pint of hot water makes a decoction of suitable strength.

A jelly made of the berries when they are turning from red to black, is much esteemed by some for gravel; and Dr. THACHER suggests that a tea of the root might be more efficacious.

The ripe fruit, either fresh gathered or made into jam or jelly, taken at pleasure, is a very pleasant and highly efficacious remedy in diarrhœa and dysentery.

---

#### RUMEX CRISPUS.

*Common names*—CURLED DOCK, NARROW DOCK, SOUR DOCK, YELLOW DOCK.

Root perennial, spindle-shaped, yellow, with a few fibers. Leaves mostly radical, very long and narrow, waved and curled on the margin.

The root of this plant is slightly purgative; and both root and seeds are said to have been successfully used in the cure of dysentery. The bruised or pulverized roots made into an ointment or tea is a valuable external application for itch and most other diseases of the skin, using at the same time a decoction internally. The dry root pulverized and steeped, one tea-spoonful to a tea-cup of hot water, is an excellent alterant and corrector of the fluids in all cutaneous affections and various other complaints, particularly ulcers and scurvy. In this last disease it is recommended very highly; one case successfully treated with nothing but the decoction of the dock root, has fallen under our own notice. Bad ulcers and hard tumors have been removed by the application of the bruised root in poultice. A strong decoction in milk, is recommended by Dr. J. WILLIAMS as an infallible remedy for bleeding at the stomach.

---

#### SAMBUCUS CANADENSIS.

*Common names*—ELDER, SWEET ELDER, BLACK ELDER.

THE common sweet elder grows too plentifully in this country to need any description. The inner bark, flowers, and berries, are used as medicine, being cathartic, emetic, and diuretic.

The inner bark is highly recommended as a diuretic in dropsy. For this purpose take of the inner green bark of the common elder, two handfuls, Lisbon, Teneriffe, or Maderia wine, or cider, two quarts, digest for twenty-four hours, when it is fit for use. Dose, one gill every morning before eating, or a larger quantity may be taken if the stomach will bear it. This preparation is a certain diuretic, producing a copious discharge of urine.

The flowers, in decoction, are a mild anodyne purgative,

useful for the complaints of children. The bark may also be made into an ointment with cream, lard, or fresh butter, and is a cooling application for most eruptions of the skin. Likewise the bark boiled and applied to the cheek, is said to cure the toothache. The berries may be used for the same purposes as the bark and flowers, gently loosening the bowels, and promoting perspiration and the secretion of urine. The young leaf buds are purgative in a high degree, being too powerful and drastic for use.

---

### SANICULA MARYLANDICA.

*Common names*—SANICLE, INDIAN SANICLE, BLACK SNAKEROOT.

Root small, fibrous, and black. Leaves, growing at the top of a long naked stem, five in a whorl, several stems rising from the same root. The scape or flower stem rises considerably higher than the leaf stalks, with two or three whorls of small leaflets near the top. Flowers few, white, in terminal corymbs. Growing in woods or thickets to the height of eighteen or twenty-four inches.

A tea of this root is considered by some of the Indians as a sovereign remedy for rattle snake bites. For this purpose, take three bunches of roots, and boil them in a pint of water, and drink in divided doses, at intervals of twenty or thirty minutes. At the same time prepare a decoction of the leaves and stems, and bathe the bitten part. By pursuing this course the Indian doctors say they can cure a snake bite although it may have happened two days previous to the application.

The sanicle is also a good remedy for sore throat, croup, hives, and other diseases of the skin, and for fevers. They use it in tea, or chew the root and swallow the juice. One Indian said he was cured of a fever, with this article, after other remedies had failed.

---

### SANGUINARIA CANADENSIS.

*Common names*—BLOODROOT, RED PUCCOON, REDROOT.

Root perennial, horizontal, fleshy, throwing out a few fibers, reddish outside, emitting, when fresh and broken, a bright red juice. Leaves few, roundish, or heart-shaped, upper side a light green, under side almost white, only one on a stalk. Flowers white, supported on several stalks, putting forth very early in the spring before the leaves are near grown. Grows in rich woodlands, along roads, and in fields around stumps.

It is said the Indians highly esteem this article for its medi-



cinal properties; and it has also acquired considerable celebrity amongst the whites. We, however, think it a rather unsafe medicine applied internally, except in small quantity combined with other articles to modify its action. The powdered root, in doses of fifteen or twenty grains, is a powerful emetic, but it ought not to be administered in this way.

The bloodroot is used as an expectorant in coughs and inflammations of the lungs; and for croup it is, by some, deemed a sovereign remedy. For this complaint, a strong infusion may be given in table-spoonful, or less, doses, according to the age of the patient. Infused in vinegar, the bloodroot is an excellent application to tetter or ring-worm; and the powder applied to fungus or proud flesh, removes it. It has also cured polypus of the nose, when used as a snuff. But the principal use which we make of this article has been in combination with other substances in the form of cathartic pills.

---

#### SCROPHULARIA MARYLANDICA.

*Common names*—FIGWORT, SQUARE-STALK, CARPENTER'S SQUARE, HEALALL.

Roots perennial, white, branching, something larger than a goose quill. Stem erect, square, jointed, branched, branches axillary to the leaves, opposite; issuing from each joint. Leaves opposite, oblong-cordate, broad at the base and tapering to a long point, edges jagged with large unequal, broad, acuminate teeth, supported on a pretty long footstalk, having a peculiar smooth or unctuous feel, and becoming spotted towards fall. Flowers greenish-purple, growing on branched footstalks, which form loose panicles at the tops of the branches, producing roundish pods containing many small seeds. Grows in considerable abundance along roads and open situations in the neighborhood of fields, houses, &c., attaining the height of from three to six feet.

The root of this plant is said, by PETER SMITH, to be very valuable in female complaints, particularly to relieve the peculiar pains attending difficult menstruation, and will, he says, restore obstructed lochia, and may be usefully employed both before and after child-birth; "in tea or decoction, which may be freely drank, being quite innocent, but very efficacious." These properties have also been confirmed by others, being very highly recommended by good authority. The leaves are useful as an external application to bruises, wounds, ulcers, &c., and both leaves and roots may be made into a salve with lard, or butter, and applied to sores and swellings.

---



SCUTELLARIA LATERIFLORA, ( Blue Skullcap ).





SILPHIUM PERFOLIATUM, ( Cup-plant ).





## SCUTELLARIA LATERIFLORA.

*Common names*—SCULLCAP, MADWEED, HOODWORT, &c.

Roots perennial, fibrous, yellow. Stem erect, square, from one to three feet high, much branched, branches opposite, smooth, square. Leaves opposite, very thin, supported on long petioles or foot-stalks, broad at the base, end acute, dentate or toothed. Flowers pale blue, growing on the branches, which contain nothing but the flowers and very small bracts or leaves.

Dr. BEACH says this plant is "tonic, nervine, and anti-spasmodic; remarkably efficacious in *chorea* or *St. Vitus' Dance*; with the infusion I have cured a great number of cases of this disease." Much interest was also excited a few years since, respecting this plant, by its being reported to be a specific for the cure of hydrophobia. It was, however, soon discarded by the Faculty, and its merits have not been much investigated since.

"This plant," says RAFINESQUE, "has been carefully analyzed by CADET, in Paris, and found to contain many powerful chemical principles, which evince active properties." It is recommended in convulsions, lock-jaw, hydrophobia, and all cases of nervous irritations, either in tea, or infusion. We think this article well worthy of the attention of botanic practitioners, with a view to ascertain its real virtues.

## SILPHIUM PERFOLIATUM.

*Common names*—RAGGED CUP, INDIAN CUP-PLANT.

Root perennial, large, long, crooked, forming a joint where the old stalk grew, which, decaying, leaves a hole, several of which are found in all the old roots, with fibers issuing at each joint. Stem rising to the height of seven or eight feet, being angular or square, with the sides concave or sunk, which makes the corners very sharp. Leaves opposite, very large, and jagged with deep, large teeth, connate, or united at the base, the edges of the wings by which they are united being so raised as to form a deep excavation or cup, which may contain from two to four table-spoonfuls of water. Flowers numerous, yellow, and large. Grows in rich bottom or intervale lands.

The root of this plant is very useful in fevers, ague-cakes, inward bruises, weakness, ulcers, and, if persevered in, will, the Indians say, make an old man young; the inference from which is, that it is a powerful alterative restorative. It is used in strong tea, the root requiring long steeping to extract the

strength. The Indians say that it dissolves ague-cakes and carries them away, cures fevers, &c. It is also one of the articles which they employ in their vapor bathing or steaming to promote perspiration, and is regarded as a highly valuable medicine.

---

### SPIGELIA MARYLANDICA.

*Common names*—CAROLINA PINK, INDIAN PINK, &c.

Root perennial, branched, and very fibrous. Stems erect, simple, smooth. Leaves opposite, long-oval, outer points acute, entire, smooth. Flowers terminal, large, bright red outside, yellow within, upper end resembling a golden star. Found in Tennessee, and at the South.

Carolina pink is an active vermifuge, and somewhat cathartic. Its properties were first learned from the Cherokee Indians. Used in decoction, most beneficial in large quantities, in syrup, or made very sweet. In too large doses it causes headache, stupor, and delirium. When these symptoms occur it should be discontinued.

---

### TANACETUM VULGARE.

*Common name*—TANSY.

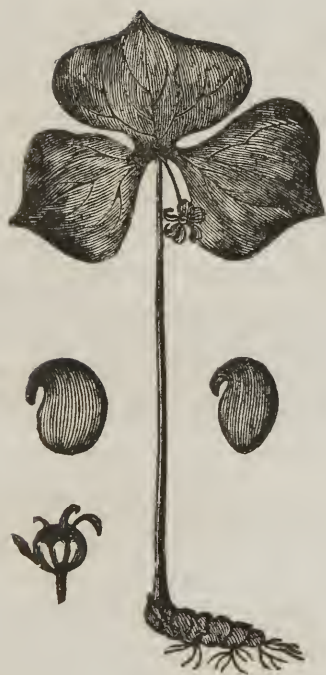
COMMON tansy is a warm bitter, and in the form of tea, is useful for worms, female complaints, &c. It is also said that if fresh meat be rubbed with it, the flesh-fly will not injure it.

---

### TELA ARANEI.

*Common names*—COBWEB, SPIDER'S-WEB.

ALTHOUGH some of the virtues of the cobweb were known and published as early as 1644, and notwithstanding it has long been ranked amongst empirical remedies for the ague, yet it is but recently that it has attracted the attention of medical men. And whether it will sustain the high character which has been given it, on further trial, is uncertain; and even if it does, it will probably be considered too disgusting ever to be extensively introduced into the practice of medicine. It is said to be almost a specific for intermittent fever, and has afforded extraordinary benefit in consumption, by allaying irritation and procuring relief in at least one case past the reach of common remedies. Dr. JACKSON observes, that he might multiply instances of its efficacy and tranquilizing effects on the human system.



TRILLIUM LATERIFOLIUM, ( Birth-root ).



Cobweb has afforded remarkable relief in asthma, having in one instance, procured sleep the first night after taking a dose, (nearly a scruple,) which the patient had not enjoyed for more than six years. It is recommended as being useful in spasmodic complaints; and as procuring the most tranquilizing sleep, followed by no bad effects. In one case, that of an old infirm asthmatic, slight but pleasant delirium was produced, resembling a dose of nitrous oxide gas, (sometimes called exhilarating gas,) though of longer duration. The muscular energy was very much increased, so that the patient could not be kept in bed, but jumped and danced about the room nearly all night; but towards morning fell into a quiet sleep, and no unpleasant symptoms followed. The cobweb has also proved highly beneficial applied to irritable sores.

The kind of spider which is said produces the best web, is of a brown or black color, and inhabits cellars, barns, and other out-houses and dark places. It is in these situations, therefore, that the web ought to be procured, as that which is found in fields is said to be of no value. The dose is five grains, given in the form of pill, once in three hours.

From all the facts recorded respecting the medical properties of this article, it seems to merit a trial in all cases of irritability, in fever and ague, hysterics, and hypochondria. The fact, that no unpleasant symptoms have followed its most violent operation, is certainly favorable to its further trial.

---

### TRILLIUM LATIFOLIUM.\*

*Common names*—BIRTHROOT, BETHROOT, JEWSHARP, INDIAN BALM, SNAKEBITE, &c.

THERE are several species of this valuable family of plants, having the same general appearance, and all, or nearly all, of which may be used indiscriminately for the same purposes.

Roots perennial, oblong, thick and short, somewhat resembling the wild turnip, wrinkled, giving out many small fibers. Stem, smooth, erect, from ten to twelve inches high. Leaves three in a whorl at the top of the stem; and one terminal flower rising above the leaves; color white, red, purple, and sometimes mixed.

The birthroot is astringent, tonic, styptic, pectoral, and anti-septic. Useful in all kinds of hemorrhage, immoderate menstruation, asthma, catarrhal cough, diarrhœa, dysentery, &c. The pulverized root may be given in tea-spoonful doses, or it may be steeped, one ounce to the pint, and given in gill doses; or the root may be combined with other astringents or bitters.

---

\* *RAFINESQUE*.—Probably the *Trillium erectum* of LINNÆUS.



Externally the root is beneficial in poultice applied to tumors, carbuncles, bad or putrid ulcers, and mortification. The leaves are also said to be useful applied to tumors. In all excessive female evacuations, the birthroot is one of our most valuable articles, and is likewise highly esteemed by the Indians for the same purposes. They also use it to cure the bites of rattlesnakes. Dyes red with alum.

---

### TRIOSTEUM PERFOLIATUM.

*Common names*—GENTIAN, GINSON, YELLOW GENTIAN, HORSE GENTIAN, FEVERWORT.

Roots perennial, round, long, and tapering, darkish brown, or light color; taste, a pungent bitter, leaving, after being chewed, a biting and somewhat warm impression on the tongue and mouth. Stems many, erect, eighteen to forty inches high, hairy and round. Leaves opposite, lower ones connate at the base, that is, growing together so that the two leaves seem to form but one, with the stem passing through the center, like the thorough-wort. Flowers two to six, reddish or purple, growing at the base of the leaves, giving rise to large yellow berries crowned with four or five small leaves which are the calyx of the flower. Found in dry oak, hickory, and other lands; most abundant in limestone soils.

The gentian root is a very good bitter tonic, mildly stimulating, and in large doses actively cathartic. Useful in intermittent fevers, and generally in all cases where tonics are needed. The riper berries are often tinctured in spirits for fever and ague. The root may also be used in the laxative bitter tonic. Dose as a purge, about two tea-spoonfuls.

---

### ULMUS FULVA.

*Common names*—SLIPPERY ELM, RED ELM.

THE bark of the red elm is an article of much importance in the practice of medicine, and particularly in medical surgery. Infused in water, it affords an abundant mucilage, which is useful in dysentery, coughs, pleurisies, quinsies, &c. A very good way of preparing the bark for internal use is, to pulverize it finely, mix an equal quantity of sugar with it, and add warm water enough to form it into a soft pulpy mucilage. Some practitioners, however, prefer employing the under bark, simply infused in cold water, the patient drinking off the mucilaginous liquid. Prepared in either way, it is excellent in diarrhœa and dysentery, to sheath and lubricate the intestines. It is likewise valuable in sore throats, colds, coughs, fevers, &c.



VERBENA HASTATA, ( Blue Vervain ).



But the most valuable purpose to which the red elm can probably be applied is to the making of poultices, for all kinds of ulcers, inflammations, &c. See under the head of *Poultices*.

---

#### URTICA DIOICA.

*Common name*—NETTLE.

A WELL known weed, growing in rich lands, either dry or slightly moist, covered with sharp prickles which, when applied to the skin, irritate and inflame very much. Hence useful in palsy applied to the diseased side or limbs. Used in decoction for gravel, inflammation of the kidneys, pleurisy, spitting of blood, and all hemorrhages; the juice said to be the most powerful styptic known. Also highly recommended as a tonic in fevers; the seeds and flowers, to be taken in doses not exceeding one drachm (eighth of an ounce) three times a day.

---

#### VERBASCUM THAPSUS.

*Common name*—MULLEIN.

THIS valuable plant is too common to need any description, growing in old fields, wastes, by the road sides, &c.

The leaves are used instead of flannel for frictions, and dipped in hot water or medicated decoctions they are valuable for fomentations. Also useful in poultices applied to swellings and contracted sinews.

A strong tea, taken internally, is good for agues, croup, asthma, cough, bleeding at the lungs; and externally, in wash, for piles, scalds, and burns. The flowers are said to be better than the leaves; perhaps the seeds may be still better; they are recommended for children for fits. A fine relaxing oil, we are informed, may be made from the flowers by putting them into a vial or bottle, corking it tight, and placing it in the sun.

---

#### VERBENA HASTATA.

*Common names*—VERVAIN, VERVINE, PURVAIN.

VERVINE is a common plant, growing at the road sides, in unploughed fields, and in open waste lands. There are three kinds or varieties, differing in their appearance, as well as in the color of their blossoms, being white, red, and blue.

It is said to be a good emetic, ranking, among herbalists who are accustomed to use it, next to the lobelia, and is said, by Dr. THOMSON, to have cured the consumption. It is an excellent

sudorific, and may be used in decoction in all cases of colds, or obstructions of any kind.

---

### XANTHORHIZA APIIFOLIA.

*Common names*—YELLOW-WORT, YELLOW-WOOD, PARSLEY-LEAVED YELLOW-ROOT.

THIS small shrub is a native of the Southern States, and is also said to be very abundant along the Ohio river. It grows from two to three feet high, somewhat thicker than a goose quill, bark smooth, but that on the young shoots covered with angular fissures, the wood a bright yellow. Leaves compound, leaflets very deeply jagged with acute teeth, and crowded together at the top of the stem. Flowers on drooping racemes or spikes, of a dark purple color. Roots from three to twelve inches long, about the size of one's little finger, and sending up many scions or suckers.

The yellow-wort is a pure bitter tonic. Both the wood and bark of the roots, may be used for medicine. It may be prepared by itself, and given in decoction, or combined with other tonics, and employed in all cases of disease.

---

### XANTHOXYLUM FRAXINEUM.

*Common name*—PRICKLY ASH.

A PERENNIAL shrub, growing in rich and commonly wetish soils, sometimes to the height of fifteen feet, but usually about eight or ten. The bark is of an ash color, leaves somewhat similar to those of the elder. The branches are covered with strong sharp prickles, from which it derives its most popular name. The berries, as they are called, are greenish-red and hard, covered with a capsule, or husk, full of little holes or dots; warm and pungent.

Both the bark and berries are useful as medicine, and are very valuable; berries the best. They are good in rheumatism, cold hands and feet, and added to the bitter tonic, are a very useful remedy in almost all complaints, particularly intermittent fevers. It has also been recommended, both as an external and internal remedy for malignant ulcers, &c.





**XANTHOXYLUM FRAXINEUM, ( Prickly Ash ).**

62



*Salix purpurea* L.

## DIRECTIONS.

### FOR THE GATHERING, SELECTION, AND PRESERVATION OF VEGETABLE MEDICINES.

---

THE gathering of medicinal herbs, roots, and barks, at the proper seasons, and the judicious selection and careful preservation of them, are matters of the utmost importance. Too much attention to these subjects can scarcely be given; and all persons engaged therein, ought to have their minds suitably impressed with the vast importance of their avocation. When we reflect upon the sufferings of the sick—their anxiety, as well as the sympathy of their friends, and the necessity, in many instances, of promptly administering the best remedies in order to save life, we shall be the better able to appreciate the high importance of carefully selecting, preparing, and preserving the various articles of medicine, and the heavy responsibility of those who for gain, or from any other motive, are either selling, or using in practice, articles which have been damaged, or are otherwise of inferior medicinal powers. By using inferior medicines the sufferings and anxiety of the sick may not only be protracted, but many valuable lives may also be actually lost. And we cannot close these remarks without expressing an ardent wish that all persons engaged in the purchasing of the simple articles of botanic medicine, would exercise the utmost care to instruct those engaged in gathering and curing them, in the best manner of doing it, and then rigidly enforcing a compliance with those instructions by refusing to purchase damaged articles. It is from the extreme and criminal carelessness or negligence in the curing of medicine, that disappointments, as to their efficacy, arises, and by which means also, valuable articles have often fallen into disrepute. Great care ought also to be taken to reject or separate every thing from the medicinal article which does not belong to it; as poisonous substances are sometimes gathered along with medicines.

1. Roots which are *annual*, that is, grow from the seed every year, should be gathered just before flowering, as they are then in the highest state of perfection. Roots which are *biennial*, that is, spring from the seed one year, live through the winter, arrive at maturity, bear seed and die during the second year, ought to be gathered in the fall of the first year, or

early in the spring of the second. *Triennial* roots should be collected in the fall of the second, or spring of the third year; and *perennial* roots ought to be collected either in the fall after the leaves and tops begin to die, or in the spring before they begin to grow. Roots which are gathered out of season, either lose in their properties, weight, value, or in all these respects.

Soon after the roots are collected, and before they become dry, they must be washed clean, first trimming off the extraneous or useless parts, and carefully throwing out such as are worm-eaten, unsound, or dead; being mindful in washing not to let the roots remain too long in the water, as that will extract some of their virtues. After washing, they should, if large, be cut into small pieces and spread in a dry, airy place, or in the sunshine; but if spread in the open air, great care must be taken to prevent their getting wet with rain or dew, as this will very much impair their value. When perfectly dry, they should be carefully packed away in jars, boxes, or barrels, according to the quantity, and placed in a dry, airy room, but never in a damp one.

2. Herbs and leaves ought generally to be gathered about the time of flowering, as they are then in their greatest perfection. Some, however, the *lobelia* for instance, with an eye to economy, may be collected about the time the leaves begin to change from green to yellow, or rather before, as the seed is then ripe. Herbs and leaves should be dried in the same way, and with the same precautions as roots, and preserved in the same manner, after drying. They ought to be gathered in dry weather, after the dew goes off in the morning, and before it falls at evening. Such as are imperfect or injured, dry, withered, or dead, must be rejected.

3. Barks should be gathered in the spring or fall; and ought to be taken from young thrifty trees, freed from every thing but the inner living bark, carefully dried, and preserved, as directed for roots and herbs.

4. Flowers should be collected when in perfection, and in dry weather, after the dew is off, carefully and rapidly dried in the shade, and preserved as directed for other articles.

5. In the preparing of roots and herbs for use, if to be done on a large scale, grinding in a grist mill, and bolting most articles, is to be preferred. To prepare them for grinding, if the weather be dry and a hot sun, the article to be ground must be spread in the sunshine, until it becomes perfectly dry and brittle; or if the weather be not suitable, the article may be put into an oven moderately heated, or, what is better, spread on an upper floor over the fire where there is no ceiling over head. When sufficiently dry, if it be roots, put them into a barrel or box, and with an axe or any thing else more suitable, beat and break

them up so that they will readily go into the mill ; and if they have not been well washed, they may be sifted, and as the dirt, by the process of beating, is separated from the roots, it will readily sift out and leave the roots clean.

Herbs are sometimes put into a box made for cutting straw for horses, and cut up in pieces of from one to two inches long, then they are run lightly through the mill and the stems or woody parts separated from the leaves, when they are run through again and again, if necessary, until made sufficiently fine.

Bark must also be cut into short pieces, and run through the mill, repeating the operation until reduced to a proper fineness. In general, bark is not made so fine as other articles, it being sifted instead of bolted.

For pulverizing medicines in a mortar, on a smaller scale, the drying must be done in the same manner as for grinding.

After the medicines are pulverized they should be kept in bottles, jars, boxes, or barrels, according to the quantity. But as all medicines lose something by being long pulverized, unless completely excluded from the air, all persons using or dealing in them, should, when grinding or otherwise pulverizing them, have in view the probable quantity which they might use or dispose of in any given time.





## COMPOUNDS.

---

HAVING gone through with a description of the simple articles, and pointed out their most obvious properties and acknowledged virtues, together with their mode of preparation, doses, &c., we now direct our attention to the various compounds into which they enter.

In the first place, under the different heads, we will give the compounds for which *patents* have been obtained, and then introduce such others of the same class as we may think most valuable or necessary to give an idea of the various ways in which simple articles may be combined to increase their virtues or improve their taste. We shall, however, omit some of our own prescriptions to make room for others which have been obligingly communicated, usually giving the name of the individual who communicated the article, or the work from which it is taken. We also intend introducing, in a promiscuous manner, a variety of recipos selected from the great numbers which have been furnished us by the friends of the work. Many, however, that we have rejected are unquestionably valuable, but we are compelled to omit them in order that we may confine this volume within its assigned limits.

We are, however, constrained, before leaving this subject, to observe, that to many, no doubt, our selection of simples, as well as preparations of compounds, may be considered by far too large. In reply to objections of this kind, should they be raised, we will observe, that the object was to benefit as far as possible, individuals and families in all parts of the country, enabling them, from their own gardens, their own fields, or their own forests, to obtain the healing balm, the potent remedy, to cure their various ills. We believe that every soil, in every clime, that produces the means of sustaining the body while in health, also abounds with a profusion of remedies suitable to the wants of the sick. But these remedies are not every where known, and for the want of this knowledge the people must suffer, must languish, and die. It is the duty of those who wish to confer all the benefit in their power upon

suffering humanity, to diffuse, not only the knowledge of the medicines of their own particular neighborhood, but, as far as in their power, the medicines which have been found useful in other places and in other climates. The people of one country ought not to be made dependent upon those of another for their medicines any more than for their bread; and it was under these impressions that we took so wide a range in the articles of our *materia medica*. Every section of country should be zealously engaged in developing its own medical resources, in testing and proving the remedies of its own soil. Medicines might then be had, fresh and sound, free from adulteration, and at half, or less than half, the expense at which many of them are now procured.

It is also no less with the same view of benefiting the people generally of the United States, that we introduce such a large number of compounds and recipes, to show how variously the great profusion of medical plants may be combined, and thereby either increased in value or rendered more pleasant and agreeable.

---

#### DOSE OF MEDICINE.

THE quantity of medicine to be taken as a dose of the following compounds, as well as throughout the whole work, are calculated for an adult or grown person, unless otherwise stated; for children, the doses may be graduated by the following rule:—

For a youth of fifteen years, the dose may be two-thirds the quantity for a grown person; for a child of ten years, one-half the quantity; for one of five years, one-third the quantity; for one of two years, one-sixth the quantity; and for a child of one year, one-tenth the quantity. These doses, however, will necessarily be often either lessened, or enlarged, according to circumstances and the effects produced; the grand object being to give enough; but, at the same time, using proper discretion, and not give too much.

The circumstances, besides age, most commonly having an influence in graduating the quantity of medicine to be given as a dose, are, *sex*, *temperament*, and *idiosyncrasy*. Females generally require less doses than males, and those of a warm sanguine temperament, than the cold phlegmatic. Idiosyncrasy is a peculiarity of constitution by which, independently of temperament, the individual is rendered unusually susceptible, or insusceptible of certain remedies. For instance, some persons will bear but the smallest, or even less than the smallest dose of cayenne. Others again, require a uniformly lesser or greater than usual

dose of the different preparations of lobelia to produce any given effect; whilst other individuals are to be found upon whom certain medicines act in a manner quite different from what they do upon people in general. These deviations, however, are far less frequently met with in the employment of innocent botanic remedies, than they are in those of a contrary character; nevertheless, when they do present themselves they ought always to be taken into consideration in prescribing for the sick.

### ADHESIVE AND STRENGTHENING PLASTERS.

#### ADHESIVE PLASTER.

Take of, Common turpentine,	2 lbs.
Salt butter,	1 lb.
Beeswax,	1 lb.
Balsam of fir,	1 lb.

Melt all the articles together; then strain and simmer down to the consistence of soft wax. This plaster is for the purpose of confining together the edges of deep or large wounds and ulcers, and thus enable them with greater facility to heal. When their application is necessary, spread some of this plaster on a long narrow slip of cloth, then bring the edges of the wound or ulcer together; or as nearly so as possible, when a piece of the cloth, cut to the proper length, is to be applied across the wound, and so continue laying them on until it is covered from one end to the other. In some instances, the wound may be covered wholly by one plaster, in which case small holes must be made through it to permit the matter to escape should any be formed.

#### STRENGTHENING PLASTER.

Take of, Rosin,	}	1 lb. each.
Beeswax,		
White turpentine,		
Black pepper, pulverized,		1 table-spoonful,
Brandy,		1 pint.

Put the whole into a new earthen crock, and melt and simmer until the brandy is all evaporated.

This plaster is also useful applied to ulcers, wounds, &c., as a salve.

Strengthening plasters may also be made by melting turpentine with a quantity of rosin sufficient to give it a proper consistence. For summer use it will require more, and for winter less, rosin.

## ADHESIVE AND STRENGTHENING PLASTER.

Take of, White rosin, (or any other,)	3 lbs.
Beeswax,	4 oz.
Burgundy pitch,	4 oz.
Mutton tallow,	4 oz.
Melt these together, and then add :	
Sweet oil,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
Camphor,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
West India rum,	1 gill,
Sassafras oil,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.

When the latter articles have become incorporated with the former, let the whole be poured into a vessel of water, and work it in the hands till cold. In some seasons, and climates, a little more rosin, or a little more sweet oil, is required, to make it of the right consistence.

This is used as a sticking plaster ; and also, in rheumatism. It is likewise useful in cuts, ulcers, &c.—[*American Practice.*]

## ANODYNE DROPS.

Take of, Compound tincture of valerian,	1 pint,
Colic drops,	1 pint,
Diaphoretic drops,	1 pint,
Essence of anise,	1 pint,
Simple tincture of valerian,	4 pints.

Mix and shake well together. *Dose*, from one tea-spoonful, to one table-spoonful, in twice the quantity of water, repeated at discretion till relief is obtained.

These drops are good for pains of every description, particularly in the stomach, bowels, or head. Also, for cholera morbus, diarrhœa, dysentery, &c., to be taken alone, or mixed with tea of the anti-morbific, anti-dysenteric, or astringent powders.—[*Dr. Wells.*]

For the method of preparing the several ingredients which compose the above compound, the reader is referred to their respective heads, in the subsequent part of this volume.

## ANTACIDS.

THESE are medicines which neutralize the acidity of the stomach. A sourness of the contents of this organ very often occurs with persons who are apparently otherwise in good health ; but is more especially attendant on dyspepsy or indigestion ; and is likewise often met with in many other complaints. It is at all



times proper to make use of the antacids when a sourness or acidity of the stomach prevails. The article which can most readily be obtained for common use, is,

## WHITE LYE.

TAKE of good wood ashes, from four to six table-spoonfuls, put them into a vessel, and then pour about three gills of boiling water on them, and immediately cover the vessel with a plate, or other suitable article, to exclude the air. Made in this way, the lye is deprived of that sharp biting taste which it always acquires if left uncovered and exposed to the air, in lieu of which it has, to many at least, a sweetish and rather pleasant taste. This may be used in doses of half a tea-cupful, more or less, in all cases of acidity of the stomach, especially when taking an emetic.

## NEUTRALIZING MIXTURE, OR PHYSIC.

Take of, Rhubarb, (pulverized,)	2 scruples,
Sal æratus, do.	2 “
Peppermint plant, do.	2 “

Add half a pint of boiling water, sweetened with loaf sugar, and add a table-spoonful of brandy. *Dose*, one or two table-spoonfuls every quarter, half, or one or two hours, according to symptoms. *Use*.—This is one of the most valuable preparations known for cholera morbus, cholera infantum, or summer complaint of children, diarrhœa, dysentery, &c. Its operation and action appear to be specific, or almost infallible.—[*American Practice*.]

For other preparations, of this class, see under the head “*alkalies*,” in the *Materia Medica*.

## ANTHELMINTICS, OR VERMIFUGES.

## WORM DROPS.

Take of, Spirits of turpentine,	} each equal parts. Mix. Shake before using.
Castor oil,	
Anodyne drops,	
Wells' anti-spasmodic drops,	

*Dose*—for a child of five years old, one large tea-spoonful every hour until it operates mildly as a purge. Then followed by bitter tonics.—[*Dr. J. T. Wells*.]

## ANTHELMINTIC OIL.

Take of, Castor oil, (best quality,)	1 oz.
Wormseed oil,	1 drachm,
Anise oil,	1 drachm,
Tincture of myrrh,	1 drachm.

Mix, and warm it to the temperature of milk, which is necessary in order that the ingredients may become fully incorporated. *Dose*—for an adult, one large tea-spoonful, three or four times a day, for three days. For children, in proportion, according to age. Should the bowels remain inactive until the second day in the evening, give rhubarb, or any other approved cathartic medicine.

This preparation is highly recommended by a person of competent knowledge and experience, and therefore merits a trial.

## SPEARMINT TEA.

Take of, Spearmint,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
Hot water,	1 pint.

Infuse fifteen minutes and strain. *Use*.—This tea is said to be one of the most powerful vermifuges in the vegetable kingdom. It is also a warm stomachic, useful in relieving nausea, and retching to vomit. Those who have children that are subject to an excess of worms in the alimentary canal, will find the importance of the use of this tea, with other anthelmintic medicines. It is also strongly diuretic, and diminishes fever and inflammation, by promoting a discharge of urine. *Dose*—one table-spoonful every two hours, for a child one year old.—[*American Practice*.]

## WORM POWDER.

Take of, Skunk cabbage balls,	1 oz.
White wood bark,	1 oz.
Indian hemp root,	1 oz.

All pulverized fine and mixed. *Dose*—from half to a whole tea-spoonful, in melasses, three mornings in succession, before eating.

## ANTI-EMETICS.

THESE medicines are calculated to allay the irritation of the stomach and stop vomiting. They may be used in all cases where emetics operate too long, or to check spontaneous vomitings which exhaust the patient and prostrate the powers of the system. Spearmint or peppermint tea is an excellent article for this purpose, and may be freely used; but should be made very strong.

## ANTI-EMETIC DROPS.

Take of, Table salt,	2 oz.
African cayenne,	1 oz.
Vinegar, best quality,	1 quart.

Mix and bottle for use. *Dose*—one table-spoonful, or less, once in from fifteen to thirty minutes, according to the urgency of the symptoms. This is the best remedy to stop vomiting which we have ever used. A very common and ready way to make it, is to take a heaping tea-spoonful each, of salt and cayenne pepper, and add a tea-cupful of good vinegar. The most common name for this compound is pepper sauce, of which notice is sometimes taken in the treatment of disease. It is also an excellent external application to painful parts, such as rheumatism, headache, inflammations, bruises, sprains, and to palsied limbs, &c., &c.

## SPEARMINT SLING.

Take of, The bruised herb, a sufficient quantity, or  
Essence of spearmint;  
Brandy and loaf sugar, enough to make palatable  
Taken at pleasure. Very good to check vomiting.

## ANTISPASMODIC AROMATIC DROPS.

Take of, Valerian root,	3 lbs.
Ginger root, pared,	8 oz.
Cinnamon bark,	8 oz.
Anise seeds,	8 oz.
Prickly ash berries,	4 oz.
Oil of sassafras,	1½ oz.
Alcohol,	6 quarts

Pulverize the solid articles, put them into the alcohol, digest ten days in a hot sun heat, often shaking. Then strain or filter. *Dose*—from one to three tea-spoonfuls, in twice the quantity of water, once in fifteen or twenty minutes until the vomiting stops.

## MINT FOMENTATION.

Take of fresh spearmint a proper quantity; let it be bruised, and add spirits, and simmer. *Use*.—In cases of great irritability of the stomach, attended with frequent vomiting, this fomentation, applied to the pit of it, will often relieve when other means fail.—[*American Practice*.]

## ANTISEPTICS.

THIS class of medicines is used either to prevent, or to stop, mortification. They may act as stimulants, tonics, or as chemical remedies. Antiseptics include stimulants and tonics of all classes, and especially the astringents. They all produce their beneficial effects upon the same general principles by which they act in other diseases; giving action and tone to the diseased

organs. They ought to be freely used in all cases of mortification, or where there is good reason to apprehend that it may take place; both internally and externally applied, if the mortified part be so situated as to admit of external applications.

## COMPOUND TINCTURE OF MYRRH.

Take of, Best myrrh,	12 oz.
Capsicum,	1 oz.
Balsam of fir,	1 oz.
Nutmeg,	1 oz.
Brandy,	1 gallon.

The solid articles all to be finely pulverized, and infused in the brandy for ten days, in a hot sun heat, and often shaken, when it may be strained or filtered. This is a powerful antiseptic, and is highly valuable to wash and cleanse old foul ulcers, which are obstinate to heal.

## SIMPLE TINCTURE OF MYRRH.

Take of Myrrh,	12 oz.
Capsicum,	1 oz.
Peach or cherry kernels,	2 oz.
Brandy, alcohol, or highwines,	1 gallon.

Pulverize the myrrh and capsicum, peach or cherry kernels, and digest ten days in a hot sun heat, strain or filter.

For internal use in cases of dysentery, or mortification, either of the above tinctures are best made with brandy; but for external use and for internal application in common cases, the alcohol or highwines, as they are much cheaper than brandy, will answer the purpose very well. The simple tincture of myrrh is a very valuable family medicine; useful for worms, pains in the stomach, colic, headache, &c. *Dose*, from one to four tea-spoonfuls, or even more.

In addition to these compounds, the bitter and astringent tonics, as well as the diaphoretic powders, are useful internal remedies in mortifications. Poultices are also valuable external applications to mortifying sores or wounds. They may be made by boiling dogwood, (*Cornus florida*) alder or winterberry, sassafras, bayberry or white oak barks, or pond-lily, birth, or blackberry root, making a strong decoction; then skim out the barks or roots, and thicken with slippery elm, cracker, and a little ginger, to the consistence of a poultice. Or any of these barks or roots may be pulverized and mixed with slippery elm, cracker, and ginger, and moistened with the aforesaid tea. In bad cases, a small quantity of cayenne mixed with the poultice makes it more stimulating, is a valuable addition, and ought not to be neglected.

Yeast and charcoal are also amongst the most powerful and

valuable antiseptics, whether separately applied internally, or combined in a poultice externally.

### ANTISPASMODICS.

MEDICINES of this class act upon the same principle as the *Nervines*, but are much more powerful. The kinds most to be relied on, in the worst cases, such as fits, spasms, locked jaw, hydrophobia, &c., contain the nauseous properties of the *lobelia*, and are therefore not the most agreeable to use in ordinary cases as nervines.

#### ANTISPASMODIC TINCTURE.

Take of, Tincture of lobelia seeds,	1 pint,
Tincture of cayenne	1 do.
Nervine tincture,	3 gills.

Mix and bottle for use. *Dose*—from half a tea-spoonful to a table-spoonful, repeated according to circumstances. This tincture is used not only in cases of fits, spasms, &c., but in all violent attacks of disease, and in cases of suspended animation from drowning, hanging, by lightning, or any other cause whatever. It also operates as a speedy emetic, and should therefore be used in all cases of the accidental or criminal introduction of poisonous substances into the stomach. It may likewise be employed to facilitate the operation of an emetic of the more common preparations of lobelia, for which purpose it may be administered in tea or table-spoonful doses.

The tinctures of which the Antispasmodic Tincture is composed, ought to be fully saturated; that is, made as strong as the different articles will make them.

### ASTRINGENT TONIC COMPOUNDS.

COMPOUNDS of this class may be multiplied to almost any extent desirable. No class of medicines, perhaps, is more abundant than astringents, and few ought to be more generally used. There are, however, some states of the system in which they ought to be administered with a sparing hand, or omitted altogether. In obstinate costiveness, and in burning fevers attended with great and constant dryness of the mouth, and more especially if this dryness is increased by the astringent remedies, this class of medicines ought either to be omitted or very sparingly used. In costive habits, reliance should be mainly placed on laxative bitter tonics; and in fevers, the moisture of the mouth must be restored by the use of cayenne pepper, spice-



wood, pennyroyal, and other warm teas, together with the frequent application of the vapor bath. After the natural secretions have restored moisture to the mouth, the astringent tonics may be employed, and are among the best remedies to change that peculiar state of the system which occurs during a fever, and substitute for it, one more congenial with health. Their free administration during recovery from any disease, and especially from fevers, have a most powerful tendency to prevent relapses; and hence the propriety of combining them with the bitter tonics. Indeed so great is their influence over the human system, that a strong decoction of these medicines alone will very frequently remove fevers and many other complaints in their incipient or first stages; whence the correctness of employing them so extensively in the diaphoretic powders, which are calculated for using on all ordinary occasions, of slight attacks, or first stages of disease.

The astringent tonics are also peculiarly adapted to the treatment of diarrhœa, dysentery, and all cases of looseness of the bowels. They are likewise the proper remedies for canker, ulcers, floodings, and hemorrhages of every description, for all relaxed states of the system, and profuse evacuations of almost every kind.

#### ASTRINGENT TONIC.

Take of, Birth-root,	} equal parts.
Pleurisyroot,	
Bayberry, (bark of the root,)	
Hemlock, (the inner bark of the tree,)	

All finely pulverized and well mixed. One ounce of this powder to be steeped in one and a half pints of water. *Dose*—half a tea-cupful, with from half to a whole tea-spoonful of cayenne in it, sweetened if most agreeable. A dose of this tea may be taken three times a day in ordinary cases, but in diarrhœa, dysentery, floodings, &c., the doses should be more frequent.

The most economical method of preparing this medicine, is to take what sifts or bolts out of such different articles as are pulverized very fine for making the diaphoretic powders; as there is always a certain portion of them which it is very difficult to grind, particularly of the hemlock and bayberry.

#### ANTI-MORBIFIC POWDER.

Under this name, Dr. J. T. WELLS has furnished us with the following recipe; and as he appears to employ this compound for the same purposes that we use the astringent tonic, we introduce it under the same general head:

Take of, African capsicum,	2 oz.
Ginger root, (pared,)	8 oz.
Bayberry, (bark of the root,)	10 oz.
Pleurisy root,	10 oz.
Hemlock bark,	10 oz.
Sumach, (root, bark, or leaves,)	10 oz.
Golden seal,	10 oz.

All finely pulverized, sifted, and mixed. Method of preparing for use, and dose, similar to that directed for the astringent tonic.

## CHERRY CORDIAL.

Take of the bark of the roots of wild cherry tree, and poplar bark, equal parts, and make a strong tea, by moderate steeping. Strain off, and add to each gallon of the tea four pounds of sugar, (loaf sugar is the best,) four ounces of finely pulverized meats or kernels of peach stones, and two quarts of good brandy. *Dose*—half a wine glassful, several times a day.

This is a most valuable astringent tonic, useful in all cases of obstinate diarrhœa and dysentery. It also combines the properties of a bitter, but the astringent by far predominates, and is so powerful as to need using with care. This cordial is a grateful, and very valuable medicine.

## BLACKBERRY SYRUP.

Take two pounds of the bark of the root, well cleansed or washed; add a suitable quantity of water, then boil two hours. Pour off the liquid; then add more water; and thus continue to boil and pour off, until all the strength is extracted; then strain and add all the boilings together. Simmer to two quarts; strain; then add four pounds of loaf sugar, and when cool, add half a pint of best French brandy.

*Dose*—a table-spoonful three times a day, fasting. If it does not arrest the disease after taking it a few days, gradually increase the dose, as the stomach can bear it.

*Use*.—This a very valuable syrup in bowel complaints, particularly the chronic form. It will effect a cure when every other means fails. It appears to possess specific virtues, different from every other vegetable.

A rob, or jelly, is made of the fruit, which is useful to mix with water, and drink.—[*American Practice.*]

## SYRUP FOR THE DYSENTERY.

Rhubarb and wild cherry bark, a handful; sugar, four table-spoonfuls; simmer awhile, and add a little brandy.

*Dose*.—Give a table-spoonful every fifteen minutes, until the pain ceases.

The above is taken from a work entitled the "*Indian Phy-*  
VOL. II.—2C

*sician*;" and is pronounced infallible in dysentery ; having never failed in thirty years.

As there is so much similarity in all the compounds which can possibly be made by mixtures of the simple articles under the denomination of astringent tonics, we deem it unnecessary to add any more formulas under this head. We may observe, however, that a single article of the astringent class is as frequently used as any compound, and often deemed quite as good. In compounding for ordinary use, it is a good rule, in general, to combine those which are most drying or astringent with those which are more mild and do not obstruct the flow of the juices of the mouth.

### BATHING DROPS, AND RUBEFACIENTS.

THESE are stimulating washes, for applying to painful parts, tumors, swellings, &c., and are very useful. They should generally be applied with much friction or rubbing.

#### DR. A. REED'S COMPOUND BATHING DROPS.

Take of, Tincture of myrrh,	1 gall.
Buds of balm of Gilead,	1 pint,
Camphor,	2 oz.

Pulverize the buds and add them, with the camphor, to the tincture of myrrh ; digest for ten days, and strain or filter. Useful for bruises, pains in the back, rheumatism, &c.

#### DR. EVERETT'S BATHING DROPS.

Take of, Myrrh.	1½ oz.
Oil of hemlock,	1 oz.
Cayenne,	1½ oz.
Alcohol,	2 quarts.

#### TOSIER'S BATHING DROPS.

Take of, Compound tincture of myrrh,	1 oz.
Oil of hemlock,	½ oz.
Oil of sassafras,	½ oz.

Mix. Oil of fir, or cedar, is also sometimes added.

#### TINCTURE OF CAYENNE.

Take of pulverized cayenne, four ounces, digest for eight days in a pint of alcohol placed in a hot sun heat, often shaking it ; then strain or filter. As this quantity of alcohol does not extract all the properties of the cayenne, another portion may be added, and preserved for making a future quantity of the tincture, to saturate which a less amount of cayenne will be necessary.

## BITTER TONIC COMPOUNDS.

The term *restorative* is often applied to medicines of this class, because they are commonly resorted to after the force of the disease has been overcome, for the purpose of assisting the solids in recovering a perfect, healthy, firm tone, whereby the living power is enabled to exercise a proper influence over them.

Bitter tonics are a valuable class of medicines, universally applicable in all cases of disease. It is found by experience, that combining with them a portion of some astringent tonic, increases their beneficial influence upon the system. The article most commonly used for this purpose is the bayberry, though almost any other astringent article would answer instead of it; particularly the dewberryroot, birth-root, dogwood bark, or even a small portion of the bark of white oak.

Capsicum and cloves are also added to these compounds to make them stimulating, thus combining in the same preparation the properties of both tonics and stimulants. The cloves also impart an agreeable flavor, on which account, more than any other, they are employed. When it is desirable to modify the stimulating properties of the bitters, a lesser quantity of cayenne may be added, or it may be omitted altogether.

## BITTER TONIC.

Take of, Poplar bark,	1 lb.
Golden seal,	1 lb.
Bayberry, (bark of the root,)	1 lb.
Columbo root,	1 lb.
Capsicum,	6 oz.
Cloves,	6 oz.
Loaf or lump sugar,	4 lbs. 12. oz.—

being a quantity equal to all the other articles. All to be finely pulverized, sifted, and well mixed. *Dose*—one tea spoonful in either hot or cold water; or the powders may be taken into the mouth, moistened with the saliva and swallowed, or washed down with cold water. One ounce of these bitters added to a quart of wine, dose, a wine glassful three times a day, is an excellent preparation.

To make laxative bitters, add one pound, more or less, of the bitter-root, or of the black-root, to the foregoing compound, increasing in the same proportion, the quantity of capsicum, cloves, and sugar. The following compound may also be rendered laxative by the same means.

## COMPOUNDS.

## SPICE BITTERS.

Take of, Poplar bark,	1 lb.
Bayberry, (bark of the root,)	1 lb.
Golden seal,	1 lb.
Cayenne,	4 oz.
Cloves,	4 oz.
Loaf or lump sugar in quantity equal to all the other articles. The whole finely pulverized, sifted and well mixed. <i>Dose</i> , &c., the same as the bitter tonic.	

## WINE BITTERS.

Take of, Balmony,	8 oz.
Bayberry,	8 oz.
Cassia, (of the shops,)	8 oz.
Golden seal,	12 oz.
Anise seed,	4 oz.
Cloves,	2 oz.
Cayenne,	1 oz.
Bitter root,	8 oz.
Brown sugar,	3 lbs.
all pulverized and well mixed. One ounce to a quart of wine; dose a wine-glassful three times a day. This, we are informed is the celebrated wine bitters prepared and sold in such vast quantity by Dr. JOHN THOMSON, of Albany, New York. Very useful in dyspepsy.	

The following formula is from the "*American Practice*."

Take of, Golden seal,	1 dr.
White wood bark,	1 dr.
Bitter root,	1 dr.
Cayenne pepper,	$\frac{1}{2}$ dr.

Pulverize all and add two quarts of wine. *Dose*—from a table-spoonful to a wine-glassful, three times a day. Useful in all cases where bitter tonics are indicated.

## DR. WELLS' ANTI-DYSPEPTIC OR RESTORATIVE BITTERS.

Take of, Prickly ash berries,	3 oz.
Ginger root,	3 oz.
Wild cherry tree bark,	3 oz.
Bitter-ash,	3 oz.
Balmony,	5 oz.
Golden seal,	5 oz.
Poplar bark,	7 oz.
Loaf sugar,	2 lbs. 8 oz.

All made fine, sifted, and well mixed. *Dose*—a heaping tea-spoonful, in half a gill of boiling water, three times a day. Or, take one ounce of the powder, three gills of gin, or of Lisbon wine, and one gill of water, and two ounces of loaf sugar, mix in a bottle, to be shaken before using.



## DR. EVERETT'S HOT BITTERS.

Take of, Balmony leaves,	8 oz.
Bitter root,	8 oz.
Barberry bark,	2 oz.
Prickly ash berries,	8 oz.
Rhubarb,	2 oz.
Caraway seeds,	1 lb.
Cloves,	8 oz.
African cayenne,	12 oz.

All finely pulverized, and well mixed. Put one ounce of this powder, and two ounces of brown sugar, into a quart of spirits, shake often for a few days, when it will be fit for use. *Dose*—two tea-spoonfuls in a gill of hot water sweetened. Removes a cold, promotes the appetite, quenches thirst, relieves cough, removes costiveness, and cures colic. For colic and costiveness, the dose must be increased to double the quantity.

## TONIC CORDIAL.

Take of, Poplar bark,	1 lb.
Bayberry, (bark of the root,)	8 oz.
Dogwood bark,	8 oz.
All made fine. Water, a sufficient quantity ; boiled to two gallons ; then strain off, and add of	
Sugar, (loaf is the best,)	7 lbs.
Peach kernels, pulverized,	8 oz.
French brandy,	1 gallon.

To be kept closely bottled. *Dose*—half a wine-glassful, three or four times a day. This is a very valuable tonic compound, partaking of the properties of both bitter and astringent tonics, the bitterness, however, rather predominating. It is a most excellent restorative ; useful in all cases, particularly in diarrhœa and dysentery.

## TONIC EXPECTORANT SYRUP.

This is made exactly as the tonic cordial, with the addition of four ounces of the fresh, or two ounces of the dry rattleroot, and two ounces of the spikenard, elecampane, or common hoarhound. This syrup is an excellent article for coughs, consumptions, and all complaints of the breast. *Dose*—half a wine-glassful, two or three times a day. It is best, however, to begin with one spoonful, and gradually increase the dose.

## DR. WELLS' TONIC, OR AGUE PILLS.

Take of, African cayenne, (best quality,)	2 drachms,
Quinine,	1 drachm,
Lupuline,	2 drachms.
Honey, sufficient to form it into a mass suitable for making	
VOL. II.—2 c 2	

into pills. Then roll into one hundred and twenty pills. For ague, take one every half hour for five hours previous to the expected return of the chill. Said to be an excellent article. To have the full advantage, however, the stomach ought to be well cleansed by an emetic, or the bowels by a cathartic, before taking the pills.

### CANCER PLASTERS.

THESE are applications for the purpose of destroying, or removing, the morbid parts of all cancerous tumors, which it is absolutely necessary to do, by some means, before the ulcer can be healed. This can only be done, by the knife, powerful escharotics, or such substances as produce an increased activity of the vessels of the ulcerated part, and thus promote the absorption or a separation of the morbid part. The following plasters are supposed to act upon the latter principle.

#### CANCER PLASTER.

Take of, Red clover blossoms, 4 lbs.  
Roots, or roots and tops, of narrow dock, 1 lb.

Or any larger quantity in the same proportion, boil in water until the strength is out, then separate the clover and dock from the liquor, carefully pressing out all the juice, and return it again into the kettle, and continue the boiling with the utmost care to prevent burning, until reduced to the consistence of a salve or plaster.

To avoid all hazard of burning, put the liquid, when boiled down pretty thick, into an earthen pan or other suitable vessel, which must then be placed in a kettle of water over the fire and boiled until the liquid is reduced to a proper consistence. In this way all extracts ought to be made, and there will then be no kind of danger of burning them.

#### SORREL PLASTER OR SALVE.

Take the common sheep sorrel, any quantity, bruise, and press out the juice, place it on plates in the sun, until dried away to a proper consistence for a plaster. This may be applied to the cancer, spread on paper or a piece of bladder made soft, and must occasionally be renewed. If it prove too painful, it may be left off at night, and reapplied in the morning, or the salve may be modified by mixing some milder article with it, as in the following.

#### CANCER BALSAM.

Take of, Sorrel salve,	} Of each equal quantities. Mix.
Balsam of fir,	
Salt butter,	
	Applied as the former.

## DR. S. THOMSON'S CANCER PLASTER.

Take of the heads of red clover sufficient to fill a brass kettle, and boil them in soft water for one hour; then remove these from the kettle pressing the liquor out from them, and fill the kettle again with fresh heads, which must be boiled in like manner in the same liquor, adding as much more water as may be necessary. After boiling these about an hour, the liquor must be strained off and the clover heads pressed as before to get it all out. Then return it into the kettle and boil or simmer down to the consistence of thick tar. Very great care must be taken in boiling it down to prevent its burning; as by burning, not only the burnt part is destroyed, but the remainder is in some measure deprived of its medical properties.

When used it should be spread upon a piece of bladder, suet skin, thin cloth, or strong paper.

Other formulas for preparing cancer plasters, may be found under the head "*Cancer*."

## CATHARTICS.

THIS class of medicines, although by far too generally used, (or rather, those of this class which have been most frequently employed, are of too dangerous a character to be used at all,) are nevertheless valuable medicinal agents. They may be administered in most cases of fever, diarrhœa, dysentery, severe headache, bilious colic, worms, &c.

## VEGETABLE CATHARTIC PILLS.

Take of, Mandrake root,	6 oz.
Black root,	4 oz.
Blood root,	4 oz.
Gamboge,	8 oz.
Lobelia seeds,	4 oz.
Cayenne,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.

All finely pulverized, sifted and well mixed. To form into pills, make a thick mucilage of gum Arabic, peach tree gum, or even slippery elm bark, by dissolving in water, or instead of this take melasses and moisten the powders just so as to make them adhere together. Then form them into pills about the size of a pea, and roll them in fine slippery elm, bayberry, or flour; lay them in a dry place exposed to the air to dry, after which they may be put into boxes, and have a little fine bayberry or elm mingled with them to prevent their adhering together. *Dose*—from three to six, taken, in ordinary cases, at bed time; or two-thirds may be taken at night, and the remainder in the morning.

## DR. BUNNELL'S ANTI-BILIOUS FEMALE PILLS.

Take of, Mandrake root,	8 oz.
Gamboge,	8 oz.
Blood root,	4 oz.
Lobelia seeds,	4 oz.

All finely pulverized, sifted, and well mixed; the powder moistened with melasses to a proper consistence for making into pills. In other respects managed as the foregoing. *Dose*—from two to five.

These pills are useful in diarrhœa, dysentery, rheumatism, jaundice, female obstructions, &c. For chronic complaints enough should be taken to operate as a brisk purge, and then about two a day, and if necessary, again repeat the purge.

## DR. REED'S ANTI-BILIOUS PILLS.

Take of, Gamboge,	2 oz.
Blood root,	2 oz.
Lobelia seed,	1 oz.
Cayenne pepper,	2 drachms,
Rhubarb,	4 drachms,
Pearlash,	1 drachm.

All made fine, sifted and mixed. Brought to a proper consistence for making into pills by the addition of syrup of buckthorn or butternut. After making, roll them in pulverized golden seal.

“These pills,” says Dr. REED, “may be used as a puke or purge. Take one every hour till they purge; or take four at once, and they will puke. Take one every hour until the bowels begin to move, then take three, and they will vomit, purge, sweat, and produce a free discharge of urine.” Dr. REED also states, that with these pills he cured a case of rheumatism, of eleven years standing, in five days. The pills were administered three at a time, three times a day. He also mentions two other cases, of shorter standing, which he likewise cured.

## DR. WELLS' VEGETABLE CATHARTIC PILLS.

Take of, Cayenne,	1 drachm.
Lobelia seeds,	1 do.
Blue cohush root,	1 do.
Gamboge,	3 do.
Mandrake,	5 do.
Black root,	7 do.
Gum Arabic,	2 do.

All finely pulverized, sifted and well mixed. Formed into a mass suitable for making into pills, by moistening with a little water. Make into pills of a suitable size for swallowing. *Dose*—

three pills, and if they do not operate in six hours, take one or two more.

In addition to the purgative properties of these pills, Dr. WELLS alleges that they are diaphoretic, antiseptic, and tonic.

#### ANTI-BILIOUS POWDER, COMMON PURGATIVE OR PHYSIC.

Take of, Jalap,	1 lb.
Alexandria senna,	2 lb.
Peppermint plant,	1 lb.

Let these articles be separately pulverized; then mix them together, and pass through a fine sieve. *Dose*—A tea-spoonful, (about a drachm.) It should be put into a tea-cup, with a lump of loaf sugar, and a gill of boiling water added; and given to the patient when cool, fasting, or on an empty stomach.

The above is highly recommended by Dr. BEACH, in the "*American Practice*," who says it is "the best general purgative that is now known." "It may be given to every age and sex;" and "is useful in all diseases where physic is required."

#### DR. HULL'S BILIOUS PHYSIC.

Take eight ounces of aloes; one ounce, each, of mace, myrrh, cinnamon, cloves, saffron, and ginger; four ounces of the dried leaves of the garden sunflower, or of the wild sunflower. Pulverize the articles separately, and mix them thoroughly. *Dose*—a tea-spoonful.

The efficacy of this celebrated physic in the cure of bilious colic, is well known. "This," says Dr. ELISHA SMITH, "is the first *genuine* recipe of it ever published."

#### DR. JACKSON'S PURGATIVE FOR IMMEDIATE OPERATION.

Take of, Castor oil,	1 table-spoonful.
Tincture of myrrh,	1 do. do.
Butternut syrup,	1 do. do.
Cayenne,	1 tea-spoonful.

Mix all together and give at a dose; and it will operate, as we are assured by Dr. Jackson, in a very short time.

---

#### CHOLERA MIXTURES.

THESE preparations are considered highly valuable in the first stages of cholera to check the diarrhœa, and may likewise be advantageously employed in any other stage of the complaint. They will also be found highly valuable in all bowel complaints, such as diarrhœa, dysentery, &c., as well as in most cases of slight indisposition.



## CHOLERA SYRUP.

Take of, Lady's Slipper,	8 oz.
Bayberry,	8 oz.
Golden Seal,	4 oz.
African cayenne, (best,)	1 oz.

Pulverize, and boil together the above ingredients (until their strength is extracted,) in a sufficient quantity of water to make one gallon of the decoction; then strain and add

Best 4th proof West India rum,	1 gallon.
Good sugar house melasses,	1 do.
Tincture of myrrh,	1 do.

Mix well and bottle for use. *Dose*—one table-spoonful, three or four times a day; or oftener, as circumstances may require.

## HIXSON'S CHOLERA MIXTURE.

Take of, African cayenne,	1 oz.
Xanthoxylon,	1 oz.
Race ginger,	2 oz.
Golden Seal,	1 oz.
Lady's Slipper,	1 oz.
Hemlock bark,	1 oz.
Bayberry,	1 oz.

Put these, (after being pulverized,) into a bag, and steep or boil them in one gallon of water, until you have from two to three quarts of strong tea, to which add of

Orleans melasses,	1 gallon,
Good 4th proof rum,	$\frac{1}{2}$ do.
Tincture of myrrh,	3 pints.

To be used in the same manner as the cholera syrup.

## COLIC DROPS.

Take of, Cloves,	1 oz.
Prickly ash berries,	2 oz.
Cinnamon,	2 oz.
Ginger root, pared,	2 oz.
Allspice,	2 oz.
Oil of Lavender,	4 drachms.
Alcohol,	$1\frac{1}{2}$ pints.

The solid articles to be pulverized, and digested in the alcohol, in a hot sun heat, for ten days, often shaking it, then strained or filtered. *Dose*—one to two tea-spoonfuls, on sugar. Very useful in colic, and pains in the stomach and bowels.

## DIAPHORETICS AND SUDORIFICS.

The only difference between diaphoretics and sudorifics is, that sudorifics promote perspiration in a more powerful manner than diaphoretics; a distinction, however, which we think it unnecessary to make.

The different compounds arranged under this head may be used indiscriminately on all occasions, especially in cases of slight indisposition, and preparatory to and during the operation of vapor bathing or steaming, for the purpose of promoting perspiration, and sustaining the living power during this process. They may also be administered after a process of the vapor bath and the operation of an emetic, not only to promote the discharge of perspirable matter, but to stimulate and strengthen the living power, and to give firmness and tone to the muscular fibers. In some cases of fever and of other violent or obstinate attacks of disease, the diaphoretic compounds may be made more stimulating by the addition of a larger proportion of cayenne.

It will be perceived that the different compounds which will follow, embrace a variety of articles belonging to the class of *astringents*, some one or more of which can almost always be had with but little trouble in every neighborhood; but in case they cannot be procured, almost any other article of the *astringent* medicines which have been treated of in the *materia medica*, may be substituted; such as birth-root, dewberry, or high blackberry root, white pond-lily root, &c. It will also be proper to remark, that we have endeavored, in accomplishing this work, to avoid any *infringement* upon Dr. THOMSON'S *patent* or *copyrights*. Our intention has alone been the *improvement of Medical Botany*, in general. We deem this notice the more necessary, as it will be perceived, by a perusal of the APPENDIX, containing a number of cases of disease which have actually occurred, that in their treatment, many of the names given by Dr. THOMSON to his remedies, have been made use of; though in numerous instances, the article administered was a compound quite *different* from *his* medicine bearing the *same* name. We will also further remark, that any of our *diaphoretic powders* may be employed in all cases where his *composition powders* might be considered useful, or have been adverted to, and are, at the same time, believed to be much better.

We hope that these observations will not be considered as originating from any disrespect to Dr. THOMSON; we think those who have perused our work thus far, will have become satisfied that we have done ample justice to his character as a medical reformer.

## DIAPHORETIC OR SWEATING POWDER.

Take of, Butterfly root,	1 lb.
Bayberry, bark of the root,	1 lb.
Sassafras, bark of the root,	4 oz.
Colic root,	4 oz.
Ginger,	1 lb.
Cloves,	2 oz.
Cayenne,	2 oz.

All finely pulverized, and sifted through a fine sieve and well mixed. *Dose*—for an adult, one tea-spoonful in hot water, sweetened if most agreeable. For children the dose must be proportionably less; and to make it more agreeable, cream or milk may be added as well as sugar.

The following prescription is very often used, being more simple but not so valuable as the foregoing:—

Take of, Bayberry,	2 lbs.
Ginger,	1 lb.
Cayenne,	2 oz.
Cloves,	2 oz.

Prepared and used in the same manner as the foregoing. This is the preparation most commonly alluded to under the name of Composition Powders in the Appendix.

## DR. J. T. WELLS' FORMULA.

Take of, Xanthoxylon,	1 drachm.
Ginger,	3 do.
Valerian root,	3 do.
Blue Cohush,	3 do.
Black root,	5 do.
Golden Seal,	5 do.
Pleurisy root,	10 do.

All to be finely pulverized, sifted, and thoroughly mixed. *Dose*—a large tea-spoonful; or one ounce of the powder to a pint of boiling water, and after pouring off, may have another pint added, taking one gill of this tea, and to each dose adding a tea-spoonful of the anodyne drops.

## DR. J. EVERETT'S FORMULA.

Take of, Bayberry,	3 lbs.
Ginger,	2 lbs.
Caraway seeds,	2 lbs.
Cloves,	8 oz.
Sassafras, (bark of the root,)	4 oz.
Cayenne,	4 oz.

All finely pulverized, sifted, and well mixed. *Dose*—one tea-spoonful.

## DR. ELIAS SMITH'S FORMULA.

Take of, Bayberry,	1 lb.
Hemlock bark,	8 oz.
Witch-hazel leaves,	4 oz.
Ginger,	8 oz.
Cayenne,	4 oz.
Cloves,	2 oz.

All finely pulverized, sifted, and well mixed. *Dose*—one tea-spoonful.

## ANTI-DYSENTERIC POWDERS.

The following is one of the compounds communicated by Dr. J. T. WELLS, under the above name, and considered by him as an invaluable article in the treatment of dysentery. We arrange it under the head of *diaphoretics*, instead of *astringent tonics*, because it embraces several aromatic articles which are valuable diaphoretics; and no doubt these powders may be advantageously employed to promote perspiration at the same time that they are useful as a remedy in dysentery, as all the diaphoretic compounds are.

Take of, African Cayenne,	3 oz.
Ginger root, (pared,)	3 oz.
Bayberry, (bark of the root,)	7 oz.
Pleurisy (Butterfly) root,	7 oz.
Sumach leaves,	7 oz.
Witch-hazel leaves,	7 oz.
Red Raspberry leaves,	7 oz.
Golden Seal,	7 oz.
Valerian root,	3 oz.
Anise seeds,	3 oz.

All made fine, sifted, and thoroughly mixed. *Dose*—a heaping tea-spoonful, in a gill of boiling water, drank as hot as can be borne. Or if the patient cannot readily take it in substance, one ounce of the powder may be steeped in a pint of boiling water, taken in doses of a gill, and when the liquor is used off, fill up again, and use as before.

## ANODYNE POWDERS.

Under this head, Dr. WELLS has the following recipe:—

Take of, Prickly Ash berries,	5 oz.
Ginger root, (pared,)	5 oz.
Sumach leaves,	10 oz.
Witch-hazel leaves,	10 oz.
Red Raspberry leaves,	10 oz.
Valerian root,	10 oz.
Blue Cohush,	10 oz.

All finely pulverized, sifted, and well mixed.

"These powders are good for all menstrual derangements in the female system, for bearing down pains, and affections of the kidneys, bladder, or womb; and especially during pregnancy and in labor, they are the best corrector, prompter, and alleviator, I know of."

"*Directions for using.*—Make a strong decoction of the powders, in the proportion of one ounce to a pint of boiling water, simmered slowly in a tin vessel, for ten or fifteen minutes; which, after settling, and using off the decoction, will bear filling up with boiling water, stirring, simmering, settling, and using off a second time. *Dose*—take half a gill of this decoction as warm as can conveniently be drank, (sweetened, if most agreeable,) and either add from two to three tea-spoonfuls of the anodyne drops (herein before mentioned,) to each dose, or the drops may be taken during the intervals between the doses of the decoction. Doses to be repeated once in from fifteen to sixty minutes, according to the state and condition of the patient."

Dr. WELLS also states that these powders are excellent in all female complaints, weakness, venereal disease, &c., taken into the stomach, or used by injection to the part affected.

#### WELLS' DIAPHORETIC DROPS.

Take of, Myrrh,	6 oz.
Cayenne pepper,	6 drachms.
Alcohol,	1½ pints.

The solid articles to be pulverized, and digested in the alcohol, in a hot sun heat for ten days, often shaking it, then strained or filtered. *Dose*—from one to three tea-spoonfuls, at discretion. Good to relieve pain and promote perspiration.

---

#### DIURETICS.

THIS class of medicines produce an increased discharge of urine, and are valuable in the treatment of dropsy.

#### DIURETIC BEER.

Take of, Elderberry juice,	2 lbs.
Pure honey,	8 oz.
Yeast,	2 oz.
Let it ferment or work clear, then add of	
Tincture of juniper berries,	2 oz.
Essence of wintergreen,	2 oz.
Mix, and it is fit for use.	



## DIURETIC CORDIAL.

Take of, Water melon seeds,	1 lb.
Featherfew,	1 lb.
Yellow parilla root,	1 lb.
Burdock root,	1 lb.
Horse radish root,	1 lb.
Golden seal,	8 oz.
Parsley root,	8 oz.
Agrimony,	8 oz.

All bruised and boiled in five gallons of water down to four, then strain and add twelve pounds of good sugar and two gallons of brandy. *Dose*—half a wine-glassful once or twice a day.

## ASPARAGUS INFUSION.

Steep the roots of asparagus in cold water, after being well bruised, or split into shreds, and let the patient drink of the water often through the course of the day. It will increase the discharge of urine in a short time, and relieve strangury. Simple as it may appear, it is an effectual remedy.—[*John Shaw.*]

## HYDROGOGUE TINCTURE.

Take of, Bark of sweet elder,	1 lb.
Good wine,	1 gallon.

Let it simmer an hour; strain and bottle. *Dose*—A wine-glassful, three or four times a day.

*Use.*—This tincture is usefully administered in dropsical affections, particularly in abdominal dropsy, or ascites. It has cured many without any other ingredient.—[*American Practice.*]

## DIURETIC DECOCTION.

Take of, Queen of the meadow, (roots,)	2 oz.
Milk weed, do.	2 oz.
Juniper berries,	2 oz.
Dwarf elder, (bark,)	2 oz.
Spearmint, (herb,)	2 oz.
Wild carrot seed,	2 oz.

Put all into a mortar and bruise. Make a strong decoction. *Dose*—Half a pint, to be taken often through the day.

*Use.*—This decoction is very useful in gravel, dropsy, &c. It is strongly diuretic.—[*Ib.*]

## EMETICS.

THE most simple form in which an emetic can be administered is in powder. For this purpose the pulverized leaves and pods

of the *lobelia inflata* answer an excellent purpose. The pulverized seeds are more powerful in their effects upon the system than the leaves and pods, and are generally more violent in their operation. They are, however, most commonly preferred, especially in urgent or severe cases, their effects being usually more beneficial. *Dose*—from half to a whole tea-spoonful, or more, with the addition of half a tea-spoonful of cayenne, in two or three table-spoonfuls of warm water or tea, once in fifteen minutes, until it operates.

The tincture of the leaves, or leaves and pods, is probably the mildest form in which the lobelia can be given, and is the preferable mode of administering it to children, and to delicate irritable adults.

#### TINCTURE OF LOBELIA HERB.

Take of the lobelia, fresh gathered, any quantity, bruise in a mortar, and put into an earthen or tin vessel, pressing it down close and firm; then add of proof spirits, sufficient to cover the herb. Stop the vessel close, and let it stand a day or two, and then strain and press out the liquor from the herb, and to each quart of this tincture, add one ounce of essence of sassafras, and bottle it for use. *Dose*—as an emetic, from one to ten tea-spoonfuls.

This tincture is valuable, not only as an emetic, but also as an expectorant, and external application to wounds, bruises, inflammations, ulcers, eruptions of the skin, and poisons of every description.

#### TINCTURE OF LOBELIA SEEDS.

Take of lobelia seeds, pulverized, four ounces, digest for eight days in a pint of alcohol, placed in a hot sun heat, often shaking it; then strain or filter. Treat the dregs with an additional quantity of alcohol to obtain all the strength, and preserve it for future use. This tincture is one of the ingredients in the *anti-spasmodic tincture*, and is likewise an excellent emetic, for which it is given in repeated small doses until it operates.

#### DR. EVERETT'S ASTHMATIC TINCTURE.

Take of the tincture of lobelia, made from the dry herb, eight quarts; liquorice paste, half a pound dissolved in warm water and added to the tincture. This is said by Dr. EVERETT, to be excellent for the asthma.

#### DR. EVERETT'S EMETIC COMPOUND.

This is made by mixing the asthmatic tincture with the tincture of blood root which is prepared as follows:—

Take of, Blood root, bruised	4 oz.
Hot water,	1 pint.

Pour the water on the pulverized roots, digest for two days ; and add a pint of proof spirits. Then

Take of, Asthmatic tincture,	4 gills,
Blood root tincture,	1 gill.

Mix. Of this mixture Dr. EVERETT states that he gives from one to five or six ounces as an emetic, which operates much easier for both patient and attendant, than the lobelia does alone. For stubborn cases of adults, he usually adds a little of the pulverized seeds of lobelia to give it more energy or activity.

### ESCHAROTICS OR CAUSTICS.

THESE terms include all the articles which are usually employed to corrode, or destroy, both the sound and unsound parts of the body. But as we disapprove of the application of caustics to any but *diseased* parts, and to these but seldom, we shall give only a few of the milder vegetable ones here.

#### VEGETABLE CAUSTIC.

Make a strong lye of hickory, or oak, ashes ; put it into an iron kettle, and evaporate till dry ; pulverize, and preserve it in *closed* vessels.

*Use.*—This caustic is highly useful in the treatment of fistulas ; also, in indolent ulcers of every character. It removes fungous flesh without exciting any inflammation, and acts but little except on spongy or soft flesh. It is useful in cancers, and in every case where a caustic is required.—[*American Practice.*]

#### SOOT.

Is also said to be an excellent escharotic, to remove fungous or proud flesh, from wounds and ulcers ; and may be substituted for burnt alum, being much better.

Any of the following articles may likewise be used for the same purposes :

*Mandrake root.* thoroughly dried, and reduced to a fine powder, may be sprinkled on the part affected once in two or three days, if necessary.

The *yolk of an egg*, with a sufficient quantity of fine *salt* worked into it to make it of the consistence of salve, may be applied.

The raspings or scrapings of *horns*, are said to be useful in some cases.

## ESSENCES AND AROMATIC CORDIALS.

## ESSENCES

ARE made by dissolving any of the aromatic oils in alcohol, in the proportion of about two ounces of the oil to a pint of alcohol.

## ESSENCE OF ANISE.

Take of, Anise oil,	2 oz.
Alcohol,	1 pint.
Mix, and shake well together.	

## AROMATIC CORDIALS.

These are pleasant drinks, often very grateful to the sick ; any kind of which may be made by observing the following proportions :

Take of, Loaf sugar,	2 oz.
Essence of peppermint,	4 oz.
Gin,	1 pint.
Pure water,	1 quart.

Dissolve the sugar in the water ; then add the essence to the gin, when the whole may be mixed, and well shaken together.

## EXPECTORANTS.

THE object of expectorants is to loosen, and promote the ejection of mucus, and other fluids, from the throat and lungs. A variety of compounds are employed for this purpose, from amongst which we select the following :

## EXPECTORANT POWDER.

Take of, Skunk cabbage root,	4 oz.
Unicorn root,	2 oz.
Lobelia seeds,	1 oz.
Cayenne,	1 drachm.

All finely pulverized, sifted and well mixed. *Dose*—from half to a whole tea-spoonful, in honey or melasses, or they may be formed into pills, and taken at bed time.

## DR. WELLS' COUGH DROPS.

Take of, Tincture of Lobelia,	1 pint.
Anodyne drops,	2 pints.
WELLS' Anti-spasmodic drops,	1 pint.

Mix. *Dose*—half to a whole tea-spoonful, repeated at discretion.

## DR. EVERETT'S EXPECTORANT SYRUP.

Take of, Hoarhound, dry,	1 lb.
Caraway seeds,	1 lb.
Sage, dry,	8 oz.
Liquorice root, sweet,	8 oz.
Colt's foot,* roots and tops,	8 oz.
Cayenne pepper,	2 oz.

Water, a sufficient quantity to boil for two or three hours, and leave, when strained, two gallons. Then add seven pounds of good brown sugar, boil and skim off the froth or scum; when cool add one gallon French Brandy, and bottle for use.

*Dose*—for a child of three or four years old, one tea-spoonful, adding the same quantity of water; and for grown persons, two or three tea-spoonfuls without water, taken several times a day, if the cough is severe.

## ONION SYRUP.

Take any quantity of onions, and roast them in the fire; peel off the outside, press the juice all out, and sweeten with honey, melasses, or sugar. If prepared in much quantity, a little spirit must be added to preserve it. This is an excellent article for colds, coughs, croup, and all complaints of the lungs. *Dose*—from one tea-spoonful to a table-spoonful, according to age, &c.

## DR. WELLS' VEGETABLE EXPECTORANT SYRUP.

Take of, Onions, fresh from the garden,	16 lb.
Spignet root, fresh dug,	8 lb.
Hoarhound,	4 lb.
Lobelia,	2 lb.
Pleurisy root,	2 lb.
Elecampane root,	2 lb.
Skunk Cabbage root,	2 lb.
Water,	5 gallons.

Boil in an iron vessel down to two gallons; strain and simmer over coals down to one gallon; then add two pounds of honey, one pint of vinegar, and one pint of gin, and simmer down to two quarts.

*Dose*—one table-spoonful every fifteen minutes, till relief is obtained. This, says Dr. WELLS, is the best thing I know of to relieve distressed, difficult, or laborious breathing, &c.

## HONEY SYRUP.

Take a handful each, of hoarhound, spignard (or spignet) roots, elecampane roots, and garden beets, boil in a sufficient

---

\* *Tussilago farfara*, a plant abounding in the Eastern and Middle States.



quantity of water to extract the virtues of the articles; then strain, and when cool add honey enough to make a good syrup. Take in small doses several times a day. Useful for consumptions, coughs, &c.—[*John Shaw.*]

## PULMONARY BALSAM.

Take of, Spikenard root,	1½ lb.
Hoarhound roots,	do.
Elecampane root,	do.
Comfrey root,	do.

Add a suitable quantity of water.

Boil, and pour off the infusion repeatedly, until the strength is all extracted; then strain and reduce the whole of the liquid down to about twelve porter bottles (or six quarts;) then add of white sugar twelve pounds, and good honey six pounds; clarify it with the whites of eggs. Let it stand twenty-four hours, in order that it may settle; add one quart of spirits, and finally bottle it for use.

*Dose*—a wine glass full, three or four times a day.

*Use*.—This preparation is highly useful in the treatment of pulmonary affections, and coughs of long standing.—[*American Practice.*]

## EYE WATERS.

ALTHOUGH we have condemned the use of minerals in every form and under all circumstances, whether internally or externally applied, yet the following eye water has so often manifested its extraordinary power and superior efficacy over most other kinds in use, we have believed it to be our duty to give it a place in this work.

## EGG EYE WATER.

Take of white vitriol, a lump about the size of a pea; loaf sugar, twice the quantity; together with three cloves, all finely pulverized and well mixed. Then have a hen's egg roasted or boiled very hard, peel off the shell, cut through the middle, take out the yolk, put the aforesaid powder into the hollow where the yolk was, place the two halves of the egg together again, wrap it in a strong cloth, and wring it hard, having something to catch the fluid in. This process, if dexterously done, will yield about a table-spoonful of eye water; but if done carelessly, or if the egg be wrapped in too much cloth, there will be none obtained. This may be applied to the eye at pleasure, by wetting the end of the finger with the eye water and touching the corner of the eye, or one drop may be dropped into the eye.

## STIMULATING TONIC EYE WATER.

Take of, Tincture of lobelia,	}	Equal parts. Mix.
Decoction of golden seal,		

To be used in the same manner as the former.

## CHRONIC EYE DROPS.

Take of, Lobelia seeds,	1 oz.
African cayenne,	1 oz.
Myrrh,	1 oz.
Valerian,	1 oz.
Camphor,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
Alcohol,	1 pint.

Let the solid articles be pulverized and infused in the alcohol for ten days in a hot sun heat, often shaking it; then filter and bottle for use.

*Directions for using.*—"Mix one tea-spoonful of the drops with three of new milk, and apply to the eyes for three days; then mix one tea-spoonful of the drops with two of milk, and apply this three days; then mix equal quantities of the drops and milk, and apply till cured."—[*Dr. Wells.*]

A number of other recipes for the preparations of this class, may be found under the head "*Inflammation of the Eyes.*"

## BIRTHROOT EYE WATER.

Take two ounces of birthroot, steep in a sufficient quantity of water down to a pint, strain or filter, and add one-fourth of an ounce of burnt alum pulverized, when it may be bottled for use. Wash the eyes once or twice a day.

## INJECTIONS OR CLYSTERS.

THIS mode of administering medicine is both ancient and useful. Injections are resorted to for the double purpose of producing an evacuation of the contents of the rectum, and of applying medicine to a part of the system which is very susceptible of its influence, and thus produce an impression upon it to a greater extent, and in a more powerful manner, than can be done by introducing medicine into the stomach alone.

Injections are highly necessary in cases where food or medicine cannot be swallowed; whether the inability arises from a diseased state of the œsophagus, as in sore throat, &c., or from spasm, as in hydrophobia. Where the object is to afford nourishment to the system, they should be composed of rich broths or soups, in which case they ought to be retained for a considerable time, so that the absorbents may take up the nutritious particles. In this manner patients have been sustained for several

months, when otherwise they must very soon have perished by starvation. When the object is to introduce medicine into the system, the same articles which it would be proper to give by the mouth may be administered by injection. In this manner vomiting may be produced in a most thorough manner by adding lobelia, either in decoction, tincture, or the seeds, to a small quantity of warm water or tea, and administering it by injection, minding to have it retained as long as possible. This method of vomiting patients is highly advantageous in many cases, and may be resorted to, particularly when the stomach is too irritable to retain medicine until it can affect the system.

Where injections are employed merely for the purpose of evacuating the contents of the rectum, in other words to procure a stool, it matters but little, in general, what they are made of. Warm water with a little lard in it, or warm pennyroyal or catnip tea, either of them answers a good purpose. It is a rare thing, however, that injections are needed to procure a passage from the bowels unless some disease be present; wherefore it may be almost always advisable to prepare them of something more stimulating than warm water. But in cases of very obstinate costiveness where it becomes necessary to administer a great number of injections in order to evacuate the contents of the bowels, it may then be proper to omit the cayenne, excepting one occasionally. The repetition of ten, fifteen, twenty, or even forty injections, all charged with a portion of cayenne pepper, would be too irritating to the sensitive parts about the rectum, and therefore ought only to be put into a few of them. The same remarks will also in part apply to the employment of lobelia in the injections. Although it is in general a very valuable addition to them, yet where they are administered with no other view than to remove costiveness, the lobelia ought to be omitted. Independent of its tendency to invert the peristaltic motion, the quantity which would be administered in so many injections would produce sickness at the stomach and vomiting.

As a general rule, injections may always be administered at the time of taking a course of medicine, and more especially if the bowels are disordered, either by diarrhoea, dysentery, costiveness, colic, inflammation, piles, &c. For common use they are made as follows:—

Take of, Astringent tonic, pennyroyal, }  
catnip, or other hot tea, } 1 gill.

Lobelia, (leaves or seed,) pulverized, half to a whole  
tea-spoonful.

Cayenne pepper, one-eighth to half a tea-spoonful.

Mix these articles together and pour them hot into a pint syringe, having first unscrewed the cap, taken out the piston, and applied the fore finger to the end of the pipe; then pour

in cold water or cold tea until the liquid in the syringe is about blood warm, when the piston is to be returned into the syringe, the cap screwed on again, and the contents thrown into the intestines. This should be done with a due regard to decency; and those who know nothing about its performance only what report has said, should have explained to them the manner in which it is performed. They ought to be informed that no exposure is necessarily connected with it, and that each sex is competent to administer to its own wants in these respects. The usual mode of administering injections is to place the syringe, after being filled as has been directed, in the bed, when the patient may introduce the pipe, the attendant then throws up the liquid and withdraws the syringe without any exposure whatever.

It should be remembered, that after the liquor for the injection is poured into the syringe and the piston applied to it, the pipe of the syringe must be elevated so that the handle is perpendicularly downward, when the finger must be withdrawn that the air may escape and the piston be more readily forced in. Whilst in this position the air ought to be all forced out, which will be known by the liquid being pressed through the pipe of the syringe. This is essential that no air may be thrown into the intestines of the patient.

For diarrhœa, dysentery, &c. the injections should be wholly composed of a strong tea of the astringent tonic, or of some article of the astringent class, with the addition of a tea-spoonful or more of the tincture of myrrh, or the same quantity of the anodyne drops; and where they are necessarily often repeated, the cayenne may be occasionally omitted.

In obstinate cases of costiveness, they ought to be made of a tea of butternut bark, or of some other laxative article, sometimes adding a little cayenne, and repeated until the obstruction is removed.

#### LAXATIVE CLYSTER.

Take of milk and water, each six ounces; sweet oil or fresh butter, and brown sugar, each two ounces; mix them. If two table-spoonfuls of common salt be added to this, it will be the *purging clyster*.—[*Elisha Smith's Botanic Physician.*]

#### VINEGAR CLYSTER.

This is made by mixing three ounces of vinegar with five of water gruel. This is peculiarly proper in inflammatory and putrid disorders, especially in the latter.—[*Ib.*]

## NERVINE COMPOUNDS.

BUT very little has hitherto been done to improve the nervine medicines by compounding those of different qualities; which is to be accounted for in the fact, that this class of medicines embraces, so far as known, a much fewer number of simple articles than most other classes do. These medicines are highly useful in the healing art; their mode of action being that of giving tone to the nervous system, and hence, might, with propriety, be styled *nervine tonics*.

Nervines ought to be used in almost all cases of disease, especially if symptoms of nervous irritation be perceivable. The principal articles of this class, which we recommend, are the asafetida, the ginseng, and the lady's slipper.

## NERVINE POWDER.

Take of, Lady's Slipper,	4 oz.
Ginseng,	2 oz.

And two nutmegs; all finely pulverized and well mixed. *Dose*—one tea-spoonful; or one ounce may be steeped in a pint of hot water, of which three or four table-spoonfuls, or more, may be taken at a dose, as often as circumstances may require.

## NERVINE TINCTURE.

A valuable tincture is made by infusing four ounces of the above powder in a pint of alcohol or brandy, placed in a hot sun heat, often shaking, for ten days; when it may be poured off, strained, or filtered, and add of the Essence of Anise, one ounce. *Dose*—from one tea-spoonful to a table-spoonful.

## SIMPLE TINCTURE OF VALERIAN.

Take of, Valerian root,	4 oz.
Alcohol,	1 pint.

The root to be pulverized, and digested in the alcohol, in a hot sun heat, for ten days, shaken every day, then strained or filtered. *Dose*—from one tea-spoonful to a table-spoonful, repeated at discretion. This is a valuable preparation for all nervous symptoms.

## WELLS' COMPOUND TINCTURE OF VALERIAN.

Take of, Valerian root,	7 oz.
Liquorice root,	5 oz.
Oil of anise,	1 oz.
Gum camphor,	1 drachm,
Alcohol,	1½ pints.

The solid articles to be pulverized, and digested in a hot sun heat for ten days, shaken every day, then strained or filtered.



*Dose*—from one to three tea-spoonfuls, every fifteen minutes, until relief is obtained. Useful as a nervine, and to ease pain; and far preferable to paregoric, for children.

### OINTMENTS, AND LINIMENTS.

OINTMENTS differ from salves in being of a softer consistence; both are applied externally—salves most commonly to ulcers, and ointments to bad humors, and other eruptions of the skin. Liniments are somewhat thinner in their consistence than ointments, and are employed in frictions or embrocations on the skin.

#### WELLS' SCROFULOUS OINTMENT.

Take of, Tobacco, (best quality,)	1 oz.
White ash moss,	4 oz.
Soot,	4 oz.
Hog's lard,	4 oz.
Tar,	4 oz.
Anti-spasmodic drops,	2 oz.

Boil the tobacco, moss, and soot, in two gallons of water, down to one gallon; strain off, and boil down to one quart; then add the lard and tar, and simmer over a fire of coals, down to a pint and a half, and add the anti-spasmodic tincture, and stir till cool. This ointment is applied to scrofulous ulcers, scald head, itch, and all diseases of the skin.

#### NERVE OINTMENT.

Take of, Mayweed flowers,	2 oz.
Smartweed,	1 oz.
Bitter archangel,	1 oz.
Bittersweet, (bark of the root,)	3 oz.
Wormwood,	2 oz.
Cayenne pepper,	$\frac{1}{4}$ oz.

Bruise the herbs and bark, and simmer all the ingredients in a sufficient quantity of bear's grease, or any other soft animal oil, over a slow fire, five or six hours—then strain the liquid, and add to it one and a half ounces of spirits of turpentine to each pound of liquid. It should be bottled close from the air.

This ointment is to be used in cases of bruises, sprains, swellings, tumors, &c., by rubbing it frequently on the affected part, and binding it up with flannel, to keep it from the air.

#### DR. S. THOMSON'S NERVE OINTMENT.

Take of the bark of the root of bittersweet, two parts, of wormwood and chamomile, each equal, one part, when green, or if dry moisten it with hot water. Put these into any kind of

soft animal oil and simmer them over a slow fire for twelve hours; then strain, and add one ounce of the spirits of turpentine to each pound of ointment. To be used for a sprain, bruise, swelling, or for corns.

#### DISCUTIENT OINTMENT.

Take a handful of the flowers of mayweed, bruised, and about an equal quantity of lard, put into an earthen vessel and set in the sun for several days. This is said to be a useful application for hard swellings, lumps, or wens on the neck, or other parts of the body.

#### GREEN OINTMENT.

Take of tanzey, wormwood, hoarhound, catnip, and hops, of each an equal quantity. Bruise them and put them into a kettle, cover over with spirits and lard, and let it stand two weeks; then simmer awhile and strain. Add one pound of common [white] turpentine, to every ten pounds of the ointment. *Use.*—This ointment is very cooling, resolvent, relaxing, and emollient. It is very useful in sprains, contusions, swellings, dislocations, contracted sinews, &c.—[*American Practice.*]

#### RELAXING OINTMENT.

Take equal parts of plantain leaves and root, bittersweet bark, and spignard root, boil out the strength, strain, and make it into an ointment with hog's lard. This is a valuable ointment. It softens and relieves a caked and inflamed breast, in a remarkable manner.—[*Elisha Smith's Bot. Phys.*]

#### STRAMONIUM OINTMENT.

Take of fresh leaves of stramonium, (often called henbane, jimson, &c.,) bruised, five pounds; lard, fourteen pounds. Let them simmer together over a gentle fire, till the leaves become crisp and dry. Then press out the lard, return it into the vessel when cleansed, and add to every pound of the lard, two ounces of beeswax. Set the whole on the fire; when the wax has melted, remove the vessel, and let it rest, while the contents gradually cool, that the impurities may subside. This ointment has been found to afford relief in external inflammations, and piles. It is also highly beneficial in burns, and to allay the swelling of a cow's udder.—[*ib.*]

#### OINTMENT FOR SCALDS OR BURNS.

Take of, Spirits of Turpentine,	1 oz.
Olive oil or lard,	2 oz.

Mix. Apply this ointment to a scald or burn, and it takes out the fire or removes the inflammation.

## LINIMENT FOR BURNS.

Take equal parts of sweet oil, of fresh drawn linseed oil, and limewater; shake them well together, so as to form a liniment. This is found to be an exceedingly proper application for recent scalds or burns.—[*Botanic Physician.*]

## VOLATILE LINIMENT.

Take of sweet oil an ounce, spirits of hartshorn half an ounce; shake them together. It is said that in the inflammatory quinsy, a piece of flannel moistened with this liniment, and applied to the throat, to be renewed every four or five hours, is one of the most efficacious remedies, and seldom fails to carry off the complaint.—[*Ib.*]

---

POULTICES.

THESE are soft, pulpy, or mucilaginous compounds, for external application to tumors or swellings, ulcers, and inflamed parts. They are designed either to disperse tumors, promote suppuration, remove inflammation, or produce a discharge of healthy pus or matter from ulcers. Poultices ought to be renewed once or twice in twenty-four hours.

## COMMON ELM POULTICE.

Take a strong tea of sassafras bark, or blackberry roots, thicken with equal parts of dry bread or crackers, and slippery elm bark, all made fine, to which may be added a little ginger; and if to be applied to a bad ulcer, mix a little cayenne with it, or sprinkle it on the poultice after it is spread.

If the sassafras or blackberry cannot be readily procured, the bark of the dogwood, (*Cornus florida*,) alder or winter berry, or bayberry, or the roots of the pond-lily, or birth root may be used, and are perhaps equally as good.

This poultice is the one generally referred to in this work under the name of "*common poultices*," and is very good in all cases. It may be applied cold, especially to reduce inflammation, when there is much pain, &c., and should be occasionally wetted with cold water, or some one of the cold teas of which the poultice is directed to be made. We may also remark that for want of any of the aforesaid articles for preparing the tea, sweet milk, or water, may be used.

The elm bark alone, stirred into warm milk and water, until of a proper consistence, makes an excellent poultice, highly recommended by Dr. BEACH.

## SUMACH POULTICE.

Take of the bark of the roots of the common sumach, any quantity; bruise it well, and boil in sweet milk, catnip tea, or water, for twenty minutes; then thicken with corn meal or crackers to a proper consistence for a poultice. This is a highly valuable poultice for all kinds of foul ulcers, and especially those which affect the bones.

## YEAST AND CHARCOAL POULTICE.

Take of yeast, a sufficient quantity, and thicken it to the proper consistence with charcoal and slippery elm bark finely pulverized. This is highly useful applied to ulcers in a gangrenous or mortified condition.

## SASSAFRAS POULTICE.

Take the bark of sassafras, (root the best,) remove the rooss or other useless parts, bruise it well and boil in sweet milk or water, when it may be thickened to a proper consistence with meal, slippery elm bark, or flaxseed. This is also a valuable application for mortified ulcers.

## CARROT POULTICE.

Take of, Boiled carrots, bruised,	1 lb.
Flour,	1 oz.
Butter,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.

Mix them with as much warm water as to form a pulp. This will be found a valuable application to ulcerated sores and swellings, scrofulous sores of the irritable kind, and many other inveterate ulcers.—[*American Practice.*]

## ALKALINE POULTICE.

Take of lye, rather weak, warm it, and stir in of slippery elm bark sufficient to form a poultice. This poultice is useful in inflammation of the breast, and other parts, in felons, white swellings, lockjaw, wounds, fistulas, &c.—[*Id.*]

## DISCUTIENT POULTICE.

Make a very strong tea of white oak bark, and thicken with corn meal to the consistence of a poultice; apply it as hot as can be borne, and change it every two hours.—[*E. Stedman.*]

## SALVES.

MODERN medical writers have advanced the idea that the application of salves, &c., to ulcers, produces no direct beneficial effect upon them; or, in other words, that salves contain nothing

in their nature or preparation, which, when applied to an ulcerated surface, disposes it to heal. The usefulness of those valuable applications, it is contended, depends entirely upon their power of shielding the ulcer from the air.

However popular this theory may be amongst medical men, we see no rational ground upon which it can rest. If one application can be made to an ulcer which will irritate and inflame it, we see no good reason why another may not be made that will soothe and dispose the injured vessels to assume a healthy action, and thus incline the sore to heal. It is well known that in general as well as local diseases of the system, medicines taken internally will change a diseased action to a healthy one; and why may not external applications do the same? It is also as well known that the application of rubefacients, that is, the external application of stimulants, where the surface is sound, produces a beneficial effect by transforming a diseased into a healthy action; and it appears equally as rational to suppose that proper applications to ulcerated parts might do the same. Much more might be said on this subject, but we are compelled to forbear, both for want of room and time.

## DR. WELLS' HEALING SALVE.

Take of, Turpentine,	1 lb.
Beeswax,	1 lb.
Salt butter,	1 lb.
Balsam of fir,	1 lb.
Tincture of myrrh,	1 gill.

Melt and simmer all these articles together over a fire of coals for three hours, in an iron vessel; then strain and cool.

## DR. THOMSON'S SALVE.

Take of, Beeswax,	1 lb.
Salt butter,	1 lb.
Carolina or white turpentine,	1½ lb.
Balsam of fir,	12 oz.

Melt and mix well together; then strain off and cool, for use.

## SUMACH SALVE.

Take of the bark of the root of the common sumach, bruised, any quantity; boil until the strength is extracted, strain off the liquor; add for each pound of the bark, a few spoonfuls of lard or butter, and mutton tallow enough to give it a proper consistence, then simmer on coals until the water is all evaporated, when it may be again strained and put by for use.

## GREEN SALVE.

Take of, Turpentine,	½ lb.
Bayberry tallow,	½ lb.



Dissolve together, and form into a salve; add sweet oil if necessary.

This salve is designed for scrofulous ulcers.—[*American Practice.*]

#### YELLOW SALVE.

Take one bushel of the roots of the baptisia tinctoria, [wild indigo,] boil till the strength is out, then strain, boil, and skim; add ten pounds of fresh butter, three pounds of beeswax, and one and a half pounds of mutton tallow; then boil the water out, and strain till clear.

This salve is used by Dr. BONE, for all kinds of ulcers. It is cleansing, detergent, discutient, &c.—[*Id.*]

#### BUTLER'S HEALING SALVE, AND PLASTER.

Take of, Rosin,	1 lb.
Beeswax,	1 lb.
Mutton tallow,	2 oz.
Gum myrrh,	2 oz.
Gum camphor,	1 oz.
Tincture of myrrh,	1 oz.

Melt the rosin, beeswax, and tallow, then add the myrrh and camphor finely pulverized, and when all are melted strain through a fine cloth, return it into the kettle and add the tincture of myrrh. When all is well incorporated, pour the mass into water, and work it in the hands like wax.

Useful as a strengthening plaster, and as a salve for ulcers of every description, having been employed, as we are credibly informed, with the most astonishing success.

#### FELON SALVE.

Take of, Rock, or any other table salt,	1 oz.
Hard soap,	1 oz.
Spirits of turpentine,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.

The salt must be rolled in a cabbage leaf, or wet paper, and roasted in hot embers, for twenty or thirty minutes; then pulverize it, mix with the soap previously shaved down, and add the spirits of turpentine, which will make a soft salve or poultice. This must be applied to the affected part, and renewed as often as it becomes hard and dry; and if applied in time, that is, before matter is formed, it will prevent its formation, by three or four hours application. If the salve be not applied until matter is formed, it will still stop its progress, but the matter must be let out, when the ulcer may be healed by the same means that would be used in any other case of like kind.

## STYPTICS.

THESE are astringent substances applied to wounds or other bleeding surfaces, to stop the flow of blood. They are often very useful, but cannot be relied on when a large artery is wounded, though they ought to be resorted to when the means of taking up and tying the bleeding vessel are not at hand.

The following are considered among the best articles of this class :—

Dried beef, cut thin, dried, and pulverized ; or it may be burnt to a coal, and pulverized.

Sassafras leaves chewed fine and applied, is said to be better than any thing else.

Mandrake root is also highly recommended by some.

Burnt bone, pulverized, is, by many, considered a valuable styptic.

A strong tea of hickory bark, (that kind termed pignut) is highly recommended by Dr. HOUGH, and others.

Soot, applied to a fresh cut or bruise, is said to be very efficacious, in stopping the flow of blood.

## VOLATILE SALTS.

Take crude sal-ammoniac, one ounce ; pearlash, two ounces ; pound each by itself, mix them well together, and keep it close stopped in a bottle for use. By moistening it with spirit, or essence, of any kind, will increase the strength. This applied to the nose, is good for faintness and to remove pain in the head. &c.—[*Dr. S. Thompson.*]

## MISCELLANEOUS MEDICAL RECIPES.

## RHEUMATIC LIQUID.

Take of, Rattle root, (if green, 1 oz. if dry,)	$\frac{3}{4}$ oz.
Gum guaiacum,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
Juice of poke berries,	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ gills,
French brandy,	1 qt.

Mix. Shake it frequently for two or three days, when it will be fit for use. Drink of this as often as can be borne without producing intoxication, until a cure is effected.

The above recipe, which we believe valuable, was communicated by Dr. ALFORD BUTTERS, who also informs that one teaspoonful of the *saturated* tincture of the rattle root, which is often used in rheumatic affections, is a common dose, and as much as most persons can bear.

In the original recipe obligingly furnished us by Dr. BUTTERS, one ounce of *sulphur* was added to the compound ; but as we

are unwilling to recommend that article, and believing the preparation equally useful without it, we have left it out. Those who are disposed to use it, however, can add it if they choose.

#### RHEUMATIC DECOCTION.

Take of, Virginia snake root,	1 oz.
White pine bark,	2 oz.
Burdock seeds,	2 oz.
Prickly ash bark,	2 oz.

Pulverize all together, and add half a gallon of water; boil to three pints. *Dose*—Half a pint, two or three times a day. This forms an excellent decoction in chronic rheumatism.—[*American Practice.*]

#### FOR PAINS FROM COLD OR RHEUMATISM.

Take a large handful of smart weed, bruise it and add as much sharp vinegar as it will absorb; warm it in a pot, or pan, and lay it on the part affected as a fomentation, or poultice, and renew it frequently. If it should prove too painful, as it sometimes will when applied to the tender skin, mix it with corn mush or bran. The tea made of it, I am told, is very good to take, by the stomach, for colic pains.—[*J. Shaw.*]

#### LUSK'S RHEUMATIC DROPS.

Take of, Mandrake root,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
Black cohush,	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
Pipsisawa,	2 drachms,
Prickly ash bark,	2 do.

Infuse in a quart of wine. *Dose*—from one to four tea-spoonfuls, three or four times a day. Useful in chronic rheumatism and gout.

#### POULTICE FOR SORE THROAT.

Take of mayweed, or the flowers, a suitable quantity, bruise to a soft pulp, and boil for a short time in a small quantity of water; then stir in corn meal until of a suitable consistence for a poultice, spread on thick cloth and apply to the neck, renewing when it becomes dry. This is recommended as being highly useful for the sore throat of scarlet fever and for all swellings and inflammations.

#### FOR THE CURE OF BALDNESS, OR TO PREVENT THE LOSS OF HAIR.

Fill a bottle with the pulverized herb of lobelia, and then pour in as much as it will contain of equal parts of brandy or whisky and sweet oil. It will be fit for use in a few days. Bathe the head once a day with this liquid, and it will prevent the loss of hair; also said to have restored it when lost.

## CURE FOR CANCER.

Take the leaves of the common poke weed, bruise and press out the juice, and dry on a pewter dish in the sun to a proper consistence for a plaster or salve. Spread this on cloth or leather about one eighth of an inch thick, and apply to the cancerous ulcer. If the sore is very large, a thin piece of muslin may be first laid on it to prevent too much pain, and then the plaster over the muslin.

After twenty-four hours, the plaster must be removed, when it will be found that the cancer is covered with matter, which must be cleaned off both from the plaster and sore : this may be done by washing with soap suds ; and the plaster applied again.

When the cancerous tumor is eradicated by the repeated application of these plasters, the ulcer may be healed with the following salve :—Take equal parts of beeswax, mutton suet, and spirits of turpentine, melted together. The beeswax and suet should be first melted, when the spirits of turpentine may be added, well mixed and suffered to cool.

One case has been reported, in which this remedy is said to have cured a cancer inside the mouth, by chafing the cheek on the outside until sore, and then applying the plaster. It is also said that one individual cured nine cases with it in one year.

## VALUABLE COMPOUND FOR SWELLED BREASTS.

Beat or rub camphor in a mortar with a little alcohol, and to a tea-spoonful of this add a table-spoonful of sweet oil. Useful for any kind of swelling, pain, bruise, rheumatism, &c.

## FOR WOMEN'S SWOLLEN, INFLAMED, OR SORE BREASTS.

Take soft soap and make a strong suds, and with a flannel cloth well saturated with the suds, wash and rub the breasts, downward, with some degree of violence, once an hour ; after which, each time, bathe the breast with pole-cat oil and camphor, and keep it covered with a flannel. Pursue this course until a cure is effected.—[*Dr. Daniel Butler.*]

## ANOTHER, FOR THE SAME.

Take of hard soap and common salt, each, two ounces ; of new milk, half a pint ; after shaving the soap fine, put the above ingredients in a vessel and simmer or boil them slowly over the fire, (being careful not to burn,) and when hot, stir in a spoonful of corn meal, and keep it simmering until of a proper consistence to spread on a cloth. The whole quantity should be used for one poultice, and should cover the whole breast. After being spread, the surface of the poultice should be covered over with pole-cat oil, or any other soft grease, and applied to the breast as hot as

can be borne. A new poultice, similar to the above, should be applied once in three hours, until relief is obtained. The above is considered infallible.—[*Ibid.*]

#### TO CURE WENS.

Take the yolks of eggs, beat up and add as much fine salt as will dissolve, and apply a plaster to the wen every twelve hours. It cures without pain or any other inconvenience.

#### FOR INFLUENZA.

Take equal parts of good vinegar and water, and to a tea-cupful of this mixture add one tea-spoonful of best African cayenne; sweeten with honey or sugar. *Dose*—one table-spoonful, which will allay the cough instantly. A dose taken at bed time will generally enable the patient to rest well all night; if, however, the cough becomes troublesome at any time before morning, another spoonful will allay it.—[*John Shaw.*]

#### FOR WHOOPING COUGH.

Equal parts of sweet oil, honey and vinegar, simmered together, given in tea-spoonful, or larger doses.—[*Ibid.*]

#### TO CURE A COUGH.

Take equal parts of the loose coarse moss which grows on white oak, white maple, and white ash trees, make a strong tea, sweeten, and drink freely.—[*Jacob Dowell, Esq.*]

#### FOR CONTRACTED JOINTS.

A most valuable experienced remedy for lameness proceeding from a fixed contraction of the parts affected; from the pen of a late English surgeon.

Take the yolk of a new laid egg, and let it be beaten with a spoon to the greatest thinness: then by spoonfuls add three ounces of pure water, agitating the mixture continually that the egg and water may be well incorporated. The liquor may be applied cold, or only milk warm, to the parts contracted, by a gentle friction for a few minutes three or four times a day. This remedy has been repeatedly tried by different practitioners, and with happy success.—[*J. Shaw.*]

#### FOR COSTIVENESS.

The foregoing prescription brings to my recollection the same medical preparation for removing habitual costiveness, that dreadful nursery of every complaint. I was many years ago troubled with it, and have often tried this remedy, and also have recommended it to others who, as well as myself, have proved its superior efficacy.



Begin with one new laid hen's egg, (raw ;) add it to three times its bulk of cold water ; let it be beaten for thirty minutes to the finest consistence. Take it in the morning on an empty stomach, and once or twice in the course of the day afterwards ; continue for eight or ten days, increasing the quantity from one to three at a time, if the stomach will relish them ; and they will gradually and pleasantly remove costiveness and strengthen the system. I am also of opinion that it is of considerable benefit to the lungs.

Dr. MOORE has mentioned in his Medical Lectures, an astonishing and desperate case of habitual costiveness, in an English surgeon stationed at Gibraltar, who had taken medicine for the removal of it until the bowels became so torpid, that they almost ceased to act, and hope had nearly vanished. The eggs and water was prescribed for him by a Spanish sergeant of the army, and report says, made a perfect cure.—[*Ibid.*]

## FOR THE GRAVEL.

Let the patient drink a gill of red onion juice, and a pint of horse-mint tea, twice a day, morning and evening, (but not together.) The effect will be perceivable within three days. Reported to me by a man who says it will dissolve the stone.

The foregoing was communicated by a slave, to a Baptist minister of Virginia, who was cured by it, and afterwards bought the slave and set him free.—[*Ibid.*]

## FOR THE DROPSY.

The following medicine has saved many lives :—Take one pint of bruised mustard seed, two handfuls of bruised horse radish root, eight ounces of lignum vitæ chips, and four ounces of bruised Indian hemp root : put all the ingredients into seven quarts of sound cider, and let it simmer over hot ashes until it is reduced to four quarts : strain the decoction, and let the patient take a wine-glassful, four times a day, for a few days, increasing the dose to a tea-cupful, three or four times a day, according to its effects : after which let the patient use the tonic medicines.

This prescription, says Dr. HENRY, has cured a remarkable case of the dropsy, in a week's time, which had baffled the skill of some eminent physicians.

## SYCAMORE BUDS.

The buds of the common sycamore or button wood, is a new article in the materia medica, and appear from their sensible properties to be possessed of great power. Their taste is warm, very pungent, and slightly nauseous, producing a copious discharge of saliva, and a very durable impression on the mouth.

Dr. W. H. ANDERSON, of Warren county, O., seems to have

been the discoverer of the virtues of this article, and communicated it not long since to us. The most usual mode of preparation is in tincture, which is made by digesting one ounce of the pulverized buds in a pint of alcohol, often shaking it, for a week. *Dose*—for an adult, from one to two tea-spoonfuls; for children, less.

Dr. ANDERSON recommends this article as being a good remedy for cramp, bowel complaints, pain in the breast, flatulency, &c. He also thinks it will be found a valuable remedy for suppression of urine, as the bark of the tree is known to be.

We may add, that we think this tincture promises to become a valuable article of medicine.

#### TO CURE CRAMP.

Drink plentifully of a strong tea of the blue cohosh root.—*[Jacob Dowell, Esq.]*

#### FOR POLYPUS OF THE NOSE.

Take of blood root, and bark of the bayberry root, equal parts, pulverize fine, and use as a snuff freely, several times a day.

#### CLEANSING BEER.

Take equal parts of burdock, yellow parilla, and spignard roots, as much as can be boiled in six quarts of water; boil it down to two quarts, strain it off, and when a little cooled, add a pint of melasses or half a pound of sugar, with yeast enough to work or ferment it. As soon as the fermentation commences, begin to drink, and continue drinking freely until it is all drank; and thus continue, making it fresh and drinking every day, until health is restored. This is a good article for purifying the blood, and may be used in all cases of vitiated humors.—*[E. Stedman.]*

#### FOR CURING A CUT, BRUISE, ETC.

Apply the moist surface of the inside coating (or skin) of the shell of a raw egg; it will adhere of itself, leave no scar, and heal without pain.—*[Mechanic's Magazine.]*

#### FOR SCALD HEAD.

Take equal quantities of black pepper, (pulverized) and soot, and stew in salt butter. With this anoint the head daily until cured; washing the part before each application, with warm soap suds, and afterwards with strong tea of bayberry.

#### FOR A DISCHARGE OF SYNOVIA, OR JOINT-WATER.

Injured joints sometimes discharge a fluid, called joint-water, which essentially weakens the part. It is said to be stopped,

and the joint cured, by applying a poultice made of sarsaparilla root, boiled in water until the strength is extracted, and mixed with wheat bran, or corn meal, to the proper consistence.

## FEMALE STRENGTHENING SYRUP.

Take one-fourth of a pound of comfrey root, dried; two ounces of elecampane root; and one ounce of hoarhound. Boil them in three quarts of water down to three pints; strain, and add, while warm, half an ounce of bethroot, pulverized; a pint of brandy, and a pound of loaf sugar.

*Dose*—from half to two thirds of a wine-glassful, three or four times a day. This is used in female weaknesses, bearing down of the womb, fluor albus, debility and relaxation of the genital organs, barrenness, &c.—[*Elisha Smith's Bot. Physician.*]

## CHILDREN'S CORDIAL.

Take two ounces, each, of pink blows, smellage root, and pleurisy root, boil in two quarts of water down to one quart; strain, and add one quart of fourth proof brandy, and one pound of sugar.

*Dose*—for an infant, a tea-spoonful, repeating if necessary. For the colics, fits, green stools, &c., of children, this is an excellent remedy.—[*Ibid.*]

## FOR THE PILES.

Take one gill of sugar house melasses; one ounce of fresh butter; mix them well over a slow fire, and drink, just before lying down, or going to bed, at night. In addition to this, the following external application should be made. Burn two common sized new corks to ashes, and mix the same with a sufficient quantity of lard to make it of the proper consistence; rub the anus, or fundament, twice a day with this ointment, and a cure will soon be effected.

## WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.

## WEIGHTS.

20 Grains, or gr., make	1 scruple, or 6
3 Scruples,	1 drachm, dr., or 3
8 Drachms,	1 ounce, oz., or 3

A large tea-spoonful of the powder of roots, barks or vegetables, will weigh about twenty grains or one scruple, less or more, as the article may be more ponderous, or light and bulky.

## WEIGHT OF FLUIDS.

A tea-spoonful contains about one fluid drachm.

A dessert-spoonful contains about three fluid drachms.

VOL. II.—2 F

A table-spoonful contains about five fluid drachms.

A wine-glassful contains about two fluid ounces.

A tea-cupful contains about four fluid ounces.

A pint contains about one pound.

FLUID MEASURE.

4 Gills, make

1 pint, pt.

2 Pints,

1 quart, qt.

4 Quarts,

1 gallon, gall.

Those who wish to be very nice and exact about the quantities in administering or compounding medicines, may purchase at the apothecary shops a graduated glass for measuring fluids, and small scales for weighing solids.

## COURSE OF MEDICINE.

---

THIS includes the application of the vapor bath or steaming, to promote perspiration; the administration of an emetic to cleanse the stomach; injections to relieve or evacuate the bowels; a second application of the vapor bath; the final conclusion of the process by the cold affusion, or washing, with cold water, and occasionally a cathartic to cleanse the intestines.

The use of vapor or steam is of very remote origin, having been used by perhaps nearly all the nations of ancient times; and is still resorted to by some of the rude, as well as more polished nations, of the present day.

In Russia, as has been shown in the first volume, the vapor bath is very extensively used, and also more or less in other nations of the European continent. The Indians of America have also been in the habit, from time immemorial, of employing the vapor bath, to assist in curing their maladies, and continue the practice to the present time.

### METHOD OF STEAMING.

In all chronic complaints, that is, those which are of long standing, such as dropsy, consumption, liver complaint, rheumatism, &c., the patient should take, four or five times a day, a dose of the diaphoretic powder or bitter tonic, or in case of costiveness, of the laxative bitters, for two, three, or four days previous to the application of the steam or vapor bath. And in case of diarrhoea, dysentery, colic, cholera morbus, milk sickness, obstinate constipation of the bowels, suspended animation, &c., an injection should also be administered as soon as it can be prepared, and if necessary, repeated before the process of steaming is commenced. [For the method of preparing and administering injections, see under the head of *Injections*.] But if the disease be a recent attack, preparations should be immediately made to apply the vapor bath.

Various methods have been devised for applying the vapor or steam bath; but the following may be used in all cases; and as the means are to be had in every family, it is most usually adopted:

Have a good fire kindled, into which five or six stones or bricks must be thrown, and a tea kettle of water put over to heat.



As soon as the water boils, take a tea-spoonful of the diaphoretic or sweating powders and add to it the fourth of a tea-cupful of hot water, which may be sweetened if most agreeable, and administered to the patient. Two or three doses similar to this must, in general, be given to the patient before applying the steam, and if the disease be a bad case of fever, or attended with much pain, one-fourth or one-half of a tea-spoonful of cayenne pepper should be added to each dose of the diaphoretic powder.

To prepare the steam bath nothing more is necessary, if the patient is able to stand during the process, than a small iron vessel, (a *deep* one is best,) and a thick blanket, coverlet or quilt. With the blanket held loosely around him, he should strip off all his clothes, or at least all but his shirt, when he must be more closely wrapped in the blanket. The iron vessel being now placed near the patient with one of the hot bricks or stones in it, hot water is poured from the tea-kettle into the vessel until the stone is about half immersed, which quantity is sufficient to produce a lively steam. The blanket is now drawn over and around the kettle, and the hot vapor ascends, being confined by the blanket, around the body of the patient. When the stone becomes so cool as not to produce a lively steam, it must be carefully turned over on the other side, and when this has become cool also, it must be taken out, and a hot one from the fire put in its place. This likewise, when too cool to produce a lively steam, must be removed, and thus continue changing the stones until a profuse perspiration is produced, which will usually be in from ten to twenty minutes. If the steam be too hot, the blanket must be opened to allow the cool air to enter. Should there be any difficulty in producing a sweat, the patient ought to take another dose or two, of from half to a whole tea-spoonful of cayenne, in warm water, sweetened if most agreeable, whilst over the steam. If he becomes fatigued with standing he may sit down occasionally, and by laying something across the steam vessel, may place his feet over it or near its edges and thus have the benefit of it to his feet.

In cold weather he should have a warm board to stand on; and when the first stone which is put into the steam vessel becomes cool, it should be wrapped in a damp cloth and placed in the bed at the foot; and the next one near the middle, to warm the bed, to promote sweating when the patient goes into it.

It often happens, during the process of steaming, that the patient becomes feeble and faint. In such cases, as well as at all other times, let him, if he craves it, drink cold water, and dash a little into his face or bosom, or pour it on his head or back, which, if properly attended to, will generally afford relief, but if it does not, then put him into bed.

In the absence of the diaphoretic powders, the cayenne pep-

per, common red pepper, black pepper, ginger or pennyroyal, mint, balm, or any other warm aromatic teas, may be used instead of it, or in cases of emergency, hot water may be substituted if nothing else can be obtained. Emergencies of this kind, however, can rarely occur, unless it might be sometimes an accident, as drowning, severe bruises, &c.

If the patient be too weak to stand over the steam, he may be placed in a chair, wrapped in a very thin blanket, or he may be either entirely naked or have his shirt on, first putting a hot stone, as before directed, into a *shallow* vessel under the chair, when a thick blanket must be thrown around the patient and chair, and hot water poured into the vessel, and managed in every other respect, as directed for steaming when the patient is able to stand over the steam.

For steaming small children, let a blanket or something of that kind be spread on a chair so that it shall reach, in front of the chair, to the floor; then let some person who can best manage the child be seated in the chair, with the child in his arms. A deep iron vessel containing a moderate sized stone must now be placed before the person and nearly between his feet; pour in hot water sufficient to produce a lively steam, and then place a blanket or quilt around the child and person holding it, in such a way as to come over the steaming vessel, and down to the floor, and in every other manner so arranged as to confine the vapor and exclude the air. The person holding the child must be the judge of the proper temperature or heat of the steam, and the attendant will regulate it by raising the blanket when too hot, or changing the stones when too cool.

The quantity of medicine must be governed by the judgment of the individual administering; remembering often during the process, to give the child drink, and in other respects managing in the same manner as with a grown person.

We may also observe, that some practitioners omit steaming until after giving the emetic, by which the patient only receives one process of the vapor bath instead of two. We think, however, that the steaming before the emetic, prepares the patient better for its exhibition, making its operation more easy and more thorough.

The steaming may be also very advantageously employed at other times than when taking an emetic. It should always, however, be immediately followed by the cold bath; and in this manner may be profitably resorted to daily, in fevers, rheumatism, and various other complaints. In the same way it may also be very usefully employed as a preventive of sickness, at any and all times; whether after exposures, or at times when an attack of disease is actually threatened. And if each family had some convenient method of applying the vapor bath, and would resort to

it once a week, especially in the warm or sickly part of the season, or when an epidemic was prevailing, there is no doubt that a great deal of sickness might be prevented.

#### ADMINISTERING AN EMETIC.

After steaming the patient, place him in bed, and, if necessary, administer an injection, observing the utmost care to avoid exposure to cold air, when an emetic must be given.

For an emetic, the pulverized leaves and pods, or the seeds, or tincture, of the lobelia, may be administered. The seeds are commonly preferred, as being most active and powerful. The quantity necessary to produce full vomiting will vary for different individuals, and even for the same individual at different times. These observations apply with equal force to all the preparations of the lobelia.

In ordinary cases, we may commence by giving from half to a whole tea-spoonful of the pulverized seeds in a table-spoonful or two of warm water or warm tea of any kind, to which should be added a few drops of the essence of sassafras, from one-eighth to a whole tea-spoonful of cayenne, and the same quantity of the nervine powder, or its tincture. This may be washed down with pennyroyal, may-weed, or boneset tea, or chicken broth, gruel, milk porridge, or water. Two more doses, similar to this, but increasing the quantity of the pulverized lobelia seeds at each dose, should be administered at intervals of fifteen minutes, until three tea-spoonfuls are taken, unless sufficient vomiting is sooner produced. In some instances, however, the quantity here prescribed for an emetic will not be sufficient, in which case more, of course, must be administered, the quantity of which must be regulated by the judgement of those who administer; but enough should be given to cleanse the stomach thoroughly. Experience will teach, however, better than any general rules can do, the quantity necessary to operate sufficiently on different patients. The first and second doses ought to be so small as not to produce vomiting, if they can be so regulated, but always endeavor at the third dose, to give enough to answer the desired purpose. Some practitioners, however, prefer giving enough at one dose, in which case they give from two to four tea-spoonfuls. We think this the most effectual in curing disease, but is most unpleasant and fatiguing to the patient.

If the essence of sassafras cannot be obtained, a tea of the bark of this tree may be substituted for it; or if neither can be procured, the emetic must nevertheless be given without either. The advantage of the sassafras appears to be that of modifying the action of the lobelia upon the nervous system, without impairing its virtues.

Whilst taking the emetic, and during its operation, the patient

ought to drink freely of warm water, pennyroyal, or some other tea, which has a tendency to promote vomiting as well as to make it more easy. It may be regarded as a general rule, that the more a person drinks, especially if vomiting be difficult to excite, or is laborious, the more readily and easily he will vomit.

The pulverized leaves and pods of the lobelia rank next to the seed for an emetic. They may be given in the same manner as the seeds, only the doses must be somewhat larger; or from three to six tea-spoonfuls of the powder may be infused in a tea-cupful of hot water, pennyroyal, catnip, or almost any other tea, for twenty or thirty minutes, closely covered; then strain off, divide into three unequal doses, adding the essence of sassafras, cayenne pepper, and nervine medicine as directed for the seeds; give the smallest dose first, the other two at intervals of fifteen or twenty minutes, and in other respects manage as directed in giving the seeds.

The tincture of the green herb is thought to be the mildest form in which the lobelia can be administered as an emetic, though there is probably but little difference between this and the infusion of the powder just treated of, either of which ought commonly to be preferred for children and delicate or irritable females.

If, however, no preparation of the lobelia is at hand, either of the following articles may be substituted, viz: Vervain, boneset, wild hoarhound of the South, or ipecacuanha (commonly called *ipecac*) of the shops.

It often happens that emetics do not operate freely, apparently in consequence of acidity or sourness of the stomach. When this appears to be the case, or at any time when an emetic is slow in its operation, the white lye, or pearlash water, may be given, which will generally produce vomiting.

When the patient has done vomiting, or as soon as the stomach will bear it, he should take some kind of nourishment, such as broth, soup, porridge, tea and toast, or any thing else which the appetite may crave, in reasonable quantity; and when sufficiently recovered from the effects of the emetic and fatigue of the vomiting, he should be again steamed in the manner heretofore described; and when perspiration has become profuse, the blanket, or whatever is around the patient, should be held loosely from him, and a quart, or more, of cold water poured instantaneously upon the head or shoulders so as to spread as nearly as possible over the whole surface of the body. The patient must then be wiped dry, and his necessary clothing put on, and go into bed, having the sheets or blankets, in which he lay whilst vomiting, taken off, and dry ones put in their place.

For patients who are very weak, or irritable, the coldness of the water may be taken off a little by the addition of some that



is warm ; or if strong prejudice or objections exist in the mind of the patient against the pouring on of the water, wiping off with a cloth wet with cold water, vinegar, or spirits, may be adopted instead of that process.

#### ADMINISTERING CATHARTICS.

In all cases where it is thought advisable to administer a purgative medicine, it is best, in general, to give it so long previous to the steaming and emetic just described, as to allow its operation to be over before the steaming process is commenced. This course will sometimes be proper in bilious fevers, dysenteries, liver complaints, dropsies, jaundice, &c. For dropsical complaints, two of BUNNELL'S pills may be taken every night, with bitter tonics and diuretics during the day, and the vapor bath and emetic once or twice a week, or oftener, according to circumstances. For jaundice, or liver complaints, take three pills every other night, the bitter tonic during the day, and the steaming and emetic once or twice a week. But in ordinary cases where cathartics are employed, and in bilious fevers, the black root is considered by many as more valuable than any other article. This may also be given at bed time, in the dose of one or two heaping tea-spoonfuls, and if it does not operate by morning, half as much more may be administered.

During the operation of a purge, and especially if the patient is weak or feeble, he ought to drink frequently of nourishing broth, soup, porridge, or gruel, to support the powers of life, and prevent that exhaustion which most cathartics are apt to produce. Care should also be taken to prevent exposure to the cold, as by this simple precaution, many of the evils arising from the use of purgatives might be avoided. If they continue their operation too long, or prove by their violence too exhausting, the patient should take a few doses of the tincture of myrrh, or of the cholera syrup.

In some cases of fever where the course of medicine is not commenced with a purge, it sometimes happens that after the fever is checked, the patient does not readily regain his strength but continues weak and feeble ; in which cases the administration of a purgative produces a most salutary effect. We repeat, however, that purges should be cautiously administered in all cases where great debility prevails, and the utmost care ought always to be observed in all serious complaints to prevent their debilitating effects, by the use of nourishing broths and stimulating medicines, such as tincture of myrrh, diaphoretic powders, bitter tonic, &c.

#### REPETITION OF THE COURSE OF MEDICINE.

Although this has been, perhaps, sufficiently noticed in the treatment of the various diseases which we have herein before



described, yet as there are cases sometimes occurring of which no description will be found in our work, as well as others to which no name can or need be assigned, but which are to be treated on the same plan, we think it advisable to present some general rules for regulating this important part of the curative process.

Where a course of medicine has afforded perfect, or only very considerable relief in sudden attacks, we may very fairly presume in most instances, that with common prudence and the use of bitter tonics, diaphoretic powders, or cayenne pepper, the patient will soon regain his health without another course. Or if the violent symptoms are removed, and still, as sometimes happens, recovery is not so speedy as might be expected or wished, a cathartic will often be very serviceable, and accomplish all that might be necessary; remembering to follow it with the bitter tonic, &c.

It may be regarded as a general rule, in all cases of disease, whether acute or chronic, that when very important relief is obtained, whether by the first or any succeeding course of medicine, this process need not be again repeated so long as the bitter tonic, or whatever else may be thought best to give, keeps the patient improving in health and strength. But whenever we find that this is not the case, another course is immediately to be resorted to.

In acute diseases, especially fevers, and all cases which have a tendency to run their course in a short time, the courses of medicine ought to be repeated every day, or once in two or three days, according to the violence of the symptoms. In violent cases, the cayenne pepper should be frequently administered between the courses whilst the bitter tonic or diaphoretic powders may be less frequently given.

In chronic diseases, the same rule may also be observed, only that the courses of medicine need not be so often repeated, excepting sometimes in dropsy, or some other complaints which have become very virulent in their character, or threaten a speedy termination in death.

## APPENDIX.

CONTAINING CASES OF CURES PERFORMED WITH BOTANIC MEDICINES.

---

THE following cases are given, not so much with a view of showing the value of Botanic Medicines, as to exhibit the diversified manner in which they may be used, and thus inspire confidence in those who are but little acquainted with them. These cures were chiefly performed with what are termed *Thomsonian* medicines; a name now employed, to a great extent, in a general sense, to distinguish *innocent* botanic remedies from those which are *poisonous*, either botanical or mineral; and if there be any thing honorable to Dr. THOMSON in thus distinguishing botanic medicine, we think him worthy of it, as he was the first individual who commenced the present revolution in medicine, and which will eventually change the whole poisonous practice; for which he is entitled to the lasting gratitude of the whole civilized world.

But it is obvious to those who are acquainted with Dr. THOMSON's system, as it is called, that it is too brief, as well as being otherwise imperfect; and loud and repeated calls have been made for a work more extensive, and at the same time embracing all the improvements and knowledge that has been accumulating since the publication of his books, which is the object of the present work.

As some of Dr. THOMSON's medicines are named in the following Appendix, we will state, for the satisfaction of those who are unacquainted with his book, or may wish to know which of our medicines we would apply, in similar cases, instead of his, that where his third preparation is recommended, or has been employed, our anti-spasmodic tincture should be used, and is considered better; where his No. 6 is directed, we should use either the simple, or compound tincture of myrrh; instead of his composition, use our diaphoretic medicines; instead of his bitters, any of our bitter tonics; and instead of his No. 5, our tonic cordial.

## CASES OF CURES.

---

### CASE I.

In the spring of 1830, I was called to attend Ephraim Simons, a man of advanced age and very infirm, having for several years previous to this time been afflicted with what was termed an asthmatic consumption.

I found that he had taken a very severe cold, which had seated upon his lungs, and produced the most violent pains in his breast, extending to his shoulder blades, shooting thence to his side, and back again to his lungs; with high fever and difficulty of breathing. I immediately proceeded to take him through a regular course of medicine which, for a short time, afforded some relief. The pain, however, gradually returned, and in five hours he was in as much pain as ever, notwithstanding he had been kept in a copious perspiration by the application of hot stones and the free administration of diaphoretic powders and cayenne.

At the end of five hours, I placed him in a chair over a lively steam for thirty minutes, by which the pain was again mitigated, when he was put in bed and the perspiration kept up as before.

After about six hours had elapsed, the pains had returned, when he was again steamed as before, with the same happy effect. Several injections had also been given during the time, to relieve his bowels.

After the lapse of about seven hours from the last steaming, the pains again recurred, but with less violence than formerly, when I repeated the steaming with the same good effect; keeping up the perspiration when in bed by the same means as at first; and now, in addition thereto, I gave bitters occasionally. These were composed of star or unicorn root, two parts, and golden seal and poplar bark, of each one part, with a small quantity of cayenne. I also ordered, every three hours, a teaspoonful of the antispasmodic tincture, to promote expectoration; with a free use of the lady's slipper to allay the nervous irritation.

At the end of about seven hours more, however, the pain had once more returned, but with still less violence, when I took him through another course of medicine; vomiting him with the antispasmodic tincture, and keeping up the perspiration as before. The pain now became less severe and recurred with less

frequency than it had previously done; after which I gave him a course of medicine every twenty-four hours for five days, steaming him about three times between the courses.

The pain having now become very much conquered, and expectoration free, two days were allowed to elapse before another course, of medicine was resorted to; and his pains continuing to subside, three days were allowed to pass away before the next course, after which he gradually recovered, and acquired better health in three weeks than he had enjoyed for a long time previous to this attack.

MICAJAH DILLINGHAM.

---

#### CASE II.

Sometime in the early part of 1833, I was called upon to attend Nathan Fitz Randolph who had been out of health for about two weeks previous to my first visit; one week of which time he had been procuring and taking medicine from a neighboring physician, but had, from the very commencement of his indisposition, been growing worse.

His symptoms were, a violent fever of the remittent type, with bilious accumulation, great pain in the head, and inflammation of the lungs attended with much pain, oppression, and difficulty of breathing. Indeed, his case had the appearance of being one of the most formidable that I had ever encountered.

I commenced, however, and gave him a thorough course of medicine, which entirely relieved the pain in his head, and produced expectoration from the lungs with some relief in his breathing. After this I gave the diaphoretic powders and cayenne freely to promote perspiration and increase the vital force of the system.

In twenty-four hours, I gave him another course of medicine, which increased the expectoration, but produced no permanent abatement of fever. Diaphoretic powders and cayenne were directed every two hours, alternately with a free use of the nerve powders, and once in four hours, a dose of the tincture of lobelia. The usual means of applying hot stones wrapped in damp cloths were also employed, to promote perspiration in bed; but the fever being of the most inveterate character, but little advances apparently were made towards effecting a cure. A portion of Bunnell's pills were also given to remove the bilious matter from the stomach and intestines.

Forty-eight hours were now allowed to elapse before another course was administered, after which, finding the disease so obstinate, I repeated them every day until I had administered nine courses in all, the last of which appeared to remove the fever and leave him clear of the disease, but in a very debilitated con-

dition. He, however, gradually regained his strength, and now appears entirely free from any affection of the lungs which had previously been in an unhealthy condition for several years in consequence of the measles.

It will be proper to observe that after the fourth course of medicine, I directed the employment of wine and the spice bitters, in addition to the cayenne and diaphoretic powders; with castor oil to move the bowels. Injections were also occasionally administered for the same purpose. Between the courses of medicine, I sometimes applied the vapor bath in the following manner:—I took two wooden hoops from a barrel, one somewhat smaller in diameter than the other, and cut them in two at the middle. The largest of these was placed, when steaming, over the breast of the patient, and the smaller one near the feet. After cutting them in two, as stated, they were prepared for use, by setting them up at a suitable distance apart and nailing three narrow strips of thin board, one on the top, and one on each side; the top one somewhat the longest so that it extended over the small hoop and formed a projection beyond the foot of the bed. This frame was placed over the patient, and under the bed clothes, with a kettle of hot water and a red hot stone in it on a chair at the foot of the bed to produce a steam. To those acquainted with the common method of applying the vapor bath, nothing more will be necessary by way of explanation, as they will understand it better than it could be described.

I will only add, that by the aid of this simple construction, I have often succeeded in exciting perspiration on persons too weak to sit in a chair, when I could not produce it by the application of hot stones or bricks.

MICAJAH DILLINGHAM.

### CASE III.

I have thought it might be gratifying to the friends of the Improved System of Botanic medicine, as well as useful to the public, to forward the following statement for publication. It shows at once the power of some of the improved botanic agents, and their superiority over the remedies of the old school.

The subject of this statement, is the wife of WALLACE DANIEL, who for many years has been subject to fits, for the cure of which her husband assures me he has spent upwards of *one thousand dollars*, without his wife receiving any benefit. For the last two years her health has been very precarious and feeble; but she has not, during that time, had many fits, until since the birth of her last child, which is now seven or eight months. Within the last few days, her fits have been extremely violent. She was advised to call on me; and yesterday, accompanied by her hus-



band, she came to my house to consult with me herself, having had strong doubts as to the utility of the botanic practice.

About one hour after her arrival, she arose from her chair, in much agitation, exclaiming, "I have a fit now coming on me!" and, from extreme agony, shouted with great vehemence. And what was very singular, the pain commenced in the great toe of her left foot, from whence it extended over the whole body. Her manner was so terrific, that my family all fled from the house, whilst I immediately availed myself of some *anti-spasmodic drops*, by which time she had sunk to the floor in spasms. I poured a tea-spoonful of the drops into her mouth, and in less than one minute she raised her head from the floor, and, clapping her hands, exclaimed, "Thank God, Mr. Sheward! thank God, Mr. Sheward! Oh! what sudden relief!" She was then assisted from the floor, and went into bed.

I then gave her a portion of the diaphoretic powders, to which was added a little cayenne. After an interval of about one hour, the spasms returned again, with shouting and violent emotions. She wanted to get out of bed, but I prevailed upon her to compose herself. I then gave her a tea-spoonful of the anti-spasmodic drops; but this not affording immediate relief, I gave her, at the end of about three minutes, a table-spoonful more, which soon removed the spasms. About this time her husband came in, and she returned home with him, where she soon vomited pretty freely, by which she was relieved.

Last night I called to see her, and whilst in, she observed to me that she felt symptoms of another fit. In order to test the efficacy of the blue cohush, I gave her a tea-spoonful of the powdered root, in a half tea-cup of hot water sweetened. This nauseated her stomach and removed the symptoms, and she has had no return since. I do not, however, consider her as cured, but am disposed to persevere with a regular process of the medicine and vapor bath, until she is permanently relieved. Her husband observed to me, last evening, that I already had something to boast of, if I should even not succeed in effecting a cure, as I had done what none of the old school physicians had ever accomplished; I had checked the fits during the paroxysms.

JOHN SHEWARD.

Zanesville, 1st Month, 25th, 1834.

---

#### CASE IV.

Amos McNames, aged about forty-five, was severely attacked, in the spring of 1832, with inflammation of the lungs. His family proceeded immediately to administer a course of medicine from which he experienced slight relief. Very soon, however,

he became much worse; whereupon they sent for me. I found him in a high fever, attended with violent pain in the side, difficulty of breathing, and great anxiety. It being late at night when I arrived, instead of giving a course of medicine, I administered a dose of the anti-spasmodic tincture, which gave relief for a short time. A hot rock was also applied to his feet, and in a little time gave him a dose of cayenne.

In the course of two hours I gave another dose of the anti-spasmodic tincture, which was repeated at similar intervals during the night; and occasionally, during these intervals, gave a dose of either cayenne pepper or the diaphoretic powders, to promote perspiration. By morning he had become quite comfortable; and I left him, with directions to continue the same course through the day.

The following morning I saw him again, when I learned that he had continued comparatively easy during the day, but at evening became very much distressed, with difficulty of breathing, and great anxiety, in which condition he still remained when I arrived. All the previous symptoms were greatly aggravated, and many of his neighbors, who were attracted by the extreme severity of his case to see him, thought that he could not live twenty-four hours.

The family having made the necessary preparation before my arrival, I proceeded immediately to administer a course of medicine, first requesting the concurrence of neighbors to withdraw from the room, excepting such as were necessary to assist in the process; for which purpose I retained two or three. The course of medicine, which included two steamings, occupied nearly the whole day, and relieved him of the most urgent symptoms very considerably. After the last steaming he was placed in bed, with hot rocks to his feet and sides, to keep up a pretty free perspiration. I prescribed the same treatment as the day before, to wit:—a tea-spoonful of the anti-spasmodic tincture every two hours, to promote expectoration and relieve his breathing, with a free use of cayenne and the diaphoretic powders, to stimulate and strengthen him. After he had recovered from the fatigue of the course of medicine, I also gave him a dose of mild physic, to empty his bowels.

On the following day I made him another visit and found him quite comfortable, and his wife being so well acquainted with the botanic practice, that I discontinued my visits, leaving him to the discretion of himself and family. He continued to mend rapidly, and just one week from the day I gave him the first course of medicine he was able to walk out of doors.

MICAJAH DILLINGHAM.

## CASE V.

*Communicated by Dr. R. D. Tisdale.*

John Smith, a man of about twenty-five years of age, in the fall of 1823, emigrated to what has been called the St. Joseph's country, and the following spring was attacked with a violent fever. He was attended by the most respectable physician in the neighborhood, who in a few weeks, succeeded in changing the type of the fever to that of an intermittent or ague. His health, however, continued very bad the whole summer, and despairing of relief, in October he was removed, with much care, on a bed placed in a wagon, to the neighborhood where I reside. Here he again called in the aid of a physician in whom much confidence was placed, who resorted to the popular means of salivation with mercury, by which his mouth was so much affected that he was unable to take any nourishment but such as could be conveniently drank, and even this with the greatest difficulty. But the salivation had no influence on the ague, which still continued and produced much debility.

The digestive powers at length became so weak that every thing he ate produced violent pains like colic, and he so far lost his confidence in his physician, as to apply to a *water doctor*, who, it was said, cured every thing, and by whose prescriptions he evidently obtained some relief. After receiving his attention for two or three weeks, the colic pains continuing as frequent as ever, and still more severe, he discontinued the use of all medicine. If this course was not beneficial to him, it certainly was no disadvantage; for his health and strength very slowly improved, until he became able, with great difficulty, to walk about half a mile. This effort, however, proved too great for his strength, and he became worse, being soon taken with very severe pains in the bowels.

This occurred on the 29th of December, 1833, and as a last resort, he concluded to place himself under my care, and I was accordingly sent for. After an investigation of the case I was satisfied that the disease was a dyspepsia of a most inveterate character. I was, however, induced to believe that by a long course of proper treatment his health might be restored. Having premised this short and imperfect history of the case, I will proceed to detail the course of treatment which I pursued, and which proved successful in effecting a cure.

Among the symptoms not enumerated the patient had a difficulty of breathing, which was very much relieved by administering half a tea-spoonful of cayenne in melasses. This was the first medicine I gave him, it being in the evening; and during the night he took frequently of the diaphoretic powders and bitter

tonic, of each half a tea-spoonful at a time. In the morning I administered an emetic of lobelia, and prescribed cayenne three times a day—the morning dose to be taken in the white of an egg, beaten up with a table-spoonful of melasses, and the other at noon and night with melasses only. After pursuing this course a few days, charcoal was added to the morning dose, and the laxative bitters and cathartic pills were administered in just sufficient quantity, at regular intervals, to move the bowels at least once in twelve hours. A strong stimulating wash of cayenne and vinegar was also used daily, to bathe the stomach and abdomen, to relax and excite the abdominal muscles. The internal remedies were continued daily, as before stated, excepting that the quantities were either increased or diminished, according to the symptoms; and also, during the cure, two emetics in addition to the one first mentioned, were administered.

It may likewise be worthy of remark, that he had no return of the colic or pain in the stomach and bowels after I administered the first dose of medicine, but continued gradually to mend until his health became pretty well restored. On the 25th day of February, 1834, he came to my house to settle the bill for my attendance upon him, as he thought he should need no more medicine. I however advised him to continue the use of the bitter tonic occasionally for fear of a relapse, which he attended to as directed. He has since been attending to his farming business, such as rolling and burning logs, building fence, ploughing, &c.

In conclusion, I also deem it worthy of remark, that I have had many cases of dyspepsia under my care, all of which have been cured in a reasonable time, when the patient conducted himself prudently, and mostly in much less time than the one just related. In cases of this kind I have always found that the rapidity of the cure very much depended upon the condition of the bowels, it being always necessary to procure an evacuation from them at least once in twelve hours. This must be done with *mild laxative medicines*, at the same time using the cayenne or the bitter tonic in quantities proportioned to the existing debility. Great attention should also be paid to the diet, taking food at regular periods and in proper quantities; and better, far better, to take too little than too much; for our medicine is nourishing itself. Not that I would convey the idea, however, that a person should take medicine when in good health, for this would be a great error; but that it is nourishing to the sick when judiciously managed.

## CASE VI.

Margaret Foglesong, of Lebanon, aged seven or eight years, was taken ill with a slight fever. A physician was called, who gave her a portion of calomel, to destroy the worms. After its operation, she being no better, her father came for me. I attended, and gave her composition tea; at the same time placing at her feet a warm stone wrapped in cloths saturated with water and vinegar. The next morning I found her free from fever, sitting up, and eating. I left medicine, with directions to give it, so as to keep her in a moderate perspiration. As her health was so rapidly improving, I told her parents that my further visits might be dispensed with, unless she should relapse. Shortly after I left the house, the child complained that the medicine smarted her mouth; which was tender from the effects of the calomel previously administered. Her mother now insisted on sending for another physician; which was accordingly done, although the child was apparently no worse. The physician came, and after commenting upon the awful effects of the steam medicine, (as he called it) and the good fortune of the child in being rescued from it so soon, commenced a course of *salivation*, and speedily reduced the patient to the brink of the grave.

The calomel, acting on the gums and inner surface of the cheeks, progressed in eating them away, until a number of the teeth dropped out; after several weeks time, mortification of the parts commenced, and soon made its appearance through the cheek by a black spot on the external surface, of the size of a six-cent piece. The attending physician then applied a blister to the cheek; and in a few hours the flesh to the whole size of the plaster, appeared black and dead, exhaling an extremely offensive smell. The severity of pain was so great, that she would tear her face with her nails, and scream from the anguish. It became necessary to confine her hands, to prevent injury.

In this situation the physician gave her up as *incurable*; and I was again sent for. I went, and informed her father that I thought there was but one chance in a hundred of rendering her any relief; but after much persuasion I consented to prescribe for her case. I directed a large poultice to be made of equal parts of white pond lily root, bayberry bark, hemlock bark, and the bark of slippery elm, all pulverized, and boiled in water, made strong with ginger, and thickened with crackers. I then washed the whole wound, both inside and out, with strong soap suds; after which I washed it with a very strong tea of sassafras, common dogwood bark, and No. 6, mixed together and used cold. The poultice above mentioned was then applied, and kept constantly moist with the above named wash; renew-



ing the poultice every six hours, and washing the wound with soap suds, &c., at each renewal; and frequently bathing the line between the living and dead flesh with a strong tincture of lobelia. During this process the patient drank frequently of a mixture of composition and No. 6; and kept in her mouth lint or rags, wet with the above wash and No. 6.

Pursuing this course with constant attention, in about twelve hours the disease was checked. In twenty-four hours a division was perceptible between the dead and living flesh; and in a few days the whole mass of the dead flesh, loosening from the jaw bones and living flesh, was detached by clipping some integuments round the edges; leaving the bone bare from near the middle of the upper lip as far back as the last double tooth, and thence to the lower edge of the under jaw bone, and following this, passed the middle of the chin, took off about three fourths of the under lip. All the flesh inclosed in this line, was removed in one mass. After this was removed, I continued the above washes, and dressed the wound with healing salve; and thus the entire cure was effected, with less disfiguration than could have been expected under such circumstances.

WILSON THOMPSON.

---

#### CASE VII.

John S. C. Schenk, of Franklin, Warren county, Ohio, had been confined to his bed for six or seven weeks, with an inflammation of the diaphragm, attended with violent fever, cough, and pain. His attending physicians became discouraged; a council was called upon his case, and the result of its deliberations was unfavorable. In this state of the case he applied to me. I found him unable to lie upon either side, or to be raised up in bed but with the most excruciating pain. I commenced with him by giving composition tea, with nerve powder, and No. 6, in common portions, and boneset tea; repeating the doses every two or three hours; at the same time, keeping a hot rock, wrapped in wet cloths, at his feet; and giving enough of the tincture of lobelia to act as an expectorant. This course was rigidly persevered in for about forty-eight hours; during which time repeated injections were given, composed of bayberry and hemlock barks, pond lily root, cayenne, umbil, No. 6, and the powdered herb of lobelia inflata; and the region of the pain was frequently bathed with a preparation of No. 6, and the oil of hemlock mixed. At the expiration of the above mentioned time, I added more cayenne to his composition tea, and repeated the dose every fifteen minutes, until the inward heat was well raised. I then (with the assistance of several men) placed him in a large arm chair, and applied the steam to his

body, at first very moderately, increasing it as he could bear it, until he was in a state of thorough perspiration, and the whole system became properly relaxed. He was then washed all over with a towel wet with a mixture of cold water and vinegar, made strong with spirits and salt; dressed, and put into a clean bed. By means of tin pipes, I then introduced steam into the foot of his bed, continuing it for three hours, so as to keep him in a gentle sweat; giving him, in the mean time, a portion of pulverized lobelia seeds (say two or three tea-spoonfuls) compounded with one tea-spoonful of cayenne, half as much umbil, and a tea-spoonful of No. 6, mixed in half a tea-cupful of composition tea. This operated as an emetic; after which, I resumed the same course pursued during the first forty-eight hours, and continued it for the same length of time; and then took him through another full course of medicine as above mentioned. Thus in about ninety-six hours the cure was effected, and by taking tonics and stimulants, such as cayenne, astringents, No. 6, composition, poplar bark, golden seal, and bitter root, he was soon restored to good health and strength.

[*Ib.*]

---

#### CASE VIII.

Mrs. Lytle, of Deerfield, Warren county, aged 64 years, fell from a horse, and was badly bruised in many parts of her body and limbs, particularly in her head; a part of which, from behind the ear, up over the top of the head, appeared to be mangled to a jelly, although the skin was but little broken. Dr. Montague examined her on the ground where the accident happened, before the injured parts became swelled, and said no bone was broken. He continued with her (as I was informed) through the night. She could neither see, hear, nor speak; and was entirely deprived of the use of her senses.

The next morning I was called to her, and found the doctor still with her. I inquired what he had done; he replied he could do nothing; he had tried to bleed her, but could not; he had also attempted to give her some ipecac; but could not get her to swallow any thing; and so he could do nothing. I found that she could not be induced to swallow even cold water when put into her mouth; and that I must entirely depend on injections for internal applications. I mixed No. 6 with about one eighth part of oil of hemlock, and bathed her head with it, and then with strong vinegar; using these alternately every thirty minutes. For injections, I used one tea-spoonful of composition powders, in a tea-cupful of hot water; and when sweetened and partially cooled, I added a portion of No. 6, one of nerve powder, and one of lobelia seeds. I administered such a prepa-

ration every thirty minutes, until it operated as an emetic; after which I left the lobelia out of the injections, except when I wished to puke her; but continued the injections frequently, in order to stimulate the bowels, and raise the inward heat. She soon began to take the warm medicine by the tea-spoonful at a time; this was repeated every few minutes. I prepared the hot medicine, by adding cayenne to composition powder; or with hemlock or bayberry bark, and pond lily root, all pulverized and steeped in hot water; and giving freely of No. 6 in these teas. After pursuing this course for about twenty-four hours, placing a hot stone, wrapped in cloths wet with vinegar, at her feet; occasionally bathing her head with cold water, and continuing the other bathings above mentioned, I concluded the vital, or inward heat, would bear the outward application of steam: which was accordingly applied by means of tin pipes, conveying it from a tea kettle of boiling water, into the foot of her bed, until she perspired freely; then replacing the hot stones to her feet as before, to keep up the perspiration. I then left her for the night.

At about 11 o'clock at night she was taken with fits, and the family became so much alarmed, (I being four or five miles off) that Dr. Cottle was sent for; he came, and said her case was incurable and had been from the first; for, he continued, the blood had settled on the brain, and was the cause of the fits. He left some oil of amber for bathing her head; and called again early in the morning, repeating the same opinion, adding that when the fits should cease she would die. I came and learned her situation, and found that my directions had been observed, and the amber oil still remained in the phial. I witnessed one of the fits, and ascertained that the convulsions were mostly confined to the side which was most seriously injured; and although she struggled violently yet her pulse was regular all the time, but rather fuller at the end of the spasm; her eye was natural, except the discoloration produced by the bruise. There were no indications of a pressure on the brain, such as stupor, snoring, heaviness, wildness of the eyes, &c. I informed her friends that I believed the fits to be the most favorable symptoms which I had seen. That, from the action of medicine and steam, nature was aroused from its torpid state, and being, as yet, unable to gain the full ascendancy, produced the struggles or convulsions of the system; and all we had to do, was to reinforce nature as much as possible, and quiet the nerves, and keep the pores open.

I increased the doses of hot medicine, as well as the injections, adding umbil and lobelia seeds, or 3d preparation of No. 1, until she puked freely; and was soon confirmed in my first opinion; for I found the fits became weaker, and the circulation

better in the worst side, and more equalized through the whole system, and her extremities warmer.

It was near eleven o'clock at night before she vomited, as the lobelia was chiefly given by injections—but after its operation the fits ceased, having continued about twenty-four hours, and were believed to average one in every fifteen or twenty minutes, during that period. The latter part of the night she slept, and in the morning was perceptibly better. About noon she spoke a word or two, which was the first attempt at speaking, or the first she was perceived to notice any thing since the time of the accident.

From this period she began gradually to recover both in body and mind, and finally became as well as other women of her age; but has no recollection of any thing which transpired from the time she first received the injury until the lapse of between one and two weeks.

WILSON THOMPSON.

#### CASE IX.

A young lady named Wadkins, living near Centerville, Montgomery county, was taken very ill with a sore throat. The physician who attended her could not decide whether she had the quinsy, or a cankered sore throat; but gave her an emetic, which produced spasms to an alarming degree; he then bled her, and drew a large blister on her neck under the jaws; and in this situation she lay some days, unable to eat or drink. I was called to see her, and found, upon examination, that her palate was down, (as it is generally termed,) and was much inflamed, the inflammation having also extended to the tonsils. I applied to the palate, by means of a spoon handle, a mixture of bayberry bark, cayenne, and salt, moistened with No. 6. In a few minutes from this time, she could swallow; I then gave her composition, No. 6, and umbil, inwardly; prepared in a gargle of capsicum, No. 3, and 6, for her throat; sweated her face frequently with a hot stone and vinegar; used freely of a tea made of *sinkfield*; and she was soon well.

A number of months after this period, she was afflicted with a small tumor on the middle joint of the little finger, which had a threatening appearance, but soon got well; and as it was disappearing (without suppuration, I think) she exposed herself one cold evening, with only thin gloves on her hands. Immediately on her return home she was seized with a violent and unremitting pain in the right hand, (on which the tumor had been.) As her mother was bathing it in warm water, the muscles began to contract; the thumb drew down firmly into the hollow or palm of the hand, and all the fingers were drawn down and clenched around it, until the nails were out of sight, (as the



ends of the fingers, passing over the thumb, turned round it and under it into the hollow of the hand.) All sense of feeling had left the hand and arm half way up to the elbow. The same physician who first attended her, when suffering by the sore throat, was again applied to. He said her complaint was the dead palsy and cramp; he bled her; blistered her arm at the place where sensation began; gave her cathartics, &c.; and forced open her hand by the muscular strength of his own—upon which she fainted—but her fingers remained stiff, and soon clenched as before. The doctor said he had never seen such a case; and as the blister on her arm appeared like mortifying, and he knew not what more to do, he left her. I was sent for, but being absent in Indiana, Dr. Anderson was called in, who pursued our common course of sweating, puking with lobelia, using nerve ointment, washing with alkali, &c., all to no purpose. Shortly after my return, I was called to see her; and was informed of what had been done, and that her hand had been clenched in this manner for three weeks. By close attention the pulse in the wrist was perceptible; there was small circulation in the hand, but no feeling. Whenever I attempted to raise one of her fingers, which was destitute of sensation, a faintness seized upon her heart, so that I was compelled to desist.

I commenced by making a strong tea of composition and capsicum; of this I gave about a half tea-cupful every fifteen minutes, adding umbil, and No. 6. I continued this course, placing the patient by the fire, with her body shielded from the cool air, until she began to sweat; I then placed her arm and hand over a tub containing a quantity of cold water, which was dipped up and poured upon it constantly for about thirty minutes. It was then wrapped in flannel, as the skin was extremely red. In about an hour I took off the flannel and found the veins much filled, and the skin soft and in a perspirable state. I then bathed it with No. 6 and the oil of hemlock, and kept up a constant friction for thirty or forty minutes, still using the bathing drops, and not neglecting the internal application of stimulants. It was then wrapt in flannels again. The next morning the same process was repeated, and the hand and arm began to sweat; in the afternoon, as I was rubbing and bathing her hand, the fore finger opened; soon after the middle finger loosened and opened; in a short time the little finger also opened; and she swooned away, although no force was used to relax their grasp; soon after she revived the remaining finger and thumb were loosened, and the whole hand appeared soft, and the muscles as elastic as usual. The first sensation was severe pain in the finger joints; it however lasted but a short time. This relief was effected in about twenty-four hours. I then left her, with directions how to proceed; and suppose her to be entirely well,



as six weeks have elapsed and I have heard nothing to the contrary.

WILSON THOMPSON.

---

#### CASE X.

In the summer of 1832, about two months after I obtained the right of using the botanic remedies, I was called on to attend an elderly lady, laboring under what they termed 'galloping consumption;' and as she was given over by the doctors of the Old School, she was thought a fit subject for a botanic practitioner. I was informed on my arrival at the house, by the family and neighbors, that she had discharged a gallon and a half of blood from the lungs, in the course of the last forty-eight hours previous to my seeing her. I was very averse to undertake her case, as I had but recently commenced practice, and the New System was very severely persecuted in the same neighborhood. But on account of the old lady, and her four daughters who stood at the bed side overwhelmed with grief, begging me to make an effort to save their only friend, I commenced by giving a large tea-spoonful of best African cayenne, steeped in hot water and sweetened, to stop the hemorrhage, which had the desired effect. Then I commenced using the remedies usually recommended in such cases, excepting that for want of other expectorants, I used thorough-wort, blue vervain, and wake-robin; and by a rigid perseverance for two months, I had the satisfaction of seeing the woman again restored to comfortable health. If it should be necessary, I could obtain the certificates of the woman, her husband, four daughters, and a number of her neighbors, who all thought it little less than a resurrection from the dead. Since that time I have had three hundred patients with the various diseases incident to a southern climate, and have lost but six, nearly all of whom were altogether hopeless when I first saw them.

EDM. BRIDGES.

---

#### CASE XI.

Nancy Shartle was attacked on the 23d of July last, by what her attending physicians called cholera morbus; but which, in my opinion, was the sick stomach, (sometimes called milk sickness.) She was under the care of Drs. Smith and Clemmens, of Dayton; but appeared to be continually growing worse. On the evening of the 25th I was called to visit her; and was told that Dr. Clemmens had just left, and the patient was believed to be somewhat better, as she lay easier than heretofore. I therefore declined prescribing for her at the present time. The nurses

also informed me, that the physicians had changed their treatment from warm applications to those of cold; but that every thing they gave her was immediately puked up. At this time she complained of a burning pain at the stomach, with an almost continual retching or vomiting; especially when she took medicine or any kind of liquid.

In the morning I was again called to her, and informed that she had passed a very restless night, and was apparently much worse. I found her in a very weak state, still complaining much of a burning pain in her stomach, together with pain in her back. She was almost continually striving to vomit, but threw up very little at a time, of a very tough, ropy slime. She was also extremely costive.

In consequence of the treatment pursued by the other physicians, as well as the critical state of her case, I proceeded cautiously in administering my medicines. I commenced by giving a tea-spoonful of spice bitters, with the same quantity of umbil, mixed in warm water. This dose remained upon her stomach, and she fell asleep, which lasted an hour or more. Upon waking, she puked up one or two mouths full of tough, white slime. I then gave her another tea-spoonful of spice bitters, same quantity of umbil, same of No. 6, mixed in warm water. She fell asleep again and slept well. I prepared an injection composed of two tea-spoonfuls of umbil, and one of cayenne, steeped in a strong tea of hemlock bark; this I strained, and added one or two tea-spoonfuls of No. 6: upon her awakening this was administered by means of a pint syringe; which had a good effect. I then gave her a tea-spoonful of composition powder, about half the quantity of umbil, and a tea-spoonful of No. 6, in warm water sweetened; in fifteen or twenty minutes, I repeated a similar dose; in about the same length of time, I gave a spoonful of fine bayberry, a tea-spoonful of pulverized herb of lobelia, same quantity of No. 6, in warm water sweetened. I repeated this dose at intervals of twenty or thirty minutes, until it operated well as an emetic. During the operation, I gave her (as I always do in similar cases) cold water to drink; sometimes adding to it from six to ten drops of essence of pennyroyal; and occasionally giving a little African cayenne, bayberry and umbil, to keep the stomach warm, and assist the emetic. After the operation of the emetic, an injection, similar to the one above mentioned, (with the exception of one tea-spoonful of umbil) was administered; then gave, say, half a tea-spoonful of cayenne and same quantity of umbil.

She rested well the remaining part of the night. Early in the morning of the next day, I gave her, I think, about half a tea-spoonful of cayenne, as much of umbil, and one of No. 6; some time after gave a tea-spoonful of spice bitters in warm water.

The other medicines were all given in warm water sweetened. During the day I occasionally gave a dose of composition powder, adding half a tea-spoonful of umbil, and one of No. 6; or, cayenne, umbil, and No. 6. In the evening an injection was given as above; the patient was then placed over the steam, and composition, umbil, and No. 6, given; when sweated sufficiently, she was washed off with cold water, dried, dressed, and placed in bed. Another emetic was then given as above; when its operation was over, she took a dose of spice bitters; and rested well the remaining part of the night.

The next morning she seemed quite smart; I gave her a dose of hot medicine; in a short time after gave her a small dose of hot bitters, composed of equal parts of balmony, bitter root, and poplar bark, adding some cayenne. Upon leaving her I directed her to take about half a stem-glassful of a decoction of these bitters three times a day; also to take composition and No. 6, the same number of times daily; at least, morning and night. On the Saturday following I called to see her, and found her perfectly recovered.

DANIEL JORDAN.

N. B. None of the medicine I gave her, was thrown up from the stomach, except when under the operation of the emetics.

---

#### CASE XII.

Samuel Humbard, of Green county, Tennessee, was taken with a violent cramp colic, or spasmodic affection of the bowels. His family gave him many supposed remedies, without any good effect; and after his suffering two nights and a day, I was sent for, and found him in extreme agony. I gave him, at first, a tea-spoonful of No. 6; in four or five minutes I gave a tea-spoonful of the third preparation. This measurably relieved his pain, but his hands and feet immediately became cramped, accompanied with twinging or pricking pains. I then took a tea-spoonful of composition, same quantity of No. 6, and half as much umbil, and steeped them in half a tea-cupful of boiling water; when sufficiently cool, added a large tea-spoonful of the pulverized seeds of lobelia, and gave him. This dose was repeated twice, at proper intervals; within which time I also gave him an injection composed of composition and No. 6, of each a tea-spoonful, and half as much umbil. The emetic operated copiously, and he was much relieved. I then gave him a dose of composition, placed him over the steam until well sweated, gave more composition, washed him off with cold water, wiped him dry, and placed him in bed, with a hot stone at his feet, in the usual manner. During the night he was kept in a moderate perspiration, by taking two or three times, portions of composition.

and bitters; and in the morning seemed quite well, except a feeling of soreness, caused by the excessive pain of his disease.

JESSE ELLIS.

---

#### CASE XIII.

A child of Wesley Morrison, aged four or five years, was attacked with a violent cholera morbus. A physician (of the old school) was called in; and under his prescription it became worse, until next morning, when I was sent for. I found the patient much reduced; afflicted with excessive vomiting and purging; considerable fever; crying for water—which, as soon as drank, was thrown up again.

I prepared a tea of composition and No. 6, a tea-spoonful of each, half as much umbil, and all well steeped in a tea-cupful of hot water; when sufficiently cool, added nearly two tea-spoonfuls of strong tincture of lobelia. Of this preparation, I administered a part as an injection, and divided the remainder into three or four doses, which were given at intervals of eight or ten minutes. I then added more of the same medicines to the dregs in the tea-cup, and proceeded as before. This course soon checked the vomiting, so that the medicines were retained in the stomach. It finally vomited profusely; after which it was stripped of its clothing, placed in its father's lap, and after taking another portion of the above named tea, was steamed, washed off with vinegar, and placed in bed, when it immediately fell asleep. On waking, it took nourishment, and some bitters, and seemed entirely well.—[*Ib.*]

---

#### CASE XIV.

Isaiah Stewart, of Green county, Tennessee, inflicted a wound in his knee with an axe. He had been attended five or six weeks by a botanic physician, who had given him several botanic courses, using poultices, salves, &c. The wound would sometimes so nearly close up, as to prevent any discharge; it then would become extremely painful. Once every day he would prepare a piece of fat meat, (a little larger than a pipe stem, and about two inches in length) by tapering it to a point, and run it into the wound, and by moving the leg several times, it would discharge from the joint about a gill of water of a yellowish color, which, when cold, would coagulate to a jelly. On one side of the wound, proud or fungous flesh would accumulate, which rose above the sound flesh. This the doctor attempted to extirpate, by the use of burnt alum; but in this, as well as in other respects, he failed.

At the expiration of five or six weeks trial, he was brought to



me. I took him through one botanic course of medicine, and applied on the side of the joint *opposite to the wound*, a poultice of wild comfrey, renewing it every twelve hours. Each time after probing it as aforesaid, the wound was dressed with a plaster of healing salve, made as follows :

One pound beeswax, one pound salt butter, a half pound turpentine, and twelve ounces balsam of fir, well simmered together.

At the second dressing the discharge of joint water was reduced to half the usual quantity ; at the third dressing it discharged none, and the pain ceased ; but well concocted matter continued to be discharged until the wound was entirely healed ; which was in about three weeks from the time I commenced. The part covered with fungous flesh would not, however, heal, until it was removed by a caustic application.

It is now about a year since the above cure was effected, and the patient still remains well, having the complete use of the joint, except that it is, at times, rather weaker than it was before the injury.

It may be well to remark, that the patient was formerly subject to dyspepsy ; but by the above treatment and the use of bitters, made of quaking asp and barberry bark, boiled together, and drank freely, he has entirely recovered of it.—[*Id.*]

#### CASE XV.

Betsey Morgan had a stroke of palsy, which deprived her of the use of one half of her body, except the hand and foot, which could be moved a little. In the course of eight days she was bled in that arm twice ; after which she entirely lost the use of both it and the hand, and appeared every way worse.

At this stage I was sent for, and commenced by bathing and rubbing the whole of the afflicted part with a flannel cloth saturated with No. 6. I then placed a warm rock to her feet, and another to her side, and gave her a dose composed of bayberry and hemlock bark, half a tea-spoonful of each, one tea-spoonful of cayenne, and half as much umbil, all pulverized, and mixed in hot water ; given when moderately cool. In fifteen minutes the same dose was repeated, with the addition of a large tea-spoonful of powdered lobelia seeds. At intervals of fifteen minutes, the same doses were twice repeated. At the expiration of twenty minutes after the exhibition of the last dose she began to vomit, and soon complained of a burning, or sharp, prickly sensation in the palsied parts, accompanied with great restlessness, free perspiration, tossing about her sound limbs, &c. Shortly after, she was perceived using her palsied limbs ;



in a few moments she was enabled to use them as freely as the others. After the emetic had operated profusely, she was greatly relieved and remained quiet. She now took nourishment, and a portion of bitters made of quaking asp and bitter root pulverised, a tea-spoonful of each, steeped in warm water. After a considerable time had elapsed, I gave her a tea-spoonful of African cayenne, half the quantity of umbil, in half a tea-cupful of strong tea, made of equal parts of the bark of bayberry and hemlock; and placed hot rocks wrapped in wet cloths, &c. one at her feet and two on each side. At intervals of ten minutes, I twice repeated the same dose as last above mentioned, and she perspired freely through the night; during which she took, at three several times, a dose made by putting a tea-spoonful of composition and as much No. 6, into half a tea-cupful of hot water. After sweating freely for some time, she was wiped over the whole body with cloths wet in cold vinegar.

In the course of the next day she was much troubled with cramps and spasmodic affections in all her limbs and other parts of her body, for many minutes at a time; and they would sometimes continue half an hour. She was kept in a moderate perspiration by using the composition and bitters, as above mentioned. In the evening gave her another sweat and thus continued for a few days until she was well.—[*Id.*]

---

#### CASE XVI.

John Castle, of Green county, Tennessee, over 70 years of age, a hard working man, of a strong constitution, had been generally healthy until the winter of 1829, when, by treading mortar with his bare feet, he took very ill, with a violent cough, and consumption of the lungs, which made rapid progress. He coughed violently, and expectorated much frothy mucus; during the course of two months, he would several times in each day, expectorate large quantities of the most loathsome and fœtid matter. He sent for several physicians (of the old school) who declared him incurable, and declined doing any thing for him; he finally applied to me. I found him unable to walk without assistance—could sit up but little of the time—and in the situation above described. He strove to induce me to believe that he was better than he really was, that I might be encouraged to do something for him. During the space of two weeks, I took him through five thorough botanic courses of medicine, mostly, at first, every other day, and in the intervening days gave composition and bitters several times a day; early in each morning I also gave him a tea-spoonful of tincture of lobelia, which would

nauseate, and sometimes vomit, enabling him to expectorate freely; and every evening gave half a tea-spoonful of Thomson's cough powders; and thus continued, until he entirely recovered his health; which required four or five weeks.—[*Ib.*]

---

## CASE XVII.

Susannah Dillion, aged about 40 years, was delivered of a child about five years ago. Not long after this event, (probably in consequence of female obstruction) she was taken with pain, and hardness in her left side, and frequent head-ache. This pain was shortly followed by a cough; her strength gradually declined, and her flesh wasted away. In this situation she had passed nearly five years when I was called to her. I found her extremely debilitated, afflicted with an excessive cough, and unable to lie in bed for fear of suffocation from the redundancy of matter which she was almost constantly expectorating. I commenced (and continued for two months,) by giving her a course of medicine every other day; generally steaming first, then giving an injection, and afterwards an emetic. Also, giving each morning a dose of tincture of lobelia, and in the evening, cough powder—and during the day, composition and biters. During the two succeeding months, I took her through two courses a week, giving the same medicines as before. After which, one course a week, for several weeks, with the medicines aforesaid. By this treatment she was restored to sound health.—[*Ib.*]

---

## CASE XVIII.

Lewis Redwine, of Cawwater county, Georgia, strained himself by working in a saw mill; and taking cold, it settled in one of his testicles. It swelled until it was not less than three inches in diameter, and four or five inches in length; the cord by which it was suspended was as large as a corn cob; the skin was somewhat loose, but the testicle and cord were apparently as hard as wood. There was no pain in the former, and only a little twinging in the latter. They had been increasing in size for two years; and he had applied means prescribed by water doctors, without any good effect.

I took him through several full courses of botanic medicine; frequently bathing the parts affected with No. 6; and applying to them a poultice of cracker, ginger, and slippery elm bark, one night; and the next night, a poultice made with vinegar and clay out of the back of a chimney; and so on alternately. At first its size was increased; but he soon discovered that it was

turning to a dropsy in the parts. It was then lanced, and the water discharged; and the testicle and cord were soon reduced to their proper size, and are now sound. He made use of bits ters composed of umbil, unicorn root and cayenne, during the time of the poultice applications, &c.

The physicians (of the old school) declared his disease to be fungous flesh, which would increase until it should finally destroy him; and therefore declined any assistance.

JOHN V. LATTFNER.

---

#### CASE XIX.

L— W—, of Habersham county, Georgia, aged about 18 years, was delivered of a child. The second day after its birth, in consequence of her taking cold, the usual evacuations which succeed child birth, suddenly and entirely ceased. She immediately commenced swelling, which continued until she was much larger than before the birth of the child. Two physicians (of the old school) were in attendance. The commencement of the swelling was attended with great pain in her back, abdomen, &c. An abscess of a very large size, formed in the latter about two inches below the navel, which was lanced about three inches in depth; and she thinks, in a few days, it discharged more than four quarts of matter. Previous to this time she had lost the use of herself from the hips downwards, but could now walk a little. Another abscess was formed in the navel, and several others near the one first mentioned; and two of them were discharging matter when I was first called to her—this was six months after the birth of her child. In addition to the above history of her case (which was given by herself and husband) they informed me, that a few weeks previous to my seeing her, she was suddenly attacked with excruciating pain just under the ribs on the right side, and it moved slowly downward to an opening in one of the abscesses; and the wound being examined, she discovered the end of a worm, which she drew out, and found it about eight inches in length.

I commenced by giving a large tea-spoonful of composition, half as much cayenne, and the same quantity of umbil, mixed in a tea-cupful of hot water sweetened; and at intervals of from five to ten minutes, the same dose was repeated, until ten were given. During this time, also, an injection made of two tea-spoonfuls of composition in half a pint of boiling water, was given. In about twenty minutes another injection, composed of one tea-spoonful of composition, same quantity of powdered seeds of lobelia, half as much cayenne, and same of umbil, mixed in one gill of warm water, was given. By this

time two hours had elapsed, and perspiration was perceivable. She was now placed over the steam for about twenty minutes, giving her composition and cayenne, in warm water, several times during the operation. Cold water was also given her to drink whenever it was desired, and a little sprinkled or thrown on her face when troubled with short breathing or faintness, which may be generally known by the fulness of the arterial action in the sides of the neck. The following compound steeped one hour in half a pint of warm water, was given in small quantities, (say a mouthful) at a time, viz:—Three tea-spoonfuls of powdered seeds of lobelia; two do. of cayenne; two do. of umbil; three do. of tincture of lobelia; and same quantity of No. 6. These doses, after being well shaken up, were repeated at intervals of five minutes, until she vomited freely; at the same time occasionally giving her warm penny-royal tea. After the operation of the emetic, I gave her a tea-spoonful of cayenne in warm water sweetened, and steamed her again for the space of ten minutes. About two quarts of cold water was then poured upon her head, so as to run down over the whole body, placing her at the same time over a lively steam; she was then wiped dry and put into a clean bed, after dressing in her night clothes.

The next day I took her through another course of medicine; at an interval of two days, another; at the same interval another; in two weeks, another. She also took in doses of a wine-glassful, three times a day, upon an empty stomach, the following preparation of bitters: One table-spoonful of umbil, same quantity of unicorn root, and as much cayenne, all pulverized and steeped in one pint of boiling water, adding one pint of proof spirit; to be kept closely stopped in a tight vessel, and shook together before using. Thomson's No. 5, was also taken in doses of a wine-glassful, just before eating. Pills, made of equal parts of cayenne, ginger, and bayberry, were likewise used, in portions of ten each day for a month. Besides the above, the following mixture was prepared, viz: cayenne, seeds of lobelia, ginger, unicorn root, Virginia snake root, and umbil, of each a table-spoonful, finely pulverized; to all which add one pint of honey. A tea-spoonful of this mixture was taken, on going to bed at night, for one month, to assist in promoting the menstrual evacuations.

The abdomen, when I first commenced with the patient, was hard from side to side. This was gradually removed by the above process.

The apertures and sores in the abdomen, were frequently bathed with No. 6; and some of the liquid was also injected into the apertures by means of a syringe.

A few courses of medicine were given afterwards. Her

strength and flesh increased rapidly, and her monthly courses returned as usual. She now enjoys better health, as she says, than ever before.—[*Ib.*]

---

## CASE XX.

S—— W——, of Anderson district, South Carolina, a single woman, aged 22 years, took cold about five years ago, which measurably suppressed the menstrual discharge; which gradually decreased for three years, when it entirely ceased to flow; and has so remained for two years. Her health rapidly declined; she was afflicted with violent pains in the small of the back and lower part of the abdomen, and hips; her right thigh became considerably smaller than usual, and the knee much larger. During three months she scarcely lay one night in bed. In twenty months from the entire cessation of the menses, she could not walk without crutches. Hard lumps and knotty tumors appeared on her neck, and other parts; one of them, on the left side of the neck, was as large as her two fists.

I took her through two courses of medicine, (similar to those mentioned in the case of L—— W——,) in the two first days. On the third day, I gave her a fuller course, differing from the above, by composing the injection as follows:—One tea-spoonful of lobelia, one do. of umbil, in one gill of warm water, and given immediately after she was placed in bed, at the close of steaming. An emetic prepared as in the former case, was then administered.

She has now, (April 20, 1831,) been under my treatment seventeen days; has had two more courses of medicine; in the intervals takes bitters composed of quaking asp, golden seal and bitter root, steeped in warm water, three times a day; Thomson's No. 5 just before meals; and pills of cayenne and ginger, ten each day. Her appetite is restored; her pains have entirely ceased; her thigh and knee have become nearly of their usual size; the tumors on her neck, &c., have nearly disappeared; sleeps and rests comfortably at night; walks better, &c. Whenever she feels an occasional pain in her back, &c., it is soon removed by a warm injection, and by placing a warm stone at her feet and back. After a few more courses, and taking small quantities of the honey preparation, mentioned in the preceding case, she will, no doubt, be entirely recovered.—[*Ib.*]

---

## CASE XXI.

Mrs. L——, a widow, under thirty years of age, has been for a number of years, (say from six to ten,) very severely afflicted



with a complication of disorders, contracted from severe cold, taken at a *critical* period, after having undergone a course of sulphur for the itch. She had been under the hands of five of the most skillful doctors (of the old school) the country affords, who have, each in his turn, failed to afford her any relief; and she was pronounced incurable, being, as they said, in the last stages of a confirmed consumption, hectic fever, &c.

From motives of benevolence, and at the earnest entreaties of herself and friends, I was induced to try the botanic system, more from the knowledge that it could do no harm, than under any reasonable hope of effecting a radical cure; she having already exhausted the skill of five learned doctors, and taken immense quantities of the most deleterious medicines. I commenced, however, with a *full course* of the medicine; after which I gave, three times a day, a tea-spoonful of Thomson's cough powder, mixed in very strong hoarhound syrup; steaming every night.

This remedy operates powerfully on the lungs and glands. I make use of as much of the lobelia in the cough powder, as the stomach will possibly bear without puking. I also gave, at the same time, a strong tea of the lady's fern, as the common drink. This treatment was pursued with vigor for six or eight days, when symptoms appeared indicative of the efforts of nature to effect the usual discharge, &c., such as the most excruciating pains in the loins and belly, and on the insides of the thighs, &c. I then gave another full course of medicine, and administered injections into the region of the uterus every half hour, giving her a strong tea of cayenne to drink. The injections were composed of one large tea-spoonful of powdered seeds of lobelia, and five large tea-spoonfuls of strong tea of cayenne, mixed with twelve ounces of strong canker tea. This quantity should be injected at four operations, of the above intervals.

It is to be understood that her disorders all have their origin from this cause of obstruction, which not one of the five doctors could remove. This treatment, however, effected it; and she discharged from the uterus, at one effort, (her mother, who is an old midwife, thinks,) at least a pint of the most offensive matter. The discharge continues the usual time, and has assumed a healthy appearance. The injections in the vagina, as above mentioned, were given by means of a common syringe, and made as forcibly as possible, to reach the interior of the uterus.

The account of the above case was furnished us by JOHN H. HARRISON, Esq. of South Carolina.

---

#### CASE XXII.

A female about sixteen years of age took cold, by standing in water at the time of her monthly evacuation; which caused an

obstruction of the menses for two years. She was troubled with much pain and stiffness in her hips, and ancles; the latter of which were much swelled.

She was taken through forty or fifty courses of medicine; at first, one every other day, and at longer intervals; then one a week, and at length, one in two weeks; giving bitters of poplar bark and cayenne, in water, with a small portion of spirits.

Once in each day, during the whole time, the following preparation was injected into the vagina, viz:—a tea of raspberry leaves, with a little of the tincture of lobelia. Her general health soon improved, and the pains and stiffness gradually left her; but the menstrual obstruction still remained, until, when pains, &c., seemed to indicate that nature was struggling to remove it, small quantities, (say a tea-spoonful at a dose,) of the pulverized tops and roots of the female fern were given, which removed the obstruction, and restored her to sound health.

[Communicated by JOHN M'PHERSON.]

---

#### CASE XXIII.

A man had his jaw dislocated, which remained in that situation for eighteen hours, when I attended him. I immediately gave the patient a preparation composed of a tea-spoonful of umbil, half as much African cayenne, in half a tea-cupful of warm water. At an interval of ten or fifteen minutes the same dose was repeated; the patient being wrapped in a blanket and placed by the fire, to promote perspiration. Several thicknesses of cloths were then saturated in warm water and placed around the jaws, and fastened on the top of the head. Water as warm as could be well borne, was then poured upon the cloths for about twenty minutes, in order to relax the muscles; a person standing behind the patient, then locked his hands around the patient's face and head, drawing the latter against his breast, whilst I put both my thumbs in the mouth on the jaw, and the fingers under it, and gently pressed it down until sufficiently low, when it was pressed back, and went in its proper place quite easy, with little or no pain.

[Communicated by Dr. STERLING, of Spartanburgh District, South Carolina.]

---

#### CASE XXIV.

A man working in the rain, bare headed, took cold, and lost his speech and hearing, and remained in that situation twenty-three hours; when I was called to him, I found his pulse did not exceed twenty beats in a minute. I despaired of effecting a cure,

but gave him two heavy doses of cayenne, and placed him in bed; he soon fell asleep, when his pulse rose and became fuller; in about two hours, I awoke him and gave him two tea-spoonfuls of No. 6. He afterwards slept deeply until morning, when he awoke in tolerable health; but had no recollection of having seen me, or of taking medicine. He has since remained healthy.

[Communicated by Dr. HUGH QUIN, of North Carolina.]

---

#### CASE XXV.

I, Thomas Ellis, of Fayette county, Ky., do certify, that I was subject to an affection of the breast and head for eight years, accompanied frequently with palpitation of the heart. I was also troubled with a violent throbbing and palpitation at the pit of the stomach, attended by a dead, heavy pain in the part; and from the region of which, frequent flashes of heat extended all over the body.

During the first six years there were frequent jumping pains darting through my head, particularly the crown of it, accompanied by the most disagreeable feelings, of every conceivable kind. I was under the care of Dr. Coswell five years; and then under Dr. Alberta nearly three years—(both physicians of the old school.) During this time, twice a day, for eighteen days, he gave me portions of calomel; and afterwards fifty or sixty grains at once. My head in some degree became relieved; but the palpitations of the heart and violent throbbings, frequently returned, and I was reduced to a mere skeleton, and looked as yellow as a hickory leaf when faded. My sides, at times would be very hot and sweat, whilst every other part would be cold and dry. At other times my feet and legs would be very cold, and yet they would sweat, whilst every other part was hot and dry. The doctors said my liver was affected; and all agreed I could not be cured.

Thus after suffering under their treatment nearly eight years, I employed Dr. Davis, (called a Steam Doctor;) who took me through four courses of medicine in two weeks; then at intervals of a week, took me through two more courses; then half a course, omitting the emetic. In the intermediate days, between the courses of medicine, I took spice bitters, composition, and No. 6, of each a tea-spoonful, three times a day.

In five or six weeks I was restored to general good health, which I have enjoyed mostly since, it being now about three years.

THOMAS ELLIS.

## CASE XXVI.

On the first of January, 1831, a mad dog came upon the premises of Joshua Clark, of Columbia, Hamilton county, Ohio, about seven miles from Cincinnati, after passing through the neighborhood; and was known to bite nine animals, viz:—Five dogs, a cat, one cow, and two horses; all of which went mad; some within about thirty days, and the last, a year old colt, belonging to Joshua Clark, about the middle of June. Joshua Clark received a wound on the hand, on the first day of February, by the tooth of a mad horse, which belonged to himself, while endeavoring to drench it with medicine. The creature died the next day. He suspected no danger from the wound, as it was soon healed up.

But some time in May he had some strange feelings, when on the water, being a fisherman by occupation. By the advice of some of his friends, he called on Dr. S. Tibbets, of Cincinnati, who gave him some of the third preparation of Thomson, which relieved him for that time. But several times in the month of June, he was seized suddenly with fits of trembling and a strange sensation of fear, when the wind blew so as to cause the boat to rock on the waves; and he sometimes queried with himself, whether it was possible he could be afraid of the water; and that, at times, when no thought of hydrophobia occurred to his mind. He felt also, as if the rays of light, reflected from the waves when the sun was setting, sent through him sensations of peculiar horror, and he was sometimes obliged to go on shore and remain awhile to gain composure.

These symptoms rather increased on the whole till the 10th day of July, when he felt much more indisposed than at any time before, and was rapidly growing worse. Being at Cincinnati that day, he went up home in a skiff, and undertook to row; but soon found himself unable to endure the exertion or the sight of the water. He then lay down, was covered up, and rowed home by his companions. He retired to bed, but spent a dreadful night; a painful twitching of the muscles of the limbs, and lancinating pains darting from the hand which had been wounded up to the breast, and throat; the glands of which had now become very sore and swollen.

He sometimes fell asleep, but was suddenly awaked by such frightful dreams as seemed to fill his soul with inexpressible horror. And all these symptoms were growing worse constantly. In the morning his family were terrified at his condition; and all his friends concluded he had now got the hydrophobia, and thought it best that he should go immediately to Cincinnati, to obtain medical aid. Accordingly he started on horseback, but very soon found that he could not endure the



motion of the horse. He was then laid down in a skiff, and covered up and taken down by his friends within about two miles of town, where passing a steamboat, which was ascending the river, it produced such agitation of the water he could no longer endure the motion of the boat. He was then landed and went up the bank, and was about going into a blacksmith's shop occupied by his brother-in-law; but when he came before the door, and caught the rays of light from the fire, he suddenly started back in great distress; and it was not in his power to enter while the fire was in blast. He then came on foot, attended by his friends, to the house of Mr. Steel, his brother-in-law, in Cincinnati.

His symptoms had now become so bad that all were nearly despairing of help; they supposed the botanic medicine, which he had taken some weeks before, had failed. Colonel M<sup>r</sup>Farland went to Professor Morehead, and related the case; who gave it as his decided opinion, that it was a clear and confirmed case of hydrophobia, and nothing could be done for him; and he did not think it worth while to go and see him, as there was no known remedy for the disease.

Isaiah Clark, brother of the patient, went to Professor Cobb and related the case to him; he expressed the same opinion in every respect as Dr. Morehead.

Dr. Tibbets was then sent for, who came, and commenced giving him the third preparation; which soon had the effect to allay in a good measure the excessive irritation of the nervous system; but such was the difficulty he labored under in swallowing, that administration by injections was chiefly relied on. The medicine operated freely, and he emitted from his stomach a great quantity of very tough and viscid mucus, which might be raised on a stick two feet, without separating from that which remained in the vessel; and much that passed from his bowels was of a similar consistency.

After puking, his stomach settled, and he was steamed. The perspiration was copious and free. He was washed off, and felt much more composed for a short time, and slept about an hour; when he began to be disturbed again by frightful dreams, and all the nervous and spasmodic affections which he had previously felt. The same medicine was given again as before with the same effect. Steaming, again, was followed by a short and quiet sleep; but the spasmodic twitching of the muscles of the legs and arms, was all the time visible to the spectators when they were uncovered.

About twenty-four hours had been consumed in the two courses, and before I saw the patient, I being out of the city. When I saw him first, he seemed composed in mind, but felt all the former symptoms returning; he was thirsty, and desired water



but could not take a swallow without violent shudderings of the whole system, and painful sensations; but none of these unequivocal symptoms of the disease were as strong this day as they were the first, before he took medicine; but he seemed to grow worse every moment till medicine was given again. And the same course was pursued for eight days in succession; in which time he passed through sixteen courses. His intervals of repose were now so much longer, that one course in twenty-four hours seemed sufficient; and the treatment was pursued at this rate for eight days more. He then passed a day and night taking small doses of medicine, which seemed to keep the disease in check without producing vomiting. In a few days more he went home, but continued to take medicine whenever he felt symptoms of the disease returning; taking a full course occasionally when smaller doses did not prove sufficient. Thus the dreadful malady seemed to wear off very slowly.

About the first of September he began to grow so impatient and discouraged that he went to a German doctor, who boasted confidently of superior skill in curing hydrophobia. After taking his medicine for a few days, he fancied himself much better; but on taking a slight cold the old symptoms began to return, and his new medicine had lost its effect. He sent for his German doctor, but he could do no more. He was obliged, therefore, to resort again to the third preparation, which was still true to its trust, immediately giving relief. And until I last heard from him, which was sometime in December, the evidences of a radical cure grew stronger.

I will remark, as I learned from Dr. Tibbets, that the pulse when he first saw him, was very rapid, small, and irregular, and recognized with difficulty on account of the strong vibratory action of the tendons. Two hours after, when he was under the full influence of medicine, the pulse became full and strong, and numbered about forty in a minute; and this singularity was observable every day; after his intervals of repose, when the morbid symptoms were increasing, the pulse grew rapid, feeble, and irregular, until medicine was given sufficient to check the progress of the disease; and when under the influence of medicine, and the morbid symptoms were least observable, it was full and strong, and numbered from forty to fifty in a minute.

I will now notice several arguments, which have been made use of by the enemies of the Botanic System, to destroy the influence of this extraordinary cure.

Dr. Drake, who had not expressed his opinion on the case until he had seen the result of ten days treatment, felt himself at liberty to differ from those who had decided without this advantage; and assigned, as one reason for his opinion, the idea that the herbivorous animals cannot communicate the disease.

He was then asked if Josiah Morehead, who died of hydrophobia under his own care, about two months before, had the hydrophobia. He replied in the affirmative; and added, the case of Morehead being under his own eye, he knew it to be a clear and unequivocal case; and differed not in symptoms, character, progress, and termination, from hydrophobia. He was then reminded, that Morehead imbibed the disease by handling the hide of a cow that died mad; or rather, by rendering out the tallow of the same cow, he burnt his hand, which caused a bad sore that remained till he died; and this appeared to be the seat of infection; and it was never known that he had been exposed any other way. The Doctor replied it was not known how Morehead imbibed the disease, but it was a certainty that he had it. So we would say in the case of Clark; if it were demonstrated that the herbivorous animals cannot communicate the disease, we do not know how he imbibed the disease, unless it were by the circumstance that his own dog while raving under the influence of the disease, jumped and snapped at him, at the same time blowing a full blast of breath and saliva, in his face, through a crack of his pen; which caused him to feel a strong sense of nausea at the stomach, and produced some blister-like eruptions on his face. But we cannot allow Dr. Drake any credit for arguments in this case, which he counted of no weight in the others where they were equally applicable. Another argument assigned by the doctor was, that this case did not progress and terminate like hydrophobia; and there was no case recorded in any history, in which the progress of the disease had been stayed like this. But we cannot give him much credit for this argument, unless he will produce a record of some case to his purpose under his mode of treatment. We think it rather unreasonable that we cannot be permitted to prove that we can cure hydrophobia; except we first prove the disease to be *genuine*, by the fact of its terminating in *death*. There is a very wide difference between our system and that of the mineral doctors in this respect; our chance of success would be materially diminished after death; while theirs would remain just as good after death as before. But if death is to be the only criterion of the disease, we will venture to say that a genuine case of hydrophobia shall never occur, where our system is applied before the utter prostration of the vital powers, and is followed up with proper attention and perseverance.

Dr. Cobb, without knowing that Mr. Clark was under the botanic treatment, expressed an opinion with much confidence that it was a case of hydrophobia, when a gentleman informed him what treatment the case was under, and asked him what he would think should the patient recover. He replied, that he should be convinced that all who thought it to be hydropho-

bia were deceived. Thus we see the ground they take would render it impossible, even for Omnipotent Power, to prove a cure.

WM. RIPLEY.

P. S. That it may be clearly understood what, and how much, is comprehended in this account, as a course of medicine, I will here state it more explicitly. Whenever the returning symptoms of the disease became evident, a small dose of third-preparation was given, which always gave some partial relief, but of short continuance; then a larger dose was given, and soon repeated; next more was given by injection, and so on, when the operation was over, then steaming and washing finished the course.

The medicine was not given with a very sparing hand; the composition tea and valerian were used freely; and I judge from four to six ounces undiluted third-preparation were used in every twenty-four hours during the first eight days.

---

#### CASE XXVII.

This may certify to all whom it may concern, that on the 10th of February last, I was taken very sick with the bilious fever, as I supposed; which was attended with such excruciating pains in my back and head that I was at times delirious; and after suffering for three days in this situation I applied to Dr. Wilson\* (a botanic physician) who carried me through a regular course of his medicine, which relieved me very much from the pains I endured; and on the following day the surface of my body was completely covered with the small pox. But by the use of hot bitters and other stimulating medicines which were administered, I was, in the course of four or five days, able to be about my business, and have enjoyed good health ever since.

JAMES CUNNING.

CINCINNATI, June 17th, 1831.

---

#### CASE XXVIII.

The history of the following case of John Pegg, who is a resident of Randolph county, Indiana, was given to me by himself; and to the best of my recollection is as follows:

About fifteen years ago he discovered a small hard tumor about the size of half a pea, in the right arm-pit, which, on examination appeared to be firmly attached to the main tendon of

---

\* The reader will find Dr. Wilson's general mode of treating small pox particularly detailed at page 171.

the arm. In a short time after he first discovered it, it became somewhat painful; its growth was regular, though not rapid, and as the tumor increased in size the pain became more severe.

In about seven years after its first appearance, it was grown so large as to completely fill the arm-pit, and force the shoulder as much above a natural position as it would bear; it also extended back and attached itself to the shoulder-blade, and protruded forward considerably on the breast-bone. During this interval he made many applications to it, but none of them appeared to check its growth.

He then came to the determination to suffer a removal of the affected part; and accordingly put himself into the hands of one of the most skillful surgeons in his knowledge, who performed the operation on him; in doing which, he took off a part of the shoulder-blade.

The part amputated weighed one and one-fourth pounds, and on examination it appeared that the center of the tumor, about the size of a hen's egg, was hard and brittle, and when the knife was forced into it, it broke or cracked before the edge of the instrument.

About three months after the amputation was performed it began to grow again, increasing with much greater rapidity than it did before the removal of the tumor. He went back to the surgeon, who directed the application of a plaster of cantharides large enough to cover the affected part; and when it had become completely blistered, to remove the blister and dress it with an ointment made by putting the cantharides into oil, until it was nearly strong enough to blister; and as soon as it healed he was to apply the plaster again, and then dress with the same ointment. During the application of those external remedies, he was to take Fowler's solution of arsenic, in as large portions as would be considered safe.

He pursued this course till he had blistered it seven or eight times, and then sent an account of his situation to the surgeon, who returned him information that his case was a hopeless one, and that probably he would not survive a year. He then applied to other physicians and had their judgments relative to his case; and also attended a Medical Board and was under examination the greater part of one day; it was their united opinion that his case was a hopeless one and could not be cured. He then consulted about fifty of the most celebrated physicians, of the old school, that were in the circle of his acquaintance, and it was their unanimous opinion that he could not be cured. They generally agreed in pronouncing it a cancer, or cancerous tumor, though a few of them rather favored the idea that it was a scrofulous or scorbutic affection.

During this period he was making use of such external appli-



cations as were from time to time recommended to him by the physicians, but none of them appeared to arrest the progress of the disease. After he quit following these prescriptions, he was strongly urged to make a full trial of Swaim's Panacea, which he accordingly commenced and took twelve bottles; but it proved of no advantage to him.

He then, (as is common in such desperate cases,) as his last resort, concluded to try the effect of Botanic Medicine, and accordingly put himself under my care, in the fifth month, 1827. The tumor by this time had again completely filled the arm-pit, extended considerably on the shoulder-blade, and also protruded forward on the breast-bone. The part of the tumor that extended forward on the breast, I think was nearly as large as a man's two fists, and appeared to be as hard as a block of wood. The part in the arm-pit, had projected out so far that the skin had become dead, and was removed, presenting a bare surface as large as a French crown, from which exuded a small portion of excoriating matter. There was a great diminution of vitality in the arm and hand, which were invariably covered with a cold clammy sweat, so as frequently to stick to the fingers on being touched. The whole nervous system appeared to be much disordered, and when he was asleep, the whole body was in one universal tremor.

I commenced with giving him a tea of Dr. Thomson's composition powders, and half a tea-spoonful of the nerve powder, three times a day, for two days: also, I made an external application to the tumor, of the slippery elm bark poultice, covering the poultice with good ginger, finely pulverized, and before I placed the poultice on the part, I put a small portion of best cayenne over the surface of the tumor.

This poultice I renewed morning and evening, and whenever I removed it, the parts were well washed with strong soap-suds made of shaving soap. I also bathed the parts of the tumor, that were not covered with the poultice with No. 6, adding one-fourth part of spirits of turpentine, night and morning.

On the third day after I commenced, I took him through a regular course of medicine; which I began by giving him a dose of composition and nervine powder. I then placed him over the steam, and kept him there about fifteen minutes still raising the internal heat as the warmth of the steam increased, by giving composition, cayenne pepper, and penny-royal. I then put him in bed, placed a hot stone at his feet, and gave him a tea-spoonful of the emetic powder in composition, which was repeated every fifteen minutes, increasing each dose half a tea-spoonful till it operated. I also gave pennyroyal tea during the operation; and after I had given the third portion of the emetic, gave him some milk porridge. After the emetic had



operated, I let him remain in bed until recovered from the fatigue of vomiting, still keeping the hot stone to the feet, and giving the composition or cayenne pepper.

After awaking from a nap of sleep, gave him half a tea-spoonful of spice bitters; then something to eat, and in about ten or fifteen minutes took him up, placed him over the steam, and steamed him pretty highly for about fifteen or twenty minutes. Towards the latter part of the time, while he was over the steam, threw some vinegar on the stone, and then washed him off with cold water, with about half a pint of good vinegar added thereto. This part of the operation was varied in after courses, as in probably more than half of them he was showered. This was performed after I thought he had been long enough over the steam, by first washing his face with cold water; then taking about one gallon and a half of cold water, and half a pint of vinegar, and pouring it on the back of the neck and shoulders so as to run all over the body; he was then wiped dry and dressed; and commonly sat up the most of the day after he had been taken through an operation. I repeated the course of medicine, above described, every other day for one week, still making the same external applications as above described. I then took him through a course of medicine every third day, steaming and showering him occasionally between the courses, which were continued for two weeks.

After the first operation, on dressing the tumor, I discovered that it discharged much more than formerly; and steaming without a regular course produced the same effect more or less. About the end of the second week there appeared a disposition in the ulcer to heal, and I applied pearl-ash to it, after washing it, and then added the poultice above described. In three weeks the tumor was perceptibly less; at which time he went home. I furnished him with medicine and directions; he also obtaining a right to use them himself.

He still made the same external application for three months, when he came again to my residence. He informed me that he had been frequently applied to by the sick for relief, and he had attended upon them with good success; consequently his own ease became much neglected, and he had been two weeks at a time without a course of medicine. By this time I think the tumor was reduced one fourth in size and the ulcer disposed to heal under the application of the pearlash. I then advised the cancer plaster made of clover heads, which was continued for five or six weeks after his return home, at which time I visited him and found that it was inclined to heal under the application of the plaster. I put butternut bark to it, which blistered it; after which it was dressed with the elm, ginger, and cayenne. The butternut bark was applied several times in the course of six or

eight months whenever it was disposed to heal. During this time he had frequent calls to attend on the sick, and his own case was much neglected, not taking a course of medicine oftener than once in six or eight weeks.

The tumor, however, became reduced to half its former size, and was more and more neglected, when I recommended the application of the sorrel salve, which reduced the tumor faster than any thing which had preceded it. It was late in the fall, when he could procure but little of the sorrel, and his stock of salve before spring, became exhausted. For some time he had not gone through a course of medicine oftener than once in three or four months. His practice still increasing, his attention to himself decreasing in the same proportion.

During the course of this winter he attended to the practice, paying some little attention to himself. By spring when I saw him again, the tumor was about three-fourths gone; that season he procured more of the sorrel salve, and completed his cure; being two years and a half from his first commencement with me.

When the tumor first began to decrease, it gradually receded from the extremities towards the center or seat in the arm-pit, and it continued to decrease in this way, and by keeping a discharge of matter from the seat in the arm-pit, the solid or hard part was carried off by suppuration.

I visited him about twelve months after his cure was completed, when he told me that he believed the cause was entirely removed; though he observed, that he at all times felt an uneasy sensation attending the parts that had been affected; but it was his decided opinion, that those uneasy sensations were entirely caused by the removal of a part of the shoulder-blade, as aforesaid, and not from any effects of the tumor.

My own opinion relative to the case is, that if he had been carried through a regular course of medicine, as often as would have been advantageous to him, and applied the sorrel salve at the commencement, that his cure might probably have been effected in less than one year.

DANIEL KINDLEY.

---

#### CASE XXIX.

The history of the following case of Jacob Bowser, who is a resident of Warren county, Ohio, was given to me by himself, and to the best of my recollection, is as follows:—

About twelve years ago, (1820,) he was taken with the cramp in the breast so severely that his life was despaired of. The physician who attended him administered medicine, with which he was not acquainted, but which he has since had an opportunity of learning the effects of; for it did not remove the cause,

but much impaired his vital powers. He continued to apply to, and take medicine from, a number of different physicians, for the space of seven years; during which time his physician's bills for medicine and attendance amounted to \$400, and the cause of his complaint was still not removed. He applied to me for assistance in the winter of 1827, and in stating his case, observed, that he still had frequent returns of the cramp. It would begin in his feet, generally in the night, and proceed up his legs into his body if he did not get up and stir himself about, (and that frequently would fail to prevent its rising to the body,) and whenever it got into the body it always appeared like taking life, the pains were so excruciating. The sinews of his legs were drawn into knots, and he had but little feeling in his legs or feet. One of his great toes had been entirely without feeling, and appeared to have been dead for three years; having turned towards the little toe, crossing the one next to it and lying on the top of the second one, entirely stiff. He also complained of a continual singing in his head, so that sometimes he could scarcely hear, and was at all times much affected by it and the headache.

I gave him composition powders for the first day, and on the second I carried him through a regular course of medicine, (such as I have already described in JOHN PEGG's treatment, excepting that I always showered him with about one and a half gallons of water, and half a pint of vinegar.) I repeated the course of medicine every other day, till I had carried him through three operations, giving him composition powders every night, and half a tea-spoonful of spice bitters three times a day before meals.

In going through the second operation, whilst over the steam, he observed that he felt a severe pain in his toe, that he supposed had been dead, which continued probably for half an hour, and the next day he could move it a little. He remarked on getting up that morning, that he had *lost his almanac*, for he had slept well, and thought it had been cloudy through the night. On going out he observed that it was clear and a very heavy frost on the ground. He said that he had not experienced so good a night's rest in several years when it had been frosty—that he always suffered most in frosty weather, and that it was very seldom when it frosted at night that he could remain in bed later than one or two o'clock, but was obliged to be up the residue of the night, in great distress from the cramp and singing in the head.

After I had given him the third course his toe came to its natural feeling, returned to its former position, and he had the use of it nearly as well as the other. The head-ache and singing in the head were also removed, and he felt entirely relieved from every symptom of his complaint.

I furnished him with some medicine to take home, and accompanied him to one of the neighbors' houses. As we traveled

along, he frequently expressed his astonishment at the difference there was in his feelings in the course of one week, (that being the time he was under my care.) To use his own phrase, he said he felt like a dancing master—he was so active that he felt like jumping over all the old logs in the woods. On parting with him, I told him I was fearful that he would, when he got home, expose himself and bring the complaint on again. He said if he ever felt it returning, he would come immediately for assistance. He has not returned, neither have I seen him since, though I have heard from him at different times. He still remained well whenever I heard from him; following his trade of bricklayer and stone mason.—[*Ib.*]

---

## CASE XXX.

J—— W——, aged upwards of 70 years, had been subject from infancy to frequent returns of a debilitating diarrhea or looseness of the bowels, which resisted every means that were employed for its cure, and had many times reduced him to the verge of the grave. He was obliged to be very careful and circumspect about his diet, being under the necessity of denying himself the use of many articles of food that others indulge in with impunity. The most skillful physicians of the old school had been employed in his case, and much money expended, but all to no purpose; the looseness, in spite of all his care, would often return, and as he advanced in age it became more frequent and obstinate.

Finally he had an attack of intermittent fever, when he applied to a Botanic physician who administered one course of medicine, which completely removed the fever; and his appetite and strength were restored by the use of bitters. But the most extraordinary circumstance was, that his predisposition to diarrhea seemed to be removed, and he found himself in a situation to indulge in any kind of food that his appetite craved, which he had not been able to do for years. About two years, however, after the above course of medicine, it being Christmas, he indulged himself in eating to excess, of cakes fried in lard, which produced a return of his old complaint; but which he immediately checked by drinking a decoction of the pods of red pepper.

It is only necessary to add, that no other medicines were used in the above case, than the diaphoretic or sweating powders, cayenne pepper, hemlock bark, and the lobelia as an emetic, with the common bitters.

## CASE XXXI.

N—— D——, a girl, aged about ten years, fell backward from the great beam of a barn, upon the bare floor, by which she was much bruised. A botanic physician was called, who took her through a regular course of medicine. After this she took of the diaphoretic powders and cayenne for a few days, when she was perfectly restored to health and strength.

---

## CASE XXXII.

At the raising of a log house in Marion county, a person was very seriously injured by the accidental falling of a log; but no bones were broken. A Botanic physician, who had formerly been in the habit of letting blood, was immediately sent for, and on his arrival was requested by the individual to bleed him, as was customary in all such cases. To this, however, he objected, observing that he could relieve him in a much better way, without inducing the debility which always followed blood-letting.

The wounded man assenting to this proposition, a dose of the diaphoretic powders was immediately administered, and as soon as possible, water and stones were heated, and he was placed over a lively steam, when more of the powders or cayenne pepper was administered. And although when the steam bath was first applied, he was suffering the most excruciating pain, with great restlessness and anxiety, it was but a short time until he became easy and tranquil. After a thorough steaming he was placed in bed, continued taking the medicine, and in three or four days was able to attend to his business.—[Communicated by Isaac Bunker.]

---

## CASE XXXIII.

Mrs. Reinhardt, of Lincolnton, North Carolina, was afflicted with liver complaint; having a fixed pain in the region of the stomach, from which she had not experienced one moment's relief for many years; often times suffering the most excruciating torture for several hours; to relieve which she frequently took from one to two hundred drops of laudanum.

The taking of such quantities of this powerful sedative produced the most serious difficulty, causing a constipation of the bowels, which required the most active cathartics to remove. She was obliged to take physic every day, by which means large quantities of mucus, of a yellowish and singular appearance,



were discharged. Calomel, or Croton oil, were chiefly used to move her bowels; whilst she took no more food than would be sufficient for a sucking child, apparently for the want of room to receive it into the stomach. She was also much bloated, and when standing on her feet, her arms hung dangling and powerless at her sides.

In this dreadful situation, I was called on to attend her, and however hopeless the prospect appeared, I undertook the case.

In the first place I gave her stimulating medicines freely for several days, and then applied the vapor bath; but after steaming for more than an hour, was obliged to desist with producing but a very little moisture of the skin. Still continuing the stimulating medicines, I allowed her to pass over one day, and then applied the vapor bath again, as I was determined to excite an action in the skin before giving an emetic; being fully satisfied that some dangerous local affection existed in the stomach. The second attempt at steaming proved effectual; she became warm, and sweated freely. I then gave her an emetic, which produced violent commotions in the stomach for a while, but at length something appeared to give way, and she threw up about a quart of matter having the appearance of pus from an abscess, together with a hard white substance resembling the core of a boil, nearly as large as a hen's egg.

After the emetic had ceased to operate, I gave her a dose of composition, and to my astonishment found it produced an effect apparently as severe as melted lead. This satisfied me that an abscess had actually been formed and was broken, which rendered it impossible for her to take cayenne or any other warming medicine; and to recover without it I knew she could not.

I had just commenced practice in that section of country, and felt myself in a critical situation, as I strongly suspected the woman would die. I however commenced giving stimulating medicines as well as food by injection, and her husband and myself remained at her bedside day and night; and within five days, upwards of forty injections were administered. During the same time I gave her regularly a tea of golden seal and ginseng, in small quantities at a time.

At length she began to mend, having had no return of the pains in her stomach, and is now able to attend to her household concerns, laboring every day; and has passed through more than *one hundred courses* of medicine with manifest advantage, and improvement of her health, to the astonishment of all her acquaintance. Her husband has purchased a right to use the medicine himself, and says he would not be deprived of it for any sum of money.

ALEXANDER REED.

Attest,— JACOB REINHARDT, }  
Husband of the above named woman. }

## CASE XXXIV.

Mrs. Beeson, an aged widowed lady, was afflicted with the most violent hysteric fits I ever met with. She called upon me whilst I was attending upon a boy who had the epilepsy, and took a fit in my presence. Her extremities became cold, and trembling of the whole system ensued. Breathing was alternately suspended, and then laborious. I immediately administered a large table-spoonful of the third preparation of Dr. Thomson. I soon inquired of her what effect the medicine produced, and she said that it caused a warm sensation in her breast. I then gave her another spoonful; in ten minutes she appeared well and has not had a fit since.

This cure was performed at the house of Zachariah Hobbie, in Spartanburg District, South Carolina, in the presence of many witnesses.—[*Ib.*]

---

## CASE XXXV.

Dr. REED also reports a case of fever of a violent and stubborn character, in which he gave five courses of medicine; three of them in immediate succession, which consumed fifteen hours; and the other two within sixty hours from the commencement. The third course removed the fever, and the two last effected a complete and permanent cure. He says he mentions this circumstance to encourage others to promptness and perseverance in all bad cases of fever.

Dr. REED also says he has encountered fevers of every form, in patients of every age, and in different climates, having practiced in the Western and very extensively in the Southern States, and never lost a patient whose only disease was fever. We know that his practice has been very extensive as well as eminently successful; and therefore take leave, though apparently out of place, to introduce a few of his remarks on fever, which we think entitled to the highest consideration.

He observes, that in violent attacks of fevers, in the South, no time ought to be lost. In cases of this kind he gives a strong tea of the diaphoretic powders and ginseng; places a hot brick or stone at the feet, and administers a stimulating injection. If the patient appears bilious, always administer an emetic before using the vapor bath, or the bile will be scattered through the system, which he thinks injurious. Vomiting, he says, ought not to be discontinued when five or six motions have been produced; ten or fifteen are not too many, and sometimes it may be advantageously carried to twice that number. In one case of bilious fever, says he, I continued the vomiting for eleven hours

In thirty-six hours the patient sat at the table and ate; and in forty-eight went on his journey.

Once, continues Dr. REED, vomited a Mr. Piatt (brother to the late John H. Piatt, of Cincinnati,) all night, which completely broke up his fever, and effected a permanent cure. After a fever is checked, Dr. REED thinks that pills made of cayenne and rhubarb are good to prevent a relapse. He directs two to be taken every hour until they move the bowels. Sponging the body with pepper tea, in bad cases of fever, he also highly recommends, during the operation of vomiting, a pint of the tea to a gallon of cold water.

---

#### CASE XXXVI.

A female who had long been in a weak situation, and had suffered much by pains in her stomach and other parts, by hysterical affections, and a complication of other disorders, having employed several doctors of the regular Medical Faculty, as well as Root doctors, who had exhausted their skill, to little or no useful purpose to the afflicted person, applied for the use of the Botanic Medicines.

She was taken through a course of medicine as follows:— A large tea-spoonful of the diaphoretic or sweating powders were administered in warm water sweetened. An injection of African pepper, tincture of myrrh, diaphoretic or sweating powders, and lady's slipper, each half a tea-spoonful, was administered in an infusion of equal parts of the bark of hemlock and bayberry root. Six stones of suitable size, (say five or six inches in diameter) were well heated, and she was thoroughly steamed, giving the tincture of myrrh and cayenne pepper. She was then placed in bed with a warm stone in a wet cloth covered with a dry one, to her feet, and being very costive another such injection was administered, and then a heaping tea-spoonful of pulverized seed of lobelia, very fine, was given in warm water with cayenne; in fifteen minutes the same quantity of lobelia; in seven minutes as much of the pepper and the same of lady's slipper, and these were given alternately; the same of lobelia, and next the pepper and lady's slipper, until eight doses of the pepper and lady's slipper, and as many of the lobelia had been given, and then at the same intervals of time six more such doses of the pulverized seed of the lobelia. Pennyroyal, also milk porridge and soup, were at different times given to cause the easier operation of the emetic; and after the fourteenth dose she threw off from the stomach two quarts of a substance which in color and appearance resembled sponge cut in small pieces.

She had previously been taken through three light courses, one every other day, without much relief, and no appetite for food; but after this thorough fourth course, she was hungry, her food set well on her stomach, and was the next day so well, that she could pay some attention to her family affairs; and by taking spice bitters a few days, she regained her strength, and has ever since been very healthy, and become the mother of several children.

DANIEL BUTLER.

Dr. BUTLER says he cured a cancer on a person's finger, by two plasters of the sorrel salve; and that a bad cancer on a woman's breast was also cured by two plasters only of this salve.

His brother-in-law, he also states, was relieved of a very bad bloody flux in four hours, by taking seven doses of red pepper, each consisting of three tea-spoonfuls, in a tea made strong with the leaves of red raspberry. It soon eased the pains, and cured him in twenty-four hours.

---

#### CASE XXXVII.

Alexander Gillespie, Esq. a highly respectable citizen of Marion county, Ohio, was cured of a severe sickness, by Dr. Daniel Butler, which a number of their neighbors, as well as themselves, who had previously witnessed the like in others, all concurred in calling a bad case of what is known in some parts of Kentucky and Ohio by the name of Milk Sickness, Trembling Disease, or Sick Stomach.

He was in the 53d year of his age, and was taken with a dead, heavy pain and weakness in the stomach, loss of appetite, indigestion, weakness of the nervous system, and costiveness. He was next taken with a violent heat at the stomach, and tremor over the whole system; violent and almost continual vomiting; and being now confined to his bed, he sent for Dr. Daniel Butler, who administered—first, a tea-spoonful of tincture of lobelia, which was repeated twice; when he vomited, and his stomach seemed a little settled. He next gave him an injection composed of cayenne, tincture of myrrh, sweating powder, and half a tea-spoonful of lady's slipper, in warm water sweetened; but his bowels were so cold and insensible that he did not feel it, and did not discharge it. He then steamed him well, in the manner stated in the female case in the preceding number; then put him in bed with a hot stone to his feet, and gave him a heaping tea-spoonful of the seed of lobelia, made very fine, which caused some pain in the stomach. In fifteen minutes gave two heaping tea-spoonfuls of lobelia and one of African pepper;



this caused considerable pain, and slight vomiting. After this, in fifteen minutes, another heaping tea-spoonful of lobelia, drinking at all times hemlock bark tea. Considerable vomiting ensued, which afforded temporary relief. He then gave an injection composed of half a pint of strong tea of the astringent tonic, containing a tea-spoonful of the sweating powders, the same of tincture of myrrh and cayenne pepper, and half do. of nervine.

This injection aroused the bowels, and produced a small discharge of hard dry fetid substance from the intestines, when he vomited again moderately. He now lay in a tolerably easy, but dull sleepy state for a while, taking every 15 or 20 minutes the diaphoretic or sweating powders, and tincture of myrrh, alternately through the day; but during the forenoon was taken with violent hiccup, so that he could be heard for one hundred yards, which continued until afternoon, and was then stopped by putting his fore fingers in his ears and pressing them hard for some time. He was then taken through another full thorough course, giving in every case fully double the quantity of medicines usually necessary. Both the injections and emetic operated powerfully; he sweat abundantly, and the whole system was relieved, except that towards the conclusion or close of the operation of the emetic, he was again taken with violent hiccup, which continued about two hours. Stopping the ears with the fingers was tried without any good effect. Then gave a tea-spoon one-third full of clear oil of pennyroyal, and two or three tea-spoonfuls of tincture of lobelia, at intervals of a few minutes, and several other things were all tried in vain, because, as is supposed, they were administered *cold*. Then put a tea-spoonful of the sweating powders in half a tea-cup of *boiling* water, and it was drank as hot as he could bear it. This immediately stopped the hiccup. This course was commenced in the evening about seven o'clock, and the hiccup was stopped about two o'clock in the morning, and by giving every thing warm for twelve hours, it returned no more, (the vials of tincture were put in hot water to keep it warm.) The vomiting continued moderately, at intervals, till say twelve o'clock, when by very hard straining, a dark, thick, brownish, yellow, sticky, jelly-looking substance was discharged, and immediately the vomiting ceased; he felt hungry, and ate dried beef, corn bread, and coffee, and felt much relieved every way; his strength improved fast, took sweating powder and tincture of myrrh, at intervals of an hour, more or less; drank the hemlock tea, took bitters of golden seal poplar bark, bitter root, and pepper, all pulverized, and pursuing this course was well in a few days.

He has from that time to the present, (nearly a year,) enjoyed good health, and been able to attend to more business than he had for many years previous.



In testimony to the truth of the above, I cheerfully subscribe my hand.

ALEXANDER GILLESPIE.

June 16, 1832.

[Communicated by Dr. DANIEL BUTLER.]

---

#### CASE XXXVIII.

The proprietor and author of this Medical work, on a journey to Cincinnati, was taken with a chill succeeded by a fever, which affected his head so much that his mental faculties were entirely deranged. His wife and two Botanic physicians being in company, and business of importance urging them forward, they, in two hours, took him through a course of steaming, injections, emetic, and washing off in cold water, &c.—which entirely relieved him from the fever and mental derangement; and after taking refreshment, they placed a bed in the carriage and traveled that day, in all forty miles. The next day he felt comfortable, and traveled thirty miles; the day after lay by, and had a chill and heavy fever; on the next day traveled thirty miles comfortably; but the day after had a violent fever and took a thorough course of medicine which threw off the disorder entirely; and he came home well.

In a few days after, when riding out, he was overtaken by rain, got wet, and being out in the evening took a relapse, which was followed by a severe fever, that required six full Botanic courses to remove. Two weeks after this, through much exposure and great fatigue in the heat of summer, a second relapse occurred, and was succeeded by a fever of greater violence and more dangerous character than the former one. It then took nine thorough Botanic courses, each of which would produce relief from all the disagreeable symptoms—using spiced bitters in the intervals; and so long as he continued in a profuse perspiration he felt comfortable, but so soon as his skin became dry he was afflicted with pains in his limbs and other parts of his body, with feverish symptoms, and could find no relief, until by taking diaphoretic powders, or African, or red pepper, and the application of hot stones to his sides, feet and other parts, free perspiration was again restored.

He continued in this situation several days, becoming weaker, and could find no permanent relief, until by the use of warm stimulants and hot stones as aforesaid, a profuse perspiration was produced, and the pains mostly or entirely removed; then he was taken from the bed, and had a bucket of cold water poured instantly on his head, so as to run over his whole body, and wiping off quickly was again laid in bed greatly refreshed and strengthened; after which he enjoyed a longer exemption from

pain than usual. Thus he was encouraged to repeat this course whenever the pains and aches returned, by which means he was soon restored to perfect health and strength.

---

## CASE XXXIX.

Whilst the author was in Greenville District, South Carolina, he was sent for by a person of the name of Payden, who by a fall through his saw-mill, dislocated his middle finger, where it joins the hand. The finger was turned with the fore part behind, and so swollen and sore that any attempt to move it produced excruciating pain. The diaphoretic or sweating powders were immediately given in warm water; and then several folds of cloth were slightly wrapped around the hand, and water as hot as he could bear was poured on it, for fifteen or twenty minutes, by which time he perspired freely. We then took the covering from the finger, and turned it gradually, to its proper place; in doing which, little or no pain was produced; cold water was then poured on it, and frequently repeated; and little distress or inconvenience followed.

The next day he paid us a visit, and said his finger was well; it soon became as strong as it was before

---

## CASE XL.

The proprietor and author of this work, was, in early life, of a healthy, vigorous constitution; but through great exposure to wet and cold, contracted a grievous dysentery or kind of bloody flux, which continued for eight years; during which time he never enjoyed one day of what might be called good health.

His bowels, the whole time, were in a relaxed state, and almost continually discharged blood and slime, or a jelly-like mucus, and generally both at the same time. The excrements or stools often assumed a dark appearance, were very fetid, like approaching mortification; and he would be so much reduced that he was unable to keep out of bed.

He applied to and exhausted the skill of all the physicians of his acquaintance, and then devoted himself to reading medical books, with a view of following the profession as a business, if he should be restored to health; but all proved unavailing; except that he could by those means procure temporary relief.

The disease was so deeply seated, that it would in a few days, return with redoubled force, and in a short time reduce him very low. And he believes that the most rigid temperance, and a diligent and determined disposition to take bodily exercise in

full proportion to his strength, were the principal means of preserving his life so many years in this debilitated state. Towards the close of this period he conceived the idea that red pepper would be useful, and he commenced taking one pod, seeds and all, every day, and finally increased the quantity, until he took three large pods with the seeds three times a day; which seemed to strengthen and reanimate him, but failed to overcome the disease.

His native country, North Carolina, where he then resided, produced sweet potatoes in abundance, of which he was very fond; but they producing flatulency, and his bowels being always relaxed, he supposed he must refrain from them, as their windiness seemed insuperable. But observing the condition of small children, many of whom in that country during fall and winter live almost entirely on them; and noticing that their bowels were always in good order, he conceived the idea that to live almost or altogether on sweet potatoes, would be beneficial to himself; and as he then had no hope from any other earthly source, determined, let the event be what it might, to give them a thorough trial; he accordingly substituted them for bread, taking other food as usual. The first three days, the windiness which they produced, together with the relaxed state of his bowels, kept him getting up and down so often that his strength became much exhausted, and he could only with difficulty raise himself in bed. He however perceived that the liquid or thin state of the discharges, *very slowly* but gradually assumed a better consistence, and less disagreeable odor. He found too, that after the third day, the flatulence seemed to be less troublesome, that he had little or no pain, and he was thus encouraged to persevere in substituting the potatoes for bread.

In less than a month the lax ceased to be troublesome, and his stools were in every respect natural, except that the discharges of blood, &c., continued unabated. About this time he took *one* meal of bread instead of potatoes, and the lax immediately returned: but was stopped again by the use of potatoes. He however soon found, from repeated trials, that he could with impunity take one meal of bread each day; and pretty soon two meals each day, with one of potatoes, and enjoy good health, except the discharge of blood, which was reduced in quantity. After a while he could omit the potatoes a whole day, but he must resume their use once, or more, on the day following, or the lax would return.

His strength now became considerably restored, and the flow of blood entirely ceased; but there was still a discharge of slimy mucus. In a little time more, perhaps in twelve or fourteen weeks from the commencement of the use of the sweet potatoes, every unnatural discharge ceased; having taken no medicine of

any kind from the first commencement, relying solely on the sweet potatoes. He could now continue the use of bread without the potatoes, for three days—but no longer, as the lax would return—and the use of the potatoes must be partially resumed.

The winter was now far spent, and the crop of potatoes became exhausted; but by the use of a few Irish potatoes, the cure was perfected, his health established, and he has never since been much afflicted with a relaxed state of the bowels for many days at a time.

He will close this narrative of personal experience on himself, by relating another extraordinary circumstance of relief from a distressed state of the bowels, directly the reverse of that of which he has just been speaking; believing that he owes them both as a legacy to the world, and records them for the benefit of posterity. He also hopes that they may be the means of hastening that happy period, which he believes is approaching, and which it is his anxious wish to accelerate, when health will be preserved by temperance and proper diet, and the necessity of resorting to medicine or physicians be in a great measure removed.

The reader will have observed from the foregoing statement, that his bowels were, for eight years, in an extremely irritable and debilitated state; from which, although they recovered, yet were undoubtedly left in a disposition to be readily affected by slight causes. It may also be proper to observe, that on the sea coast of his native State, the inhabitants lived much on bread made of Indian corn, which is far better calculated to keep the bowels open and regular than any other kind of bread in use.

In 1799 he removed to the Western country, where the principal part of the bread used was made of finely bolted wheat flour. Without reflecting then, or for many years afterwards, on the consequences which might, (and he has no doubt did) result from using this kind of bread, he took no measures to prevent that state of the bowels which has since caused him so much pain. It was not long before costiveness ensued which soon became habitual, producing head-ache of the severest form, from which no relief could be procured except what was merely temporary, until the contents of the stomach and bowels were evacuated by puking and purging.

It now seems strange that for sixteen years he should not once have reflected on the circumstance of his never having more than one fit of the sick head-ache, until he removed from his native State, and adopted the use of wheat bread as aforesaid. This case occurred on a journey home from a visit, during which he had eaten no other bread for several weeks, than that made exclusively from wheat flour, which produced an obstinate state of costiveness.



After removing to the Western country, he, without due reflection, persisted in the use of this kind of bread, and about once a month would have a most distressing fit of sick headache, when emetics, tartar, calomel, jalap, rhubarb, &c. were resorted to for relief; and to guard against those fits, the frequent, and at last the daily use of rhubarb, Lee's pills, or some mild laxative, was resorted to; and his digestive powers, and the tone of his whole intestinal canal, became increasingly impaired. Consequently, larger doses were required; and the paroxysms of sickness and excruciating pain in the head became more frequent; and in the course of twelve or thirteen years he was so reduced that, in addition to large doses every day of rhubarb or some of the more active but mild kind of laxative medicines, it became, as he supposed, absolutely necessary to use calomel and jalap, as well as to let blood to get relief. In the course of from three to four years more, in addition to tolerably active laxatives every day, it required, about once in three weeks, twenty or thirty grains of calomel, from thirty to fifty grains of jalap, and three to four large table-spoonfuls of castor oil, at one dose, and then take a full pint of blood, to obtain so much relief as to be able to live two or three weeks more, by taking the milder laxatives as before. This was in 1816, sixteen years from the commencement and regular progress of the disease.

Every kind of diet and medicine which was supposed would produce permanent relief, had long since proved ineffectual; his flesh was much wasted, and his strength nearly exhausted; his feet and legs swelled up to his knees; and in all human probability a few weeks appeared likely to terminate his existence. In this situation he was again attacked with another excruciating and almost insupportable paroxysm of head-ache. He strove to be as composed as possible, and felt undetermined whether it was best to resort to the use of those drastic purges and copious bleedings again for relief, or as patiently as possible confide in Divine Providence, and take no more medicine with a view to arrest the progress of the disease.

In this solemn and painful condition, with a mind calm and resigned to his situation, it occurred to him that, the day before, he had seen one of his family, who had been to the grist mill, take a bag of wheat bran into a back building for the purpose of feeding cows. With this recollection his mind was forcibly impressed with the belief, that if he would eat enough of it, it would relieve him. He had never heard nor thought of any such thing, and was, at that time, incapable of reasoning much about it; but the impression continuing on his mind, he took of it three times, in say ten or fifteen minutes, to the amount of two or three handfuls, and it soon entirely relieved him, without letting blood or taking any other medicine. He soon



found that one large handful, morning, noon, and night, would preserve him in health, which, with some reduction in quantity, he has continued in the use of to the present time. It neutralizes acidity in the stomach, and acts mechanically on the whole intestinal canal, keeping it clean, and enabling it to perform its proper functions. It mixes with the food and prevents bread made of superfine flour, or any other kind of aliment, from constipating the bowels, preserving the body in health and vigor.

It is now seventeen years since he discovered the efficacy of bran. For nearly eleven years it required of clean well ground and closely bolted wheat bran, two ounces in the morning, as much at noon, and the same quantity at night. This would enable him to partake of bread made of fine flour, or any usual food, except acid fruits or preserves. If he indulged in these, an extra handful of bran became necessary. On journeys, and sometimes for want of proper care, he neglected it, but always suffered for it.

In 1826 he refrained from it so long that he had a severe attack of bilious fever, followed by two relapses; and was cured by the Steam or Botanic Practice as before stated. His constitution has been ever since so much renovated that he is generally able to enjoy good health, with the use of only one handful, or two ounces as aforesaid, in the morning, on an empty stomach. This quantity, and sometimes a little more, is, and probably will continue to be, necessary during life.—He sometimes for a change takes it in coffee or tea, rendered palatable by milk and sugar; but believes it best to take it in one hand, and a glass of water in the other, and practice soon will teach how to eat it with but little difficulty, by taking a little bran and then wash it down with water. Few who have tried it have required so much as he has, to preserve health; but one of his friends has required more. He has seldom found since the first time he ever used it, that it has relieved him so suddenly, after becoming unwell by the neglect of taking it—but the patient use of it overcomes the difficulty.

---

It having been our original intention, to publish the history and specific treatment by botanic remedies, of only a few of the worst cases of disease, we shall now close our list of them. Believing that enough have been presented to satisfy every rational and unprejudiced mind, that we have the best of all authority, (*actual experience*), for recommending as we have done, the use of *vegetable* medicaments.



## GLOSSARY.

OR EXPLANATION OF THE PRINCIPAL TECHNICAL TERMS USED IN THIS  
VOLUME.

- Abdomen*, The belly.
- Abscess*, A tumor containing pus, as a boil, or other swelling.
- Acid*, That which imparts to the taste a sharp or sour sensation.
- Acrid*, Sharp, pungent, corrosive, or heating.
- Acute*, Sharp; ending in a sharp point; when applied to disease, means one which is attended with violent symptoms, and comes speedily to a crisis.
- Affusion*, The act of pouring a liquid upon any other substance; as of pouring water upon a diseased body.
- Alkali*, A substance which is capable of uniting with acids and destroying their acidity; such as potash, &c.
- Alternate*, In botany, branches and leaves are said to be *alternate*, when they come out singly on opposite sides of the stem, but not opposite to each other, following in regular and gradual order, first on one side of the stem and then on the other.
- Amenorrhœa*, An obstruction of the menses.
- Annual*, Yearly; every year; in botany applied to plants and roots which grow from the seed, arrive at perfection, and die, in the course of a year or season.
- Anodyne*, Any medicine which eases pain.
- Anthelmintic*, That which destroys or procures the evacuation of worms from the stomach and intestines.
- Antidote*, A preservative against, or a remedy for, disease, and particularly for poison.
- Anti-bilious*, That which opposes or removes the too great accumulation of bile.
- Anti-dysenteric*, That which prevents or removes the dysentery.
- Anti-emetic*, That which removes, or opposes vomiting.
- Anti-morbidic*, That which prevents or removes disease.
- Anti-septic*, That which removes, or tends to prevent putrefaction.
- Anti-spasmodic*, That which removes or tends to prevent spasms.
- Anti-syphilitic*, That which removes or prevents the venereal disease.
- Aromatic*, Fragrant; a plant which yields a pleasant spicy smell, or a warm pungent taste.
- Astringent*, That which corrects looseness and debility, by rendering the solids denser and firmer, known by its puckering effect upon the mouth.
- Axillary*, (Belonging to the arm pit.) In botany the space or angle formed by a branch with the stem, or by a leaf with the stem or branch.
- Axillary Glands* Are situated in the arm-pit. [See *Gland*.]
- Belching*, The act of ejecting wind from the stomach, by the mouth.
- Biennial*, In botany, is applied to plants, which form their roots and leaves the first year, produce their fruit the second year, and then perish.
- Biternate*, Twice-ternate; applied to a peculiarly formed compound leaf.
- Bract*, A small leaf.

*Bulbous*, In botany, root of a round shape ; as an onion, &c.

*Bursa mucosa*, A mucous bag, which secretes and contains a substance to lubricate tendons, muscles, and bones, in order to render their motions easy.

*Calculi*, Small gravel or stones, which form in the bladder and kidneys.

*Calyx*, A cup ; the external covering of an unexpanded flower ; generally green, or the same color with the leaves of the plant.

*Capsule*, A hollow vessel which contains the seeds of some plants.

*Carbonic acid gas*, Fixed air, compounded of carbon and oxygen.

*Carminative*, A medicine which tends to expel wind from the body.

*Cartilage*, A white elastic substance, which serves to facilitate the motions of the bones, and to connect them together—often called gristle.

*Cathartic*, That which produces purging of the intestines.

*Catheter*, A small tubular instrument, to introduce into the bladder, to draw off the water, when the natural discharge is impeded or suppressed.

*Caudex*, In botany the main head or body of a root.

*Caustic*, A burning application, that destroys the part to which it is applied.

*Chancre*, A venereal ulcer, or sore, caused by the direct application of the virus.

*Choleric*, Easily irritated.

*Chronic*, When applied to disease is one which is inveterate or of long continuance, and mostly without fever.

*Colliquative*, Any excessive and weakening discharge from the body ; as colliquative sweats, &c.

*Coma*, } A strong propensity to sleep.

*Comatose*, }

*Concrete*, A collected mass, united in a solid form.

*Connate*, Growing from one base ; united together at the base, as the leaves of *boneset*.

*Constipation*, } An obstruction, or preternatural slowness of evacuations

*Costiveness*, } from the bowels.

*Constriction*, A drawing together, or contraction, as from cold.

*Contagious*, Catching ; that which may be communicated from one person to another by contact, or by a subtle excreted matter.

*Cordate*, Heart-shaped.

*Corymb*, A cluster of flowers at the top of a plant forming an even, flat, expanded surface.

*Cranium*, The skull ; the assemblage of bones which enclose the brain.

*Crepitus*, A sharp, crackling sound.

*Cutaneous*, (From *cutis*, the skin,) belonging to the skin.

*Cuticle*, The outward skin.

*Decoction*, A tea made by boiling any substance in water ; the process of steeping or boiling medicinal herbs, &c.

*Decumbent*, Declined, or bending down.

*Delirium*, An alienation of mind, or wandering of the senses, caused by the violence of fever.

*Diaphoretic*, That which, from being taken internally, promotes perspiration, or discharges by the skin.

*Digest*, To dissolve ; in chemistry, to soften and prepare by heat ; the action of a solvent on any substance ; often applied to the infusing of any medicinal substance in spirits.

- Discutient*, An application which disperses a swelling or tumor, or any coagulated morbid matter.
- Diuretic*, That which, by its internal application, augments the flow of urine from the kidneys.
- Duodenum*, The first portion of the small intestines.
- Efflorescence*, In diseases, applied to a redness of the skin; in botany, applied to flowers.
- Effluvia*, Exhalations from diseased bodies or other substances, whether noxious or otherwise.
- Electuary*, Powders or other ingredients, mixed with melasses or honey.
- Emetic*, A medicine which provokes vomiting.
- Emmenagogue*, That which tends to promote menstrual discharges.
- Epidemic*, A contagious or other disease that attacks many people at the same season, and in the same place.
- Erosion*, The act of eating away.
- Errhines*, Medicines, which, when snuffed or taken into the nose, excite sneezing, and increase the secretion of mucus from this organ.
- Eruetation*, The act of ejecting wind from the stomach through the mouth.
- Eruptive*, The bursting forth of humors, on the surface of the skin, in the form of pustules, &c., &c.
- Escharotic*, Caustic; corrosive; eating.
- Excoriate*, To gall, strip, or wear off the skin; to remove the skin by the action of acrid substances.
- Excretive*, Having the power of separating and ejecting fluid matter from the body.
- Exotic*, Foreign; not a native.
- Expectorant*, Medicines which increase the discharge of mucus from the lungs.
- Fauces*, The back part of the mouth.
- Febrile*, Pertaining to, or indicating fever.
- Fibrous*, Consisting of slender threads; the small slender roots of plants.
- Filter*, To strain through cloth, paper, or other porous substances.
- Flaccid*, Soft and weak; limber; lax; yielding to pressure for want of firmness.
- Flatulency*, Windiness in the stomach and intestines.
- Flush*, A transient redness and heat of the cheek or face.
- Fomentation*, A sort of partial bathing, by applying flannels dipped in hot water, or medicated decoctions, to any part.
- Fontanelle*, A vacancy in the cranium or skull of infants.
- Formula*, A prescription; a specified form.
- Fundament*, see "Rectum."
- Fur*, A coat of morbid matter collected on the tongue of a diseased person, especially in fevers.
- Gargle*, A medicated preparation for washing the mouth and throat.
- Gas*, A permanently elastic aeriform fluid.
- Gland*, In anatomy, means a distinct, soft body, destined for the secretion or alteration of some peculiar fluid.
- Granulation*, The act of forming into small grains.
- Hectic*, Habitual; denoting a slow, continual fever, marked by preternatural, though remitting heat, which accompanies the consumption, &c.
- Hemiplegy*, A palsy that affects one-half, or side, of the body.



*Hemorrhages*, Fluxes of blood, proceeding from the rupture of a blood-vessel, or some other cause.

*Hemorrhoidal*, Pertaining to the vessels which are the seat of the hemorrhoids or piles.

*Hydragogue*, A medicine that occasions the discharge of watery humors from the body.

*Hydrogen*, An aeriform fluid gas, of the lightest body known; and is consequently used for inflating balloons. It forms one of the elements of water, being about 15 parts to 100 of that liquid; and is fatal to animal life.

*Hypochondriasis*, The vapors: spleen; a disease which is attended by languor or debility, lowness of spirits or melancholy; the sufferer often apprehending great evil to himself, &c.

*Hysterics*, A disease of women, characterized by spasmodic affections of the nervous system, and often attended by hypochondriacal symptoms.

*Indented*, Notches cut into any thing making sharp points like teeth.

*Infectious*, That which taints or corrupts; having qualities which may communicate disease from one to another.

*Infuse*, To steep in liquor without boiling, for the purpose of extracting medicinal qualities.

*Inguinal*, Pertaining to the groin.

*Inoculation*, The act of communicating a disease to a person in health, by inserting contagious matter in his skin or flesh.

*Inspiration*, The act of drawing air into the lungs.

*Inspissate*, To thicken a fluid substance by evaporation, or drying.

*Intermittent*, Ceasing for intervals of time.

*Jagged*, Uneven; having notches or teeth.

*Lancolate*, Oblong, and gradually tapering towards each end; shaped like a lancet.

*Laxative*, A medicine that relaxes the bowels; a gentle purgative.

*Lethargy*, Morbid drowsiness or sleepiness; a continued or profound sleep, from which a person can scarcely be awaked, and if waked remains stupid.

*Linea Alba*, A tendinous expansion, forming a straight line from the pit of the stomach to the navel, and from thence to the pubes.

*Lithotomy*, The operation of cutting for stone in the bladder.

*Local*, Belonging to a part and not to the whole.

*Lupuline*, The fine yellow powder of hops.

*Lymph*, A colorless fluid separated from the blood, and contained in small vessels called lymphatics.

*Materia Medica*, That branch of medical science which treats of the nature and properties of substances employed for the cure of diseases.

*Membrane*, A thin, flexible skin, serving to cover some part of the body.

*Menstruum*, All liquors are called *menstruums* which are used as dissolvents, or to extract the virtues of medicines, by infusion or decoction.

*Morbid*, Diseased, sickly.

*Mucilage*, A fluid of a shiny, ropy, and soft consistence.

*Mucus*, A slimy, ropy fluid, secreted by the mucous membrane.

*Narcotic*, A medicine which has the power of procuring sleep by stupefaction.

*Nausea*, An inclination to vomit, without effecting it; also, a disgust of food, approaching to vomiting.

*Nervine*, Any thing that affords relief from disorders of the nerves.

*Nitrogen*, An elementary, gaseous fluid, incapable of supporting animal life; composing about four-fifths of the atmospheric air.

*Oblong*, A figure or solid which is longer than it is broad.

*Obtuse*, When applied to pain, means *dull*; not being sharp or acute.

*Oval*, } Of the shape of an egg; inclined to the shape of an egg.  
*Ovate*, }

*Oxygen*—*Oxygen gas* composes about one-fifth of the atmospheric air.

It was formerly called vital air, because it appeared to be the only part which exercised any stimulant effect upon the living power.

*Pancreas*, A soft supple gland, situated in the lower part of the abdomen, which secretes a kind of saliva, and pours it into the duodenum.

*Panicle*, In botany, a species of inflorescence, in which the flowers or fruits are scattered on peduncles, variously subdivided, as in oats.

*Parotid*, The name of certain glands, below and before the ear.

*Paroxysm*, 1. An obvious increase of the symptoms of a disease which lasts a certain time and then declines. 2. A periodical attack or fit of a disease.

*Pathognomonic*, A term given to those symptoms which are peculiar to a disease, and without which the disease does not exist.

*Pectoral*, Pertaining to the breast.

*Peduncle*, In botany, the stem or stalk that supports the flower of a plant, and of course the fruit.

*Pendulous*, Hanging down; swinging, suspended.

*Perennial*, In botany, a plant or root which lives or continues more than two years.

*Perspiration*, Evacuation of the fluids of the body through the pores of the skin. The matter perspired, or sweat.

*Petioles*, The foot stalks of a leaf.

*Phlegmonous*, Appertaining to inflammatory tumors, such as boils, &c.

*Pinnated*, In botany, a pinnate leaf is a species of compound leaf wherein a simple stem has several small leaves attached to each side of it.

*Plethoric*, In medicine fullness of blood, &c.

*Polypus*, A tumor which is generally narrow where it originates, and then becomes wider, somewhat like a pear.

*Prolapsus*, A falling out, or falling down, of some part of the body.

*Proximate*, Nearest; next. A *proximate cause* is that which immediately precedes and produces any particular effect.

*Pubescent*, In botany, the state of being covered with either hair, down, bristles, beard, &c.

*Pungent*, Sharp; biting; pricking; stimulating.

*Pupil*, The round opening in the middle of the iris of the eye.

*Purges*, } Medicines which increase the intestinal discharges by  
*Purgatives*, } stool.

*Purulent*, Having the appearance or qualities of pus.

*Pus*, Matter; a whitish, cream-like fluid, found in inflamed abscesses, or on the surface of sores.

*Pustules*, Small pimples, or eruptions on the skin, containing pus.

*Putrescent*, Becoming putrid; tending to putrefaction.

*Quartan*, Occurring every fourth day.

*Quotidian*, A fever whose paroxysms return every day.

*Racemes*, Growing in clusters; in botany, a species of inflorescence, consisting of a peduncle with short lateral branches, as garden currants, &c.

*Radiating*, Shooting or spreading out in the form of rays, as light, &c.

*Radical*, Pertaining to the root.

*Rectum*, The last portion of the large intestines terminating in the anus.

*Refrigerating*, Cooling; allaying heat of the body or blood.

*Remittent*, To abate in violence for a time, without intermission.

*Resolution*, The dispersing of a tumor, or inflammation, without suppuration.

*Respiration*, The act of breathing.

*Resin*, An inflammable substance, hard when cool, but soft and fluid when heated; flowing from certain kinds of trees, in a fluid state.

*Rigidity*, Stiffness; want of pliability; the quality of not being easily bent.

*Rigor*, A sense of chilliness, with shivering and contraction of the skin.

*Rubefacient*, A substance which, when applied a certain time to the skin, induces a redness without blistering.

*Sanguine*, Abounding with blood; plethoric.

*Scirrus*, A hard tumor commonly situated in a glandular part, and often terminating in a cancer.

*Scrotum*, The skin which covers the testicles.

*Secretion*, The act of producing or separating from the blood substances different from the blood itself, &c., &c.

*Sedentary*, Accustomed to sit much, or to pass most of the time in a sitting posture.

*Septic*, Relating to putrefaction.

*Serum*, 1st. Whey; 2d. The fluid which separates from the blood when cold and at rest.

*Slough*, } Separating from the living flesh, as the dead part in  
*Sloughing*, } mortification.

*Solvent*, Having the power of dissolving; the fluid in which any thing is dissolved.

*Spasm*, Cramp, convulsion.

*Spasmodic*, Pertaining to cramp or convulsion.

*Sphacelus*, Mortification of the flesh; gangrene.

*Spleen*, The milt; a spongy viscus, placed on the left side, between the eleventh and twelfth false ribs.

*Stimulant*, Medicines which excite the action or energy of the system.

*Stool*, An evacuation from the bowels.

*Strangury*, A difficulty in voiding urine, attended with pain.

*Styptic*, A medicine which has the quality of stopping discharges of blood.

*Sudorific*, A medicine that produces sweat, or sensible perspiration.

*Suppuration*, The process by which pus or matter is deposited or formed in inflammatory tumors.

*Sutures*, The seams or joints which unite the bones of the skull.

*Syncope*, Fainting, or swooning.

*Syphilis*, The venereal disease.

*Tenesmus*, A continual and urgent desire to go to stool, without a discharge.

- Tense*, } Stretched; strained to stiffness; rigid.  
*Tension*, }  
*Tent*, A roll of lint placed in the opening of an ulcer.  
*Terminal*, Growing at the end of a branch or stem; terminating.  
*Tertian*, A disease whose paroxysms return every other day.  
*Thorax*, The chest.  
*Tonic*, A medicine that increases the strength or tone of the animal system.  
*Tonsil*, A glandular body, situated on each side of the fauces, and opening into the cavity of the mouth by several excretory ducts.  
*Triennial*, Continuing three years.  
*Tumor*, A morbid swelling or enlargement of a particular part.  
*Turbid*, Muddy, cloudy, dirty.  
*Typhoid*, Resembling typhus; weak; low.  
*Ulcer*, A morbid sore, which discharges pus, or matter.  
*Umbel*, } Flowers resembling in their form, an umbrella, such  
*Umbelliferous*, } as the parsnip, fennel, &c.  
*Ureter*, A tube conveying the urine from the kidneys to the bladder.  
*Uterus*, The womb.  
*Uvula*, Commonly called the palate.  
*Vaccination*, The act of inoculating persons with the cow pox.  
*Vermifuge*, A substance that destroys or expels worms from animal bodies.  
*Vertigo*, Dizziness; giddiness of the head.  
*Viscera*—Plural of *viscus*.  
*Viscus*, A name applied to the organs contained in the thorax or abdomen, as the lungs, liver, &c.  
*Viscid*, Glutinous; sticky.  
*Volatile*, Capable of wasting away suddenly from exposure to the air.  
*Whorls*, Flowers, or leaves, which surround the stem in a ring.





# ENGLISH INDEX.

THE following Index contains the common or English names of the different articles.  
For the *Systematic, Technical, or Latin* names, reference must be had to the *Latin Index*, which immediately follows the present one.

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Abortion, Unicorn root will prevent . . . . .	309	Anti-bilious pills, . . . . .	430
Abscess, . . . . .	7	powder, . . . . .	431
Abscess-root, . . . . .	373	Anti-dysenteric powders, . . . . .	435
Acetous acid or vinegar, . . . . .	209	Anti-emetics, . . . . .	209, 343
Acidity of the stomach —		Anti-emetic drops, . . . . .	418
articles useful for, . . . . .	216, 417	Antiseptics, 209, 237, 245,	
Addertongue, . . . . .	291	275, 300, 320, 327, 377,	
Adhesive plasters, &c., . . . . .	415	382, 401, 419	
Agrimony, . . . . .	210	—Also, see “Poultices,” . . . . .	449
Ague and fever, . . . . .	10	Anti-morbific powder, . . . . .	422
articles useful for, 261, 293,		Anti-spasmodics, 18, 261,	
338, 402, 405, 275, 292		299, 313, 314, 317, 333,	
bark, . . . . .	382	397, 421	
cake, . . . . .	14	Anti-spasmodic tincture, . . . . .	421
remedy for, . . . . .	397	aromatic drops, . . . . .	419
pills, . . . . .	427	Apoplexy, 14. Two kinds . . . . .	15
Alcohol, . . . . .	210	Ardent spirits, . . . . .	210
Alder, (see “Tag-alder,”) . . . . .	217	what constitutes the	
Alkali, . . . . .	216	different varieties of, . . . . .	210
Alkaline wash, . . . . .	216	Aromatic cordials, rule for	
gargle, . . . . .	216	making, . . . . .	440
poultice, . . . . .	450	Asafœtida, . . . . .	299
Allspice tree, . . . . .	357	Ascarides, (see “Worms,”) . . . . .	198
Aloe-root, . . . . .	215	Ascites, (see “Dropsy,”) . . . . .	55
Amaranth, . . . . .	218	Asiatic cholera, (see “Spas-	
American senna, . . . . .	254	modic cholera,”) . . . . .	178
valerian, . . . . .	281	Asparagus infusion, . . . . .	437
Anasarca, (see “Dropsy,”) . . . . .	55	Aspen, . . . . .	381
Angustura bark, . . . . .	220	Asthma, . . . . .	16
Anodyne drops, . . . . .	416	articles useful for,	
powders, . . . . .	435	210, 270, 303, 314, 317, 333	
Anodynes, . . . . .	220, 276, 319	Asthmatic tincture, . . . . .	438
Anise, . . . . .	366	Astringent tonic compounds, . . . . .	421
essence of, . . . . .	440	tonic, . . . . .	422
Antacids,—also, see Alkali, 416		Astringents, (see “Tonic	
Anthelmintics, (see “Vermi-		Astringent,”)	
fuges,”) . . . . .	417	Backache, remedy for, . . . . .	327
Anthelmintic oil, . . . . .	417	root, . . . . .	327
		Baldness, how to cure, . . . . .	454

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Balmony, . . . . .	265	Black birch, . . . . .	251
Balsam of fir, . . . . .	366	cherry, . . . . .	382
Barberry, . . . . .	248	cohosh, . . . . .	338
Barm, . . . . .	265	elder, . . . . .	390
Bathing drops, and rubefacients, . . . . .	424	pepper, . . . . .	367
Dr. Reed's, . . . . .	424	root, . . . . .	322
Dr. Evcrett's, . . . . .	424	snakeroot, . . . . .	338
Tosier's, . . . . .	424	Blazing star, . . . . .	215, 309
tincture of cayenne, . . . . .	424	Bleeding from the lungs, . .	25
Bath, vapor, . . . . .	461	Bleeding from the lungs, articles useful for, . .	304
sulphur, . . . . .	156	Bleeding from the nose, . .	23
Bayberry, . . . . .	348	Bleeding from the stomach, .	26
Bearsfoot, . . . . .	378	articles useful for, . . . . .	287, 219, 367
Beechdrops, . . . . .	286	Blessed thistle, . . . . .	262
Beloved thistle, . . . . .	262	Bloodroot, . . . . .	391
Bethroot, . . . . .	401	Bloody flux, (see "Dysentery,") . . . . .	64
Bilious colic, (see "Colic,") .	37	urine, . . . . .	27
articles useful for, . . . . .	293, 282, 333	articles useful for, . . . . .	373
Bilious fever, 149—also see		Bluebells, . . . . .	261
Ague and Fever, . . . . .	10	Blue berry, . . . . .	261
Bindweed, . . . . .	270	cohush or cohosh, } . . . . .	337
Birthroot, . . . . .	401	cardinal flower, } . . . . .	
eyewater, . . . . .	443	lobelia, } . . . . .	
Bite of mad-dog, . . . . .	18	Boils, . . . . .	7
case of, how treated, . . . . .	495	articles useful for, . . . . .	217, 266
articles useful for, . . . . .	333, 328, 397, 421	Boneset, . . . . .	293, 294
Bite of snakes, . . . . .	140	Bowel complaint, (see "Diarrhea," "Dysentery," &c.,)	
articles useful for, . . . . .	288, 293, 338, 333, 373, 391	Bowman root, . . . . .	322
Bitter-ash, . . . . .	292	Box tree, } . . . . .	275
Bitter dogsbane, } . . . . .	224	Box wood, } . . . . .	
Bitter-root, } . . . . .		Bran, useful in dyspepsy, &c. .	71
Bitter herb, . . . . .	265	for costiveness, . . . . .	48, 516
Bittersweet, . . . . .	261	Brewer's foam, . . . . .	265
Bitter tonics, (see "Tonics,") . . . . .	425	Brinton root, . . . . .	322
Bitter tonic compounds, . .	425	Broken bones, (see "Dislocations," &c.,) . . . . .	54
laxative, . . . . .	425	Bruises, . . . . .	28
Bitter tonic, . . . . .	425	articles useful for, . . . . .	223, 319, 368, 377, 392
Bitters, spice, . . . . .	426	recipe to cure, . . . . .	458
hot, . . . . .	427	cases of, how treated, . . . . .	478, 506
wine, . . . . .	426	Buboes, (see "Venereal disease,") . . . . .	192
anti-dyspeptic, . . . . .	426	Buckthorn, . . . . .	384
Black alder, . . . . .	217, 381	Bunnell's anti-bilious female pills, . . . . .	430
Blackberry, (see "High blackberry,") . . . . .	389	Burdock, . . . . .	232
Blackberry, syrup of, . . .	423		

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Burns and scalds, . . . . .	28	Chalk, . . . . .	217
articles useful for,		Chamomile, . . . . .	223
217, 389, 405		Chancres, (see "Venereal	
Burning bush, . . . . .	292	disease,") . . . . .	192
Butterfly weed, . . . . .	247	Charcoal, . . . . .	252
Butternut, . . . . .	318	used as a styptic, . . . . .	24, 27
syrup, . . . . .	318	do. as an antiseptic, . . . . .	27
Button snakeroot, . . . . .	268, 327	do. as a cathartic, . . . . .	48
wood, (see "Syca-		do. for scaled head, . . . . .	163
more buds,") . . . . .	457	do. for worms, . . . . .	200
Camphire tree, . . . . .	319	Checkerberry, . . . . .	347
Camphor, . . . . .	319	Cherry cordial, . . . . .	423
Canada balsam, . . . . .	366	Chicken pox, . . . . .	35
root, . . . . .	247	Children's cordial, . . . . .	459
Cancer, . . . . .	29	Chilblains, (see "Cold,") . . . . .	186
case of, how treated, . . . . .	499	Chill and fever, (see "Ague	
articles useful for,		and fever,") . . . . .	10
262, 266, 286		China-root, . . . . .	282
recipe for curing, . . . . .	455	Chocolateroot, . . . . .	303
Cancer balsam, . . . . .	428	Choked, (see "substances	
plasters, . . . . .	428	stopped in the throat," &c.) . . . . .	183
root, . . . . .	286	Cholera, (see "Spasmodic	
Candleberry, . . . . .	348	cholera,") . . . . .	178
Canine madness, (see "Bite		Cholera Morbus, . . . . .	36
of mad dog,") . . . . .	18	articles useful for,	
Canker, goldthread useful for, . . . . .	275	216, 282, 416, 417	
(Also, astringent articles		cases of, how treated,	
throughout the work, use-		482, 485	
ful for the same purpose,)		Cholera mixtures, . . . . .	431
Capsicum annuum, . . . . .	251	syrup, . . . . .	432
Carbuncles, . . . . .	34	infantum; neutral-	
bethroot useful for, . . . . .	401	izing mixture useful for, . . . . .	417
Cardinal flower, . . . . .	328	Chronic eye drops, . . . . .	443
plant, . . . . .	328	Cinnamon tree, . . . . .	320
Carolina pink, . . . . .	398	Cinquefoil, . . . . .	381
Carrot, . . . . .	282	Clap, (see "Venereal dis-	
Carpenter's square, . . . . .	392	ease,") . . . . .	192
Catarrh, (see "Influenza,") . . . . .	110	Clavish hysterical, (see "Head-	
Cathartics, . . . . .	429	ache,") . . . . .	89
administering, . . . . .	468	Cleansing beer, . . . . .	458
articles useful as,		Cleavers, { . . . . .	300
254, 266, 270, 293, 294,		Clivers, { . . . . .	
300, 318, 337, 368, 384,	402	Clothbur, . . . . .	232
Also, (see "Purgatives.")		Clove tree, . . . . .	291
Catmint, } . . . . .	357	Clysters, . . . . .	443
Catnip, { . . . . .		Cobweb, . . . . .	398
Caustics, . . . . .	32, 439	Cocash, . . . . .	287
Cayenne pepper, . . . . .	251	Cocklebur, . . . . .	210
Cedar oil, useful for ring-		Cockspur pepper, . . . . .	251
worm and tetter, . . . . .	156	Cold, suspended animation	
Celandine, . . . . .	314	from, . . . . .	186

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Colds, articles useful for, 220,		Cough, recipe to cure, . . .	456
237, 366, 377, 405		Cough drops, . . . . .	440
Cold hands and feet, articles		Course of medicine, . . . .	461
useful for . . . . . 231, 287		repetition of, . . . . .	466
Cold water, (see "Water,")	227	Cowhage, { . . . . .	285
Colic, . . . . . 37		Cowitch, { . . . . .	
different kinds of, . . .	38	Cramp, (see "Convulsions,")	43
articles useful for, 215,		articles useful for,	
219, 220, 231, 238, 269,		269, 294, 458	
299, 319, 327		recipe to cure, . . . .	458
Colic, cramp, case of, how		Cramp in the hand, case of,	
treated, . . . . . 484		how treated, . . . . .	480
drops, . . . . . 432		Cramp in the breast, do. . .	503
root, . . . . . 327		colic, case of, how	
Columbo root, . . . . . 299		treated, . . . . . 484	
Coltsfoot, . . . . . 238		Craziness, (see "Insanity,")	111
snakeroot, . . . . . 238		Crosswort, . . . . . 293	
Compounds, . . . . . 413		Croup, . . . . . 49	
Compound tincture of val-		articles useful for,	
erian or lady's slipper, . .	446	377, 390, 391, 441	
Compound tincture of myrrh,	420	Culver's physic, . . . . .	322
Composition powder, . . .	434	Cure, indications of, . . . .	3
Concluding remarks, . . .	204	Cures performed by Botanic	
Constipation, (see "Costive-		medicines, . . . . . 469	
ness,") . . . . . 47		Cureall, . . . . . 303	
Consumption, . . . . . 39		Curled dock, . . . . . 390	
articles useful for,		Cutaneous diseases, articles	
270, 303, 309, 314, 317,		useful for, 210, 228, 261,	
328, 373, 381, 398, 405		265, 276, 287, 293, 300, 381, 391	
Consumption, cases of, how		Cuts, remedy for, . . . . .	458
treated, . . . . . 469, 482, 487		Cutting almond, . . . . .	361
Contracted joints, how treat-		Dandelion, . . . . . 321	
ed, . . . . . 456		Deafness, . . . . . 51	
Convulsions or fits, . . . .	43	Deafness, articles useful for,	
articles useful for,		228, 373	
261, 276, 314, 361, 397, 405, 421		Delirium, (see "Insanity,")	111
cases of, how treat-		Derangement, mental, . . .	111
ed, . . . . . 471, 508		Devilsbit, . . . . . 327	
Cordials, aromatic, . . . .	440	Dewberry, . . . . . 389	
cherry, . . . . . 423		Diabetes, . . . . . 52	
diuretic, . . . . . 437		water agrimony use-	
tonic, . . . . . 427		ful for, . . . . . 210	
Corns, . . . . . 46		Diaphoretics and Sudorifics, 433	
article useful for, . . .	223	articles used as, 219,	
Corn snakeroot, . . . . . 288		319, 327, 367, 373, 294, 397	
Costiveness, . . . . . 456		Diaphoretic powders, . . .	434
articles useful for,		Well's formula of, . . .	434
252, 289, 320, 474		Everett's do. . . . .	434
Cough, articles useful for,		Smith's do. . . . .	435
231, 237, 270, 287, 294,		Well's Anti-dysen-	
303, 309, 314, 317, 333,		teric powders	435
338, 366, 377			

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Well's anodyne do. ....	435	case of, how treated, ...	474
Diaphoretic do. ....	326, 436	See also, "Digestion" and "Bit-	
Diarrhea or looseness,.....	53	ter Tonics."	
articles useful for, 210,			
216, 219, 287, 303, 348, 357,			
389, 416, 417, 423			
Diarrhea, cases of, how treated, 505		Ear, insects in, how to destroy, 62	
Digestion, articles useful to pro-		Earache,.....	62
mote, (see under head of "Bit-		articles useful,.....	231
ter Tonics,") .....	425	Egg eye water, .....	442
Dilly, }		Elder, .....	390
Dillweed, }	220	Elecampane, .....	917
Directions for the gathering,		Emetic compound,.....	448
selections, &c., of vegetable		Emetics, .....	437
medicines, .....	409	articles which are, 220,	
Discutients,.....	262, 300	223, 333, 244, 248, 291	
Discutient ointment, .....	448	Emetics, method of administer-	
Diseases, symptoms of, &c.,....	3	ing,.....	454
Disease is a unit,.....	3	Emetic herb, }	
how caused, .....	3	weed, }	333
produced by one general		Emmenagogues, articles useful	
cause, and removed by		as, .....	338, 848, 367, 368, 357
general remedy,.....	4	Epilepsy, (see "Falling sick-	
Dislocations and broken bones, 54		ness, .....	74
Dislocation of the jaw, case of,		Epilepsy, articles useful for, 223,	
how treated,.....	493	361, 333, 347	
Dislocation of the finger, .....	513	Eruptive diseases, (see "Cutane-	
Dittany, .....	276	ous diseases.") .....	
Diuretics, .....	436	Erysipelas, (see "St. Anthony's	
articles useful as, 223,		fire,") .....	158
242, 238, 381, 287, 288, 294,		Escharotics or Caustics,.....	439
323, 327, 360		Essences and aromatic cordials,—	
Diuretic beer, .....	436	how to prepare, .....	440
Diuretic cordial, .....	437	Essences of Anise,.....	440
decoction, .....	437	Evan root, .....	303
Dock, .....	390, 232	Everett's bathing drops,.....	424
Dogwood, .....	275	hot bitters, .....	427
Dogfennel, .....	220	diaphoretic powders,....	434
Dogtooth violet, .....	291	asthinatic tincture,....	438
Doses of medicines, .....	414	emetic compound,....	438
Drafts, dregs of Tincture of		Expectorant syrup,....	441
Myrrh useful as,.....	14	Expectorants, .....	440
other articles, ....	14, 22, 96	articles useful as, 231,	
Dragon turnip, }		247, 309, 314, 327, 433, 377, 391	
root, }	227	Expectorant powder, .....	440
Dropsy,.....	457	syrup,.....	441
diuretics, useful for, ....		Eyebright, .....	333
Dropsy, recipe to cure, .....	457	Eye waters,.....	442
Drowning, .....	61	(also see "Inflammation of the	
Drunkeness, (see "Intoxica-		Eyes,") .....	96
tion,") .....	114	Fainting or Syncope,.....	73
Dry bellyache, (see "Colic,") ..	37	camphor useful for, ....	258
Dysentery or Bloody Flux, ....	65	Falling of Fundament,.....	47
articles useful for, 216,		Falling sickness or Epilepsy, ...	74
252, 303, 348, 357, 361, 382		False gromwell,.....	358
Dyspepsy or Indigestion, .....	68	False sarsaparilla, .....	228
articles used for, 216,		Felons, .....	76
269, 299, 313, 329, 333, 381		salve,.....	452
		Female obstructions, articles use-	



	PAGE.		PAGE.
ful for, (see Emmenagogues.)		Gout, articles useful for,.....	338
case of, how treated,....	488	Gravel and Stone,.....	457
Female strengthening syrup, ....	459	articles useful for, 210,	
Fennel,.....	220	219, 287, 293, 294, 300, 321,	
Fernbush, }		344, 358, 457	
Ferngale, }	269	Gravel root,.....	294
Fever and ague,.....	10	Gravel-weed,.....	358
Fever, articles useful for, 220,		Great plantain,.....	367
272, 275, 309, 333, 368, 391		Greek valerian,.....	373
Fever, cases of, how treated, 470,		Green ointment,.....	448
508, 402		salve,.....	451
Feverbush,.....	319	Ground raspberry,.....	313
Fevertwig,.....	261	Gum myrrh,.....	348
Feverwort,.....	402, 293		
Fieldweed,.....	287, 220	Hanging,.....	185
Figwort,.....	392	Hartshorn, useful in fainting,...	73
useful for obstructed lochia.		Headache,.....	89
Fistula, (see "Ulcers,").....	190	articles useful for, 216,	
Fitroot,.....	347	269, 276, 320, 357	
Fits, see (see "Convulsions,")	43	Heal-all,.....	392, 382, 269
Fivefinger,.....	381	Healing salves,.....	450
Flax,.....	327	Heartburn,.....	90
Fleabane,.....	287	Heart snakeroot,.....	238
Floodings, astringent tonics use-		Hemiplegia, (see "Apoplexy,")	14
ful for,.....	421	Hemlock fir,.....	366
Fluxroot,.....	247	Hemlock tree,.....	367
Flytrap,.....	224	Hemorrhage, articles useful for,	
Fomentations, articles useful for, 223		287, 304, 401, 405	
228, 270, 367, 405, 419		Hemorrhoids, (see "Piles,")....	138
Freckles, articles to remove, 322, 358		Hernia, (see "Rupture,").....	156
Fresh wounds,.....	80	Hickup,.....	91
cold water useful for,....	228	blue cohush useful for,....	261
Frost bitten parts, (see "Cold,")	186	Highbelia,.....	337
Frostweed,.....	287	High-blackberry,.....	389
Fruits, ripe, sometimes cure dys-		Hives, Indian sanicle useful for, 391	
entery,.....	68	Hixson's cholera mixture,.....	432
Fungous flesh,—see "Proud flesh."		Holy-thistle,.....	262
		Honey syrup,.....	441
Gamboge,.....	300	bloom,.....	224
Gangrene, (see "Mortification,")	131	Hoodwort,.....	397
Garden carrot,.....	282	Hops, Hopvine,.....	310
Garget root,.....	365	Horehound,.....	343
Gayfeather,.....	327	Horsefly weed,.....	247
Gentian,.....	402	Hull's bilious physic,.....	431
Giddiness or Vertigo,.....	79	Hydrocele,.....	92
Ginger,.....	218	Hydrophobia, (see "Bite of mad	
Ginsang, Ginslang, Ginseng,....	361	dog,").....	18
Ginson,.....	402	Hydrothorax, (see "Dropsy,")	55
Gleet, (see "Venereal Disease,")	192	Hydragogue tincture,.....	437
Glossary,.....	519	Hysteria, (see "Colic,")	37
Glyster,.....	443	Hysterics, articles useful for, 223,	
Golden seal,.....	313	261, 276, 281, 299, 314, 327,	
Gold-thread,.....	275	343, 357	
Gonorrhea, (see "Venereal Dis-		Hysterics, cases of, how treated,	
ease,").....	192	508, 509	
Goose-grass,.....	300	Iceplant,.....	347
Gout,.....	80	Immoderate sweating,.....	92
different kinds of,.....	80	fivefinger useful for,	

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Incubus, (see "Nightmare,")	135	Jaundice, . . . . .	116
Indian arrow, . . . . .	292	articles useful for, 210,	
balm, . . . . .	401	261, 265, 276, 309, 381	
cup-plant, . . . . .	397	Jerusalem oak, . . . . .	266
fever-root, . . . . .	304	Jewsharp, . . . . .	401
hemp, . . . . .	227	Joepye, . . . . .	293
lettuce, . . . . .	299	Joint-water, to prevent discharge	
paint, . . . . .	313	of, . . . . .	458
pink, . . . . .	398	Juniper shrub or bush, . . . . .	318
sage, . . . . .	293		
sanicle, . . . . .	391	King's Evil or Scrofula, . . . . .	118
tobacco, . . . . .	333	articles useful for, 210,	
turnip, . . . . .	237	261, 266, 291, 373	
cholera, (see "Spasmodic		Knot-root, . . . . .	269
cholera,")	178	Kussander, . . . . .	270
Indigestion, (see "Dyspepsy,")	68		
(See also "Bitter tonics.")		Lady's slipper, . . . . .	276
Indigo broom, }		tincture of, . . . . .	446
Indigofera, }	247	Lake fever, (see "Ague and fe-	
Indigo weed, }		ver,") . . . . .	10
Inflammation, articles useful for,		Larkspur, . . . . .	282
209, 217, 270, 304, 313, 320,		Laxatives, 247, 261, 292, 291,	
368, 377, 418		304, 317, 331, 343, 344, 366	
Inflammation of the bladder, . . .	223	Laxative bitters, . . . . .	425
articles useful for, . . . . .	223	clyster, . . . . .	445
of the brain or Phrensy, . .	94	Lemon juice, useful for Scurvy, 168	
of the diaphragm, a case		Lightning, suspended animation	
of, how treated, . . . . .	477	by, . . . . .	188
of the eyes, . . . . .	96	Lime, . . . . .	217
articles useful for, 304, 384		Lime-water, how to prepare, . .	217
of the intestines, . . . . .	98	Liniments, . . . . .	447
of the kidneys, . . . . .	100	Liniment, for burns, . . . . .	449
articles useful for, 232,		volatile, . . . . .	449
287, 310, 405		Liquorice, . . . . .	303
of the liver, . . . . .	101	Liver complaint, (see "Inflam-	
Also (see article "Liver		mation of the liver,") . . . . .	101
complaints.")		articles useful for, . .	262, 373
of the lungs, . . . . .	203	case of, how treated, . .	494
bloodroot, useful for, .	391	Lobelia inflata, . . . . .	333
cases of, how treated, see App		blue, . . . . .	337
Inflammatory fever, . . . . .	106	Lockjaw, . . . . .	121
sore throat, . . . . .	107	articles useful for, . .	397, 422
Influenza or Catarrh, . . . . .	456	(Also see "Convulsions,") . .	43
articles useful for, 321,		Locust plant, . . . . .	254
Injections or Clysters, . . . . .	443	Looseness, (see "Diarrhea,") . .	53
Inoculation, &c. . . . .	175	Lovely bleeding, . . . . .	218
Insanity or Madness, . . . . .	111	Lues Venerea, (sec "Venereal	
article useful for, . . . . .	282	disease,") . . . . .	192
Insects in the car, how to destroy, 72		Lumbago, (see "Rheumatism,")	151
Intermittent fever, . . . . .	10	Lupuline, . . . . .	310
articles useful for, 252, 275,			
319, 343, 383, 398, 402, 406		Madness, (see "Insanity,") . .	111
401, 456		Madweed, . . . . .	397
Intoxication, . . . . .	114	Malignant or Putrid sore Throat, 122	
Itch, . . . . .	115	articles useful for, . .	265, 228
articles useful for, . .	319, 390	Mandrake, . . . . .	368
Jackson's purgative, . . . . .	431	Man-in-the-ground, }	
		Man root, }	270

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Mania, (see "Insanity,")	111	Nettlerash,	134
Mare's tail,	287	Neuralgia,	134
Materia Medica,	207	Neutralizing mixture,	417
Masterwort,	220	Nightmare or Incubus,	135
Mayapple,	368	Night sweats, cinquefoil useful	
Mayweed,	220	for,	381
Meadow pride,	299	Nutmeg tree,	348
Mealy starwort,	215		
Measles,	125	Oak-bark, extract of, useful for	
Medicine, when to be gathered		ruptures,	158
and how preserved, &c.	409	Ointments and Liniments,	447
Medicine, doses of,	414	Ointment, bittersweet,	261
Menstruation, profuse, articles		for tetter,	156
useful for,	218, 270, 401	for ulcers,	192
(Also see "Astringent Tonics.")		for white swellings,	196
Menstruation, suppressed, articles		for burns and scalds,	448
useful for,	261, 392	hop,	310
Mercurial disease,	127	stramonium,	448
yellow pillula, useful for,	344	useful for piles,	139
Method of steaming,	461	pepper,	155
Milk sickness,	129	elder bark,	390
cases of, how treated,	482, 510	sweet gum,	116
Milkweed,	238	scrofulous,	447
Mint fomentation,	419	nerve,	447
Miscellaneous medical recipes,	453	Thompson's nerve,	447
Moccason flower,	281	discutient,	448
Mooneed,	344	green,	448
Mortification,	131	relaxing,	448
articles useful for,	247,	Oneberry,	347
252, 265, 299, 320, 368, 373,		Onion syrup, useful for croup,	441
382, 401, 420		Oxbalm,	269
case of, how treated,	476		
Mountain Dittany,	276	Painful affection of the face,	134
Mountain Mint,	276	Pain in the breast, pleurisy root	
Mouth root,	275	useful for,	247
Mullein,	405	Palpitation of the heart,	136
Mumps,	133	Palsy,	137
Muscles, how to relax,	55	articles useful for,	362, 365
Myrrh,	348	case of, how treated	486
compound tincture of,	420	Pappoose root,	261
simple, do,	420	Paralysis, (see "Palsy,")	137
dregs, of, useful for drafts,	14	Paralytic affection, (see "Palsy,")	137
		Parsley,	223
Narrow dock,	390	Parsley-leaved yellowroot,	406
Nausea, articles useful for,	209,	Patridge-berry,	347
297, 343		Patridge-pea,	254
Nephritic plant or Cutting Al-		Peach-tree,	219
mond,	362	kernels,	219
Nerve ointments,	447	Pearlash,	216
Nervine compounds,	446	Pectoral, (see "Expectorants,")	
Nervines, articles useful as,	266,	Pennyroyal,	304
276, 328, 333, 347, 361, 366,		Pepper (see "Cayenne,")	251
381, 397, 398		Peppermint,	343
Nervine powder,	446	Pepper turnip,	237
tincture,	446	Pickaway anise,	382
Nervous fever, (see "Putrid or		Phrenzy	94
Typhus fever,")	146	Pigeonberry,	365
Nettle,	405	Piles,	459

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Piles, articles useful for, 220,		Prickly ash, .....	406
270, 334, 347, 377, 405		Prickly yellow-wood, .....	231
Pills, Bunnell's antibilious female		Prince's feather, .....	218
pills, .....	430	pine, .....	266
Reed's antibilious pills, ..	430	Proud flesh, .....	10
vegetable cathartic do. ....	429	articles useful for, ...	368, 391
Wells' vegetable do. ....	430	(See also "Escharotics,")....	439
tonic or ague do. ....	427	Puke, (see "Emetic,").....	437
Pimento tree, .....	357	Puke weed, .....	333
Pipe plant, .....	347	Puking complaint, (see "Milk	
Pipsisewa, .....	266	sickness,") .....	129
Pissabed, .....	321	Pulmonary consumption, (see	
Plantain, .....	367	"Consumption,").....	39
Plasters, adhesive, .....	415, 416	Pulmonary balsam, .....	442
cancer, .....	428, 429	Pumpkin, .....	281
sorrel, .....	428	Purgatives, on what principle	
strengthening, .....	415, 416	they act, .....	48
Pleurisy, .....	139	articles useful as, 219, 247,	
articles useful for, 232,		262, 318, 327, 368, 384, 390	
247, 322, 373, 405		Also, (see "Cathartics.")	
root, .....	247	Purging buckthorn, .....	384
Poisons, .....	140	Purvain, .....	405
animal, .....	140	Putrid sore throat, (see "Malig-	
mineral, .....	142	nant or Putrid sore throat,")	122
vegetable, .....	143	Putrid or Typhus fever, .....	146
by acids, .....	143	articles useful for, 226,	
by alkalies, .....	144	248, 265	
from poisonous vegeta-		Pyramid, .....	299
bles, .....	145	Quaking asp, .....	381
narcotic and acri-narcotic, 145		Queen of the meadow, .....	294
articles useful for, 209,		Quincy or Quinzy, (see "Inflam-	
269, 333		matory sore throat,").....	106
Poke, .....	365	Quiver leaf, .....	381
Polypus of the nose, article use-		Race ginger, .....	218
ful for, .....	458	Ragged cup, .....	397
Poolroot, .....	292	Raspberry, (see "Red raspberry,")	389
Poplar, .....	381	Rattle weed, .....	338
Poultices, .....	449	Rattlesnake's master, .....	288
bitter sweet, .....	261	Rattlesnake violet, .....	391
charcoal and yeast, 33, 35, 450		Recipes, medical, .....	453
carrot, .....	33, 282, 450	Red elm, .....	402
hop, .....	310	Red lobelia, .....	328
sassafras, .....	35, 450	Red pepper, .....	251
smartweed, .....	35	Red puccoon, }	
indigofera, .....	247	Red root, }	391
mullein, .....	305	Red raspberry, .....	389
sumach, .....	450	Reed's compound bathing drops, 424	
alkaline, .....	450	antibilious pills, .....	430
discutient, .....	450	Relaxing ointment, .....	448
common elm poultice, ...	449	Remittent or Bilious fevers, ...	149
common poultice, .....	449	Rheumatism, .....	151
for sore throat, .....	454	articles useful for, 215,	
for white swellings and to		220, 228, 232, 261, 266, 269,	
promote suppuration, ..	196	294, 309, 317, 319, 338, 365,	
white bean poultice use-		384, 406	
ful for mumps, .....	134	Rheumatic decoction, .....	454
Prairie senna, .....	254		
Prepared chalk, .....	217		

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Rheumatic drops, . . . . .	454	ness,"") . . . . .	129
liquid, . . . . .	453	Sickness at the Stomach, (see	
weed, . . . . .	266	"Nausea.") . . . . .	238
Rhubarb, . . . . .	384	Silkweed, . . . . .	420
Rich leaf, . . . . .	269	Simple tincture of myrrh, . . . .	420
Rich weed, . . . . .	338, 269	of Lady's slipper, or vale-	
Ringworm and Tetter, . . . . .	155	rian, . . . . .	446
articles useful for, 231,		Sinuous ulcers, . . . . .	190
314, 392		Skabish, { . . . . .	287
Rupture, . . . . .	156	Skevisch, { . . . . .	314
Saint Anthony's fire or Erysip-		Skunk cabbage, { . . . . .	402
elas, . . . . .	158	Skunk weed, { . . . . .	169
article useful for, . . . . .	333	Slippery elm, . . . . .	238
Saint Vitus' dance, . . . . .	160	rattle weed, useful for, . . . .	499
article useful for, . . . . .	270, 397	case of, how treated, . . . . .	228
Saffron, . . . . .	275	Small spikenard, . . . . .	377
Saleratus, . . . . .	216	Smartweed, { . . . . .	435
Salt rheum, treatment of, same as		Smartgrass, { . . . . .	232
ringworm and tetter, . . . . .	155	Smith's diaphoretic powders, . .	265
celadine useful for, . . . . .	314	Snagrel, . . . . .	291
Salves, . . . . .	450	Snake-bites,—see 'Bite of snakes.'	232
Salve for cancer, . . . . .	32, 34	Snakehead, . . . . .	232
sorrel, . . . . .	428	Snakeleaf, . . . . .	304
Wells' healing, . . . . .	451	Snapping hazle-nut, . . . . .	348
Thomson's, . . . . .	451	Snuff, . . . . .	216
sumach, . . . . .	451	Soda, . . . . .	270
green, . . . . .	451	Solomon's seal, . . . . .	439
yellow, . . . . .	452	Soot, . . . . .	190
Butler's, . . . . .	452	Sores, (see "Ulcers,") . . . . .	455
felon, . . . . .	452	Sore breasts, . . . . .	107, 122
Sanicle, . . . . .	391	articles useful for, . . . . .	361
Sarsaparilla, substitute for, . . .	231	Sore mouth, articles useful for, .	428
Sassafras, { . . . . .	320	Sore throat, . . . . .	320
Saxafrax, { . . . . .	287	articles useful for, . . . . .	178
Scabious, . . . . .	287	Sorel, (see "Sheep sorrel,") . . .	428
Scalding of the urine, articles		plaster or salve, . . . . .	320
useful for, . . . . .	231, 366	Sour dock, . . . . .	344
Scald head, . . . . .	162, 458	Spasmodic cholera, . . . . .	418
recipe to cure, . . . . .	458	diseases, articles useful for,	
Scalds, (see "Burns," &c.) . . . .	28	223, 276, 299, 357, 421,	
Scarlet fever, . . . . .	163	(Also see "Antispasmodics.")	
Sciatica, . . . . .	152	Spearmint, . . . . .	419
Scoke, . . . . .	365	tea of, . . . . .	251
Scrofula, (see "King's Evil,") . .	118	sling of, . . . . .	426
articles useful for, . . . . .	368	Spice bush, { . . . . .	319
Scrofulous ointment, . . . . .	467	Spice wood, { . . . . .	398
Scullcap, . . . . .	397	Spider's-web, . . . . .	231
Scurvy, . . . . .	166	Spignet, { . . . . .	292
articles useful for, . . . . .	210, 390	Spikenard, { . . . . .	210
Sea ash, . . . . .	231	Spindle tree, . . . . .	231
Seneca Snakeroot, . . . . .	377	Spirit of wine, . . . . .	25
Senna, (see "American Senna,") .	254	Spitting of blood, (see "Bleeding	
Sheep sorrel, . . . . .	361	of the lungs,") . . . . .	
Shell-flower, . . . . .	265		
Shingles, . . . . .	168		
Shotbush, . . . . .	231		
Sick stomach, (see "Milk sick-			



PAGE.	PAGE.
nettle juice useful for, . . . 405	Sweet basil, . . . . . 276
Spleenwort bush, . . . . . 269	birch, . . . . . 251
Spotted alder, . . . . . 304	bush, or Fern, or Ferry, 269
Sprains, . . . . . 183	gale, . . . . . 348
articles useful for, . . . 220, 320	elder, . . . . . 390
Square stalk, . . . . . 392	liquorice, . . . . . 303
Squaw mint, . . . . . 204	fennel, . . . . . 220
root, . . . . . 338, 261	gum ointment, . . . . . 116
vine, . . . . . 347	Swelled or sore breasts, how to
weed, . . . . . 287	treat, . . . . . 455
Staffvine, . . . . . 261	Swelled testicles, articles useful
Stargrass, . . . . . 215	for, . . . . . 265, 367
Star root, . . . . . 309	case of, how treated, . . . 488
Steaming, method of, . . . . 461	Swellings, articles useful for, 209,
Stickwort, . . . . . 210	217, 223, 261, 269, 304, 357,
Stimulants, 218, 228, 237, 248,	358, 377, 390, 402, 405
269, 275, 276, 288, 291, 292,	Swine pox, (see "Chicken pox,") 35
294, 299, 304, 317, 319, 320,	Sycamore buds, . . . . . 457
322, 333, 357, 367, 377	useful for cramps, bowel
Stimulating tonic eyewater, . . 443	complaints, &c. . . . . 457
washes, . . . . . 424	Syncope, (see "Fainting,") . . . 73
Stings of insects, treatment of, . 141	Synovia, discharge of, how to be
articles useful for, . . . 288, 333	treated, . . . . . 458
Stinking chamomile, . . . . . 220	case of, how treated, . . . 485
Stink-weed, . . . . . 266	Syphilis, (see "Venereal Disease,") 192
Stone, (see "Gravel,") . . . . . 85	Syrup, butternut, . . . . . 318
Stone mint, . . . . . 276	blackberry, . . . . . 423
Stone root, . . . . . 269	Everett's expectorant, . . . 441
Stramonium ointment, . . . . . 448	female strengthening, . . . 459
Stranguary, articles useful for,	Honey, . . . . . 441
217, 220, 300, 309, 378, 384	tonic expectorant, . . . . 427
Strengthening plasters, . . . . 415	for the dysentery, . . . . 423
Strengthening syrup, . . . . . 459	Wells' vegetable expecto-
Styptics, 27, 287, 304, 398, 405, 453	rant, . . . . . 431
Substances stopped in the throat,	onion, . . . . . 431
&c. . . . . 183	Tænia, (see "Worms,") . . . . 198
Sudorifics, 223, 231, 237, 276,	Tag alder, . . . . . 217
287, 291, 293, 322, 333, 338,	Tansy, . . . . . 398
377, 405, 443	Tapping, how performed, . . . . 60
Suffocation, . . . . . 185	Tenismus, alkaline injections
Sumach, . . . . . 384	useful for, . . . . . 66, 216
salve, . . . . . 451	Teres, (see "Worms,") . . . . . 198
Suppression of urine, (see "Stran-	Tetanus, (see "Convulsions,") 43
guary,")	Tetter, (see "Ringworm,") &c.) 155
(See also "Diuretics.")	Thomson's cancer plaster, . . . 429
Suspended animation, . . . . . 185	eye water, . . . . . 97
by drowning, . . . . . 185	nerve ointment, . . . . . 447
by hanging, . . . . . 185	salve, . . . . . 451
by suffocation, by inhaling	Thoroughstem, } . . . . . 293
noxious gases, &c. . . . 185	Thoroughwort, } . . . . . 303
by cold, . . . . . 186	Throatroot, . . . . . 303
by lightning, . . . . . 188	Tic Douloureux, (see "Neural-
Swallow root, . . . . . 247	gia,") . . . . . 134
Sweating, (see "Immoderate	Tickweed, . . . . . 304
sweating,") . . . . . 92	Tincture, antispasmodic, . . . . 421
Sweat root, . . . . . 373	asthmatic, . . . . . 438
Sweating plant, . . . . . 293	cayenne, . . . . . 424
powder, . . . . . 434	

	PAGE.		PAGE.
Tincture hydragogue, . . . . .	437	Tonics, <i>Bitter</i> , Wild horehound, . . . . .	294
lady's slipper, . . . . .	446	Winter-berry, . . . . .	381
lobelia seeds, . . . . .	438	Yellow parilla, . . . . .	344
herb, . . . . .	438	Yellow wort, . . . . .	406
myrrh, . . . . .	420	Tonic cordial, . . . . .	427
nervine, . . . . .	446	expectorant syrup, . . . . .	427
pokeberry, . . . . .	154	or Ague pills, . . . . .	427
rattleroot, . . . . .	154	Toothache, . . . . .	228, 320, 391
sycamore buds, . . . . .	457	articles useful for, . . . . .	291, 276
Toadlily, . . . . .	357	Toothache tree, . . . . .	231
Tonics, — <i>Astringent</i> , . . . . .	421	Tooth-powder, . . . . .	282
Agrimony, . . . . .	210	Tosier's bathing drops, . . . . .	424
Amaranth, . . . . .	218	Touch-me-not, . . . . .	314
Bayberry, . . . . .	348	Trembles, (see "Milk sickness,") . . . . .	129
Birthroot, . . . . .	401	Trismus, (see "Locked jaw,") . . . . .	121
Black birch, . . . . .	251	Truss, . . . . .	158
Cinnamon, . . . . .	320	Tubercles, (see "Consumption,") . . . . .	39
Cocash, . . . . .	287	Tulip tree, . . . . .	328
Dewberry, . . . . .	389	Tumors, (see "Swellings.") . . . . .	
Dogwood, . . . . .	275	Turtle bloom, } . . . . .	
Even root, . . . . .	303	Turtle head, } . . . . .	265
Hemlock, . . . . .	367	Twin leaf, . . . . .	317
High blackberry, . . . . .	389	Typhus fever, (see "Putrid fever,") . . . . .	146
Red raspberry, . . . . .	389	Ulcers, . . . . .	190
Sumach, . . . . .	384	different kinds of, . . . . .	190
Sweet fern, . . . . .	269	articles useful for, . . . . .	228, 261, 265, 266, 269, 282, 286, 313, 314, 320, 357, 358, 366, 367, 368, 373, 382, 390, 392, 397, 402, 406, 415, 420
Tag alder, . . . . .	382	Umbil, . . . . .	281
White pond lily, . . . . .	357	Unicorn, . . . . .	309
Wild cherry, . . . . .	382	Urinary organs, articles useful to strengthen, . . . . .	269, 294, 365, 366, 373, 389
Witch hazel, . . . . .	304	Vaccination, . . . . .	176
Tonics, — <i>Bitter</i> , . . . . .	425	Valerian, . . . . .	276
Angustura, . . . . .	220	Vapor bath, (see "Method of steaming,") . . . . .	461
Balmony, . . . . .	265	Vapor bath, Dr. Gunn's do, . . . . .	154
Barberry, . . . . .	248	Vegetable cathartic pills, . . . . .	429
Bitter-ash, . . . . .	292	caustic, . . . . .	438
Bitterroot, . . . . .	224	expectorant syrup, . . . . .	431
Bitter sweet, . . . . .	261	Venereal disease, . . . . .	192
Black root, . . . . .	322	articles useful for, . . . . .	228, 232, 338
Blessed thistle, . . . . .	262	Vermifuges, . . . . .	266, 286, 299, 317, 319, 333, 344, 348, 366, 382, 398
Boneset, . . . . .	293	Vertigo, . . . . .	79
Colombo root, . . . . .	299	Vervain or Vervine, . . . . .	405
Dandelion, . . . . .	321	Vinegar, . . . . .	209
Dittany, . . . . .	276	is a strong antiseptic, . . . . .	209
Gentian, . . . . .	402	useful in dysentery, fevers, scurvy, sickness at the stomach, poisons, costiveness, dis-	
Ginsang, . . . . .	361		
Golden seal, . . . . .	313		
Gold thread, . . . . .	275		
Gum myrrh, . . . . .	348		
Hercules all-heal, . . . . .	292		
Hops, . . . . .	310		
Mayweed, . . . . .	220		
Peach tree, . . . . .	219		
Poplar bark, . . . . .	381		
Stargrass, . . . . .	215		
Twinleaf, . . . . .	317		
Unicorn, . . . . .	309		
Virginia snakeroot, . . . . .	232		
Whitewood, . . . . .	328		

	PAGE.		PAGE.
eases of the lungs, sore, throat,		White walnut, .....	318
&c., .....	209	wood, .....	328
Vinegar clyster, .....	445	Whooping cough, .....	456
Vine maple, .....	344	articles useful for, .....	237, 304
Virginia snakeroot, .....	232	Wild angelica, .....	220
Volatile salts, .....	453	chamomile, .....	220
Volatile liniment, .....	449	cherry, .....	382
Vomiting, to check, .....	216	ginger, .....	238
of blood, (see "Bleeding		horehound, .....	294
from the stomach,")...	26	indigo, .....	247
and purging (see "Cholera		Job's-tears, .....	348
Morbus,") .....	36	lettuce, .....	383
Wake robin, .....	237	liquorice, .....	231
Wandering milkweed, .....	224	potato, .....	270
Warts, celandine useful to re-		senna, .....	254
move, .....	314	turnip, .....	237
Water, .....	227	Wind colic (see "Colic"), .....	38
Water agrimony useful for dia-		root, .....	247
betes, .....	53	Wine bitters, .....	426
Water-pepper, .....	377	Wingseed, .....	382
Water plantain, .....	368	Winter berry, .....	381
Waxberry or Wax myrtle, .....	348	bloom, .....	304
Weights and measures, .....	459	clover, .....	347
Wens, to cure, .....	456	Wintergreen, .....	266, 385
Wells' antidyspeptic bitters, .....	426	Witch hazle, .....	304
anodyne drops, .....	416	Wood sorrel, .....	361
anodyne powders, .....	435	Worms, .....	198
antidysenteric do., .....	435	articles useful for, .....	210,
antimorbific do., .....	422	219, 261, 318, 328, 357, 378,	
antispasmodic aromatic		381, 383, 398	
drops, .....	419	Also, see "Vermifuges," .....	417
chronic eye drops, .....	443	Worm drops, .....	417
compound tincture of La-		powders, .....	418
dy's slipper or Valerian, .....	446	Wormseed, .....	266
cough drops, .....	449	oil, .....	200
diaphoretic drops, .....	436	Wormwood, .....	266
diaphoretic powders .....	436	Wounds, (see "Fresh wounds,")	79
healing salve, .....	451	articles useful for, .....	228,
scrofulous ointment, .....	417	241, 367, 368, 383, 392	
tonic or ague pills, .....	427	case of, how treated, .....	493
vegetable cathartic pills, .....	430	Xanthoxylum, .....	231
vegetable expectorant syr-		Yan-root, .....	282
up, .....	441	Yeast, .....	265
worm drops, .....	417	Yellow-dock, .....	390
Whites or Fluor Albus, articles		fever, .....	200
useful for, .....	219, 261, 270	gentian, .....	402, 299
White elder, .....	390	lady's slipper, .....	281
horehound, .....	343	parilla, .....	344
ley, .....	417	poplar, .....	329
pond lily, .....	357	puccoon, .....	313
root, .....	247	root, .....	313
snakeroot, .....	292	salve, .....	452
swelling, .....	195	snowdrop, .....	291
articles useful for, .....	378	Yellow-wood or Yellow-wort, .....	406



# INDEX.

TO THE LATIN OR BOTANIC NAMES USED IN THE MATERIA MEDICA.

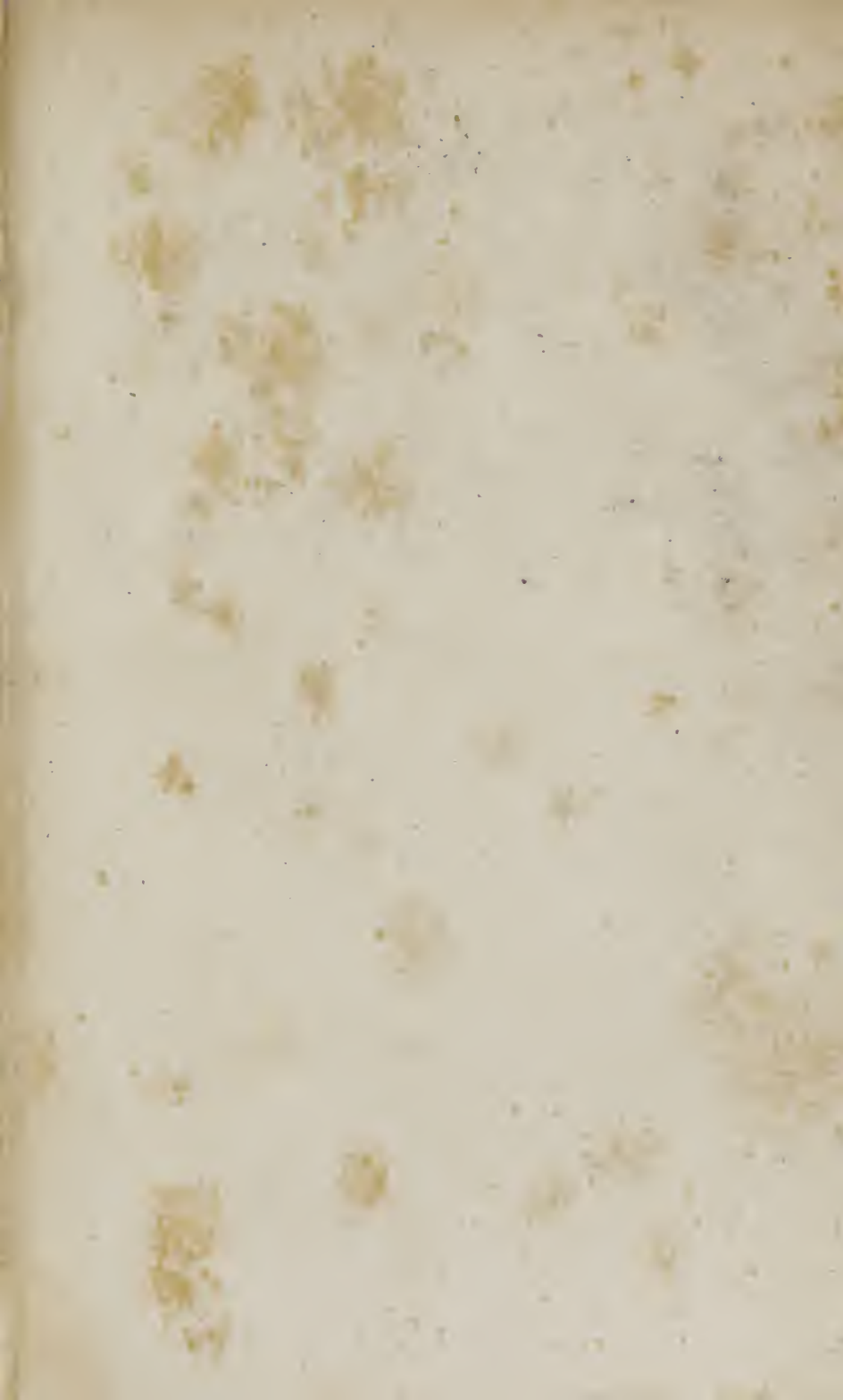
	PAGE.		PAGE.
Acidum acetosum. . . . .	209	Chenopodium anthelminticum	266
Agrimonia eupatoria. . . . .	210	Chimaphila umbellata. . . . .	266
Alcohol . . . . .	210	Collinsonia canadensis. . . . .	269
Aletris farinosa. . . . .	215	Comptonia asplenifolia. . . . .	269
Alkali. . . . .	216	Convallaria multiflora. . . . .	270
Alnus serrulata. . . . .	217	Convolvulus panduratus. . . . .	270
Amaranthus hypochondriacus	218	Coptis trifolia. . . . .	275
Amomum zingiber. . . . .	218	Cornus florida. . . . .	275
Amygdalus persica. . . . .	219	Crocus officinalis. . . . .	276
Anethum fœniculum. . . . .	220	Cunila mariana. . . . .	276
Angelica atropurpurea. . . . .	220	Cypripedium pubescens. . . . .	281
Angustura bark. . . . .	220	Cucurbita pepo. . . . .	281
Anthemis cotula. . . . .	220		
Anthemis nobilis. . . . .	223	Daucus carota. . . . .	282
Apium petroselinum. . . . .	223	Delphinium consolida. . . . .	282
Apocynum androsæmifolium,	224	Dioscorea villosa. . . . .	282
cannabinum. . . . .	227	Dolichos pruriens. . . . .	283
Aqua . . . . .	227		
Aralia nudicaulis. . . . .	228	Epiphegus virginianus. . . . .	286
racemosa. . . . .	231	Erigeron philadelphicum. . . . .	287
spinosa. . . . .	231	heterophyllum. . . . .	287
Arctium lappa. . . . .	232	canadense. . . . .	287
Aristolochia serpentaria. . . . .	232	Eryngium aquaticum. . . . .	288
Arum triphyllum. . . . .	237	Erythronium americanum. . . . .	291
Asarum canadense. . . . .	238	Eugenia caryophyllata. . . . .	291
Asclepias syrica. . . . .	238	Euonymus atropurpureus. . . . .	292
tuberosa. . . . .	247	Eupatorium ageratoides. . . . .	292
		perfoliatum. . . . .	293
Baptisia tinctoria. . . . .	247	purpureum. . . . .	294
Berberis vulgaris. . . . .	248	teucrifolium. . . . .	294
Betula lenta. . . . .	251		
		Ferula asafoetida. . . . .	299
Capsicum annum. . . . .	251	Frasera caroliniensis. . . . .	299
Carbo ligni. . . . .	252		
Cassia chamæcrista. . . . .	254	Galium aparine. . . . .	300
marylandica. . . . .	254	Gambogia. . . . .	300
Caulophyllum thalictroides. . . . .	261	Geum virginianum. . . . .	303
Celastrus scandens. . . . .	261	Glycyrrhiza glabra. . . . .	303
Centaurea benedicta. . . . .	262		
Cerevisiæ fermentum. . . . .	265	Hamamelis virginica. . . . .	304
Chelone glabra. . . . .	265	Hedeoma pulegioides. . . . .	304



	PAGE.		PAGE.
<i>Helianthus occidentalis</i> . . . . .	304	<i>Pimpinella anisum</i> . . . . .	366
<i>Helonias dioica</i> . . . . .	309	<i>Pinus balsamea</i> . . . . .	366
<i>Humulus lupulus</i> . . . . .	310	<i>canadensis</i> . . . . .	367
<i>Hydrastis canadensis</i> . . . . .	313	<i>Piper nigrum</i> . . . . .	367
		<i>Plantago major</i> . . . . .	367
<i>Ictodes fœtida</i> . . . . .	314	<i>cordata</i> . . . . .	368
<i>Impatiens pallida</i> . . . . .	314	<i>Podophyllum peltatum</i> . . . . .	368
<i>Inula helenium</i> . . . . .	317	<i>Polemonium reptans</i> . . . . .	373
		<i>Polygala senega</i> . . . . .	377
<i>Jeffersonia diphylla</i> . . . . .	317	<i>Polygonum punctatum</i> . . . . .	377
<i>Juglans cineria</i> . . . . .	318	<i>Polymnia uvidalia</i> . . . . .	378
<i>Juniperus communis</i> . . . . .	318	<i>Populus tremuloides</i> . . . . .	381
		<i>Potentilla canadensis</i> . . . . .	381
<i>Laurus benzoin</i> . . . . .	319	<i>Prinos verticillatus</i> . . . . .	381
<i>camphora</i> . . . . .	319	<i>Prunus virginiana</i> . . . . .	382
<i>cinnamomum</i> . . . . .	320	<i>Ptelœa trifoliata</i> . . . . .	382
<i>sassafras</i> . . . . .	320	<i>Pyrola rotundifolia</i> . . . . .	383
<i>Leontodon taraxacum</i> . . . . .	321		
<i>Leptandra virginica</i> . . . . .	322	<i>Rhamnus cathartica</i> . . . . .	384
<i>Liatris spicata</i> . . . . .	327	<i>Rheum palmatum</i> . . . . .	384
<i>Linum usitatissimum</i> . . . . .	327	<i>Rhus glabra</i> . . . . .	384
<i>Liriodendron tulipifera</i> . . . . .	328	<i>Rubus strigosus</i> . . . . .	389
<i>Lobelia cardinalis</i> . . . . .	328	<i>trivialis</i> . . . . .	389
<i>inflata</i> . . . . .	333	<i>villosus</i> . . . . .	389
<i>sypilitica</i> . . . . .	337	<i>Rumex crispus</i> . . . . .	390
<i>Macrotrys racemosa</i> . . . . .	338	<i>Sambucus canadensis</i> . . . . .	390
<i>Marrubium vulgare</i> . . . . .	343	<i>Sanicula marylandica</i> . . . . .	391
<i>Mentha piperita</i> . . . . .	343	<i>Sanguinaria canadensis</i> . . . . .	391
<i>viridis</i> . . . . .	344	<i>Scrophularia marylandica</i> . . . . .	392
<i>Menispermum canadense</i> . . . . .	344	<i>Scutellaria lateriflora</i> . . . . .	397
<i>Mitchella repens</i> . . . . .	347	<i>Silphium perfoliatum</i> . . . . .	397
<i>Monotropa uniflora</i> . . . . .	347	<i>Spigelia marylandica</i> . . . . .	398
<i>Myrica cerifera</i> . . . . .	348		
<i>Myristica moschata</i> . . . . .	348	<i>Tanacetum vulgare</i> . . . . .	398
<i>Myrrha</i> . . . . .	348	<i>Tela arancii</i> . . . . .	398
<i>Myrtus pimenta</i> . . . . .	357	<i>Trillium latifolium</i> . . . . .	401
		<i>Triosteum perfoliatum</i> . . . . .	402
<i>Nepeta cataria</i> . . . . .	357		
<i>Nymphœa odorata</i> . . . . .	357	<i>Ulmus fulva</i> . . . . .	402
		<i>Urtica dioica</i> . . . . .	405
<i>Onosmodium hispidum</i> . . . . .	358		
<i>Oxalis stricta</i> . . . . .	361	<i>Verbascum thapsus</i> . . . . .	405
		<i>Verbena hastata</i> . . . . .	405
<i>Panax quinquefolia</i> . . . . .	361		
<i>Parthenium integrifolium</i> . . . . .	362	<i>Xanthorhiza apiifolia</i> . . . . .	406
<i>Phytolacca decandra</i> . . . . .	365	<i>Xanthoxylum fraxineum</i> . . . . .	406







NATIONAL LIBRARY OF MEDICINE



NLM 02693314 0